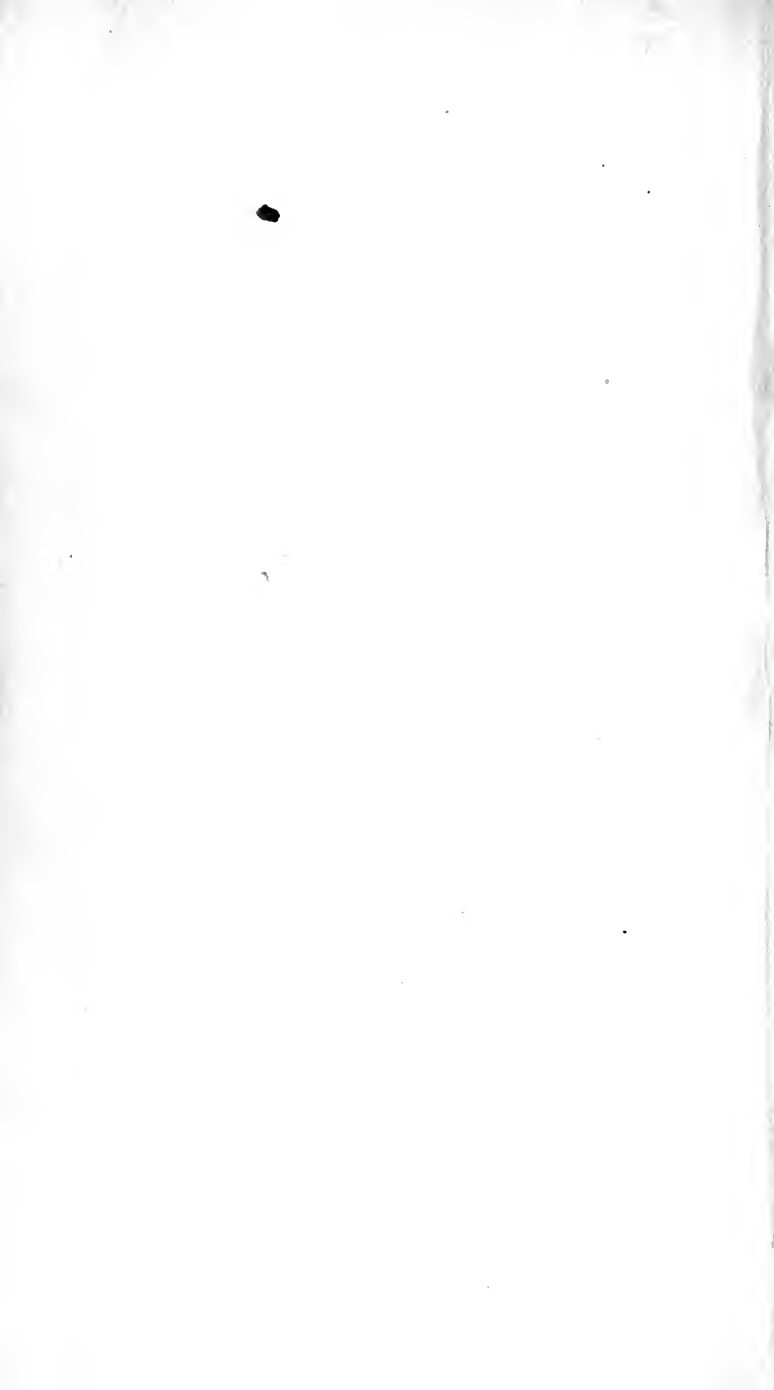








Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation



*Elementary*  
ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR

*Elementary Latin Grammar.*

OF

THE LATIN LANGUAGE,

WITH A SERIES OF

LATIN AND ENGLISH EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION AND  
A COLLECTION OF LATIN READING LESSONS,  
WITH THE REQUISITE VOCABULARIES.

BY

DR. RAPHAEL KÜHNER,

CONRECTOR OF THE LYCEUM, HANOVER.

TRANSLATED FROM THE GERMAN

BY

J. T. CHAMPLIN,

PROFESSOR OF GREEK AND LATIN IN WATERVILLE COLLEGE.

---

BOSTON:  
JAMES MUNROE AND COMPANY.

1845.

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1845, by  
J. T. CHAMPLIN,  
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Maine.

ANDOVER:  
ALLEN, MORRILL AND WARDWELL,  
PRINTERS.

PA2087

K915

1845

MAIN

## P R E F A C E.

THE unrivalled reputation of Kühner as a grammarian in both the Greek and Latin languages, renders it unnecessary that any apology should be made for presenting to the American public the following translation of his Elementary Latin Grammar. His merits, before known to a few of our riper scholars, have lately been made familiar to all through the excellent translation of his Greek School Grammar by Messrs. Edwards and Taylor. It is understood also, that the same gentlemen have in preparation his Elementary Greek Grammar.

It seemed but proper, therefore, that a beginning should be made towards bringing before the public some of the results of his grammatical labors (equally profound and ingenious) in the Latin language. And no one, it is to be presumed, who duly considers the state of Latin learning among us, will deem it improper that a beginning has been made with an elementary treatise. The publication, within a few years past, of a translation of Krebs' Guide for Writing Latin and a new and enlarged edition of Beck's Latin Syntax, has done much towards supplying American students with the grammatical helps for studying the language critically. But with the exception of the Ciceronian by Dr. Sears, which, admirably adapted as it is to its purpose, is not designed to supply the place of a grammar, nothing of importance has been published during this period to supply the deficiencies for elementary instruction.

There is needed then, more especially, an elementary work on Latin Grammar, which shall give a right *start* to our scholars and put them in possession of the essential principles of the language in the shortest and most effectual way. Such a grammar, it is believed, the present will be found to be. No one can take a class over it, without being impressed with its admirable order, precision and adaptedness to the purposes of elementary instruction. The pupil

will here find the most happy arrangement of parts, each preparing the way for the following, the simplest and most philosophical statement of principles, and every expedient resorted to, which genius and skill could invent, to aid the understanding and the memory. While it does not profess to embrace every minute principle of the language, it presents a selection of principles so judiciously made, so comprehensively stated and so extended withal, that it is believed, that it will be found to contain quite as many principles, applicable in reading the strictly classical writers of Latin, as many much more extended grammars; certainly enough to meet the demands of ordinary students in the usual course of preparation for college.

The plan of the work, as given by the author, is briefly as follows. Every grammatical form or principle of syntax, as soon as learned, is to be rendered practical and fixed in the mind, by translations first from the Latin into the English, and then from the English into the Latin. To prepare the pupil for these exercises in translation, such forms of the verb as are requisite for constructing the simplest sentences are given at the outset, and a few simple rules of syntax as they are required, while on almost every page, lists of Latin words with their definitions are given to be committed to memory, most of which, also, are collected and arranged in alphabetical Vocabularies at the end of the book. As many of the examples for translation as possible, were selected unaltered from the classics, others were slightly altered to suit the cases for which they were employed, and the remainder composed by the author, yet always so as to embody classical ideas and turns of thought. The examples in English may be translated into Latin, either *viva voce* or by writing, at the discretion of the teacher.

The translation here presented is from the second edition of the original work, published in 1844. Previously to receiving this edition, the translator had completed, within a few pages, the entire translation of the first; but on comparing the two editions, the alterations were found to be so great as to make the last almost a new work. He abandoned, therefore, his first translation, and commenced with the second edition *de novo*. Although this has delayed the publication of the work a few months, no one, it is presumed, will regret it, when he reflects, that he is thereby put in possession of a vastly better book, and probably of a somewhat better translation. During the interval between the publication of the first and second editions,

the author had prepared a larger Latin Grammar and been daily employed in teaching his elementary work, all which prepared him for making very important changes in a second edition. By this process, the book has been brought to the high state of perfection in which it here appears. Besides its general office as a grammar, it is designed to contain all that the pupil will need during the first year or more of his study of the language, serving as grammar, reading-book and lexicon. The adaptedness of such a book to the wants of beginners, the experienced teacher will not fail to perceive.

It should be stated, however, that while the translation has been made from the second edition throughout, the translator has taken the liberty to introduce a few remarks and paragraphs (in one or two instances with slight modifications) from the first edition, which had been omitted in the second, apparently, because they were considered more appropriate to the author's larger grammar to which this was to serve exclusively as an introduction. The different position which the book will occupy in this country rendered it proper that these should be retained in the translation, even though, in one or two instances, they may appear a little inconsistent with the general plan of the work. For the same reason, the translator has added three short Appendices, chiefly from Kühner's larger Latin Grammar, of which that on Prosody, as it will be perceived, is designed only for the scanning of Hexameter verse.

With regard to the mode of using the book, the intelligent teacher will be the best judge. The author, however, suggests that, after completing the Etymology, the pupil should commence the more simple of the Latin reading lessons in connection with the study of the Syntax. And it may be added, that in some cases it will probably be found best, to take the pupil over the first and perhaps the second Course, omitting the English exercises at first, and then return and take them up in connection with a thorough review of the whole. Perhaps also, a judicious teacher, following out the general plan of the author, of diminishing difficulties by division and distribution, will think best, with very young pupils in particular, to omit some other things the first time over and take them up at subsequent reviews. But whatever course is pursued in teaching the book, a complete mastery of all that it contains should be aimed at from the beginning, and should be actually attained before it is left.

In conclusion, the translator would express his obligations to the Rev. Dr. Sears, of the Newton Theological Institution, who very kindly listened to the reading of the greater part of the manuscript and suggested such corrections as his superior knowledge of German enabled him to do, and to Mr. James H. Hanson, Principal of the Waterville Academy, who has given very important assistance in correcting the sheets as they passed through the press.

*Waterville College, }*  
*Feb. 1845. }*



# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

---

## ETYMOLOGY.

---

### FIRST COURSE.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### OF THE SOUNDS AND LETTERS OF THE LANGUAGE.

Division of the Letters . . . . .	§ 1
Pronunciation of the Letters . . . . .	2

#### CHAPTER II.

##### OF SYLLABLES.

Of the Measure or Quantity of Syllables . . . . .	3
Of Accent . . . . .	4
Of the Division of Syllables . . . . .	5

#### CHAPTER III.

##### PARTS OF SPEECH.—INFLECTION . . . . . 6

##### PARTIAL TREATMENT OF THE VERB . . . . . 7—11

First Conjugation . . . . .	8
Second Conjugation . . . . .	9
Third Conjugation . . . . .	10
Fourth Conjugation . . . . .	11

#### CHAPTER IV.

##### OF THE SUBSTANTIVE AND ADJECTIVE.

Classification of Substantives . . . . .	12
Gender of the Substantive . . . . .	13
Number, Case and Declension . . . . .	14
Gender and Declension of the Adjective . . . . .	15
First Declension . . . . .	16
Second Declension . . . . .	17
Third Declension . . . . .	18—21

Paradigms of Adjectives of the Third Declension . . . . .	§ 22
Fourth Declension . . . . .	23
Fifth Declension . . . . .	24
Comparison of Adjectives and Participles . . . . .	25

## CHAPTER. V.

## OF THE ADVERB.

Classification and Formation of Adverbs . . . . .	26
Comparison of Adverbs . . . . .	27

## CHAPTER VI.

## OF THE PRONOUN.

Personal Pronouns . . . . .	28
Demonstrative Pronouns . . . . .	29
Relative and Interrogative Pronouns . . . . .	30
Indefinite Pronouns . . . . .	31
Correlative Pronouns . . . . .	32

## CHAPTER VII.

OF THE NUMERALS . . . . .	33
---------------------------	----

## CHAPTER VIII.

TABLE OF THE PREPOSITIONS . . . . .	34
-------------------------------------	----

## SECOND COURSE.

Greek Nouns of the First Declension . . . . .	35
Of the Gender of the Second Declension . . . . .	36
Remarks on Particular Case-endings of the Third Declension . . . . .	37
Of the Gender of the Third Declension . . . . .	38—40
Masculine . . . . .	38
Feminine . . . . .	39
Neuter . . . . .	40
Of the Gender of the Fourth Declension . . . . .	41

## THIRD COURSE.

## CHAPTER I.

## OF THE VERB.

Classes of Verbs . . . . .	42
Tenses of the Verb . . . . .	43
Modes of the Verb . . . . .	44
Infinitive, Participle, Supine, Gerund and Gerundive . . . . .	45

Persons and Numbers of the Verb . . . . .	§ 46
Conjugation . . . . .	47
Formation of the Tenses . . . . .	48
Conjugation of the Auxiliary verb <i>sum</i> . . . . .	49
Active of the Four Regular Conjugations . . . . .	50
Passive . . . . .	51
Inflection of Verbs in <i>io</i> after the Third Conjugation . . . . .	52
Deponents of the Four Conjugations . . . . .	53
Periphrastic Conjugation . . . . .	54
Catalogue of verbs which vary in the formation of their tenses from the paradigms given in §§ 50 and 51 . . . . .	55—69
First Conjugation . . . . .	55—57
Second Conjugation . . . . .	58—60
Third Conjugation . . . . .	61—68
Fourth Conjugation . . . . .	69
Particular Irregular Verbs . . . . .	70—76
1) Possum . . . . .	70
2) Edo . . . . .	71
3) Fero . . . . .	72
4) Volo, nolo, malo . . . . .	73
5) Eo . . . . .	74
6) Queo, nequeo . . . . .	75
7) Fio . . . . .	76
Defective Verbs . . . . .	77
Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	78

## CHAPTER II.

PREPOSITION.—CONJUNCTION.—INTERJECTION . . . . .	79
--	----

## CHAPTER III.

THE FORMATION OF WORDS . . . . .	80
----------------------------------	----

## SYNTAX.

Sentence. Subject. Predicate . . . . .	81
Limitation of the Subject and Predicate . . . . .	82
Agreement . . . . .	83
Double Nominative . . . . .	84
Classes of Verbs . . . . .	85
Tenses of the Verb . . . . .	86
Modes of the Verb . . . . .	87
Of the Cases . . . . .	88—91
Genitive . . . . .	88
Accusative . . . . .	89
Dative . . . . .	90
Ablative . . . . .	91

Construction of names of Towns . . . . .	§ 92
Remarks on the use of the Prepositions . . . . .	93
Of the use of the Pronouns . . . . .	94
Of the use of the Numerals . . . . .	95
Infinitive . . . . .	96
Supine . . . . .	97
Gerund . . . . .	98
Gerundive . . . . .	99
Participle . . . . .	100

**COMPOUND SENTENCES.**

A. COÖRDINATE SENTENCES . . . . .	101
B. SUBORDINATE SENTENCES . . . . .	102
Of the use of the Modes in Subordinate Sentences . . . . .	103
Succession of the Tenses in Subjunctive Subordinate Sentences . . . . .	104
I. SUBSTANTIVE SENTENCES . . . . .	105—108
A. Accusative with the Infinitive . . . . .	105
B. Ut, ne, ut ne, ut non, with the Subjunctive . . . . .	106
C. Quo, quomīnus, quin, with the Subjunctive . . . . .	107
D. Quod, <i>that</i> , with the Indicative . . . . .	108
II. ADJECTIVE SENTENCES . . . . .	109
III. ADVERBIAL SENTENCES . . . . .	110—114
a. Adverbial Sentences of Time . . . . .	110
b. Causal Adverbial Sentences . . . . .	111
c. Conditional Adverbial Sentences . . . . .	112
d. Concessive Adverbial Sentences . . . . .	113
e. Adverbial Sentences of Comparison . . . . .	114
OF INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES . . . . .	115
OF THE FORM OF OBLIQUE DISCOURSE . . . . .	116

**FIRST APPENDIX.**

**OF PROSODY:**

Of Syllables . . . . .	117
Hexameter Verse . . . . .	118
Scansion . . . . .	119

**SECOND APPENDIX.**

OF ABBREVIATIONS . . . . .	120
----------------------------	-----

**THIRD APPENDIX.**

OF THE ROMAN CALENDAR . . . . .	121
Collection of Latin Reading Lessons.	
Vocabularies.	

# ETYMOLOGY.

---

## FIRST COURSE.

---

### CHAPTER I.

Of the Sounds and Letters of the Language.

#### § 1. *Division of the Letters.*

1. The Latin Language has as signs of its sounds, twenty-five letters, viz. six vowels and nineteen consonants.

a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m
n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	x	y	z	
A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M
N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	X	Y	Z	

REMARK 1. The capital letters are used only: a) at the beginning of a sentence, after a period, an interrogation or exclamation point and after a colon (:), where the words of another are quoted ;—b) in proper names, as: Romulus.—The letter *k* is used in but very few words.

2. The vowels are either *short* or *long*. The short vowels are distinguished by *◌*, the long ones by *◌—*, as: *ă, ā, perplăcēs*. The sign *◌* signifies, that the vowel over which it stands can be used either as short or long, as: *ă*.

3. The Latin Language has the following diphthongs: *ae. oe. au. eu. ei*, e. g. *aequitas, equity, foedus, league, aurum, gold, Eurus, the east wind, hei, alas*.

REM. 2. When *ae* and *oe* are to be pronounced *separately*, this is indicated by two points (*puncta diaerësis, points of separation*) placed over the second vowel (e), as: *aër, the air, poëta, a poet*. The diphthong *eu* is found in only a few Latin, but in many Greek words, as: *Eurōtas*; in general, therefore, *eu* should be separated in pronunciation, as: *deus* (pronounced, *děūs*) *God*. In like manner, also, must *ei* be almost invariably pronounced separately, as: *dei* (pronounced, *děi*) *of God*, for *ei* as a diphthong occurs in but a very few words, as: *hei, alas*.

4. The consonants, according to the greater or less influence of the organs of speech in their pronunciation, are divided into:

- a) Liquids: l, m, n, r;
- b) Spirants:\* h, s, v, j;
- c) Mutes: b, c, d, f, g, k, p, q, t, x, z.

### § 2. Pronunciation of the Letters.

*C* before *e, i, y, æ, œ, eu*, is pronounced like *s*, but in other cases like *k*, as: *celsus* (*selsus*) *cicer*, *cymba*, *caecus*, *ceu*, *coelum*; but, *caro* (*karo*), *collum*, *custos*, *clamor*;

*Ch* is pronounced like *k*;

*Gu* before a vowel in the same syllable like *gw*, as: *lingua*;

*Ph* like our *f*, as: *pharëtra*;

*Rh* as a simple *r*, as: *Rhea*;

*Sch* like *sk*, as: *schola* (*skola*);

*Qu* is pronounced like *kw*, as: *aqua*;

*Su* before a vowel in the same syllable like *sw*, as: *suasor*;

*Ti* before a vowel is pronounced like *shi*, as: *actio* (*acshio*). But if the *i* is *long*, the hissing sound disappears, as: *totius*. Besides, *ti* (with the *i* short) is pronounced without the hissing sound: a) if there is immediately before the *t* another *t*, an *s*, or an *x*, as: *Attius*, *ostium*, *mixtio*; b) in Greek words as: *Miltiades*, *tiara*.

## CHAPTER II.

### Of Syllables.

#### § 3. Of the Measure or Quantity of Syllables.

1. A syllable is *short by nature*, when its vowel is short and this short vowel is followed either by another vowel or a single consonant, as: *dëus*, *God*, *păter*, *father*.

2. A syllable is *long by nature*, when its vowel is long, as: *măter*, *a mother*, *mūrŭs*, *a wall*. Particularly, all syllables are long in which there is a diphthong, as: *plăusŭs*,

\* *Spirants*, i. e. letters formed principally by the breath.—Tr.

*applause*, and in which two vowels are contracted into one, as: *lăcūs*, of *a lake*, (contracted from *lacŭs*, the original form of the genitive of *lăcūs*, *a lake*).

3. A syllable, which ends with a long vowel, is *short by position*, i. e. by the position of the vowel, when the following syllable begins with a vowel, as: *dē* in *dēamlŭlo*, *I take a walk*, *prō* in *prōavu*, *a great-grand-father*, *prae* in *praēcŭtus*, *very sharp*.

4. A syllable with a short vowel is *long by position*, when this short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or by *j*, or *x*, or *z*, as: *pēr* in *pērdo*; *alicŭjus*; but in the compounds of *jugum*, the vowel before *j* remains short, as: *bijŭgus*. *H* with a consonant, forms no position, as: *stomăchus*, *the stomach*.

REMARK. The position before a *mute with a liquid* (§ 1, 4), for the most part, does not make the short vowel long, as: *cerēbrum*, *the brain*, *arbitror*, *I think*, *locŭples*, *rich*. But in two cases the position of a mute with a liquid makes the preceding short vowel long: a) in compounds, as: *ăbrumpo*, from *ăb*; b) when one of the three liquids: *l*, *m*, *n*, follows one of the three mutes: *b*, *d*, *g*, as: *hĭblus*, *ăgmen*, *a march* (from *ăgo*), *măgnus*, *great*.

#### § 4. Of Accent.\*

1. *Monosyllables* with a vowel *short by nature*, are pronounced with the *acute accent* (´), monosyllables with a vowel *long by nature*, with the *circumflex accent* (^), as: *ét*, *vĭr* (*vĭri*), *út*, *dŭx* (*dŭcis*); *môs* (*mōris*), *jŭs* (*jŭris*), *lêx* (*lĕgis*), *môn*s.

2. *Dissyllables* have the accent upon the *penult*, and indeed:

a) *The acute accent*, when the *penult* is short by nature, as: *vĭrum* (*ĩ*), *dŭcem* (*ũ*), *hómo* (*õ*), *árte*; or when the *ultimate* is long, whether the *penult* is long or short, as: *Músae* (*ũ*) *móres* (*õ*) *bónae* (*õ*);

b) *The circumflex accent*, when the *penult* is long by nature and the *ultimate* short, as: *mâtĕr* (*ā*), *Mûsă*.

3. Words of *three or more syllables* have the accent:

\* This paragraph may be passed over, provided the teacher will see that the right pronunciation of the words is given in reading.

a) Upon the *antepenult*, and indeed, *the acute accent*, when the *penult* is *short*, whether the last syllable is short or long, as: *hómīnĕ, hómīnĕs, homínĭbus, mediŏcris, tĕnĕbrae*;

b) Upon the *penult*, and indeed, *the acute accent*, when both the *penult* and *ultimate* are long, as: *acútō (ū), amárĕs (ā)*; or when the *penult* is *long only by position*, in which case the *ultimate* may be either long or short, as: *amántŭr, amántĕs*;—but *the circumflex accent*, if the *penult* is *long by nature* and the *ultimate short*, as: *acútŭs, amârĕ*.\*

REMARK. The short monosyllabic *enclitics* (i. e. particles which always stand annexed to other words, and therefore lose their accent): *que, ve, ne, ce, met*, etc. draw the accent of the word to which they are attached from the *antepenult* to the *ultimate*, as: *scĕlera sceleráque, hómīnes homínĕsque, homínibus homínĭbŭsque*. But if the accent is upon the *penult*, the drawing back of the accent to the last syllable, takes place only when this is already long, or by its union with the *enclitic* becomes long by position; but if the last syllable is short and remains so, the accent does not change syllables, as: *sceléstus scelestŭsque, scelĕsta sceléstăque, plerique pleraĕque plĕrăque, útrăque utrăque*.

### § 5. Of the Division of Syllables.†

1. GENERAL RULE. Syllables end with a vowel, and begin with a consonant. When, therefore, a consonant stands between two vowels, it belongs to the following syllable, as: *pa-ter, a-ma-mus*.

2. SUBORDINATE RULE. When two or three consonants, with which a Latin word can begin, stand between the vowels of two syllables, they are to be joined to the second syllable. The most common combinations of consonants are: a mute with a liquid, and *s* with a mute or with a mute and a liquid, as: *ma-gnus, great, a-gri, fields, pe-stis, plague, a-stra, the stars*. In all other cases, the consonants

\* That is to say, in general, if the *penult* is long it has the accent, but if not, the *antepenult*.—TR.

† These rules for the division of syllables are drawn from the ancient grammarians and are generally observed in Europe. In this country, it is more common (and perhaps better, especially for beginners) to follow the analogies of our own language in dividing a Latin word into syllables. For a fuller account of the principles of division here adopted, see Appendix to Beck's Latin Syntax.—TR.



between two vowels are divided, as : an-nus, *a year*, am-nis, *a river*, mon-tes, *mountains*.

REMARK. A compound word must be divided according to its component parts, as : ab-ävus, *a great-great-grandfather*. If a letter is inserted, it is attached to the first word, as : prod-esse, *to profit*.

### CHAPTER III.

#### § 6. *Parts of Speech.—Inflection.*

1. The Substantive designates an *object* (a person or thing), as : *man, woman, house*.

2. The Verb expresses an *action* (something which an object *does*), as : *to bloom, to dance, to sleep, to love, to praise*, e. g. the rose *blooms*; the boy *dances*; the child *sleeps*; God *loves* men; the teacher *praises* the scholars.

3. The Adjective expresses a *property* or *quality*, as : *small, great, beautiful*, e. g. a *small* boy; a *beautiful* rose; a *great* house.

4. The Adverb expresses the *way and manner* in which an action takes place, as ; *beautifully, sweetly*, e. g. the rose blooms *beautifully*; the child sleeps *sweetly*.

REM. 1. There are adverbs also, which express the *place where*, and the *time when* the action takes place, as : *here, there, yesterday, to-day*.

5. The Pronoun *points* to an object, as : *I, thou, he, this that*.

6. The Numeral expresses *number* or *multitude*, as : *one, two, three, many, few*.

7. The Preposition is a word which stands before a noun, and expresses the relations of *place*, of *time* and other relations which an object sustains to an action, as : the boy stands *before* the house; the child laughs *for* joy.

8. The Conjunction is a word which serves to connect words and sentences, as : *and, but, because*.

REM. 2. Besides, there are other words which are barely *signs of emotion*, and are called Interjections.

9. By *inflection* we understand the variation or modifica-

tion of a word in order to express a particular relation, as: thou lovest, he loves, the child's clothes, the man's hat. The inflection of the substantive, adjective, pronoun and numeral, is called *declension*, that of verbs, *conjugation*. The remaining parts of speech do not admit of inflection.

### § 7. *Partial Treatment of the Verb.*

All the verbs of the Latin Language are divided into four classes or conjugations, which are distinguished by the termination of the infinitive as follows:

First Conjugation :	—āre	as :	amāre, to love,
Second "	—ēre	"	monēre, to admonish,
Third "	—ĕre	"	regĕre, to govern,
Fourth "	—īre	"	audīre, to hear.

### § 8. *First Conjugation : amāre, to love.*

PRESENT ACTIVE. Indicative.		PRESENT PASSIVE. Indicative.	
1.	amo, I love		amor, I am loved
2.	amās, thou lovest		amāris, thou art loved
3.	amāt, he, she, it loves		amātur, he, she, it is loved
1.	amāmus, we love		amāmur, we are loved
2.	amātis, you love		amāmini, you are loved
3.	amant, they love.		amantur, they are loved.
Imperative.			
2.	amā, love thou		
2.	amāte, love ye.		

### L. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

aro 1. I plough.	orno 1. I adorn.	vexo 1. I annoy.
delecto 1. I delight.	pugno 1. I fight.	vigilo 1. I watch.
edūco 1. I bring up.	salto 1. I dance.	vitupĕro 1. I censure.
laudo 1. I praise.	tento 1. I try.	vulnĕro 1. I wound.

Laudo. Vitupĕras. Saltat. Vigilāmus. Pugnātis. Arant. Lauda. Pugnāte. Tentat saltāre. Delector. Vulnerāris. Vexātur. Laudāmur. Vituperamīni. Ornantur. Laudāris. Educamīni. Vituperāmur. Edūcor. Edūcantur. Delectāmur. Ornāris. Saltatis. Vulnerantur. Laudamīni. Vigila. Saltāte.

I watch. Thou fightest. He ploughs. We praise. You censure.

They dance. Fight thou. Praise ye. They try to fight. I am praised. Thou art censured. He is adorned. We are delighted. You are wounded. They are annoyed. They are praised. Thou art brought up. They are censured. We are brought up. You praise. We are adorned. He is wounded. They praise.

§ 9. *Second Conjugation: mōnĕrĕ, to admonish.*

PRESENT ACTIVE. Indicative.		PRESENT PASSIVE. Indicative.
1.	moneo, <i>I admonish</i>	moneor, <i>I am admonished</i>
2.	monēs, <i>thou admonishest</i>	monēris, <i>thou art admonished</i>
3.	monēt, <i>he, she, it admonishes</i>	monētur, <i>he, she it is admonished</i>
1.	monēmus, <i>we admonish</i>	monēmur, <i>we are admonished</i>
2.	monētis, <i>you admonish</i>	monēmīni, <i>you are admonished</i>
3.	monent, <i>they admonish.</i>	monentur, <i>they are admonished.</i>
Imperative.		
2.	monĕ, <i>admonish thou</i>	
2.	monĕte, <i>admonish ye.</i>	

II. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

<sup>e</sup> Dobĕo 2. <i>I must, ought.</i>	gaudĕo 2. <i>I rejoice.</i>	ridĕo 2. <i>I laugh.</i>
docĕo 2. <i>I teach, instruct.</i>	manĕo 2. <i>I remain.</i>	tacĕo 2. <i>I am silent.</i>
exercĕo 2. <i>I exercise.</i>	mordĕo 2. <i>I bite.</i>	terrĕo 2. <i>I frighten.</i>
fleō 2. <i>I weep.</i>	movĕo 2. <i>I move.</i>	et, <i>and.</i>
florĕo 2. <i>I bloom.</i>	parĕo 2. <i>I obey.</i>	si, <i>if.</i>

Docĕo. Taces. Ridet. Gaudĕmus. Exercĕtis. Flent. Tace. Manĕte. Tacĕre debes. Terrĕor. Exercĕris. Movĕtur. Docĕmur. Mordemīni. Docentur. Doces. Tacĕmus. Docĕris. Parĕre debent. Florent. Exercĕmur. Manĕtis. Educāris et docĕris. Moventur. Tacent. Parĕte. Si parĕtis, laudamīni. Si tacĕmus, laudāmur. Sal-tāmus et gaudĕmus. Tentate docĕre. Mordentur et vulnerantur.

I rejoice. Thou exercisest. He weeps. We teach. You are silent. They laugh. Remain thou. Be ye silent. You must remain. I am bitten. Thou art frightened. He is instructed. You teach. I am silent. We are moved. We must be silent. I exercise myself (= am exercised). Rejoice ye. You are brought up and instructed. I am instructed. I laugh. Obey thou. If thou obeyest thou art praised. You dance and rejoice. We try to teach. We are bitten and wounded. If you weep you are censured.

§ 10. *Third Conjugation: regĕrĕ, to govern.*

PRESENT ACTIVE. Indicative.		PRESENT PASSIVE. Indicative.
1.	rego, <i>I govern</i>	regor, <i>I am governed</i>
2.	regis, <i>thou governest</i>	regĕris, <i>thou art governed</i>
3.	regit, <i>he, she, it governs</i>	regĭtur, <i>he, she, it is governed</i>
1.	regĭmus, <i>we govern</i>	regimur, <i>we are governed</i>
2.	regitis, <i>you govern</i>	regimĭni, <i>you are governed</i>
3.	regunt, <i>they govern.</i>	reguntur, <i>they are governed.</i>
Imperative.		
2.	regĕ, <i>govern thou</i>	
2.	regite, <i>govern ye.</i>	

III. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*Bibo 3. *I drink.*cano 3. *I sing.*cĕdo 3. *I give way.*defendo 3. *I defend.*diligō 3. *I esteem, love.*edo 3. *I eat.*fallo 3. *I deceive.*laedo 3. *I hurt.*lĕgo 3. *I read.*ludo 3. *I play.*pingo 3. *I paint.*pungo 3. *I prick, sting.*scribo 3. *I write.*vinco 3. *I conquer, van-*  
*quish.*bene adv. *well.*male, adv. *ill, badly.*

Scribo. Legis. Laedit. Canimus. Editis. Bibunt. Pinge. Scribite. Scribere debes. Fallor. Vincĕris. Defenditur. Diligimur. Pungimĭni. Laeduntur. Ede et bibe. Lude. Legite. Canere tentat. Pingis. Defendimur. Diligĕris. Vincimĭni. Si vincitis, laudamĭni. Bene scribunt. Laedĕris. Edunt. Si cedis, vincĕris. Si male scribis, vituperāris. Si bene pingitis, laudamĭni.

I sing. Thou eatest. He drinks. We write. You read. They defend. Write thou. Paint ye. You must read. I am esteemed. Thou art stung. He is hurt. We are deceived. We are vanquished. You defend. They esteem. Eat ye and drink. He is conquered. Play ye. They try to read. You paint. They are defended. You are esteemed. If thou singest well, thou art praised. He writes well. You are hurt. If you write well you are praised. If you give way you are conquered. If you write badly you are censured.

§ 11. *Fourth Conjugation*: audīrē, to hear.

PRESENT ACTIVE. Indicative.		PRESENT PASSIVE. Indicative.
1.	audio, <i>I hear</i>	audior, <i>I am heard</i>
2.	audis, <i>thou hearest</i>	audīris, <i>thou art heard</i>
3.	audit, <i>he, she, it hears</i>	auditur, <i>he, she, it is heard</i>
1.	audīmus, <i>we hear</i>	audīmur, <i>we are heard</i>
2.	auditis, <i>you hear</i>	audīmini, <i>you are heard</i>
3.	audiunt, <i>they hear.</i>	audiuntur, <i>they are heard.</i>
Imperative.		
2.	audi, <i>hear thou</i>	
2.	audite, <i>hear ye.</i>	

Besides, the following forms of the irregular verb *sum* should be noted :

est, <i>he, she, it is,</i>	sunt, <i>they are,</i>	esse, <i>to be,</i>
erat, <i>he, she, it was,</i>	erant, <i>they were.</i>	

IV. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Custodio 4. <i>I guard.</i>	garrō 4. <i>I chatter.</i>	salio 4. <i>I leap.</i>
dormio 4. <i>I sleep.</i>	nutrio 4. <i>I nourish.</i>	venio 4. <i>I come.</i>
erudio 4. <i>I instruct.</i>	punio 4. <i>I punish.</i>	vestio 4. <i>I clothe.</i>
ferio 4. <i>I beat, strike.</i>	reperio 4. <i>I find.</i>	vincio 4. <i>I bind, chain.</i>
fulcio 4. <i>I support.</i>		valde adv. <i>greatly.</i>

Erudio. Garris. Dormit. Ferimus. Punitis. Saliant. Veni. Salite. Tento reperire. Vincior. Custodiris. Feritur. Vestimur. Nutrimini. Fulciuntur. Audi. Dormite. Bene erudimur. Si bene erudis, laudaris; si male erudis, vituperaris. Si vincēris, vincēris. Vestimur. Si male scribimus, punimur. Bene custodimini. Dormimus. Salitis. Bene erudiuntur. Audite. Vincimus. Vincimus. Valde ferimur. Valde vituperamini et punimini.

I strike. Thou punishest. He leaps. We instruct. You chatter. They sleep. Leap thou. Come ye. They try to instruct. I clothe myself (= am clothed). Thou art nourished. He supports himself (= is supported). We are bound. You are guarded. They are beaten. Hear ye. You are well instructed. He leaps. He is well instructed. If you are vanquished, you are bound. We are well guarded. He clothes himself (= is clothed). They are badly instructed.

I praise, I teach, I give way, I guard. Thou praisest, thou teachest,

thou givest way, thou guardest. He praises, he teaches, he gives way, he guards. We censure, we exercise, we read, we sleep. You censure, you exercise, you read, you sleep. They censure, they exercise, they read, they sleep. Adorn thou, obey thou, write thou, punish thou. Adorn ye, obey ye, write ye, punish ye. We must adorn, we must obey, we must write, we must punish. I am annoyed, I am bitten, I am pricked, I am bound. Thou art annoyed, thou art bitten, thou art pricked, thou art bound. He is annoyed, he is bitten, he is pricked, he is bound. We are well brought up, we are greatly frightened, we are greatly esteemed, we are well instructed. You are well brought up, you are greatly frightened, you are greatly esteemed, you are well instructed. They are well brought up, they are greatly frightened, they are greatly esteemed, they are well instructed.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

### Of the Substantive and Adjective.

#### § 12. *Classification of Substantives.*

1. The substantive (§ 6, 1.) is called *concrete*, when it designates a *person* or *thing* which has an *actual* and *independent* existence, as: *man, lion, flower, army*; it is called *abstract*, on the contrary, when it signifies an *action* or *quality* conceived of as independent of a subject, as: *virtue, wisdom*.

2. The Concretes are:

a) Appellative nouns, when they indicate a *whole species*, or an *individual of a class*, as: *man, woman, flower, lion*;

b) Proper nouns, when they designate only *single persons* as things which do not belong to a class, as: *Marius, Rome*;

c) Material nouns, when they indicate the simple *material*, as: *milk, dust, water, gold*;

d) Collective nouns, when they designate a *number* of single persons or things as *one whole*, as: *army, cavalry, fleet, herd*.

§ 13. *Gender of the Substantive.*

The Gender of Substantives, which is three-fold, as in English, is determined partly by their *meaning* and partly by their *endings*. The rules of gender founded upon the endings will be treated of under the particular declensions. With reference to the meaning the following general rules obtain :

1. Of the *masculine* gender, are the names and designations of males, nations, winds, months, most rivers and mountains.

2. Of the *feminine* gender, are the names and designations of females, of most countries, islands, towns and trees, shrubs and small plants.

Of the *neuter* gender, are the names of the letters of the alphabet, the infinitive, all indeclinable words (excepting, however, the names of persons from foreign languages) and every word used as the mere symbol of a sound, as : *man* is a monosyllable.

4. Of the *common* gender, are the names of persons which have but one form for the masculine and feminine, as : *dux*, a male or female leader.

1. Nations, men, rivers, winds  
These and months are *masculines*.
2. Women, isles, lands, trees and town'  
These as *feminine* are found.
3. Whatever cannot be declined  
This is of the *neuter* kind.
4. *Common* is whatever can  
Include a woman and a man.

§ 14. *Number, Case and Declension.*

1. The substantive and adjective have, like the verb, two numbers, the Sing., which denotes a *unity*, and the Plur., which denotes a *plurality*, and six cases in each number, viz. :

1. Nominative, answering the question *who?* or *what?*
2. Genitive, answering the question, *whose?*

3. Dative, answering the question, *to* or *for whom?* or *what?*

4. Accusative, answering the question, *whom?* or *what?*

5. Vocative, the case of direct address;

6. Ablative, answering the questions, *whence?* *where-with?* *whereby?* *when?* *at what time*, etc.

REMARK. The Nom. and Voc. are called *casus recti*; the other cases, *casus obliqui*. Substantives and adjectives of the *neuter* gender have the Nom. Acc. and Voc. alike.

2. The Latin language has *five* declensions.

### § 15. Gender and Declension of the Adjective.

1. The adjective, in Latin, agrees with its substantive in gender, number and case, as: *filia bona*, *the good daughter*, *filia est bona*, *the daughter is good*, *filius bonus*, *the good son*, *filius est bonus*, *the son is good*, *bellum malum*, *the evil war*, *bellum est malum*, *the war is evil*.

2. Hence, the adjective, like the substantive, has a three-fold gender. Still, not all adjectives have separate forms for the three genders, but many have only two distinct endings. viz. one for the Masc. and Fem. and the other for the Neut., some, indeed, have only one form for all genders.

3. The *declension* of the adjective corresponds with the first three declensions of nouns.

### § 16. First Declension.

Nouns of the first declension ending in *a* are all feminine. The feminine of adjectives of the second declension is declined like nouns in *a*, see § 17.

REM. 1. Exceptions to this rule occur only out of regard to the general rules of gender (§ 13.), thus, e. g. *agricola*, *a husbandman*, is Masc.; so also are most names of rivers of this declension, as: *Matrōna*, *the Marne*, *Trebia*, *Sequāna*, *the Seine*. But the names of mountains, as: *Aetna*, *Ossa*, remain Feminine.



Case-Endings.

Singular	Nominative	ă	Plural	Nominative	ae
	Genitive	ae		Genitive	ărŭm
	Dative	ae		Dative	is
	Accusative	ăm		Accusative	ās
	Vocative	ă		Vocative	ae
	Ablative	ă		Ablative	is

Paradigms.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nominative	<i>mensă, the table</i>	<i>mensae, the tables</i>
Genitive	<i>mensae, of the table</i>	<i>mensărŭm, of the tables</i>
Dative	<i>mensae, to the table</i>	<i>mensīs, to the tables</i>
Accusative	<i>mensăm, the table</i>	<i>mensās, the tables</i>
Vocative	<i>mensă, O table</i>	<i>mensae, O tables</i>
Ablative	<i>mensă, by the table.</i>	<i>mensīs, by the tables.</i>

REM. 2. As the Latin language has neither the definite article *the* nor the indefinite article *a* or *an*, *mensa* may signify either in a general sense *table*, or *a table*, or *the table*.

REM. 3. Some nouns are used only in the plural, as: *nuptiae*, *a wedding*, *nuptiarum*, *of a wedding*.

REM. 4. The dative and ablative plural have the ending *ăbus* (for *is*) in: *dea*, *a goddess*, *filia*, *a daughter*, when they are to be distinguished from corresponding masculine forms, e. g. *filiis et filiăbus*, *to sons and daughters*, *diis et deăbus*, *to gods and goddesses*.

REM. 5. Concerning Greek nouns of the first Dec. see § 35.

V. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

<i>Agricōla</i> , husbandman.	<i>querēla</i> , complaint,	<i>gigno</i> 3. <i>I beget</i> , pro-
<i>aqua</i> , water.	<i>plaintive cry.</i>	<i>duce.</i>
<i>ciconia</i> , a stork.	<i>rana</i> , a frog.	<i>pulchre</i> , adv. <i>beautiful-</i>
<i>copia</i> , abundance, multi-	<i>terra</i> , the earth.	<i>ly.</i>
<i>tude.</i>	<i>coaxo</i> 1. <i>I croak.</i>	<i>quam</i> , how!
<i>herba</i> , an herb.	<i>devoro</i> 1. <i>I devour.</i>	<i>a, ab</i> (with the abl.) <i>by</i>
<i>planta</i> , a plant.	<i>turbo</i> 1. <i>I disturb.</i>	( <i>a</i> stands only before
<i>procella</i> , a storm.	<i>noceo</i> 2. <i>I injure.</i>	<i>vowels</i> ).

RULE OF SYNTAX. Every sentence, e. g. *the plant blooms, the meadow is green*, has two parts:

a) The subject, i. e. the person or thing of which something is asserted (the *plant* ; the *meadow*) ;

b) The predicate, i. e. that which is asserted of the subject (*blooms* ; *is green*).

The subject is commonly a substantive and stands in the nominative ; the predicate is commonly a verb (e. g. *blooms*), or an adjective in connection with the verb *to be* (e. g. *is green*).

Rana coaxat. Agricōla delectātur querēlā ranae. Ciconīa nocet ranae. Ciconīa devōrat ranam. O rana, coaxa! Aqua turbātur a ranā. Plantae florent. Terra vestitur copiā plantarum. Procellae nocent plantis. Terra gignit plantas. O plantae, quam pulchre ornātis terram! Terra vestitur plantis.

The plant blooms. The herb of the plant blooms. The storm injures the plant. I love the plant. O plant how beautifully thou bloomest. I am delighted with (abl.) the plant. The frogs croak. The plaintive cry of the frogs delights the husbandmen. The storks injure the frogs. The storks devour the frogs. O frogs, croak ye. The water is disturbed by the frogs.

### § 17. *Second Declension.*

Words of the second declension (substantives and adjectives) end in the Nom. in *us*, *er*, *ir*, and *um*, of which those in *us*, *er*, and *ir* are of the *masculine* and those in *um* of the *neuter* gender. For the exceptions see § 36.

#### Case-Endings.

Singular	Nom.	ūs (ēr, ĭr), ūm	Plural	Nom.	ī ;	ă
	Gen.	ī		Gen.	ōrŭm	
	Dat.	ō		Dat.	īs	
	Acc.	ŭm		Acc.	ōs ;	ă
	Voc.	ě (ēr, ĭr) ; ūm		Voc.	ī ;	ă
	Abl.	ō		Abl.	īs	

## Paradigms.

## Singular.

N. hortūs, the garden	puēr, the boy	agēr, the field	vīr, the man
G. hortī, of the garden	puēri, of the boy	agrī, of the field	virī, of the man
D. hortō, to the garden	puērō, to the boy	agrō, to the field	virō, to the man
A. hortūm, the garden	puērūm, the boy	agrūm, the field	virūm, the man
V. hortē, O garden	puēr, O boy	agēr, O field	vīr, O man
A. hortō, by the garden	puērō, by the boy	agrō, by the field	virō, by the man.

## Plural.

N. hortī, the gardens	puērī, the boys	agrī, the fields	virī, the men
G. hortōrūm, of the gardens	puērōrūm, of the boys	agrōrūm, of the fields	virōrūm, of the men
D. hortīs, to the gardens	puērīs, to the boys	agrīs, to the fields	virīs, to the men
A. hortōs, the gardens	puērōs, the boys	agrōs, the fields	virōs, the men
V. hortī, O gardens	puērī, O boys	agrī, O fields	virī, O men
A. hortīs, by the gardens	puērīs, by the boys.	agrīs, by the fields	virīs, by the men.

## Singular.

N. bellūm, the war	bonūs, good	bonā, good	bonūm, good
G. bellī, of the war	bonī	bonae	bonī
D. bellō, to the war	bonō	bonae	bonō
A. bellūm, the war	bonūm	bonām	bonūm
V. bellūm, O war	bonē	bonā	bonūm
A. bellō, by the war.	bonō	bonā	bonō

## Plural.

N. bellā, the wars	bonī	bonae	bonā
G. bellōrūm, of the wars	bonōrūm	bonārūm	bonōrūm
D. bellīs, to the wars	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
A. bellā, the wars	bonōs	bonās	bonā
V. bellā, O wars	bonī	bonae	bonā
A. bellīs, by the wars.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs.

## Singular.

N. libēr	libēra	libērūm	beautiful	beautiful	beautiful
G. libērī	libērae	libērī	pulchēr	pulchrā	pulchrūm
D. libērō	libērae	libērō	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
A. libērūm	libērām	libērūm	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
V. libēr	libērā	libērūm	pulchrūm	pulchrām	pulchrūm
A. libērō	libērā	libērō	pulchēr	pulchrā	pulchrūm
			pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

## Plural.

N. libērī	libērae	libērā	beautiful	beautiful	beautiful
G. liberōrūm	liberārūm	liberōrūm	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrā
D. libērīs	libērīs	libērīs	pulchrōrūm	pulchrārūm	pulchrōrūm
A. libērōs	libērās	libērā	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
V. libērī	libērae	libērā	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchrā
A. libērīs	libērīs	libērīs.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrā
			pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs.

In like manner decline :

Vir bonus, *a good man*, femina bona, *a good woman*, exemplum bonum, *a good example*, hortus pulcher, *a beautiful garden*, rosa pulchra, *a beautiful rose*, ovum pulchrum, *a beautiful egg*, ager fecundus, *the productive field*, vir liber, *a free man*, scriba bonus, *a good scribe*.

REM. 1. Most words in *er* reject the *e* in all the oblique cases except in the vocative singular, as: ager, G. agr-i; only the following retain the *e*: puer, G. puēri, socer, *father-in-law*, gener, *son-in-law*, vesper, *evening*, libēri, *children*, and the adjectives: asper, aspēra, aspērum, *rough*, lacer, *torn*, liber, *free*, miser, *miserable*, prosper, *fortunate*, tener, *tender*, and the compounds of *fer* and *ger*, as: frugifer, *fruit bearing*, corniger, *horned*. Dexter, *right*, has both forms: dexter, dextra, dextrum, G. dextri, dextrae; also, though less frequently: dexter, dextēra, dextērū, G. dextēri.

REM. 2. The Voc. Sing. of *filius*, (a son) is *fili* and that of *meus* (my) is *mi*, as: *O mi fili*, (but, *O mea filia*, *O meum officium*). This Voc. in *i* also, is found in proper names in *iūs*, *aiūs* and *eius*, hence: *i* (for *ie*), *ai* (for *aie*), *ei* (for *eie*), as: Tullius *Tulli*, Virgilius *Virgili*. Mercūrius *Mercūri*, Antōnius *Antōnī*, Gaius *Gai*, Pompēius *Pompēi*.

REM. 3. The word *deus* (God) is *deus* also in the Voc.; in the plural it is thus declined: N. *diī*, G. *deorum*, D. *diīs*, Acc. *deos*, V. *diī*, Abl. *diīs*.

REM. 4. The Gen. plural of some nouns has the ending *um* (for *orum*), e. g. nummum (from *nummus*), *of money*, talentum (from *talentum*), *of talents*.

REM. 5. Some Greek words, but rarely except in poetry, have the ending *os* (Acc. *on*) for the *masculine* and *feminine*, and *on* for the *neuter* gender, as: *Ilios*, *Ilion*. Greek words in *eus* (one syllable) are thus declined: N. Orpheus (two syllables), G. Orphēi, D. Orphēo, Acc. Orphēum, Voc. Orphēu (two syllables), Abl. Orphēo.

## VI. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Equus, i, m. horse.	molestus, a, um, trouble-	committo 3. I commit
frumentum, i, n. grain.	some.	to.
granum, i, n. corn.	varius, a, um, various.	curro 3. I run.
juba, ae, f. mane.	vireo 2. I flourish.	hinnio 4. I neigh.
musca, ae, f. fly.	colo 3. I attend to, cul-	celeriter, adv. swiftly.
fecundus, a, um, pro-	tivate, honor, revere.	in (with the abl.), in,
ductive.		upon.

RULE OF SYNTAX. A noun in the Gen., Dat., or Acc., which is connected with the predicate and limits it, is called the *object*; e. g. in the sentence: *the man guides the horse*, "man" is the *subject* and "horse" the *object* which limits "guides." When the noun is in the Acc. it is called the *suffering object* (receiving the direct action).

Equus hinnit. Juba equi est pulchra. Muscae sunt molestae equo.

Vir regit equum. Eque, celeriter curre. Equo pulchro delector. Agri sunt fecundi. Herbae agrorum sunt variae. Agricola committit agris grana frumenti. Agricola colit agros. Agri, quam pulchre virētis! In agris multae herbae florent.

\* The field is productive. The herbs of the field are various. The husbandman commits the corns of grain to the field. The husbandman cultivates the field. O field, how beautifully thou flourishest! Various herbs bloom in the field. The horses neigh. The mane of the horse is beautiful. Flies are troublesome to horses. Men govern horses. O horses, run swiftly. We are delighted with (abl.) beautiful horses.

### VII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Deus, see Rem. 3.	mundus, i, m. world.	magnus, a, um, great.
dea, see § 16. Rem. 4.	praesidium, i, n. protection, aid.	propitius, a, um, propitious, favorable.
filius, see Rem. 2.	templum, i, n. temple.	meus, a, um, see Rem. 2.
levir, i, m. brother-in-law.	benevolentia, ae, f. benevolence.	miser, era, erum, wretched.
socer, i, m. father-in-law.	carus, a, um, dear.	ed.
gener, i, m. son-in-law.	improbus, a, um, wicked.	praebeo 2. I afford.
		extruō 3. I build.

Dii mundum regunt. Deos propitios colite. Praebe, o deus bone, miseris praesidium. Dii improbos puniunt. Diis et deabus templa exstruuntur. Benevolentia deorum est magna. Filius leviri bene legit. Socero est hortus pulcher. Boni viri bonis viris cari sunt. Filia generi pulchre pingit.

The gods are propitious to men. Good men are dear to the gods.

\* With regard to the *arrangement* of the words in forming a Latin sentence, the teacher must be the principal guide. The rigid laws of arrangement in the English language, allowed of but little being done in the way of imitating the Latin arrangement in the English exercises. Something, however, has been attempted in this way, which, together with a desire to preserve a strictly literal and grammatical expression of the thoughts, will account for the apparently awkward construction of many of the sentences. —It may be suggested, also, that a close study of the position of the words in the Latin exercises, will very often guide the student in translating the English exercises. As to particular rules on this subject, it would not be proper, perhaps, to state more than the following, applicable where no emphasis rests upon any word in the sentence. In this case, 1) The predicate *follows* the subject, as in English, 2) the adjective, or noun in the Genitive, comes *after* its noun, 3) the verb *follows* the case or cases which it governs, 4) the adverb *precedes* the word which it limits. But when these words are emphatic, the order in each case is reversed. For fuller directions on this subject, see Krebs' Guide for writing Latin, §§ 468—514.—Tr.

The wicked are punished by (ab) the gods. The world is governed by (ab) the gods. Afford, O good gods, protection to the wretched. The gods honor the temples. The gods love the good. O God, punish the wicked. Write, my sons. Sons-in-law are dear to fathers-in-law. God is propitious to good sons and good daughters. Write, my son, paint, my daughter.

### § 18. *Third Declension.*

1. The third Declension has the following case-endings :

Sing.	Nom.	—	Plur.	Nom.	ēs <i>Neut.</i> ā (iā)
	Gen.	īs		Gen.	ūm (iūm)
	Dat.	ī		Dat.	ībūs
	Acc.	ēm, <i>Neut.</i> like Nom.		Acc.	ēs ā (iā)
	Voc.	like the Nom.		Voc.	ēs ā (iā)
	Abl.	ē (ī)		Abl.	ībūs

REM. 1. In the Nom. the pure stem is often changed. It may always be found, however, by removing from the Gen. *īs*, the ending of that case, as: *rex, king*, G. *reg-īs* the stem therefore is *reg*. Also *t*, *d*, *n* and *nt*, are rejected from the stem in the Nom. before *s*, as: *laus, praise*, G. *laud-īs*, stem: *laud*; *Salamis*, G. *Sālamīn-īs*, *Atlas*, G. *Atlant-īs*. The *r*, of the stem, often passes over into *s*, as: *mos, custom*, G. *mor-īs*. Most masculines and feminines whose stem ends in *n*, have rejected this letter in the Nom. as: *leo, a lion*, G. *leon-īs*. Greek proper names whose stem ends in *ont* reject the *t* in the nominative, as: *Xenophon*, *Xenophont-īs*.

REM. 2. *Neuters*, as a general thing, present the pure stem in the Nom., as: *exemplar, a pattern*, G. *exemplar-īs*. Still, variations from this are introduced into many words out of regard to the laws of euphony in the Latin language, as: *carmen, a poem* (for *carmin*), G. *carmin-īs*, *ebur, ivory* (for *ebor*), G. *ebōr-īs*, *corpus, the body* (instead of *corpor*), G. *corpōr-īs*, *caput, the head* (for *capit*), G. *capīt-īs*. When the stem of a Greek word ends in *at*, the *t* is rejected in the Nom., as: *poëma* (for *poëmat*), *a poem*, G. *poëmat-īs*; so also in the neuters: *cor, cord-īs*, *the heart*, *lac, lact-īs, milk*.

REM. 3. Concerning the endings *e* and *i*, *a* and *ia*, *um* and *iūm*, see § 37.

2. Concerning the *gender*, the following general rules obtain :

1) Of the *masculine* gender are the nouns in *o*, *or*, *os*, *er*, and *imparisyllables*, in *es*.

REM. 4. *Parisyllables* are words with the same number of syllables in the Gen. as in the Nom., as: *nubes, a cloud*, G. *nubis*; *imparisylla-*

bles, on the contrary, are words which have more syllables in the Gen. than in the Nom., as: miles, soldier, G. militis.

2) Of the *feminine* gender are nouns in, *as, is, aus, us* (Gen. *utis* or *udis*), *x, s* with a consonant before it and parissyllables in *es*.

3) Of the *neuter* gender are nouns in *a, e, c, l, en, ar, ur, ut* and *us* (Gen. *ōris, ēris, ūris*).

REM. 4. For the exceptions to these rules see §§ 38—40.

### § 19. I. The Nominative presents the pure stem.

	<i>colour (m.)</i>	<i>goose (m.)</i>	<i>father (m.)</i>	<i>animal (n.)</i>	<i>spur (n.)</i>
S. N.	cōlōr	ansēr	pătēr	animāl	calcār
G.	colōrīs	ansēris	patris	animālīs	calcārīs
D.	colōrī	ansēri	patri	animālī	calcārī
A.	colōrēm	ansērem	patrem	animāl	calcār
V.	colōr	ansēr	pater	animāl	calcār
A.	colōrē	ansēre	patre	animālī	calcārī
P. N.	colōrēs	ansēres	patres	animālīa	calcārīa
G.	colōrūm	ansērum	patrum	animālīum	calcārīum
D.	colōrībūs	ansēribus	patribus	animālībus	calcārībus
A.	colōrēs	ansēres	patres	animālīa	calcārīa
V.	colōrēs	ansēres	patres	animālīa	calcārīa
A.	colōrībūs	ansēribus	patribus	animālībus	calcārībus.

### § 20. II. The Nominative presents the stem changed according to the laws of euphony.

	<i>name (m.)</i>	<i>lion (m.)</i>	<i>body (n.)</i>	<i>sea (n.)</i>
S. Nom. and Voc.	nomēn	leō	corpūs	mare
Genitive	nomīnis	leōnis	corpōris	maris
Dative	nomīni	leōni	corpōri	marī
Accusative	nomēn	leōnem	corpūs	mare
Ablative	nomīne	leōne	corpōre	marī
P. N. Acc. and V.	nomīna	leōnes	corpōra	marīa
Genitive	nomīnum	leōnum	corpōrum	marīum
Dat. and Abl.	nomīnībūs	leōnībūs	corpōrībūs	marībūs.

§ 21. III. *The Nominative adds s to the stem.*

	root (f.)	city (f.)	praise (f.)	cloud (f.)
S. Nom. and Voc.	radix	urbs	laus	nube-s
Genitive	radicis	urbis	laudis	nubi-s
Dative	radici	urbi	laudi	nubi
Accusative	radicem	urbem	laudem	nubēm
Ablative	radice	urbe	laude	nube
P. N. Acc. and V.	radices	urbes	laudes	nube-s
Genitive	radicum	urbium	laudum	nubi-um
Dat. and Abl.	radicibus	urbibus	laudibus	nubi-bus.

REM. 1. Nouns in *ter* and *ber*, as: *pater*, *father*, *mater*, *mother*, *frater*, *brother*, as well as adjectives in *ber* and *cer*, as: *celeber*, *celebrated*, *acer*, *sharp*, reject the *e* in the oblique cases; see *pater* above.

REM. 2. *Greek proper names* whose stem ends in *ōn* or *ōn*, in good prose, form their Nom. almost always in *o*, as: *Agamemno*, G. *ōn-is*; *Plato*. *Solo*, *Bito*, G. *ōn-is*; those, on the contrary, whose stem ends in *ont* form their Nom., in the best writers, in *on*, as: *Xenophon*, G. *ont-is*.

VIII. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Dolor, ōris, <i>m. pain, suffering.</i>	popŭlus, i, <i>m. people.</i>	vester, tra, trum, <i>your.</i>
orātor, ōris, <i>m. orator.</i>	tormentum, i, <i>n. torture.</i>	praedico 1. <i>I extol.</i>
ānĭmus, i, <i>m. soul, mind, courage.</i>	acerbus, a, um, <i>pungent.</i>	tolĕro 1. <i>I endure.</i>
[quence. eloquentia, ae, <i>f. elo-</i>	disertus, a, um, <i>eloquent.</i>	succumbo 3. <i>I sink</i>
facundia, ae, <i>f. fluency of speech.</i>	ignāvus, a, um, <i>indolent, cowardly.</i>	under.
numĕrus, i, <i>m. number, quantity.</i>	praeclārus, a, um, <i>noble.</i>	graviter, adv. <i>heavily,</i>
	tuus, a, um, <i>thy.</i>	violently.
	noster, tra, trum, <i>our.</i>	patienter, <i>patiently.</i>
		ob, <i>on account of.</i>

Orātor est disertus. Eloquentia oratōris movet animos nostros. Oratori paret popŭlus. Oratorem praedicāmus ob facundiam. O orator, quam praeclara est tua eloquentia! Ab oratore populus regitur. Dolores sunt acerbi. Numĕrus dolorum est magnus. Doloribus succumbitis. Vir patienter tolerat dolores. O dolores, quam graviter pungitis! Doloribus vincuntur ignāvi viri.

The pain is pungent. Bear ye the tortures of the pain. Thou sinkest under the suffering. The man endures the pain patiently. O pain, how violently thou stingest. A cowardly man is vanquished by (abl.) pain. Orators are eloquent. The eloquence of the orator moves our minds. The people obey the orators. Orators are extolled on account of their fluency of speech. O orators, how noble is your eloquence! The world is governed by (ab) the orators.



§ 22. *Paradigms of Adjectives of the Third Declension.*

PRELIMINARY REMARK. The following paradigms present the forms of the three classes of adjectives of the third Dec. with *one, two* and *three* endings. *Adjectives* of one ending terminate in *l, r, s, x*, and *participles* (Present Participles only) in *ns, G. ntis*, as: *amans, loving, G. amantis*. For the irregular adjectives of the second Dec.: *unus, ullus*, etc., *duo* and *ambo*, see § 33.

Singular.									
N. and V.	<i>sharp.</i>			<i>delightful.</i>		<i>greater.</i>			
	(m.)	(f.)	(n.)	(m. & f.)	(n.)	(m. & f.)	(n.)		
Gen.	acer	acris	acre	suavis	suave	major	majus		
Dat.	acris	acris	acris	suavis	suavis	majōris	majōris		
Acc.	acri	acri	acri	suavi	suavi	majōri	majōri		
Abl.	acrem	acrem	acre	suavem	suave	majōrem	majus		
	acri	acri	acri	suavi	suavi	majōre	majōre		
Plural.									
N. V. & Ac.	acres	acres	acria	suaves	suavia	majōres	majōra		
Genitive	acrium	acrium	acrium	suavium	suavium	majōrum	majōrum		
D. & Abl.	acribus	acribus	acribus	suavibus	suavibus	majōribus	majōribus		

Singular.					Plural.	
Nom. & Voc.	audax	(m. f. n.)	bold		audāces	(m. f.) audacia (n.)
Genitive	audācis				audacium	audacium
Dat. & Abl.	audāci				audacibus	audacibus
Acc.	audācem	(m. f.),	audax (n.)		audāces	audacia.

In like manner decline :

N.	odor acer, <i>sharp odor</i> ,	aqua acris, <i>sharp water</i> ,	acētum acre, <i>sharp vin-</i>
G.	odōris acris	aquae acris	acēti acris [ <i>egar</i> ,
N.	campus virīdis, <i>green</i>	silva virīdis, <i>green</i>	pratum virīde, <i>green</i>
G.	campi virīdis [ <i>field</i> ,	silvae virīdis [ <i>wood</i> ,	prati virīdis [ <i>meadow</i> ,
N.	vir major, <i>greater man</i> ,	femīna major, <i>greater</i>	corpus majus, <i>greater</i>
G.	viri majōris	femīnae majōris [ <i>women</i>	corpōris majōris [ <i>body</i> ,
N.	miles audax, <i>bold sol-</i>	leaena audax, <i>bold lion-</i>	animal audax, <i>bold an-</i>
G.	militis audācis [ <i>dier</i> ,	leaenae audācis [ <i>ess</i> ,	animalis audācis [ <i>imal</i> .

REMARK. For the Abl. Sing. in *i* and *e*, the Nom. Plur. in *ia* and *a*, and the Gen. Plur. in *ium* and *um*, see § 36.

IX. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Alācer, cris, cre, <i>lively</i> ,	littērae, arum, <i>f. litera-</i>	virtus, ūtis, <i>f. virtue.</i>
spirited.	ture.	vox, ōcis, <i>f. voice.</i>
fortis, e, <i>brave.</i>	discipūlus, i, <i>m. scholar.</i>	consto 1. <i>I consist in, of.</i>
gravis, e, <i>severe, serious.</i>	fundamentum, i, <i>n.</i>	habeo 2. <i>I have.</i>
mortālis, e, <i>mortal.</i>	foundation.	incumbo 3. (with <i>in</i> and
immortālis, e, <i>immortal.</i>	avis, is, <i>f. bird.</i>	the acc.) <i>I apply my-</i>
omnis, e, <i>each, the whole,</i>	homo, īnis, <i>m. man.</i>	self to.
plur. <i>all.</i>	hostis, is, <i>m. enemy.</i>	non, <i>not.</i>
industriā, ae, <i>f. industry.</i>	mos, ōris, <i>m. custom.</i>	ne (with the Imper.)
	piētas, ātis, <i>f. piety.</i>	not.

Miles forti animo pugnare debet. Suavi avium voce delectāmur. Discipūli laus constat bonis moribus et acri industriā. Piētas est fundamentum omnium virtutum. Viri fortes non vincuntur doloribus gravibus. Ne cedite hostibus audacibus. Puer alācri animo in littēras incumbere debet. Homīnes corpōra mortalia habent, animos immortales

### § 23. Fourth Declension.

Nouns of the fourth Dec. have in the Nom. the two endings: *us* and *u*, of these the first is of the *masculine* and the last of the *feminine* gender. For the exceptions, see § 41.

#### Case-Endings.

Sing.	Nom.	ūs; Neut.	ū	Plur.	Nom.	ūs;	Neut.	ūā
	Gen.	ūs; ūs	or ū		Gen.		ūm	
	Dat.	ūi or ū;	ū		Dat.		ībūs	
	Acc.	ūm;	ū		Acc.	ūs;		ūā
	Voc.	ūs;	ū		Voc.	ūs;		ūā
	Abl.	ū			Abl.		ībūs	

#### Paradigms.

	Singular.		Plural.	
N.	fructūs (m.), fruit.	cornū (n.), horn.	fructūs	cornūā
G.	fructūs	cornūs or ū	fructūm	cornūm
D.	fructūi or ū	cornū	fructībūs	cornībūs
A.	fructūm	cornū	fructūs	cornūā
V.	fructūs	cornū	fructūs	cornūā
A.	fructū	cornū	fructībūs	cornībūs.

REM. 1. The following words in the Dat. and Abl. Plur. have the ending *ībūs* for *ībūs*: *acus* (f.), *a needle*, *arcus* (m.), *a bow*, *artus* (m.), *a joint, limb*, *partus* (m.), *a birth*, *lacus* (m.), *a lake, pond*, *quercus* (f.), *the oak*, *specus* (m.), *a den, grotto*, *tribus* (f.), *a tribe, company*, *pēcu* (n.), *cattle*, (as a species), and *vēru* (n.), *a spit*. *Ficus* (f.), *us*, *a figtree*, forms the Dat. and Abl. Plur. according to the second Dec.: *ficis*.

REM. 2. The word *dōmus* (f.) *a house*, is declined as follows:

Sing. N. V.	domūs	Plur. N. V.	domūs
Gen.	domūs	Gen.	domūm and domōrūm
Dat.	domūi	Dat.	domībūs
Acc.	domūm	Acc.	domōs rarely domūs
Abl.	domō	Abl.	domībūs

The form *domi* is used only in the meaning *at home, at the house*; thus: *domi meae, domi tuae, domi aliēnae, at my, thy, another's house*.

X. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Luctus, ūs, <i>m. grief.</i>	amārus, a, um, <i>bitter.</i>	indulgeo 2. <i>I give myself</i>
lusus, ūs, <i>m. sport.</i>	gratus, a, um, <i>agreeable,</i>	<i>up to.</i>
sensus, ūs, <i>m. sense,</i>	grateful.	frango 3. <i>I break, break</i>
<i>feeling.</i>	praeditus, a, um, (with	<i>down.</i>
bestia, ae. <i>f. animal.</i>	Abl.) <i>endowed with.</i>	succumbo 3. <i>I sink un-</i>
vis (only Acc. <i>vim</i> and	quantus, a, um, <i>how</i>	<i>der.</i>
Abl. <i>vi</i> ) <i>power, force,</i>	great.	libenter, <i>adv. with de-</i>
<i>might.</i>	puerilis, e, <i>childish.</i>	<i>lightly.</i>
voluptas, ātis, <i>f. pleas-</i>	sapiens, tis, <i>wise ; subst.</i>	suaviter, <i>adv. pleasantly.</i>
<i>ure.</i>	<i>a wise man.</i>	vehementer, <i>adv. vio-</i>
genus, ěris, <i>n. gender,</i>	evito 1. <i>I avoid.</i>	<i>lently.</i>
<i>kind.</i>	paro 1. <i>I provide.</i>	

Lusus puĕris gratus est. Genĕra lusŭs sunt varĭa. Puĕri libenter indulgent lusui. Vir gravis evitat lusum puerilem. O lusus, quam suavĭter anĭmos puerŏrum delectas ! Puĕri delectantur lusŭ. Sensŭs sunt acres. Vis sensuum est magna. Vir fortis non succumbit sensibus dolŏris. Bestĭae habent sensŭs acres. O sensŭs, quantas voluptātes hominĭbus parātis ! Animalia sunt praedita sensibus.

The feeling of pain is bitter. The power of grief is great. The brave man does not sink under grief. The wise man endures grief patiently. O grief, how violently thou tormentest the minds of men ! The wise man is not broken down by (abl.) grief. The sports of children are agreeable. There are various kinds of sport. The boys give themselves up to sports with delight. The serious man avoids childish sports. O sports, how pleasantly you delight the minds of boys ! In (abl.) sports the boys are delighted.

XI. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Fremĭtus, ūs, <i>m. noise.</i>	tuus, a, um, <i>thy.</i>	resŏno 1. <i>I resound.</i>
genu, ūs or ū, <i>n. knee.</i>	noster, tra, trum, <i>our.</i>	vacillo 1. <i>I waver.</i>
tonĭtru, ūs or ū, <i>n. thun-</i>	vester, tra, trum, <i>your.</i>	permŏveo 2. <i>I move.</i>
<i>der.</i>	validus, a, um, <i>strong.</i>	antecĕdo 3. <i>I precede.</i>
vigor, ōris, <i>m. power.</i>	horribĭlis, e, <i>frightful.</i>	extimesco 3. <i>I fear.</i>
fulmen, ĩnis, <i>n. light-</i>	terribĭlis, e, <i>terrible.</i>	flecto 3. <i>I bend.</i>
<i>ning.</i>	supplex, ĩcis, <i>suppliant ;</i>	procumbo 3. <i>I fall down.</i>
robur, ōris, <i>n. strength.</i>	<i>subst. the suppliant.</i>	in (with Acc. and Abl.)
multus, a, um, <i>much,</i>	indico 1. <i>I indicate.</i>	<i>in, upon.</i>
<i>many.</i>		

Tonĭtru terrĭbile anĭmos hominum permŏvet. Fremĭtus tonitrŭs (tonitru) est horribĭlis. Fulmen antecĕdit tonitru. Multi homĭnes extimescunt tonitru. O tonitru, quam horribĭlis est fremĭtus tuus. Do-

mus resonat tonitru. Genua virorum sunt valida. Vigor genuum indicat robur corporis. Magna vis est genibus. Supplices procumbunt in genua. O genua, ne vacillate! In genibus est magna vis.

The knee of man is strong. Power of the knee indicates strength of body. The knee has great power (= to the knee there is great power). The suppliant bends the knee. O knee, waver not! In the knee is great power. The thunder is terrible. The noise of the thunder is frightful. Lightnings precede the thunders. Fear thou not the thunder. O thunder, how terrible is thy noise. The house resounds with (abl.) frightful thunderings (= thunders).

## XII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Pinus, ūs, <i>f. pine.</i>	perniciōsus, a, um, <i>destructive.</i>	sedeo 2. <i>I sit.</i>
puella, ae, <i>f. girl.</i>	timidus, a, um, <i>timid.</i>	cingo 3. <i>I gird, surround.</i>
sagitta, ae, <i>f. arrow.</i>	insignis, e, <i>remarkable.</i>	contremisco 3. <i>I tremble, quake.</i>
frater, tris, <i>m. brother.</i>	aedifico 1. <i>I build.</i>	pingo 3. <i>I paint; acū</i>
soror, ōris, <i>f. sister.</i>	habito 1. <i>I dwell.</i>	pingo, <i>I embroider.</i>
imber, bris, <i>m. rain.</i>	adjaceo 2. (with Dat.) <i>I lie by.</i>	saepe, <i>adv. often.</i>
piscis, is, <i>m. fish.</i>	contorqueo 2. <i>I hurl, shoot.</i>	sub (with Abl.), <i>under.</i>
rex, regis, <i>m. king.</i>		
venātor, ōris, <i>m. hunter.</i>		
continūus, a, um, <i>continuous.</i>		

Aestate sub quercibus et in specibus libenter sedemus. Hortus regis ornatur multis pinibus, ficis et lacubus. Puellae acubus pingunt. Oratores timidi saepe omnibus artibus contremiscunt. Venatores arcubus sagittas contorquent. Domus altitudo est insignis. Domui nostrae adjacet lacus. Frater aedificat domum. Magnus numerus est domum (domorum) in urbe. Domibus perniciōsi sunt imbres continui. Domos regis cingunt multae pinus.

Oaks and pines surround our house. The king dwells in a beautiful house. We dwell in beautiful houses. The height of the house is remarkable. In the lake are fishes. The king has many and beautiful houses. I tremble in all [my] limbs. A great lake lies by our houses. My sisters embroider. Many houses are built in the city. My brothers sit in the garden under oaks, and my sisters in grottos. Many arrows are shot by bows.

## § 24. Fifth Declension.

All nouns of the fifth declension end in the Nom. in *es* and are of the *feminine* gender.

*Exceptions: Masculine* are, *dies*, a *day*, and *meridies*, *mid-day*; yet *dies* in the Sing. is *feminine* when it signifies a *definite day*, a *day fixed upon or appointed*, as: *dies dicta*, *dies constituta*, a *day appointed*, also, when it signifies *length of time*, as: *dies perexigua*, a *very short space*; still, in both these meanings it is sometimes used as *masculine*.

### Case-Endings and Paradigms.

		<i>affair, thing.</i>		<i>day.</i>	
S. N. <i>ēs</i>	Pl. <i>ēs</i>	S. <i>rēs</i> ,	Pl. <i>rēs</i>	<i>diēs</i> ,	Pl. <i>diēs</i>
G. <i>ēi</i>	<i>ērūm</i>	<i>rēi</i>	<i>rērūm</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diērūm</i>
D. <i>ēi</i>	<i>ēbūs</i>	<i>rēi</i>	<i>rēbūs</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diēbūs</i>
A. <i>ēm</i>	<i>ēs</i>	<i>rēm</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>diēm</i>	<i>diēs</i>
V. <i>ēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>
A. <i>ē</i>	<i>ēbūs</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbūs</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbūs</i>

REM. 1. The *e* in *ei*, the ending of the Gen. and Dat. is *short* when a consonant stands before it, as: *rēi*, *fidēi*; but *long* when a vowel stands before it, as: *diēi*, *faciēi*.

REM. 2. Only *res* and *dies* form all the cases of the Sing. and Plur.; all the other nouns of the fifth declension are destitute of the Gen., Dat. and Abl. Plur., these cases being supplied by the corresponding cases of synonymous nouns of the other declensions.

### XIII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Spes, <i>ēi</i> , <i>f. hope.</i>	adversus, a, um, <i>ad-</i>	dulcis, <i>e</i> , <i>sweet.</i>
aerumna, <i>ae, f. hardship,</i>	verse; res adversae,	felicior, <i>m. and f., feli-</i>
trouble.	adversity.	cious, <i>n., ōris, more</i>
vita, <i>ae, f. life.</i>	certus, a, um, <i>certain.</i>	fortunate.
solatium, <i>i, n. consola-</i>	incertus, a, um, <i>uncer-</i>	afflicto 1. <i>I overwhelm.</i>
tion.	tain.	recreo 1. <i>I refresh.</i>
conditio, <i>ōnis, f. con-</i>	dubius, a, um, <i>doubtful.</i>	amitto 3. <i>I lose.</i>
dition, <i>state.</i>	humānus, a, um, <i>human.</i>	oppōno 3. <i>I oppose.</i>
tempus, <i>ōris, n. time.</i>	vanus, a, um, <i>vain.</i>	facile, <i>adv. easily.</i>

Spes incerta et dubia est. Vis spēi est magna in animis hominum. Homines facile indulgent spēi vanae. Spem feliciōrum temporū non debēmus amittere in aerumnis vitae. O spes, dulci solatio animos miserorum hominum recreās! Spe vanā saepe fallimur. Res humanāe sunt incertae et dubiae. Conditio rerum humanarum est dubia. Rebus adversis opponite virtutem. Ne extimescite res adversas. O res humanāe, quam saepe animos hominum fallitis! Animus sapientis non afflictat̃ur rebus adveris.

## XIV. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Fides, ēi, <i>f. fidelity.</i>	rarus, a, um, <i>rare.</i>	servo 1. <i>I preserve.</i>
amicitiā, ae, <i>f. friendship.</i>	serēnus, a, um, <i>bright.</i>	debeo 2. <i>I owe.</i>
exemplum, i, <i>n. example.</i>	tutus, a, um, <i>safe.</i>	conquiesco 3. <i>I find satisfaction.</i>
salus, ūtis, <i>f. safety, welfare.</i>	verus, a, um, <i>true.</i>	succēdo 3. <i>I follow.</i>
ver, ēris, <i>n. spring.</i>	tristis, e, <i>lowery, sad.</i>	cito, <i>adv. swiftly.</i>
adventus, ūs, <i>m. arrival.</i>	avōlo 1. <i>I fly away, vanish.</i>	cupīde, <i>adv. eagerly.</i>
portus, ūs, <i>m. haven.</i>	convōco 1. <i>I call together.</i>	etiam, <i>conj. also.</i>
incorruptus, a, um, <i>un-corrupted.</i>	er.	modo — modo, <i>now — now.</i>
	exspecto 1. <i>I expect, await.</i>	

The fidelity of friends refreshes our minds in the hardships of life. Examples of true fidelity of friendship are rare. To the fidelity of our friends we owe our safety. The true friend preserves [his] fidelity also in adversity. O fidelity, thou providest for unfortunate men a safe haven! In the fidelity of friends we find satisfaction. The days are now bright, now lowery. The arrival of the bright days of spring are to all men agreeable. Lowery days follow bright days. We eagerly await the bright days of spring. O ye beautiful days of spring, how swiftly you fly away! In (abl.) the bright days of spring we are delighted. Mid-day is bright. On (abl.) a certain day, the soldiers of the city are called together.

## § 25. Comparison of Adjectives and Participles.

1. There are *three degrees* of quality:

- 1) The *positive*, as: the man is *learned* (vir est doctus);
- 2) The *comparative*, as: the father is *more learned* than the son (pater est doctior quam filius);

3) The *superlative*, as: Cicero was the *most learned* of all the Romans (Cicero erat doctissimus omnium Romanorum).

2. The superlative, in Latin, is also used to express in general, a *very high* degree of a quality, as: pater tuus est doctissimus, thy father is *very learned*.

3. For indicating the comparative and superlative, the Latin language has the following forms:

- a) For the *comparative*: *ior*, Masc. and Fem., *ius*, neuter;
- b) For the *superlative*: *issimus*, *issima*, *issimum*.

4. These endings are joined directly to the stem, which may be found, in all cases, by removing, in words of the second Declension, the Nominative-ending *us*, and in those of the third, the Genitive-ending *is*, as :

Laet-us, <i>joyful</i>	Comp. laet-ior, <i>ius</i>	Sup. laet-issimus, <i>a, um</i>
doct-us, <i>learned</i>	— doct-ior	— doct-issimus
pudic-us, <i>bashful, modest</i>	— pudic-ior	— pudic-issimus
imbecill-us, <i>feeble</i>	— imbecill-ior	— imbecill-issimus
lev-is, <i>light</i>	— lev-ior	— lev-issimus
fertil-is, <i>fertile</i>	— fertil-ior	— fertil-issimus
dives (G. divit-is), <i>rich</i>	— divit-ior	— divit-issimus
prudens (G. prudent-is), <i>prudent</i>	— prudent-ior	— prudent-issimus
amans (G. amant-is), <i>loving</i>	— amant-ior	— amant-issimus
felix (G. felic-is), <i>happy</i>	— felic-ior	— felic-issimus

5. Adjectives in *er* have the ending *rimus, a, um* in the superlative, as :

miser (G. misēr-i), <i>a, um</i> ( <i>unhappy</i> )	celer (G. celēr-is), <i>is, e</i> , ( <i>swift</i> )
miser-ior, <i>ius</i>	celer-ior, <i>ius</i>
miser-rimus, <i>a, um</i> ;	celer-rimus, <i>a, um</i> ;
pulcher (G. pulchr-i), <i>a, um</i> ( <i>beautiful</i> )	pauper (G. paupēr-is), ( <i>poor</i> )
pulchr-ior, <i>ius</i>	pauper-ior, <i>ius</i>
pulcher-rimus, <i>a, um</i> .	pauper-rimus, <i>a, um</i> .

So also: *vetus*, G. *vetēr-is*, *old* (Comp. *veterior*, *ius*, *is* rarely used) Sup. *veter-rimus* ; and *nuper-us*, *a, um*, *recent*, (Comp. *wanting*) Sup. *nuper-rimus*.

6. The six following adjectives in *ilis* form the superlative by adding *līmus* to the stem, viz : *facilis*, *easy*, *difficilis*, *difficult*, *similis*, *like*, *dissimilis*, *unlike*, *gracilis*, *slim*, *slender*, and *humilis*, *low*, as :

facil-is, <i>e</i>	C. facil-ior, <i>ius</i>	S. facil-līmus, <i>a, um</i> .
--------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------------

7. Compound adjectives in *dicus fīcus* and *vōlus*, form the comparative by adding *entior, ius*, and the superlative by adding *entissimus, a, um* to the root, as :

maledicus, <i>slandorous</i>	C. maledic-entior	S. maledic-entissimus
magnificus, <i>magnificent</i>	magnific-entior	magnific-entissimus
benevōlus, <i>benevolent</i>	benevol-entior	benevol-entissimus

But those in *dicus* (*i* long) are compared regularly, as: *pudicus, bashful, modest, pudic-ior, pudic-issimus.*

8. Besides, the following adjectives of irregular comparison are to be observed:

bonus, <i>good</i>	C. <i>mel-ior, ius, better</i>	S. <i>optimus, a, um, best</i>
malus, <i>bad</i>	<i>pej-or</i>	<i>peccissimus</i>
magnus, <i>great</i>	<i>maj-or</i>	<i>maximus</i>
parvus, <i>small</i>	<i>min-or</i>	<i>minimus</i>
multus, <i>much</i>	<i>plus (neutr.) more</i>	<i>plurimus, most</i>
	<i>plures (m. and f.), plura</i>	<i>plurimi, most</i>
	( <i>n.</i> ) <i>more</i>	
nequam, <i>wicked</i>	C. <i>nequ-ior,</i>	S. <i>nequissimus</i>
senex, <i>old</i>	<i>sen-ior,</i>	wanting
juvénis, <i>young</i>	<i>jun-ior</i>	wanting
extérus, <i>outward</i>	<i>exter-ior,</i>	<i>extrémus, outermost</i>
inférus, <i>below</i>	<i>infer-ior,</i>	<i>infimus and imus, lowest</i>
supérus, <i>above</i>	<i>super-ior,</i>	<i>suprémus, and summus</i>
postérus, <i>hind</i>	<i>poster-ior,</i>	<i>postrémus, hindermost</i>

9. Finally, there are several adjectives of which the positive is wanting, e. g.:

( <i>citra, on this side</i> )	citer-ior, ius	ciūmus, <i>nearest</i>
( <i>intra, within</i> )	inter-ior, ius	intūmus, <i>inmost</i>
( <i>ultra, beyond</i> )	ulter-ior, ius	ultūmus, <i>last</i>
( <i>prope, near</i> )	prop-ior, ius	proximus, <i>next</i>

REM. 1. Instead of the comparison by terminations, the Latin language often expresses the comparative by the positive with *magis* (more), and the superlative by the positive with *maxime* (most). This periphrastic form is *necessary* in those adjectives which want the terminational comparative and superlative.

REM. 2. Some adjectives have a superlative but not a comparative form, as: *novus, new, novissimus; invictus, invincible, invictissimus.* On the contrary, others have a comparative but not a superlative form, as: *diuturnus, lasting, diuturnior, maxime diuturnus; proclivis, sloping, inclined, proclivior, maxime proclivis; especially, nearly all in ilis, ilis, alis, bilis, as: agilis, nimble, agilior, maxime agilis.*

REM. 3. To the adjectives which have not the terminational comparison, belong: a) those which have a vowel before the ending *us*, as: *idoneus, fit, magis idoneus, maxime idoneus; pius, pious, affectionate; perspicuus, clear; egregius, excellent; necessarius, necessary;—b) nearly all in, icus, imus, inus, ivus, orus, undus, andus, bundus, as: lubricus, slippery; legitimus, lawful, matutinus, early, fugitivus, fugitive, canorus, harmonious, venerandus, worthy of veneration, moribundus, dying;—c) several of no particular class, as: almus, nourishing, canus, hoary, cicur, tame, claudus, lame, compos, powerful, impos, impotent of, curvus, bent,*



ferus, *mild*, gnarus, *acquainted with*, mediocris, *mediocre*, memor, *mindful of*, mirus, *wonderful*, par, *equal*, proeditus, *endowed with*, rudis, *rude*, etc.;—finally, some, which, on account of their signification, admit of no degrees; e. g. those which denote a *material*; those compounded with *per*, *prae* (except *praeclarus*) and *sub*, as: permagnus, *very great*, praedives, *very rich*, subdifficilis, *somewhat difficult*; those having the diminutive form, as: parvulus, *tiny*, vetulus, *oldish*.

XV. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Beneficentia, ae, <i>f. beneficence.</i>	lux, lucis, <i>f. light.</i>	munificus, a, um, <i>munificent.</i>
luna, ae, <i>f. the moon.</i>	ratio, ōnis, <i>f. reason.</i>	secundus, a, um, <i>favorable</i> ; res secundae, <i>prosperity.</i>
natūra, ae, <i>f. nature.</i>	simulatio, ōnis, <i>f. pretence.</i>	amabilis, e, <i>amiable.</i>
sapientia, ae, <i>f. wisdom.</i>	sol, solis, <i>m. sun.</i>	velox, ōcis, <i>swift.</i>
odium, i, <i>n. hatred.</i>	sonitus, ūs, <i>m. sound.</i>	nihil, <i>indeed, nothing.</i>
amor, ōris, <i>m. love.</i>	accommodatus, a, um, <i>suited to.</i>	quam, <i>conj., than.</i>
hirundo, inis, <i>f. swallow.</i>	garrulus, a, um, <i>chattering, loquacious.</i>	
liberalitas, ātis, <i>f. liberality.</i>		

Nihil est naturae hominis accommodatius, quam beneficentia. Nihil est amabilius, quam virtus. Lux est velocior, quam sonitus. Nihil est melius, quam sapientia. Multi magis garruli sunt, quam hirundines. Pauperes saepe sunt munificentiores, quam divites. In adversis rebus saepe sunt homines prudentiores, quam in secundis. Divitissimorum vita saepe est miserrima. Simulatio amoris peior est, quam odium. Nihil est melius, quam ratio. Sol major est, quam terra; luna minor est, quam terra.

XVI. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Patria, ae, <i>f. native country.</i>	adulatio, ōnis, <i>f. flattery.</i>	beneficus, a, um, <i>beneficent.</i>
poeta, ae, <i>m. a poet.</i>	similitudo, inis, <i>f. similarity.</i>	Graecus, a, um, <i>Greek.</i>
simia, ae, <i>f. an ape.</i>	valetudo, inis, <i>f. health.</i>	suus, a, um, <i>his, her, its.</i>
Syracusae, arum, <i>f. Syracuse.</i>	affinitas, ātis, <i>f. relationship.</i>	niger, gra, grum, <i>black.</i>
corvus, i, <i>m. a crow.</i>	virgo, inis, <i>f. a young woman.</i>	celeber, bris, bre, <i>frequented.</i>
malum, i, <i>n. evil.</i>	crus, uris, <i>n. skin, leg.</i>	brevis, e, <i>short.</i>
murus, i, <i>m. a wall.</i>	beatus, a, um, <i>peaceful, happy.</i>	simplex, icis, <i>simple.</i>
Homerus, i, <i>m. Homer.</i>		valeo 2. <i>I am strong, avail.</i>
Lacedaemonius, i, <i>m. a Lacedemonian</i>		contemno 3. <i>I despise.</i>
labor, ōris, <i>m. labor.</i>		

Omnium beatissimus est sapiens. Homerus omnium Graecorum

poëtarum est veterrimus. Adulatio est pessimum malum. Urbs Syracusae maxima et pulcherrima erat omnium Graecarum urbium. Pessimus homines sunt maledicentissimi. In amicitia plus valet similitudo morum, quam affinitas.

Nothing is better than virtue. God is the greatest, best and wisest of all. The customs of the Lacedemonians were very simple. The horse is very swift. Crows are very black. The haven is very much frequented. The father is very benevolent and very beneficent. The king is building a very magnificent palace (=house). Young women should (=must) be very modest. The ape is very much like man. The leg of the stork is very slender. Nothing is sweeter than friendship. The Lacedemonians were very brave. Light is very swift. Nothing is worse than the pretence of love. The sun is very great. The life of man is very short. The richest are often the most wretched. The poorest are often the happiest. The labor is very easy. The customs of men are very unlike. The king is very munificent. The worst men are often very happy. The best men are often despised by (ab) the worst. The health of my friend is very feeble. The garden of thy father is very beautiful. The labor is very hard. The walls of the city are very low. Most men love their native country.

## CHAPTER V.

### Of the Adverb.

#### § 26. *Classification and Formation of Adverbs.*

1. The common endings of adverbs (§ 6, 4.) are *e* and *er* (*iter*); those derived from adjectives of the *second* declension, are formed by annexing *ē* to the root of the adjective, as: *clarus*, *clar-ē*, *liber* (G. *libĕr-i*), *liber-ē*, *pulcher* (G. *pulchr-i*), *pulchr-ē*. Only *benē* (well) from *bonus*, and *malē* (badly), from *malus* have a short *e*.

2. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the *third* declension are formed, by adding *er* to the stem of those in *ans* and *ens*, and *iter* to the stem of all others, as:

*clar-us*, a, um, *clear*, renowned  
*liber*, a, um, (G. *libĕr-i*), *free*

*clar-e*  
*libĕr-e*

pulcher, chra, chrum (G. pulchr-i)	pulchr-e
prudens (G. prudent-is), <i>knowing</i>	prudent-er
amans (G. amant-is), <i>loving</i>	amant-er
fortis (G. fort-is), <i>brave</i>	fort-iter

Audax (G. audāc-is), *bold*, has audac-ter (for audac-iter).

3. Besides adverbs of the above-named endings, there are a number which have the termination of neuter adjectives in either the *accusative* or *ablative* case, as: multum, *much*, plurimum, *most*, solum and tantum, *only*, facile, *easily*, difficile (and difficulter), *with difficulty*, recens, *recently*;—tuto, *safely*, raro, *rarely*, continuo, *immediately*, crebro, *frequently*, falso, *falsely*, subito, *suddenly*, perpetuo, *continually*.

4. There are still other adverbial terminations, as: coelitus, *from heaven*, penitus, *deeply*, *entirely*; sensim, *by degrees*, passim, *everywhere*; catervatim, *by troops*, gregatim, *by flocks*, etc.

### § 27. Comparison of Adverbs.

Adverbs derived from *adjectives* use for the comparative, the neuter singular of the comparative of the adjectives from which they are derived, and in the superlative change *us* of the superlative of their adjectives into *e*, as :

laet-ē, <i>joyfully</i>	Comp. laet-ius	Sup. laet-issime, <i>most joyfully</i>
doct-ē, <i>learnedly</i>	doct-ius	doct-issime
lev-iter, <i>lightly</i>	lev-ius	lev-issime
felic-iter, <i>happily</i>	felic-ius	felic-issime
magnific-ē, <i>magnificently</i>	magnific-entius	magnific-entissime
simil-iter, <i>alike</i>	simil-ius	simil-time
ben-ē, <i>well</i>	mel-ius <i>better</i>	optime, <i>best</i>
mal-ē, <i>badly</i>	pejus	pessime.

## CHAPTER VI.

## Of the Pronoun (Comp. § 6, 5).

§ 28. I. *Personal Pronouns.*

## a. Substantive Personal Pronouns.

Singular.			
Nom.	ěgō, <i>I</i>	tū, <i>thou</i>	wanting
Gen.	mei, <i>of me</i>	tui, <i>of thee</i>	sui, <i>of himself, herself, etc.</i>
Dat.	mihī, <i>to me</i>	tibī, <i>to thee</i>	sibī, <i>to himself, etc.</i>
Acc.	mē, <i>me</i>	tē, <i>thee</i>	sē, <i>himself, etc.</i>
Abl.	mē, <i>by me</i>	tē, <i>by thee</i>	sē, <i>by himself, etc.</i>
Plural.			
Nom.	nōs, <i>we</i>	vōs, <i>you</i>	wanting
Gen.	nostrī, <i>of us</i> nostrum, <i>of, among us</i>	vestri, <i>of you</i> vestrum, <i>of, among you</i>	sui, <i>of themselves</i>
Dat.	nōbīs, <i>to us</i>	vōbīs, <i>to you</i>	sibī, <i>to themselves</i>
Acc.	nōs, <i>us</i>	vōs, <i>you</i>	sē, <i>themselves</i>
Abl.	nōbīs, <i>by us.</i>	vōbīs, <i>by you.</i>	sē, <i>by themselves.</i>

REM. 1. The Voc. of all the pronouns, if used, is like the Nom. The preposition *cum* (with), which governs the Abl., is joined to *me*, *te*, etc., thus: *mecum*, *tecum*, *secum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*, *with me*, *with thee*, *with one's self*, *with us*, *with you*.

REM. 2. In order to give more emphasis to the personal pronouns, the syllable *met* is added to all the forms given in the above table, with the exception of *tu* and the Gen. Plur. of *ego* and *tu*, as: *egōmet*, *temet*, *sibimet*, *nosmet*, *vosmet*;—to *tu* is added *tē*: *tutē*, *thou thyself*—*se* is doubled to render it more emphatic: *sese*. For the difference of meaning between *nostrī*, *vestri* and *nostrum*, *vestrum*, see § 94.

## b. Adjective Personal Pronouns or Possessive Pronouns.

Adjective-personal pronouns are formed from the Gen. of Substantive-personal pronouns. They are called *possessive*, because they represent an object as the *possession* of an individual of the first, second or third person.

From *mei* comes *meus*, *mea*, *meum*, *my*. (For the Voc. *mi* see § 17. Rem. 1.)

— <i>tui</i>	— <i>tuus</i> , <i>tua</i> , <i>tuum</i> , <i>thy</i> .
— <i>sui</i>	— <i>suus</i> , <i>sua</i> , <i>suum</i> , <i>his</i> , <i>her</i> , <i>its</i> .
— <i>nostrī</i>	— <i>noster</i> , <i>nostra</i> , <i>nostrum</i> , <i>our</i> .
— <i>vestri</i>	— <i>vester</i> , <i>vestra</i> , <i>vestrum</i> , <i>your</i> .

REMARK 3. For giving greater force and emphasis, the ending *pte* is joined to the Abl. Sing. of *suus*, as : *suoapte manu*, with *his* (own, very) *hand*, *suoapte gladio* (with *his* sword). For the same reason also, *met* (see Rem. 2) is joined to the oblique cases of *suus*, as : *suismet capitibus*.

XVII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Magister, tri, <i>m. teacher.</i>	aequâlis, <i>e. equal.</i>	labôro 1. <i>I labor.</i>
praeceptum, i, <i>n. pre-</i>	salutâris, <i>e. salutary.</i>	narro 1. <i>I relate.</i>
cept, principle. [er.	canto 1. <i>I sing.</i>	voco 1. <i>I call.</i>
praeceptor, ôris, <i>m. teach-</i>	clamo 1. <i>I cry.</i>	doleo 2. <i>I grieve.</i>
tractatio, ônis, <i>f. hand-</i>	impêro 1. (with Dat.) <i>I</i>	disco 3. <i>I learn.</i>
ling, pursuit.	command, govern.	ludo 3. <i>I play.</i>
veritas, âtis, <i>f. truth.</i>	imperium, i, <i>n. com-</i>	attente, <i>adv. attentively.</i>
gratus, a, um, <i>agreeable.</i>	mand, dominion.	inter, <i>praep. (with Acc.),</i>
irâtus, a, um, <i>offended;</i>		<i>between, among.</i>
angry.		

RULE OF SYNTAX. The personal pronouns in the Nom., *ego*, *tu*, etc., are used only when there is some emphasis to be placed upon them, hence especially in antitheses. The same is true of the possessive pronouns, *meus*, *tuus*, etc., e. g. *meus frater diligens est*, *tuus piger*; but: *frater me amat* (not: *frater meus me amat*).

Ego canto, tu clamas, amicus vocat. Nos narrâmus, vos saltâtis, fratres labôrant. Ego fleo, tu rides, frater dolet. Nos, praeceptôres, docêmus, vos, discipûli, discitis. Ego ludo, tu discis, soror acu pingit. Nos scribîmus, vos legîtis, fratres pingunt. Ego salio, tu feris, puer dormit. Nos, magistri, vos, o discipuli, erudîmus; vos, boni discipuli, attente auditis praecepta nostra. Virtûtes inter se aequâles sunt. Imperâre sibi maximum imperium est. Irâtus non est apud se. Tractatio litterarum nobis salutâris est. Veritas semper mihi grata est.

XVIII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Modus, i, <i>m. measure,</i>	proxîmus, a, um, <i>next.</i>	obrêpo 3. (with <i>dat.</i> ) <i>I</i>
manner.	par, aris, <i>equal.</i>	<i>creap up, steal upon.</i>
vitium, i, <i>n. a fault.</i>	dimîco 1. <i>I fight.</i>	acrîter, <i>adv. spiritedly.</i>
civis, is, <i>m. citizen.</i>	discordo 1. <i>I am at va-</i>	per, <i>praep. (with acc.),</i>
parentes, ium, <i>m. pa-</i>	riance with.	<i>through.</i>
rents.	porto 1. <i>I bear, carry.</i>	propter, <i>praep. (with</i>
caput, îtis, <i>n. head.</i>	faveo 2. <i>I favor.</i>	<i>acc.), on account of.</i>
cantus, ūs, <i>m. song.</i>	splendo 2. <i>I shine.</i>	de, <i>praep. (with abl.), of,</i>
reditus, ūs, <i>m. return.</i>	expêto 3. <i>I strive to ob-</i>	<i>concerning, over, at.</i>
	tain.	

Vitia nobis virtûtum nomîne obrêpunt. Nos favêmus vobis, vos favêtis nobis. Tu me amas, ego te amo. Mihi mea vita, tibi, tua cara est. Virtus splendet per se semper. Cantus nos delectat. Parentes

a nobis diliguntur. O mi fili, semper mihi pare! Frater me et te amat. Egomet mihi sum proximus. Tute tibi impëra. Virtus propter sese colitur. Suapte natūra virtus expetitur. Cives de suis capitibus dimicant. Sapiens omnia sua secum portat. Nos vobiscum de patris reditu gaudemus. Tu tecum pugnas. Oratio tua tecum pugnat. Deus tecum est. Saepe animus secum discordat. Hostes nobiscum acriter pugnant.

I relate, thou dancest, the brother labors. We sing, you write, the friends call. I, the teacher, teach; thou, the scholar, learnest. We weep, you laugh, the brothers grieve. I write, thou readest, the brother paints. We play, you learn, the sisters embroider. I, the teacher, instruct thee, O scholar; thou, O good scholar, hearest attentively my precepts. The enemies fight spiritedly with you. Angry [men] are not *in their right mind* (= by themselves). God is with us. You rejoice with us at the return of [our] father.

I carry all my [secrets] with myself. O my son and my daughter, always obey me! You love us, we love you. Our life is dear to us, yours to you. Bad men are always at variance with themselves. The pursuit of literature is salutary to me. Truth is always agreeable to us. Our parents love thee and me in (abl.) like (= equal) manner. Men love themselves. Virtue is beautiful in (per) itself. I favor thee, thou favorest me. Our native country is dear to us.

### XIX. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Cura, ae, f. <i>care, concern.</i>	industrius, a, um, <i>industrious, diligent.</i>	immemor, oris, <i>unmindful of.</i>
ira, ae, f. <i>anger.</i>	mirus, a, um, <i>wonderful, extraordinary.</i>	potens, ntis, <i>powerful, master of.</i>
desiderium, i. n. <i>longing, desire.</i>	perfidus, a, um, <i>faithless.</i>	impotens, ntis, <i>not powerful, not master of.</i>
conservatrix, icis, f. <i>preserver.</i>	absens, ntis, <i>absent.</i>	teneo 2. <i>I hold, possess.</i>
judex, icis, m. <i>judge.</i>	insipiens, ntis, <i>unwise.</i>	ango 3. <i>I trouble.</i>
benignus, a, um, <i>kind.</i>	memor, oris, <i>mindful of.</i>	

Omnis natūra est conservatrix sui (preserver of herself). Mirum desiderium urbis, meorum et tui me tenet (longing after the city, etc.). Pater vehementer tuā sui memoriā delectatur (by thy remembrance of him). Ira est impotens sui. Sapiens semper potens sui est. Vestri cura me angit (concern for you). Omnes homines sunt benigni iudices sui. Vehementer grata mihi est memoria nostri tua (thy remembrance of us). Amicus mei et tui est memor. Pater absens magno

desiderio tenētur mei, et tui, mi frater, et vestri, o sorōres. Amici sunt nostri memōres. Multi vestrum mihi placent. Plurimi nostrum te valde diligunt.

The absent father has a great concern *for us* (= of us). The unwise [man] is not master of himself. The faithless friend is unmindful of me. Your remembrance of me is very agreeable. Care *about thee* (= of thee) troubles me. The most of you, my scholars, are diligent. The most of us love [our] native country.

## § 29. II. Demonstrative Pronouns.

Singular.		
Nom.	is, eā, id, <i>he, she, it; the same</i>	i-dem, eā-dem, ī-dem, <i>the very same</i>
Gen.	ejus, <i>of him, her, it; of the same</i>	ejus-dem, <i>of the very same</i>
Dat.	ei, <i>to him, her, it; to the same</i>	eī-dem, <i>to the very same</i>
Acc.	eum, eam, id, <i>him, her, it; the same</i>	eun-dem, ean-dem, idem, <i>the very same</i>
Abl.	eō, eā, eō, <i>by him, her, it; by the same.</i>	eō-dem, eā-dem, eō-dem, <i>by the very same.</i>
Plural.		
Nom.	ii, eae, eā, <i>they; the same</i>	ii-dem, eae-dem, eā-dem, <i>the very same</i>
Gen.	eōrum, eārum, eōrum, <i>of them; of the same</i>	eorun-dem, earun-dem, eorun-dem, <i>of the very same</i>
Dat.	iis (seldom eis), <i>to them; to the same</i>	iis-dem (eis-dem), <i>to the very same</i>
Acc.	eos, eas, eā, <i>them; the same</i>	eos-dem, eas-dem, eā-dem, <i>the very same</i>
Abl.	iis (seldom eis), <i>by them; by the same.</i>	iis-dem (eis-dem), <i>by the very same.</i>

REMARK. 1. The pronoun *is, ea, id* may be translated as follows: 1) *the same* (the one just mentioned); 2) Gen. e. g. *filius ejus, his or her son.* Dat., *to him, to her, to it.* Acc. *him, her, it*; Plur. Nom. *they*, Gen. e. g. *filius eorum or earum, their son*, Dat. *to them*, Acc. *them*;—3) in connection with a noun: *this*, e. g. *eum regem, this king*;—4) *he, she, it* (who). In the oblique cases, it is distinguished from *sui* and *suus* in meaning, by not referring back, as they do, to the subject of the sentence.

## Singular.

Nom.	istĕ, istā, istū, <i>this, that</i>	illĕ, illā, illū, <i>that</i>
Gen.	istius, <i>of this, of that</i>	illius, <i>of that</i>
Dat.	istī, <i>to this, to that</i>	illī, <i>to that</i>
Acc.	istum, istam, istud, <i>this, that</i>	illum, illam, illud, <i>that</i>
Abl.	istō, istā, istō, <i>by this, by that.</i>	illō, illā, illō, <i>by that.</i>

## Plural (after the II. Dec.)

N. isti, ae, a; G. istorum, arum, orum; D. and Abl. istis; A. istos, as, a;  
N. illi, ae, a; G. illorum, arum, orum; D. and Abl. illis; A. illos, as, a.

## Singular.

Nom.	hic, haec, hōc, <i>this</i>	ipsĕ, ipsā, ipsum, <i>self</i>
Gen.	hujus, <i>of this</i>	ipsius
Dat.	huic, <i>to this</i>	ipsī
Acc.	hunc, hanc, hōc, <i>this</i>	ipsum, ipsam, ipsum
Abl.	hōc, hāc, hōc, <i>by this.</i>	ipsō, ipsā, ipsō.

## Plural.

N. hi, hae, *haec*; G. horum, harum, horum; D. and Abl. his; A. hos, has, *haec*;  
N. ipsi, ipsae, ipsa; G. ipsorum, arum, orum; D. and Abl. ipsis; A. ipsos, as, a.

REMARK 2. The enclitic *ce* is joined to *hic*, *haec*, *hoc* in order to increase its demonstrative power: *hicce*, *haecce*, *hocce*, *this here*; the following forms occur most frequently: *hujusce*, *hosce*, *hisce*. From these forms connected with the interrogative particle *ne* we have: *hicĕne*, *haecĕne*, *hocĕne*, *this?* but in general only after a foregoing *c*. Also from the connection of this *ce* with *iste* and *ille* we have the following forms: Sing. N. *istic*, *istaec*, *istūc*; *illic*, *illaec*, *illūc*; Acc. *istunc*, *istanc*, *istūc*; *illunc*, *illanc*, *illūc*; Abl. *istōc*, *istāc*, *istōc*; *illōc*, *illāc*, *illōc*; Pl. N. and Acc. Neut. *istaec*, *illaec*.

The student may decline:

*idem equus*, *the very same horse*, *eādem rana*, *the very same frog*, *idem vitium*, *the very same fault*, G. *ejusdem equi*, *ejusdem ranae*, *ejusdem vitii*;

*iste vir*, *this man*, *ista femina*, *this woman*, *istud nomen*, *this name*, *istius viri*, *istius feminae*, *istius nominis*;

*hic puer*, *this boy*, *haec puella*, *this girl*, *hoc praeceptum*, *this precept*, *hujus pueri*, *hujus puellae*, *hujus praecepti*;

*ille sensus*, *that feeling*, *illa res*, *that thing*, *illud cornu*, *that horn*, *illius sensus*, *illius rei*, *illius cornus* (ū).

REM. 3. *Hic*, *haec*, *hoc*, refers to an object in the presence of the one speaking, which pertains to the one speaking or which he calls attention to; *iste*, *ista*, *istud* refers to an object in the presence of the one addressed or which pertains to the one addressed; *ille*, *illa*, *illud* refers to an object which lies remote from the speaker and forms a contrast with *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*.



## XX. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Diligentia, ae, <i>f. diligence, exactness.</i>	dux, ucis, <i>m. leader, general.</i>	mendax, âcis, <i>lying, liar.</i>
ignavia, ae, <i>f. indolence.</i>	Xenophon, ontis, <i>m. Xenophon.</i>	hebĕto 1. <i>I blunt, enfeeble.</i>
littĕrae, arum, <i>f. a letter.</i>	carmen, ĩnis, <i>n. poem.</i>	firmo 1. <i>I make firm, strengthen.</i>
memoria, ae, <i>f. memory.</i>	addictus, a, um, <i>devoted to.</i>	vito 1. <i>I avoid.</i>
schola, ae, <i>f. a school.</i>	fidus, a, um, <i>faithful.</i>	placeo 2. <i>I please.</i>
sententia, ae, <i>f. opinion, view.</i>	saevus, a, um, <i>fierce, cruel.</i>	displĕceo 2. <i>I displease.</i>
scriptor, ōris, <i>m. writer.</i>	elĕgans, ntis, <i>elegant.</i>	faveo 2. <i>I am favorable to.</i>
auctoritas, âtis, <i>f. authority.</i>	iners, ertis, <i>awkward, inactive.</i>	credo 3. <i>I believe, trust.</i>
tarditas, âtis, <i>f. slowness, indolence.</i>		

Xenophon est elegantissimus scriptor; ejus libros libenter lego. Amicum fidum habeo; ei addictissimus sum. Fratris carmen valde mihi placet; lege id. Ignavia corpus hebĕtat, labor firmat; illam vita, hunc expĕte. Hae littĕrae gravĭter me movent. Haec carmĭna suavisima sunt. Isti homini mendāci ne crede. Huic duci milĭtes libenter parent. Illi viro omnes favent. Praeclĕrum est istud tuum praeceptum. Haec sententia mihi placet, illa displicet. Hoc bellum est saevissimum. Hic puer industrius est, ille iners. Memoriā teneo praeclĕrum illud praeceptum. Iste tuus amicus est vir optimus. Ista vestra auctoritas est maxĭma. Hujus discipuli diligentiam laudo, illius tarditatem vitupĕro; illi schola est gratissima, huic molestissima.

## XXI. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Fortūna, ae, <i>f. fortune.</i>	clarus, a, um, <i>clear, renowned.</i>	tracto 1. <i>I pursue.</i>
Alexander, dri, <i>m. Alexander.</i>	Delphĭcus, a, um, <i>Delphic.</i>	obsideo 2. <i>I besiege.</i>
Pompĕius, i, <i>m. Pompey.</i>	inimicus, a, um, <i>hostile; subst. enemy.</i>	studeo 2. <i>I strive.</i>
factum, i, <i>n. deed.</i>	seditiōsus, a, um, <i>seditions.</i>	fido 3. <i>I trust.</i>
merĭtum, i, <i>n. desert.</i>	admirabilis, e, <i>wonderful.</i>	diffido. <i>I distrust.</i>
oracŭlum, i, <i>n. oracle.</i>	laudabilis, e, <i>praiseworthy.</i>	nosco 3. <i>I am acquainted with, know.</i>
Caesar, âris, <i>m. Caesar.</i>	expugno 1. <i>I capture.</i>	agnosco 3. <i>I understand.</i>
imperĕtor, ōris, <i>m. general.</i>		resisto 3. <i>I resist.</i>
virtus, ūtis, <i>f. bravery.</i>		sentio 4. <i>I feel, think, judge.</i> [for.
opus, ĕris, <i>n. work.</i>		pro, <i>praep.</i> (with abl.)
		quia, <i>conj.</i> because.

Multi homines de iisdem rebus eōdem die non eādē sentiunt. Insiapiens eidem sententiae modo fidit, modo diffidit. Ipsi imperĕtori seditiōsi milites resistunt. Animus ipse se movet. Virtus est per se ipsa

laudabilis. Saepe nihil est homini inimicius, quam sibi ipse. Omne animal se ipsum diligit. Carior nobis esse debet patria, quam nosmet ipsi. Praeclarum est illud praeceptum oraculi Delphici: Nosce te ipsum. Mendax saepe sibi ipsi diffidit.

Xenophon is a very elegant writer, I read him with very great delight (libentissime). The brother and his friend are very dear to me. The teacher praises and censures the scholars according to (*pro* with *abl.*) their desert. We perceive God from his works. We honor [our] parents, because their deserts to (*de* with *abl.*) us are very great. The enemies besiege the city and strive to capture it.

This book I read with delight. This poem pleases me, that displeases. I praise the industry of this scholar. The deeds of that great Alexander are extolled by (*ab*) all writers. Caesar and Pompey were very renowned generals; to that, fortune was more favorable than to this; the bravery of this and that [one] was wonderful.

The king himself is leader of the army. Thou dost not always judge the very same concerning the very same thing. The father and the son pursue the very same literary studies (= literature). The virtues are of (*per*) themselves praiseworthy. Man loves himself. [Thy] native country ought to be dearer to thee than thou thyself. Understand yourselves. Liars often distrust themselves.

### § 30. III. *Relative Pronouns.* IV. *Interrogative Pronouns.*

Singular.		
Nom.	quī, quae, quōd, <i>who, which</i>	quis ( <i>m. &amp; f.</i> ), quid, <i>who? what?</i>
Gen.	cujus, <i>whose, of whom, of which</i>	cujus, <i>whose? of whom? of what?</i>
Dat.	cui, <i>to whom, to which</i>	cui, <i>to whom? to what?</i>
Acc.	quem, quam, quod, <i>whom, which</i>	quem, quam, quid, <i>whom? what?</i>
Abl.	quō, quā, quō, <i>by whom, by which</i>	quō, quā, quō, <i>by whom, by what?</i>
Plural.		
Nom.	qui, quae, quae, <i>who, which</i>	qui, quae, quae, <i>who? what?</i>
Gen.	quorum, quarum, quorum, <i>whose, of whom, of which</i>	quorum, quarum, quorum, <i>whose? of whom? of what?</i>
Dat.	quibus, <i>to whom, to which</i>	quibus, <i>to whom? to what?</i>
Acc.	quos, quas, quae, <i>whom, which</i>	quos, quas, quae, <i>whom? what?</i>
Abl.	quibus, <i>by whom, by which</i>	quibus, <i>by whom? by what?</i>

REM. 1. The preposition *cum* is joined to the Abl., as: *quocum*, for which *quicum* is often used.

REM. 2. In *quisquis* (*quaequae* rare), *quicquid* (whoever, whatever) both pronouns are declined, as: *quoquo*, *quibusquibus*, e. g. *quoquo modo*

res se habet, in whatever way the thing has itself; quicquid id est, whatever it is; On the contrary, in quicunque, quaecunque, quodcunque (whichever, whatsoever) cunque is barely annexed to the different cases of qui, quae, quod, as: G. cujuscunque, etc.

REM. 3. Quis, quid, are used substantively, as: quis scribit? quid scribitur? So also in the Acc., as: quid agis? The remaining forms do not differ from qui, quae, quod used interrogatively; but qui, quae, quod in this case, is always an adjective, e. g. quem vides? whom do you see? quem hominem vides? what man do you see? For the purpose of strengthening the interrogation, nam is annexed to the above mentioned interrogative pronouns, as: quisnam clamat? who cries out then? quidnam agis? what do you do then? quinam homo clamat? quanam mulier venit? quodnam genus est? and so through all the cases.

## XXII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Civitas, âtis, <i>f. state.</i>	probus, a, um, <i>upright.</i>	honôro 1. <i>I honor.</i>
lex, egis, <i>f. law.</i>	sanctus, a, um, <i>sacred.</i>	gero 3. <i>I carry on.</i>
mors, rtis, <i>f. death.</i>	mitis, e, <i>mild.</i>	succurro 3. <i>I assist.</i>
immatûrus, a, um, <i>untimely.</i>	curo 1. (with acc.) <i>I care for, look out for.</i>	exaudio 4. <i>I listen to.</i>
justus, a, um, <i>just.</i>	devasto 1. <i>I lay waste.</i>	ardenter, <i>adv. ardently, eagerly.</i>
maleficus, a, um, <i>evil; subst. evil-doer.</i>	guberno 1. <i>I govern, rule.</i>	

Rex, qui civitatem gubernat, civium salûtem curare debet. Regi, cuius imperium mite et justum est, omnes cives libenter parent. Regem, cui leges sunt sanctae, cives colunt. Felix est rex, quem omnes cives amant. O rex, qui civitatem nostram gubernas, honôra bonos cives, terre maleficos, succurre misëris, exaudi probos! Acerba et immatûra est mors eorum, qui immortâle opus parant. Non semper est illud bonum, quod ardenter expetimus. Beati sunt ii, quorum vita virtûtis praeceptis regitur. Hostis, quocum bellum geritur, terram nostram devastat.

The kings who govern the states, ought to look out for (acc.) the welfare of the citizens. The kings, whose government is mild and just, all citizens obey with delight. The kings, to whom the laws are sacred, are obeyed by all the citizens. The kings are fortunate, who are loved by all the citizens. O kings, who govern our states, honor the good citizens, frighten the evil, assist the wretched, listen to the upright! The enemies, with whom you carry on war, lay waste our land.

## XXIII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Luscinia, ae, <i>f. nightingale.</i>	peccâtum, i, <i>n. sin, fault.</i>	honestus, a, um, <i>virtuous.</i>
	opinio, ônis, <i>f. opinion.</i>	

falsus, a, um, *false*. cogito 1. *I think of*. indulgeo 2. *I am indul-*  
 ingratus, a, um, *disa-* excrucio 1. *I torment.* gent to.  
*greeable, ungrateful.* repugno 1. *I am repug-* ago 3. *I drive, do, treat.*  
 utilis, e, *useful.* nant to. dico 3. *I say, tell.*  
 ambulo 1. *I go to walk,* habeo 2. *I have; me* quaero 3. *I seek.*  
*take a walk.* habeo, *I have myself.* cur, *why.*

Quis me vocat? Quid agis, mi amice? Quis scribit has littëras?  
 Quid cogitas? Quid ago? cur me excrucio? Quae amicitia est inter  
 ingratos? Quod carmen legis? Quis homo venit? Quis poëta dul-  
 cior est, quam Homërus? Cujus vox suavior est, quam vox luscinae?  
 Quibus peccâtis facillime indulgëmus?

Quicquid est honestum, idem est utile. Quicquid vides, currit cum  
 tempore. Quoquo modo res sese habet, ego sententiam meam defen-  
 do. Quaecunque opinio veritâti repugnat, falsa est.

What sayest thou? Who is that man? Who is that woman?  
 With whom does thy friend go to walk? Whom seekest thou? What  
 book readest thou? To whom dost thou write this letter? In what-  
 ever manner the thing has itself, we praise thy view.

### § 31. V. Indefinite Pronouns.

1) quis, qua, quid, *any one, any thing* (substantively),  
 Acc. quem, quam, quid. Nom. Pl. qui, quae, qua; the re-  
 maining cases are the same as those of the relative *qui*,  
*quae, quod*;—qui, quae, quod, *any one, any thing*, (adjective-  
 ly), is declined like the relative *qui, quae, quod*;

2) aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, *some one, something*, (substan-  
 tively). Acc. aliquem, aliquam, aliquid, Nom. Pl. aliqui,  
 ae, a;—aliqui, aliqua (*aliquae* very seldom), aliquod, (used  
*adjectively*). Pl. aliqui, ae, a;

3) quispiam, quaequam, quidpiam, *any one, some one,*  
*any thing, some thing* (i. e. any one, etc., *indifferently* from  
 a larger number), used *substantively*;—quispiam, quaequam,  
 quodpiam, (used *adjectively*), G. cujuspian, etc.;

4) quisquam, quicquam, (scarcely, hardly,) *one, any one,*  
*any thing*, used *substantively*; quisquam, (*quaequam* rare),  
 quodquam, used *adjectively*, G. cujusquam, etc.; this pro-  
 noun is used principally in *negative* sentences;

5) ecquis, ecqua, ecquod, *whether any one? any thing?*

used *substantively*; *ecqui, ecquae, ecquod*, used *adjectively*, *G. eccujus*, etc.;

6) *quidam, quaedam, quiddam*, a *certain one, a certain thing*, used *substantively*; *quidam, quaedam, quodam*, used *adjectively*, *G. cujusdam*, etc.;

7) *quisque, quaeque, quidque*, (as *subst.*), and *quodque*, (as *adj.*) *each one, each*, *G. cujusque*, etc.; *unusquisque, unaquaeque, unumquidque* (as *subst.*), and *unumquodque*, (as *adj.*), *each one* (to a man), *G. uniuscujusque*, etc.; *quisvis, quaevis, quidvis* (as *subst.*), and *quodvis* (as *adj.*), *any one, any thing you choose*, without exception, *G. cujusvis*, etc.; *quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet* (as *subst.*), and *quodlibet* (as *adj.*), *any one, any thing you please*, indifferently, *G. cujuslibet*, etc.;

8) *alius, alter, ullus, nullus, neuter*, see in § 33, Rem. 5.

#### XXIV. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Graecia, ae, <i>f. Greece.</i>	dignitas, âtis, <i>f. dignity.</i>	impendo 2. <i>I threaten.</i>
pecunia, ae, <i>f. money.</i>	mens, tis, <i>f. understand-</i>	inhaereo 2. <i>I inhere.</i>
locus, i, <i>m. a place, sit-</i>	ing, <i>intellect.</i>	adimo 3. <i>I take away.</i>
uation.	jus, ūris, <i>n. what is just.</i>	tribuo 3. <i>I give.</i>
augurium, i, <i>n. presage.</i>	justitia, ae, <i>f. justice.</i>	idcirco, <i>adv. on this ac-</i>
saeculum, i, <i>n. hundred</i>	futurus, a, um, <i>future.</i>	count.
years, an age.	insitus, a, um, <i>inborn.</i>	quasi, <i>adv. as if.</i>
terror, ōris, <i>m. terror.</i>		

Si mortem timēmus, semper aliqui terror nobis impendet. Si cui-  
piam pecuniam fortūna adīmit, idcirco miser non est. Graecia parvum  
quendam locum Eurōpae tenet. Inhaeret in mentibus nostris quasi  
quoddam augurium futurōrum saeculōrum. In unoquoque virorum bo-  
norum habitat deus. Justitia jus unicuique tribuit pro dignitate cujus-  
que. Cuique nostrum amor vitae est insitus.

#### § 32. Correlative Pronouns.

Under *correlative* pronouns are embraced all those pro-  
nouns which express a *reciprocal relation* (*correlation*) to  
each other and exhibit this relation by corresponding forms.  
Thus e. g.

Interrogative.	Demonstrat.	Indefinite.	Relative.	Indef. Relative.
qualis, <i>of what kind?</i>	talis, <i>of such a kind, such</i>		qualis, <i>of what kind, as</i>	qualiscunque, <i>of whatever kind</i>
quantus, <i>how great?</i>	tantus, <i>so great</i>	aliquantus, <i>somewhat great</i>	quantus, <i>as great</i>	quantuscunque, <i>however great</i>
quot, * <i>how many?</i>	tot, * <i>so many</i> totidem, * <i>just so many</i>	aliquot, * <i>some</i>	quot, * <i>as many</i>	quotunque*, <i>or</i> quotquot, * <i>however many.</i>

### XXV. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Bonum, i, n. <i>the good.</i>	respublica, reipublicae, <i>the state.</i>	principes, ipis, m. <i>first, prince.</i>
Aristides, is. m. <i>Aristides.</i>	permultus, a, um, <i>very much, many.</i>	pecco 1. <i>I sin, commit a</i>
grex, egis, m. <i>a herd.</i>	fragilis, e, <i>perishable.</i>	soleo 2. <i>I am accustomed.</i>
imitator, oris, m. <i>imitator.</i>		existo 3. <i>I exist, am.</i>
		quod, conj. <i>because, that.</i>

Quot sunt homines, tot sunt sententiae. Non tantum malum est hoc, quod peccant principes, quantum illud, quod permulti imitatores principum existunt. Quot genera orationum sunt, totidem oratorum genera reperiuntur. Quales sunt duces, tales sunt milites. Qualis est rex, talis est grex. Quales in republica sunt principes, tales solent esse cives. Ne contemne homines miseros, qualescunque sunt. Corporis et fortunae bona, quantacunque sunt, incerta ac fragilia sunt. Quotquot homines sunt, omnes vitam amant. Quotcunque sunt scriptores, omnes Aristidis justitiam praedicant.

## CHAPTER VII.

### Of the Numeral.

#### § 33. Classification and Tabular View of the Numerals.

Numerals (§ 6, 6) according to their meaning, may be divided into the following classes :

- a) *Cardinals*, which answer the question, *how many?*  
quot? as: *one, two*, etc.

\* All these words are *indeclinable* and are used only in the *plural*, as : quot homines sunt? tot hominum numerus; aliquot hominibus; tot homines, quot video, *so many men as I see*; homines, quotcunque or quotquot video, omnes boni sunt.

REM. 1. The first three cardinal numbers are declined (Remarks 5 and 6, pp. 56, 57); but from 4 to 100 they are indeclinable, while from 200 to 900 they are declined like the plural of adjectives of three endings in *i*, *ae*, *a*. For *mille* see Rem. 4. p. 56.

- b) *Ordinals*, which answer the question, *which in order? which in a series?* *quotus?* as: *first, second*, etc. They are all declined like adjectives of three endings in *us*, *a*, *um*.
- c) *Distributives*, which answer the question, *how many at a time? how many a-piece?* *quotēni?* as: *one by one, two by two*, etc.
- d) *Numeral adverbs*, which answer the question, *how many times?* *quoties?* as: *once, twice*, etc.

REM. 2. The numeral adverbs derived from the *ordinals*; viz.: *primum* (rarely *primo*), *secundo* (for which *it̃erum* is generally used; *secundum* is very rare), *tertium*, *quartum*, etc., answer the question, *what place in order?* as: *in the first place, second place*, etc.

- e) *Multiplicatives*, which answer the question, *how many fold?* *quotūplex*. They end in *plex* and are declined after the third Dec. as: *duplex* (for all genders), *two fold, double*, G. *dupl̃cis*.
- f) *Proportionals*, which answer the question, *how many times as great?* *quotūplus?* They end in *plus*, *pl̃a*, *plum*, as: *duplus*, *a*, *um*, *twice as great*, (as something else taken as a unit of measure).

All these classes of numerals, except the last two, which are merely numeral adjectives and but little used in comparison with the others, are exhibited in parallel columns in the following table.

## TABLE OF

	<i>Cardinal (how many ?)</i>	<i>Ordinal (what one in order ?)</i>
1.	unus, a, um, <i>one</i>	primus, a, um, <i>first</i>
2.	duo, ae, o, <i>two</i>	secundus, <i>second</i>
3.	tres, ia, <i>three</i>	tertius, <i>third</i>
4.	quattuor, <i>four</i>	quartus, <i>fourth</i>
5.	quinque, <i>five</i>	quintus, <i>fifth</i>
6.	sex, <i>six</i>	sextus, <i>sixth</i>
7.	septem, <i>seven</i>	septimus, <i>seventh</i>
8.	octo, <i>eight</i>	octavus, <i>eighth</i>
9.	novem, <i>nine</i>	nonus, <i>ninth</i>
10.	decem, <i>ten</i>	decimus, <i>tenth</i>
11.	undécim, <i>eleven</i>	undécimus, <i>eleventh</i>
12.	duodécim, <i>twelve</i>	duodécimus, <i>twelfth</i>
13.	tredécim, <i>thirteen</i>	tertius (a, um) decimus (a, um)
14.	quattuordécim, <i>fourteen</i>	quartus decimus, <i>fourteenth</i>
15.	quindécim, <i>fifteen</i>	quintus decimus, <i>fifteenth</i>
16.	sedécim, <i>sixteen</i>	sextus decimus, <i>sixteenth</i>
17.	septendécim, <i>seventeen</i>	septimus decimus, <i>seventeenth</i>
18.	duodeviginti, <i>eighteen</i>	duodevicesimus, <i>eighteenth</i>
19.	undeviginti, <i>nineteen</i>	undevicesimus, <i>nineteenth</i>
20.	viginti, <i>twenty</i>	vicesimus, <i>twentieth</i>
21.	unus (a, um) et viginti or v. un.	unus (a, um) et vicesimus (a, um)
22.	duo (ae, o) et viginti or v. d.	alter (a, um) et vicesimus (a, um) <sup>1</sup>
28.	duodetriginta	duodetricesimus
29.	undetriginta	undetricesimus
30.	triginta	tricesimus
40.	quadragesima	quadragesimus
50.	quingentasima	quingentesimus
60.	sexaginta	sexagesimus
70.	septuaginta	septuagesimus
80.	octoginta	octogesimus
90.	nonaginta	nonagesimus
99.	undecentum.	undecentesimus
100.	centum	centesimus
101.	centum et unus (a, um) or c. un.	c. (a, um) et primus (a, um) or c. pr.
102.	centum et duo (ae, o) or c. d.	c. (a, um) et alter (a, um) or c. alt.
200.	ducenti, ae, a	ducentesimus
300.	trecenti	trecentesimus
400.	quadringsenti	quadringsentesimus
500.	quingenti	quingentesimus
600.	sexcenti	sexcentesimus
700.	septingenti	septingentesimus
800.	octingenti	octingentesimus
900.	nongenti	nongentesimus
1000.	mille	millesimus
2000.	duo milia ; 3000 tria milia, etc.	bis millesimus ; 3000 ter m. etc.
100,000.	centum milia	centies millesimus
1,000 000.	decies centum milia	decies centies millesimus
2,000 000.	vicies centum milia.	vicies centies millesimus.

<sup>1</sup> Or vicesimus (a, um) et alter (a, um).



## NUMERALS.

<i>Distribu.</i> (how many at a time ?)	<i>Adverbial</i> (how many times ?)	
singŭli, ae, a, <sup>2</sup> <i>one at a time</i> bini, ae, a, <i>two at a time</i> terni, <i>three at a time</i> quaterni, <i>four at a time</i> quini, <i>five at a time</i> seni, <i>six at a time</i> septēni, <i>seven at a time</i> octōni, <i>eight at a time</i> novēni, <i>nine at a time</i>	semel, <i>once</i> bis, <i>twice</i> ter, <i>thrice</i> quater, <i>four times</i> quinquies, <i>five times</i> sexies, <i>six times</i> septies, <i>seven times</i> octies, <i>eight times</i> novies, <i>nine times</i>	I. II. III. IV. V. VI. VII. VIII. IX.
deni, <i>ten at a time</i> undēni, <i>eleven at a time</i> duodēni, <i>twelve at a time</i> terni deni, <i>thirteen at a time</i> quaterni deni, <i>fourteen at a time</i> quini deni, <i>fifteen at a time</i> seni deni, <i>sixteen at a time</i> septēni, deni, <i>seventeen at a time</i> duodevicēni, <i>eighteen at a time</i> undevicēni, <i>nineteen at a time</i>	decies, <i>ten times</i> undecies, <i>eleven times</i> duodecies, <i>twelve times</i> terdecies or tredecies quatterdecies quindecies sedecies septiesdecies duodevicies undevicies	X. XI. XII. XIII. XIV. XV. XVI. XVII. XVIII. XIX.
vicēni, <i>twenty at a time</i> viceni (ae, a) singŭli (ae, a) viceni (ae, a) bini (ae, a) duodetricēni undetricēni tricēni quadragēni quingageni sexageni septuageni octogeni nonageni undecentēni	vicies, <i>twenty times</i> vicies semel or semel et vicies vicies bis duodetricies undetricies tricies quadrages quingagies sexagies septuagies octogies nonagies undecenties	XX. XXI. XXII. XXVIII. XXIX. XXX. XL. L. LX. LXX. LXXX. XC. IC.
centēni centeni (ae, a) singŭli (ae, a) centeni (ae, a) bini (ae, a) ducēni triceni quadringēni quingeni sexcenti septingēni octingeni nongeni	centies centies semel centies bis ducenties trecenties quadringenties quingenties sexcenties septingenties octingenties nongenties	C. CI. CII. CC. CCC. CD. D. DC. DCC. DCCC. DCCCC.
singŭla milia bina milia; 3000 terna m., etc. centēna milia decies centena milia vicies centena milia	millies bis millies; 3000 ter m., etc. centies millies decies centies millies vicies centies millies.	M. or cIo. IIM; IIIM. ccclooo. ccccloooo.

<sup>2</sup>) *Singulus*, a, *um* is not used in the Singular.

*Remarks.*

1. The compound numbers into which 8 and 9 enter as one of the components, are expressed in a *subtractive form*, as: 38, duodequadraginta, duodequadragesimus, 39 undequadraginta, undequadragesimus, 48 duodequinguaquaginta, duodequinguaquagesimus, 59 undesexaginta, undesexagesimus, etc.

2. In the other compound numbers from 13 to 17, the smaller number is placed first without *et*, as: Sedecim; but from 20 to 100, either the smaller number is placed first with *et* following it, or the larger without *et*, as:

23 tres et viginti                      or viginti tres  
tertius et vicesimus   or vicesimus tertius.

3. In compounding smaller numbers with hundreds and thousands, the smaller number follows either with or without *et*, as:

103 centum et tres                      or centum tres,  
centesimus et tertius   or centesimus tertius.

If, however, such a number contains a *unit* and a *ten*, the unit is placed last without *et*, as:

486 quadringenti et octoginta sex                      or quadringenti octoginta sex,  
quadringentesimus et octogesimus  
sextus    or quadringentesimus octo-  
gesimus sextus.

4. Mille, a thousand (i. e. one thousand) is *indeclinable*, as: dux cum mille militibus; but the Plur. milia (always of more than one thousand), is a neuter noun of the third Dec. and is followed by a noun in the Gen. case, as: tria milia hominum, cum tribus milibus militum.

5. The nine following numeral adjectives in *us*, *a*, *um*, and *er*, *a*, *um* form their Gen. Sing. in all three genders in *ius*\* and their Dat. Sing. in *i*:

unus, ullus, nullus,  
solus, totus, alius,  
üter, alter, neuter,

and the compounds of *üter*, as: *üterque*, *alterüter*;

E. g. solus, a, um, G. solius, D. soli.—Alius has *aliud* in the neuter and in the Gen. alius (for *alius*), in Dat. *ali*. In the compounds: *üterque*, *utervis*, *utercunque*, *uterlibet*, *üter* is declined and *que*, *cunque*, etc. are joined to the different cases, as: *utriusque*, *utrivis*, *utrumcunque* *utralibet*. In *alterüter* (one of the two), commonly only *üter* is declined and *alter* is placed before it without change; but sometimes both *alter* and *üter* are declined, thus:

commonly: *alterüter*, *alterütra*, *alterütrum*,                      G. *alterütriüs*,  
occasionally: *alter üter*, *alterä ütra*, *altërum ütrum*, G. *alteriüs utriüs*.

\* So also *alteriüs*, not (as is inferred from the poets) *alteriüs*.

Alius, alia, aliud, <i>another</i>	tôtus, a, um, <i>the whole.</i>	uterlibet, utrâlibet,
alter, ěra, ěrum, <i>the one or the other of two.</i>	ullus, a, um, <i>any one.</i>	utrumlibet, <i>whoever, whichever (you please of the two.</i>
neuter, tra, trum, <i>neither of the two.</i>	unus, a, um, <i>one.</i>	uterque, utrâque,
nullus, a, um, <i>no one; no.</i>	ŭter, tra, trum, <i>which of the two?</i>	utrumque, <i>each of the two, both.</i>
sôlus, a, um, <i>alone.</i>	utercunque, utracunque, utrumcunque, <i>whoever, whichever, of the two.</i>	

6. The numerals: duo, *two*, ambo, *both* and tres, *three*, are declined as follows:

Nom. and V.	duo, two	duae, duo	tres, three	N. tria
Gen.	duôrum, duârum, duôrum			trium
D. and Abl.	duôbus, duâbus, duôbus			tribus
Acc.	duo and duos, duas, duo		tres, tria	
	So: ambo, ae, o, both.		Like tria is declined the Pl. of mille: milia.	

## XXVI. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Hora, ae, <i>f. hour.</i>	mensis, is, <i>m. month.</i>	pono 3. <i>I place, arrange.</i>
summa, ae, <i>f. sum.</i>	hebdômas, âdis, <i>f. week.</i>	sepôno 3. <i>I lay aside.</i>
annus, i, <i>m. year.</i>	nux, ucis, <i>f. nut.</i>	jam, <i>adv. already, now.</i>
calcûlus, i, <i>m. a pebble.</i>	in promptu esse, <i>to be in readiness.</i>	memorîter, <i>adv. from memory.</i>
Carôlus, i, <i>m. Charles.</i>	exspecto 1. <i>I wait, await.</i>	paulisper, <i>adv. a little.</i>
codicilli, orum, <i>m. writing tablet.</i>	respondeo 2. <i>I answer.</i>	recte, <i>adv. correctly.</i>
thalêrus, i, <i>m. dollar.</i>	responsio, ônis, <i>f. answer.</i>	deinde, <i>adv. then, thereupon.</i>
cerâsum, i, <i>n. cherry.</i>	addo 3. <i>I add to.</i>	denique, <i>adv. finally.</i>
mâlum, i, <i>n. apple.</i>	attendo 3. <i>I give attention.</i>	porro, <i>adv. besides.</i>
pirum, i, <i>n. pear.</i>		tum, <i>adv. then.</i>
prunum, i, <i>n. plum.</i>		
exemplum, i, <i>n. example.</i>		

*Pater.* Attende, mi fili! Scribe in codicillos tuos hoc exemplum: Si habes decem mala, tria pruna, unum pirum, sex cerâsa; et his adduntur duo mala, quattuor pruna, septem pira, octo cerâsa; deinde quinque mala, novem pruna, sedċim pira, undċim cerâsa; tum duodċim mala, quindċim pruna, tredċim pira, quattuordċim cerâsa; porro viginti mala, undeviginti pruna, duodeviginti pira, septendċim cerâsa; denique quattuor et viginti mala, unum et viginti pruna, duo et viginti pira, tria et viginti cerâsa: quot sunt mala? quot pruna? quot pira? quot cerâsa? *Carôlus.* Exspecta paulisper, mi pater! Jam responsio est in promptu. Sunt tria et spetuaginta mala; unum et septuaginta pruna; septem et septuaginta pira; novem et septuaginta

cerăsa. *P.* Recte, mi Carôle! Jam sepōne codcillos et memoriter mihi responde: Quot menses habet unus annus? *C.* Duodécim. *P.* Quot hebdomādes habet unus mensis? *C.* Quattuor. *P.* Quot dies habet unus annus? *C.* Trecentos sexaginta quinque. *P.* Quot horas habet unus dies? *C.* Quattuor et viginti. *P.* Quot dies habent tres anni? *C.* Mille nonaginta quinque. *P.* Quot horas habet unus annus? *C.* Octo milia septingentas sexaginta. *P.* Si tres nuces quater ponis, quanta summa exsistit? *C.* Duodecim. *P.* Si quinque calcūlos ter millies sexcenties quinquagies septies ponis? *C.* Duodeviginti milia ducenti octoginta quinque. *P.* Si septingenta quadraginta tria milia trecentos quinquaginta duo thalēros bis ponis? *C.* Decies centum milia quadringenta octoginta sex milia septingenti quattuor.

*Father.* Give attention, my son! write upon your writing-tablet the following (= this) example: If thou hast 20 apples, 6 plums, 2 pears, 12 cherries, and to these are added 4 apples, 8 plums, 14 pears, 16 cherries; then 10 apples, 18 plums, 32 pears, 22 cherries; then 24 apples, 30 plums, 26 pears, 28 cherries; besides, 40 apples, 38 plums, 36 pears, 34 cherries; finally, 48 apples, 42 plums, 44 pears, 46 cherries: how many apples are [there]? how many plums? how many pears? how many cherries?—*Charles.* Wait a little, my father! already is the answer in readiness. There are 146 apples, 142 plums, 154 pears, 158 cherries.—*Father.* Correctly, my Charles!

## XXVII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Incōla, ae, <i>m.</i> inhabitant.	jor(natu)older, minor (natu) younger.	annum ago, <i>I am in the year.</i>
victoria, ae, <i>f.</i> victory.	fides, ēi, <i>f.</i> fidelity; fides habeo, <i>I have confidence in.</i>	irrumpo 3. <i>I make an irruption.</i>
pretium, i, <i>n.</i> value.	cognitus, a, um, <i>known.</i>	nunc, <i>adv.</i> now.
assentātor, ōris, <i>m.</i> flatterer.	infidus, a, um, <i>unfaithful.</i>	vix, <i>adv.</i> scarcely.
moderātor, ōris, <i>m.</i> governor.	natus, a, um, <i>born;</i>	de (with <i>abl.</i> ) of, concerning.
eques, ūtis, <i>m.</i> horseman.	post Christum natus, <i>after the birth of Christ.</i>	ex (with <i>abl.</i> ) from.
pedes, ūtis, <i>m.</i> footman.	post Christum natum, <i>after the birth of Christ.</i>	post (with <i>acc.</i> ) after.
pars, tis, <i>f.</i> part, side.	quotus, a, um, <i>what one.</i>	et—et, <i>both—and.</i>
societas, ātis, <i>f.</i> alliance.	ago 3. <i>I drive, pass;</i>	neque, <i>and not; neque—neque, neither—nor.</i>
exercitus, ūs, <i>m.</i> army.		
natus, ūs, <i>m.</i> birth; ma-		

Quota hora est? Decima. Annus, quo nunc vivimus, est millesimus octingentesimus quadragesimus tertius post Christum natum. Pater meus agit annum quartum et sexagesimum (or sexagesimum

quartun); mater octavum et quinquagesimum (or quinquagesimum octavum); frater major natu tertium et tricesimum (or tricesimum tertium); frater minor natu alterum et tricesimum (or tricesimum alterum); soror major duodetricesimum; soror minor vicesimum. In urbe sunt mille milites. Duo milia hostium urbem obsident.

The enemy makes an irruption into our country (= land), with 10,000 soldiers. A thousand soldiers defend the city. 28,000 footmen and 13,000 horsemen defend the country.

My father *is in* [his] *seventy-fifth year* (= is passing his seventy-fifth year); my mother in her sixty-second; my older brother in his forty-first; my younger brother in his thirty-ninth; my older sister in her thirty-fourth and my younger sister in her twenty-sixth. What hour is it? the eleventh hour. How old art thou? (= what year art thou passing?), fifty-eight years old (= I am passing the fifty-eighth year).

Aliud alii placet (one thing pleases one and another another), aliud alii displicet. Milites utriusque exercitus sunt fortissimi. Utrumque est vitium: et omnibus credere, et nulli. Perfidus homo vix ulli fidem habet. Unius fidi hominis amicitia habet plus pretii (has more value), quam multorum infidorum societas. Soli sapienti vera vis virtutis est cognita. Incolae totius urbis de victoria exercitus laeti erant. Nullius hominis vita ex (in) omni parte beata est. Habeo duo amicos; ambo valde diligo. Amicus meus habet duo filios et duas filias.

We trust to neither of the two, neither to the wicked [man] nor the flatterer. The life of no man is more peaceful than the life of the wise [man]. God is the governor of the whole world. The father goes to walk with [his] two sons and [his] two daughters. Two faithful friends are as it were (quasi) one soul in two bodies. Two thousand soldiers (gen.) defend the city.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### § 34. Table of the Prepositions.

#### 1. Prepositions governing the Accusative.

Ad, to, untò, according to, for, at.	propter, near by, on account of.	ante, before.
apud, at, by.	penes, with (in the power of some one).	post, behind, after.
juxta, next to, by.		secundum, after, along, according to.
prope, near by.	ob, before, on account of.	versus, towards.

adversus and adversum, against.	cis, citra, on this side.	extra, beyond, without.
contra, contrary to, on the contrary, against.	trans, over, on that side.	infra, beneath, below.
erga, towards.	ultra, beyond, on that side.	supra, over, above.
circa, circum, about.	inter, between, among.	per, through.
	intra, within.	praeter, hard by, besides.

REM. 1. *Versus* generally stands in connection with the prepositions *ad* or *in*; the Acc. is placed between *ad* (*in*) and *versus*, as: in Italian *versus*, *ad* Oceānum *versus*, *towards* Italy, *towards* the Ocean. But with names of cities *ad* and *in* are omitted, as: Roman *versus*, *towards* Rome.

## 2. Prepositions governing the Ablative.

A, ab, abs, from, by.	prae, before, by reason of.	sine, without.
de, down from, away from, of, concerning, over.	pro, before, for.	clam, without the knowledge of.
	coram, before, in the presence of.	tenuis, up to.
e, ex, out of, from.	cum, with.	

REM. 2. *A* and *e* never stand before a vowel or *h*; *abs* is rarely used, most frequently before *t*.—*Tenus* is placed after the Abl. For the forms *mecum*, *tecum*, *quocum*, etc., see § 28. Rem. 1. and § 30. Rem. 1.

## 3. Prepositions governing the Abl. (in answer to the question *where?*) and the Acc. (in answer to the question, *whither?*)

In, c. abl. <i>in</i> , <i>at</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>upon</i> ; c. acc. <i>into</i> , <i>upon</i> , <i>against</i> , <i>towards</i> .	super, over, concerning (generally with acc. in answer to both questions).
sub, under.	subter, beneath, (generally with acc. in answer to both questions).

## XXVIII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Ripa, ae, f. bank.	libertas, âtis, f. freedom.	effundo 3. I pour out,
via, ae, f. way.	altus, a, um, high, deep.	discharge.
castra, orum, n. camp.	video 2. I see.	fugio 3. I flee.
agger, ëris, m. mound.	duco 3. I lead.	pello 3. I drive, repel.
pes, edis, m. foot.		munio 4. I fortify.

### Promiscuous examples from all the Declensions.

Frogs live in the water and upon (in) the land. The soldiers fight spiritedly against (in) the enemy. The enemies make an irruption into our borders. In the fields, bloom various herbs. In (abl.) summer we sit with delight under oaks. The enemies flee within (= among) the walls. Parents are loved by (ab) good sons and daughters. Orators

we extol on account of (ab) fluency of speech. The earth moves (= is moved) around the sun. Repel cares from [your] minds. Suppliants fall down upon the knees. Eloquence adorns those with (penes) whom it is. Live thou according to nature. The soldiers fight before (pro) the camp. The river is discharged over the banks. Virtue has all [things] beneath (subter) itself. Who is peaceful without virtue? Above the city is a very high oak. Below our garden a very magnificent house is built.

The army marches (iter facit) towards Rome. The general leads the soldiers against the city. Near by the walls of the city, the enemies fortify the camp. The enemies build a high mound around the city. Our soldiers fight with the enemies very spiritedly. The citizens fight spiritedly for the freedom of their native country. The enemies flee over the river. On account of virtue men are esteemed. The enemies within the walls of the city fortify a camp. The love of parents towards [their] children is very great. Many men act contrary to (contra) the precepts of virtue. On this side of the city a camp is fortified by (ab) the enemies. Frogs live within and without the water. All the citizens were joyful concerning (de) the victory of our soldiers. The way, which leads from the city up to our garden, is very beautiful. Avoid the man, who by reason of (prae) anger is not in his right mind (= with himself). Before (ante) our house are many pines, behind the same, is a very beautiful garden. Often we do not see that which is before (ante) our feet. Between the city and our garden are very beautiful fields. The enemies flee through the city. Who is peaceful besides the wise [man]?

---

## SECOND COURSE.

### § 35. *Greek Nouns of the First Declension.*

Several nouns adopted from the Greek, have in the Nom. the ending, *ē* Fem., *ās* and *ēs* Masc. The declension of these differs from the Latin first Dec., only in the Sing.; in the Plur. they are the same.

## Paradigms.

Feminine.	Masculine.
Sing. N. crambē, cabbage	Aenēās, <i>Æneas</i> Anchisēs, <i>Anchises</i>
G. crambēs, of cabbage	Aenēae Anchisae
D. crambae, to cabbage	Aenēae Anchisae
A. crambēn, cabbage	Aenēam Anchisēn
V. crambē, O cabbage	Aenēā Anchisē
A. crambē, by cabbage.	Aenēā. Anchisē.

## XXIX. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Alōē, ēs, <i>f. the aloe.</i>	comētes, ae, <i>m. comet.</i>	errāticus, a, um, <i>wan-</i>
Circe, ēs, <i>f. Circe.</i>	planētes, ae, <i>m. planet.</i>	<i>dering.</i>
astutia, ae, <i>f. cunning.</i>	Borēas, Epaminondas, tener, ēra, ērum, <i>tender.</i>	
coqua, ae, <i>f. (female)</i>	Gorgias, Pythagōras, celēbro 1. <i>I celebrate.</i>	
<i>cook</i>	Orestes, Pylādes, ae, abstineo 2. (with <i>abl.</i> )	
culina, ae, <i>f. kitchen.</i>	<i>m. are proper names</i>	<i>I abstain from.</i>
gloria, ae, <i>f. renown.</i>	and remain as in	strideo 2. <i>I whistle.</i>
historia, ae, <i>f. history.</i>	Latin.	antepōno 3. <i>I prefer.</i>
stella, ae, <i>f. star.</i>	crinitus, a, um, <i>with long</i>	coquo 3. <i>I cook.</i>
nauta, ae, <i>m. sailor.</i>	<i>hair.</i>	pie, <i>adv. tenderly, piously.</i>

Alōē est amāra. Aloēs herba est amāra. Crambae est tenēra herba. Cramben coqua in culina coquit. O Circe, quanta erat astutia tua! Crambe tenērā delectāmur. Borēas vexat nautas. Boreae procellae nautis perniciosae sunt. Boream fugiunt nautae. O Borea, quam vehementer strides! A Borea vexantur nautae. Planētes est stella erratica. Comētes est stella crinita. Oresten et Pylāden ob amicitiam proedicāmus. O Epaminonda, quanta est tua gloria! Anchises pie amātur ab Aenā. Pythagōrae sapientia praedicātur. O Anchises, quam pie amāris ab Aenēā! Epaminondam et Pelopīdam omnes scriptores celēbrant.

Cabbage is tender. The herb of cabbage is tender. The aloe is a bitter herb. We prefer the tender cabbage to the bitter aloe. O Circe, how by (*abl.*) thy cunning thou deceivest the minds of men! We abstain from the bitter aloe. Gorgias had (*erat* with *dat.*) great eloquence. The cunning of Circe was great. Æneas loves Anchises tenderly. Pythagoras we extol on account of [his] wisdom. O Orestes and Pylades, how great was your friendship! Concerning (*de*) Orestes and Pylades, concerning Epaminondas and Pelopidas history relates.



§ 36. *Of the Gender of the Second Declension.*

## RULE.

*Us, er* and *ir* are *masculine*,  
But *um* is of the *neuter* kind.

## EXCEPTIONS.

Isles, lands, towns and trees in *us*,  
These are *feminine* in use.  
Also *alvus*, *colus*, *humus*,  
*Vannus*, *periödu*s and *carbäsu*s,  
*Diphthongu*s too and *dialectu*s.

The *neuter* has but three in *us* :  
*Virus*, *vulgus*, *pelägu*s.

<i>Alvus</i> , i, <i>f.</i> belly.	<i>periödu</i> s, i, <i>f.</i> period.	<i>virus</i> , i, <i>n.</i> juice, poison.
<i>colus</i> , i, <i>f.</i> distaff.	<i>carbäsu</i> s, i, <i>f.</i> linen.	<i>vulgus</i> , i, <i>n.</i> the common people.
<i>humus</i> , i, <i>f.</i> ground, earth.	<i>diphthongu</i> s, i, <i>f.</i> diphthong.	<i>pelägu</i> s, i, <i>n.</i> (a poetic word) sea.
<i>vannus</i> , i, <i>f.</i> corn-fan.	<i>dialectu</i> s, i, <i>f.</i> dialect.	

REMARK. The following are *masculine* contrary to the general rule (§ 13.) for countries, towns and trees: *Pontus*, *Hellespontus*, *Isthmus*, *Bospöru*s; also plurals in *i*, as: *Delphi*, *Delphoru*m; also names of trees in *er*, as: *oleaster*, *tri*, *wild olive tree*. Besides, all names of countries, cities and mountains in *um* (on), *G. i*, and plurals in *a*, *G. oru*m are *neuter*, as: *Latium*, *Saguntum*, *Pelion*, *Leuctra* (*öru*m).

XXX. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

<i>Lingua</i> , ae, <i>f.</i> tongue, language.	<i>pirus</i> , i, pear-tree.	<i>ignävu</i> s, a, um, indolent, lazy, cowardly.
<i>silva</i> , ae, <i>f.</i> a wood.	<i>prunu</i> s, i, plum-tree.	<i>lignäu</i> s, a, um, wooden, of wood.
<i>cibus</i> , i, <i>m.</i> food.	<i>ulmu</i> s, i, an elm.	<i>longu</i> s, a, um, long.
<i>Aegyptu</i> s, i, Egypt.	<i>avidu</i> s, a, um, (with gen.), greedy.	<i>matüru</i> s, a, um, ripe, early.
<i>Delu</i> s, i, <i>Delos</i> (island).	<i>frugifer</i> , era, erum, fruit-ful.	<i>procäu</i> s, a, um, slim.
<i>Rhodu</i> s, i, <i>Rhodes</i> (an island).	<i>compositu</i> s, a, um, composed.	<i>rotundu</i> s, a, um, round.
<i>pöpu</i> lu)s, i, a poplar.	<i>fecundu</i> s, a, um, pro-ductive.	<i>stultu</i> s, a, um, foolish.
<i>ceräsu</i> s, i, cherry-tree.	<i>humidu</i> s, a, um, moist.	<i>compesco</i> 3. I check, curb.
<i>fagu</i> s, i, beech-tree.		
<i>mälu</i> s, i, apple-tree.		

*Vulgus* est stultum. *Diphthongu*s est longa. *Periödu*s bene *composita* est. *Pöpu*li sunt *procærae*. *Ignävi* *pöpu*li *facile* *vincuntur*. In *silvis* sunt *ulmi* et *fagi altae*. *Vanni* sunt *lignæae*. In *horto* *nostro*

*magnus est numērus frugiferarum cerasorum, malorum, pirorum et prunorum.*

In our garden are many cherry-trees, many apple-trees, many plum-trees and many pear-trees. The foolish people (*vulgus*) are easily deceived. Diphthongs are long. The periods are well composed. The poplar is slim. A cowardly people (*populus*) is easily conquered. In our garden are many slim poplars. The corn-fan is of wood.

*Matūra cerāsa, māla, pira, pruna sunt dulcia. Virus est perniciosum. Humus humida varias plantas gignit. Alvus est ciborum avida. Delus est clara. Coli sunt rotundae. Dialecti sunt variae. Carbāsus est tenēra.*

Avoid the pernicious poison. One language has many dialects. The linen is beautiful. Egypt is productive. These apples, cherries, plums and pears are beautiful. See those high elms and slim poplars. Rhodes was renowned. The distaff is round. The earth (*humus*) is productive. Check the greedy appetite (= belly).

### § 37. Remarks on the several Case-endings of the Third Declension.\*

1. *Gen. Sing.* Proper names in *es* often have in the *Gen.* the termination *i* instead of *is*, as: *Ulixi*, also, *Pericli*, *Aristoteli*, *Neocli*, *Carneadi*, etc. Some Greek nouns in *o* (but only of the *feminine* gender) as: *Argo*, *Sappho*, *echo*, *Io*, have *ūs* in the genitive as: *echūs* from *echo*, *Argus* from *Argo* (the remaining cases are like the *Nom.* or are formed with Latin endings, as *Dido*, *-ōnis*, *-ōni*, *-ōnem*, *-ōne*.)

\* Greek nouns, sometimes, but generally only in poetry, retain their peculiar terminations in Latin, viz., *Gen. os* for *is*; *Acc. a* for *em*, or *in* (*yn*), *en* for *im*, *idem*, *em*; *Voc. i*, *y* (from *Nom. is*, *ys*) for *is*, *ys*; *Abl. i* for *ide* (rare). *Plur. Nom. Neut. ē* (from *Nom. Sing. ōs*); *Gen. ōn* for *um* (rare and only poetic); *Dat. si*, *sin* for *dibus*, *tibus*, *ibus* (rare and only poetic); *Acc. as* for *es*. Thus: *Gen. Sing. Pallād-os* (from *Pallas*), *Pan-os* (from *Pan*), *Thety-os* (from *Thetys*); *Acc. Platona* (from *Plato*), *Lycorīda* (from *Lycōris*), *basin* (*basis*), *Parin* (*Paris*), *Thetyin*; *Voc. Lycōri*, *Coty*; *Abl. Daphni* for *ide*. *Plur. Nom. Neut. melē*, *epē* (from *melos*, *epos*); *Gen. Chalybōn* (*Chalybs*); *Dat. Dryāsi* (*Dryas*, *adis*), *metamorphosesi*; *Acc. Senōnas* (*Senōnes*), *Cyclōpas* (*Cyclops*.) The *Gen. eos*, for *is* from *Nom. is* as: *baseos* for *basis* is not classical, and from *Nom. -eus* only poetic, as: *Peleus*, *Pelēōs* (in prose, *Peleus*, *Pelēi*). Good prose rejects the Greek genitive-form in *os*; the *Acc. in a*, *in*, *yn*, *en* is very rare in good prose, as: *Pana*, *aethēra*, *Zeuxin*, *poēsīn*, *Sophōclen*. The *Acc. Plur. in as* is found in prose writers of the golden period of the Latin language, only in barbarous names, as: *Senōnas*, *Allobrogas*. *Caes.—Kühner's Larger Latin Grammar.*

2. *Acc. Sing.* The *Acc.* has in the following nouns in *is* *G. is*, the ending *im* (for *em*). First, *invariably* in :

amussis, <i>f. a rule.</i>	ravis, <i>f. hoarseness.</i>	tussis, <i>f. a cough.</i>
buris, <i>f. a plough-tail.</i>	sināpis, <i>f. mustard.</i>	vis, <i>f. force, power, abundance, multitude.</i>
cannābis, <i>f. hemp.</i>	sitis, <i>f. thirst.</i>	

Second, *commonly* in :

febris, <i>f. a fever.</i>	puppis, <i>f. the stern of a ship.</i>	secūris, <i>f. an axe.</i>
pelvis, <i>f. a basin.</i>	restis, <i>f. a rope.</i>	turris, <i>f. a tower.</i>

Also in the following names of rivers: *Albis, the Elbe. Athēsis, the Adige, Arāris, the Saone, Liris, the Liris, Tamēsis, the Thames, Tibēris, the Tiber, Tigris, the Tiger, Virsurgis, the Weser* (all *Masc.* according to § 13); and finally, in Greek nouns in *is* *Gen. is*, as: *basis, f. (a pedestal), basim*, and in several words in *is G. idis*, as: *Paris, Parim*.

3. *Voc. Sing.* The vocative of Greek nouns in *s* with a vowel before it, commonly drops the *s*, as: *O Pericle* but also *Pericles*, *O Socrāte* also *Socrātes*, *O Perseu* also *Perseus*, *O Pari* also *Paris*. The same is true of those in *as G. antis*, as: *Atlā*; others in *as*, but with a different form of the *Gen.*, have the vocative like the nominative.

4. *Abl. Sing.* The ablative has the ending *e* in most nouns; but in a few it has the ending *i*, and indeed invariably :

a) In *neuters* in *e*, *āl*, *G. ālis, ār*, *G. āris*, as *mari, animāli, calcāri*. But those in *ār*, *G. āris* have *e*, as: *nectar (nectar), nectāre*.

EXCEPTIONS: *sal* (salt), *far*, and the names of towns in *e*, as: *Praneste, Caere*, have *e* in the ablative.

b) In nouns in *is* which always have *im* in the *Acc.* as: *vis, vim, vi*.

5. The following nouns in *is G. is* have *i* oftener than *e*, or *i* and *e* together :

civis, <i>m. a citizen.</i>	ignis, <i>m. fire.</i>	pelvis, <i>f. a basin.</i>
clavis, <i>f. a key.</i>	navis, <i>f. a ship.</i>	puppis, <i>f. the stern.</i>
febris, <i>f. a fever.</i>	neptis, <i>f. a grand-daughter.</i>	secūris, <i>f. an axe.</i>
fustis, <i>m. a club.</i>		turris, <i>f. a tower.</i>

REM. 1. Also the names of rivers enumerated in No. 2. have in general *i*.

6. In the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plur. neuters in *e*, *al*, G. *ālis*, *ar* G. *āris* have *ia* instead of *a*, as : *maria*, *animalia*, *calcaria*.

7. In the *Gen. Plur.* the following have *ium* instead of *um* :

a) Neuters in *e*, *al*, G. *ālis*, *ar*, G. *āris*, as : *marium*, *animalium*, *calcarium*. *Lar*, *lar* (*lār-is*), *a household-god, the fireplace*, has *Larum* and *Larium* ;

b) *Parisyllables* in *es* and *is*, as : *navium* (*navis*), *nubium*, and in *er* : *imber*, *rain*, *linter*, *a boat*, *uter*, *leather bag*, *venter*, *the belly* ; but, *canis*, *a dog*, *panis*, *bread*, *proles*, *an offspring*, *strues*, *a heap*, *vates*, *a prophet*, *juvēnis*, *a youth*, and commonly, *apis*, *a bee*, *volucris*, *a bird*, have *um* ;

c) *Monosyllables* in *s* and *x* with a consonant preceding them, as : *mons*, *montium*, *arx*, *arcium* ; (but, [*ops*] *opes*, *power*, has *opum* and *lynx*, *f. lyncum*) ; and the following : [*faux*] *fauces*, *the throat*, *faucium*, *glis*, *a dormouse*, *glirium*, *lis*, *strife*, *litium*, *mus*, *a mouse*, *murium*, *nox*, *night*, *noctium*. *Strix*, *a horned owl*, *strigium* ; on the contrary, *dux*, (*a leader*) has *ducum*, *vox*, *the voice* has *vocum*, *nux*, *a nut* has *nucum*, and so of others with a vowel before the *x* ;

d) Words of more than one syllable in *s*, or *x*, with an *r* or *n* preceding them, as : *cohors*, *a cohort*, *cohortium*, *cliens*, *a client*, *clientium*, *quincunx*, *quincuncium* ; commonly also, *parentium* (*parens*), *of parents*, *sapientium* (*sapiens*), *of wise men*, *adolescentium* (*adolescens*), *of the youth* ; finally, always, *compedium* (from *compes*, generally in the plural *compēdes*), *of fetters* ; on the contrary, *pes*, *pedum* ;

e) For the most part *gentile nouns* (national denominations) in *ās*, *ātis*, *īs*, *ītis*, as : *Arpinas*, *Arpinatium*, *Samnis*, *Samnitium*. So also *nostras*, *optimas penātes*, as : *nostratium*, finally, *civitas*, *a state*, *civitatium*.

8. In the *Dat.* and *Abl. Plur.* Greek neuters in *ma* have *māt-is* more commonly than *mat-ibus*, e. g. *poēmātis*, instead of *poēmatibus*.

9. Concerning the case-endings of *adjectives*, the following rules may be given :

a) The *Abl. Sing.* of all adjectives, even when used as nouns, has the ending *i*, as : *acri*, *facili*, *pari* (from *par*), *felici*, *memōri* (see § 22.); *natāli* from *natālis* (viz. *dies*), *birth-day*, *Aprīli* from *Aprīlis* (viz. *mensis*), *April*, *Decembri* from *December*.

EXCEPTIONS. The *Abl.* has *e* in the following cases: 1) *Juvēnis*, a *young man*, *aedilis*, *edile*, and the adjectives in *is* used as proper names, as : *Martialis*, *Martiale* ;

2) The following adjectives of one ending :

caelebs, <i>ibis</i> , <i>unmarried</i> .	dives, <i>itis</i> , <i>rich</i> .	[ <i>guest.</i> princeps, <i>ipis</i> , <i>chief</i> .
cicur, <i>ūris</i> , <i>tame</i> .	hospes, <i>itis</i> , <i>foreign</i> , a	pauper, <i>ēris</i> , <i>poor</i> .
compos, <i>ōtis</i> , <i>powerful</i> ,	pubes, <i>ēris</i> , <i>grown up</i> .	sospes, <i>itis</i> , <i>safe</i> , <i>secure</i> .
possessed of.	impūbes, <i>ēris</i> , <i>beardless</i> .	superstes, <i>itis</i> , <i>surviving</i> .
impos, <i>ōtis</i> , <i>impotent</i> .	particeps, <i>ipis</i> , <i>partaking</i> .	
deses, <i>īdis</i> , <i>idle</i> .		

3) *Comparatives*, as : *major*, *majus* (greater) *maiorē* ;

4) Compounds of *corpus*, *color* and *pes*, as : *bicorpor* (having two bodies), *bicorpore*, *discolor* (variegated), *discolore*, *bipes* (two-footed), *bipede* ;

5) Adjectives of one ending used as nouns, as : *sapiens*, a *wise man*, *infans*, a *child*, *Pertinax*, *Clemens*, *Felix*, *Abl.—e* ;

6) Participles in *ns* have as participles *e*, but as adjectives, generally *i*, as : *florente rosā*, the *rose blooming*, in *florenti rosā*, in a *blooming rose*.

b) The *Nom. Acc.* and *Voc. Plur. Neut.*, have in adjectives and participles, the ending *ia*, and the *Gen. Plur.* the ending *ium*, as : *acria*, *facilia*, *felicia*, *acrium*, *facilium*, *felicium* (§ 22.), *hebetia*, *ium* (from *hebes*).

REMARK. In the strictly classical period, all adjectives which have the *Gen. Plur.* in *ium*, had the *Acc. Plur. Masc.* and *Fem.* in *is*, as : *omnis homines*.

EXCEPTIONS. *Vetus*, *old*, has *vetēra*, *vetērum* and all comparatives, as : *majora*, *majorum* (but *plus*, *plura* has *plurium*) ; *complures*, *very many*, *several*, has *complura* and *ia* (*Gen.* always, *complurium*). Besides, the following have *um* in *Gen.* : *celer*, *swift*, *consors*, *partaking of*, *degener*, *degenerate*, *dives*, *rich*, *inops*, *helpless*, *memor*, *immemor*, *supplex*, *suppliant*, *uber*, *rich*, *vigil*, *watching*. To these may be added compounds in *ceps* and *fex*, as : *anceps*, *two-fold*, *double*, *uncertain*, *G. Pl.* *ancipitum*, *artifex*, *skilful*, *artist*, *artificum* ; finally, all which have only *e* in the *Abl.*, as : *pauper*, *pauperum*.

## XXXI. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

The words introduced on the three preceding pages, are omitted.

Fama, ae, <i>f. report</i> , <i>noun</i> .	fundamentum, i, <i>n. foundation</i> .	exascio 1. <i>I hew</i> (rough-ly.)
statua, ae, <i>f. statue</i> .	lignum, i, <i>n. wood</i> .	levo 1. <i>I lighten</i> .
carpentarius, i, <i>m. wheel-wright</i> .	cos, otis, <i>f. whet-stone</i> .	mitigo 1. <i>I soften, mitigate</i> .
funambulus, i, <i>m. rope-dancer</i> .	quies, etis, <i>f. quiet</i> .	navigo 1. <i>I navigate</i> .
laurus, i, <i>f. laurel</i> .	durus, a, um, <i>hard</i> .	oppugno 1. <i>I assault</i> .
faber, bri, <i>m. artisan</i> .	argentus, a, um, <i>of silver, silver</i> .	acuo 3. <i>I sharpen</i> .
faber lignarius, carpenter.	ver, silver. [iron.	expello 3. <i>I expel</i> .
folium, i, <i>n. leaf</i> .	ferreus, a, um, <i>of iron</i> .	incedo 3. <i>I walk upon</i> .
	dono 1. <i>I present</i> .	peto 3. <i>I seek</i> .
	edolo 1. <i>I hew properly</i> .	sero 3. <i>I sow</i> .
	fashion.	

*Echus* vox saepe homines fallit. *Argus* navis fama est magna. *Vis vim* expellit. *Sitim* tolerare difficile est. *Faber lignarius* ad *amussim* lignum exasciat. *Hi pueri* ad *ravim* clamant. *Carpentarius burim* e dura ulmo edolat. *Agricola burim* regit. *Agricola can nă b i m* serit. *Folia lauri tusssim* levant. *Febrim* quiete mitigamus. *Pater matri pelvim* argenteam donat. *Funambuli per restim* incedunt. *Per Albim, Tamësim, Visurgim, Tigrim* multae naves navigant. *Milites oppugnant altam turrim*. *Securim* ferream cote acuumus. *Fundamentum statuarum* vocamus *basim*. *Apes* petunt *sinăpim*.

The poems of Sappho were very delightful. The wanderings (error, oris) of Io were related by (ab) many poets. By (abl.) the echo we are often deceived. Against (contra) hoarseness, cough and fever, thou must apply (adhibeo 2.) fitting (aptus, a, um) remedies (remedium, i, n.) The soldiers defend spiritedly the high tower. The statue has a solid pedestal. The wood (plur.) is hewed by (ab) the carpenter according to (ad) rule. The carpenter handles (tracto 1.) the sharp axe with a skilful hand. Soldiers must endure hunger (fames, is) and thirst patiently.

## XXXII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Porta, ae, <i>f. gate</i> .	onus, eris, <i>n. load</i> .	incito 1. <i>I urge on</i> .
tragoedia, ae, <i>f. tragedy</i> .	nectar, aris, <i>n. nectar</i> , (drink for the gods).	laboro 1. (with ab.) <i>I suffer</i> (from something).
humerus, i, <i>m. shoulder</i> .	acutus, a, um, <i>sharp</i> .	prospecto 1. <i>I look forth</i> .
gubernator, oris, <i>m. pilot</i> .	dignus, a, um, (with abl.)	abigo 3. <i>I drive away</i> .
vigil, ilis, <i>m. watchman</i> .	worthy, deserving of.	claudio 3. <i>I close</i> .
sal, alis, <i>m. salt</i> .	frigidus, a, um, <i>cold</i> .	occludo 3. <i>I lock</i> .
admiratio, onis, <i>f. admiration</i> .	summus, a, um, <i>highest</i> .	conspergo 3. <i>I sprinkle</i> .
	mordax, acis, <i>biting</i> .	

O *Socrâte*, quam salutâris erat genêri humâno tua sapientia! O *Sophôcle*, tragoediæ tuæ summa admiratione dignæ sunt. O *Atta*, quantum onus humêris tuis portas! *Calcâri* incitamus equos. *Nectâre* delectantur dii. *Sale* conspergimus cibos. Hostes *vi* in urbem irrumpunt. *Clavi* porta clauditur. *Febri* labôrat fater. *Fusti* abigimus canes mordâces. *Igni* coquimus cibos. A bono *civi* patria amatur. Ex alta *turri* vigiles prospectant. In *puppi* sedet gubernator. Acûta *secûri* faber lignarius lignum exasciat.

Force expels force by (abl.) force. The customs of men are oftener improved by admonition and example than by force. When (quum) thou art suffering (= sufferest) from (abl.) a fever, abstain from cold water. O Themistocles, O Pericles, O Socrates, your deserts *relative to* (de) the city of the Athenians were very great. The pilot, who sits upon the stern, governs the ship. With (abl.) a sharp axe we split (diffindo 3.) the wood (plur.). In a civil war (bellum civile) citizen fights against citizen. With (abl.) an iron key we lock the gate. The enemies lay waste the country with (abl.) fire and sword.

### XXXIII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Satira, ae, <i>f. satire.</i>	aetas, âtis, <i>f. age.</i>	procûro 1. <i>I furnish.</i>
ludus, i, <i>m. sport.</i>	hiems, ĕmis, <i>f. winter.</i>	perâgo 3. <i>I carry</i>
Românus, i, <i>m. a Roman.</i>	longinquus, a, um, <i>dis-</i>	<i>through, perform.</i>
	<i>tant.</i>	perstringo 3. <i>I graze,</i>
ingenium, i, <i>n. genius,</i>	publicus, a, um, <i>public.</i>	<i>satirize.</i>
<i>intellect.</i>	docilis, e, <i>teachable.</i>	veho 3. <i>I carry, bring.</i>
merx, cis, <i>f. wares.</i>	aestimo 1. <i>I value, es-</i>	sperno 3. <i>I spurn.</i>
mercâtor, ôris, <i>m. tra-</i>	<i>teem.</i>	<i>sed, conj. but.</i>
<i>der, merchant.</i>		

Avus cum *nepti* ambûlat. Mercator *navi* merces in longinquas terras vehit. Discipûli in schola non genêre, sed bonis moribus, *docili* ingenio, et *acri* industriâ aestimantur. Hostes *celêri* pede fugiunt.

### XXXIV. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Autumnus, i, <i>m. autumn.</i>	nepos, ôtis, <i>m. grandson.</i>	juventus, ūtis, <i>f. youth.</i>
coelum, i, <i>n. the sky.</i>	parentes, ium, <i>m. par-</i>	juvenilis, e, <i>youthful.</i>
initium, i, <i>n. beginning.</i>	<i>ents.</i>	senilis, e, <i>advanced,</i>
gaudium, i, <i>n. joy.</i>	mensis, is, <i>m. a month.</i>	aetas senilis, <i>old age.</i>
monumentum, i, <i>n.</i>	munus, ĕris, <i>n. service,</i>	exhilâro 1. <i>I exhilarate,</i>
<i>monument.</i>	<i>office, present.</i>	<i>delight.</i>
negotium, i, <i>n. business.</i>	gelidus, a, um, <i>cold.</i>	saevio 4. <i>I rage.</i>
oblectamentum, i, <i>n. de-</i>	insipiens, ntis, <i>unwise.</i>	
<i>light.</i>		

Mense Martio initium est veris, mense Junio aestâtis, mense *Sep-  
tembri* autumni, mense *Decembri* hiëmis. Boni regis *natâli* omnis civi-  
tas laeta est. Mense *Aprîli* coelum modo serënum est, modo triste.  
Mense *Novembri* gelidæ procellæ saeviunt. *Juvenîli* aetate *alacriore*  
animo difficilia negotia peragimus, quam *senili*. A *Juvenâle*, satirarum  
scriptôre, Romanorum vitia perstringuntur. Ab *aedile* ludi publici pro-  
curantur. A *juvène* saepe virorum praecepta spernuntur.

### XXXV. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Culpa, ae, <i>f. guilt.</i>	acceptus, a, um, re-	expers, tis (c. gen.),
immodestia, ae, <i>f. im-</i>	ceived. [ <i>humblest.</i>	destitute of, without.
<i>modesty.</i>	infimus, a, um, lowest,	pertinax, âcis, obstinate.
beneficium, i, <i>n. kind-</i>	clemens, tis, mild.	dispar, âris, unequal,
<i>ness, favor.</i>	consors, tis (c. gen.),	different.
consilium, i, <i>n. counsel.</i>	sharing in.	domo 1. <i>I tame.</i>
studium, i, <i>n. effort,</i>	exsors, tis (c. gen.);	tracto 1. <i>I treat.</i>
<i>study, zeal.</i>	destitute of, without.	atque, and ; 2) as.

A *sapiente* bona praecepta discimus. Quicquid agis, *sapienti* consilio  
age. A *Felice felici* fortunâ bellum geritur. A *Clemente clementi* animo  
infimi homines tractantur. A *Pertinâce pertinâci* studio urbs defendi-  
tur.

The grand-father is delighted by (ab) the little grand-son and the  
neat grand-daughter. Old age ought to be honored by the young  
man. A good boy, on (abl.) his birth day, is delighted by (abl.) pre-  
sents from (ab) his parents. When the state is ruled by (ab) a wise  
king, it is happy. By (ab) a wise man virtue is loved.

Virtus amatur ab homine rationis *participè*, contemnitur ab homine  
rationis *expertî*. A viro virtutis *compôte* deus pie colitur. Praeceptor a  
discipulo beneficii accepti *memôri* colitur. Abstine amico beneficiorum  
acceptorum *immemôri*. Gaudemus amico omnis culpa *exsorti* et  
laborum nostrorum *consorti*. Virtus *pari* studio a *prîncipe* et *divite*, at-  
que ab *humili* et *paupère* colitur. Discipuli *dispâri* studio littêras  
tractant. Magni viri digni sunt gloriâ vitae suae *superstite*. De *sospite*  
amico gaudemus. Hospes ab *hospite* colitur. Et in *impubère*, et in  
*pubère* aetate displicet immodestia.

### XXXVI. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Penna, ae, <i>f. feather.</i>	emolumentum, i, <i>n. use,</i>	ridge (of mountain).
campus, i, <i>m. plain.</i>	advantage.	saxum, i, <i>n. rock.</i>
detrimentum, i, <i>n. in-</i>	horreum, i, <i>n. granary.</i>	vinum, i, <i>n. wine.</i>
<i>jury, disadvantage.</i>	jugum, i, <i>n. yoke, top,</i>	venâtor, ôris, <i>m. hunter.</i>



amnis, is, <i>m. stream,</i> <i>river.</i>	locuples, étis (c. abl.), <i>wealthy, rich.</i>	redundo 1. <i>I redound.</i>
rupes, is, <i>f. rock.</i>	petulans, ntis, <i>licen-</i> <i>tious.</i>	volito 1. <i>I fly around.</i>
agmen, inis, <i>n. band,</i> <i>flock.</i>	praeceps, cipitis, <i>in-</i> <i>clined, steep.</i>	abhorreo 2. (ab) <i>I have</i> <i>an aversion to.</i>
examen, inis, <i>n. swarm.</i>	praecox, ocis, <i>prima-</i> <i>ture.</i>	provideo 2. <i>I foresee.</i>
rete, is, <i>n. net, toil.</i>	occupo 1. <i>I take posses-</i> <i>sion of.</i>	alo 3. <i>I nourish, support</i> <i>(keep).</i>
discolor, oris, <i>party-</i> <i>colored, variegated.</i>		tendo 3. <i>I stretch, ex-</i> <i>tend.</i>
hebes, étis, <i>obtuse, dull.</i>		

Venator *retia* tendit. *Hebetia* ingenia a litterarum studio abhorrent. Saxa sunt *praecipitia*. Onera sunt *gravia*. Horrea frumentis *locupletia* sunt. Pira *praecocia* non sunt *dulcia*. Cervus et equus sunt *celeria* animalia. Disparia sunt hominum studia. Haec vina sunt *vetera*. Majora emolumenta, quam detrimenta, a bestiis ad homines redundant. Cui *plura* beneficia debemus, quam diis? *Complura* (*compluria*) sunt genera *avium*.

Good scholars keep the precepts of [their] teachers with (abl.) thoughtful (memor) minds. By (ab) rational (rationis particeps) men, irrational (rationis experts) animals are tamed. The virtues of great men are adorned by (abl.) a renown surviving their life. The way leads over (per) steep rocks (saxum). The ancient (vetus) monuments of the Greeks and Romans are worthy of admiration. In the blooming age of youth *very many* (complures) delights are afforded us. The life of good and wise men has more and greater joys than the life of the wicked and unwise.

Plurimarum *avium* pennae sunt discolorēs. *Rupium* juga hostis occupat. Venatores magnum *canum* numerum alunt. Multorum *juvenum* animi sunt petulantes. *Vatum* animi futura provident. Nubes magnam *imbrum* vim effundunt. *Lintrum* magnus in amne numerus est. Multa *apum* examina per campos volitant. Multa agmina *volucrum* in silvis sunt.

### XXXVII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Gallia, ae, <i>f. Gaul.</i>	pax, acis, <i>f. peace.</i>	ignorant of, unac-
tenēbrae, arum, <i>f. dark-</i> <i>ness.</i>	regio, onis, <i>f. region.</i>	quainted with.
ars, artis, <i>f. art.</i>	via, ae, <i>f. way.</i>	consultus, a, um (c.
fruges, um, <i>f. fruit.</i>	viator, oris, <i>m. traveller.</i>	gen), <i>acquainted with.</i>
gens, gentis, <i>f. people.</i>	consciis, a, um (c.	cupidus, a, um (c. gen.),
improbitas, atis, <i>f. wick-</i> <i>edness.</i>	gen.), <i>conscious of.</i>	desirous.
	insciis, a, um (c. gen.),	gnarus, a, um, (c.

gen.), <i>acquainted with.</i>	gen.), <i>versed in, skillful.</i>	fertilis, e (c. gen.), <i>productive.</i>
ignārus, a, um, (c. gen.), <i>unacquainted with.</i>	plenus, a, um (c. gen.), <i>full.</i>	rudis, e (c. gen.), <i>rude, ignorant of.</i>
infirmus, a, um, <i>weak.</i>	studiōsus, a, um (c. gen.), <i>zealous; studious</i>	remēo 1. <i>I return.</i>
pauci, ae, a, <i>a few.</i>	dious sum (c. gen.), <i>I pursue earnestly.</i>	que (always attached to a word), <i>and.</i>
peritus, a, um, (c.		

Ingrati nobis sunt homines, qui *litium* sunt cupīdi. Divītes *maiorum opum* avidi sunt. Haec regio *faucium* plena est. Bonus discipulus *litterarum artiumque* est studiōsus. Gallia *frugum* hominumque fertilis est. *Sapientium* et bonorum hominum animi nullius improbitatis sunt conscii. *Samnitium* gens belli perita erat. *Nostratium* pauci *litterarum* ignari sunt. *Civitatium* fundamenta infirma sunt, si cives belli pacisque *artium* rudes sunt. *Arpinatium* cives erant Marius et Cicero; Marius belli *artium*, Cicero pacis *artium* gnarus erat. *Optimatium* in civitate auctoritas magna est, si juris atque eloquentiae consulti sunt. *Noctium* tenebrae viatoribus viae insciis perniciosae sunt.

There are many (complures) kinds of (gen.) dogs. In (abl.) the month [of] November great flocks of *birds of passage* (valūcris adventitia) return from our regions to warmer. Upon (in) the Thames, the Weser and the Elbe there are a great number of great ships and small boats. The people of the Samnites were very brave. Boys of a lively genius and happy memory, apply themselves zealously to (in) the study of literature and the arts. The fame of Marius and Cicero, *citizens of Arpinum* (Arpinas) was different.

### XXXVIII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Capra, ae, <i>f. goat.</i>	aedes, ium, <i>f. house.</i>	Romānus, a, um, <i>Roman.</i>
custodia, ae, <i>f. guardianship.</i>	celeritas, ātis, <i>f. swiftness.</i>	ingens, ntis, <i>very great, immense.</i>
miserīcordia, ae, <i>f. pity.</i>	consuetudo, īnis, <i>f. practice, intercourse.</i>	prudens, ntis, <i>wise, intelligent; c. gen. versed in.</i>
nundinae, arum, <i>f. market, fair.</i>	cacumen, īnis, <i>n. top.</i>	frequentō 1. <i>I frequent.</i>
liberi, orum, <i>m. children</i> (in relation to their parents).	culmen, īnis, <i>n. top.</i>	nidifico 1. <i>I make a nest.</i>
consilium, i, <i>n. measure.</i>	fortitudo, īnis, <i>f. bravery.</i>	tego 3. <i>I cover.</i>
fatum, i, <i>n. fate, fortune.</i>	parentes, ium, <i>m. parents.</i>	minus, adv. <i>less.</i>
Achilles, is, <i>m. Achilles.</i>	idoneus, a, um, <i>fitted.</i>	
	obscurus, a, um, <i>obscure.</i>	

Caprae *montium* cacumina petunt. Multi corvi nidificant in altarum arcium culminibus. Vocum multa genera sunt. Glirium magnus est numerus. Ingens murium numerus in horreis est. Strigium vox ingrata est. Romanarum cohortium fortitudo ab omnibus scriptoribus praedicatur. Parentium in liberos amor est magnus. Compedium ferrearum onus grave est. Pedum celeritate Achilles insignis erat. Penatum custodiae aedes committuntur.

Hominum juris prudentium consiliis civitas regitur. Alacrium discipulorum ingenia ad litterarum studia sunt idonea. Celebrum urbium nundinae a multis hominibus frequentantur. Celorum equorum crura sunt tenera. Amicorum laboris nostri consortium consuetudine delectamur. Hominum omnis amicorum consuetudinis exsortium\* fortuna misera est. Degenorum filiorum patres misericordiam nostram digni sunt. Supplicum preces exaudi. Urbs plena est locupletum hominum. Hominum artificum opera laudamus. Praecipitum montium iuga nubibus teguntur. Ancipitum fatorum via est obscura.

The captives are pressed by (abl.) the load of hard fetters. On (ad) the banks of the Rhine (Rhenus, i) are a great number of ancient (vetus) castles (arx). The works of the ancient (vetus) artists are worthy of admiration. Human life is full of (gen.) uncertain (anceps) fortunes. The way leads over (per) the ridge of steep rocks. The friendship of men sharing in (consors) all our toils is a very great good. Great presents from (gen.) the rich, often delight our minds less than small presents from (gen.) the poor.

### XXXIX. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Divitiae, arum, <i>f. riches.</i>	levitas, atis, <i>f. levity.</i>	immoderatus, a, um, <i>in-</i>
Centaurus, i, <i>m. centaur.</i>	pavo, onis, <i>m. peacock.</i>	temperate.
donum, i, <i>n. gift, present.</i>	sors, rtis, <i>f. lot.</i>	optabilis, e, <i>desirable.</i>
oraculum, i, <i>n. oracle,</i>	Delphicus, a, um, <i>Del-</i>	vigeo 2. <i>I am strong,</i>
announcement.	phic.	active, vigorous.
certamen, inis, <i>n. con-</i>	moderatus, a, um, <i>tem-</i>	ut, as, even as,—ita, so,
test, fight.	perate.	thus.

Cicurum elephantorum ars magna est. Bicornorum Centaurorum multa a poetis narrantur certamina. Discolorum pavonum pennae pulchrae sunt. Hominum virtutis compotum vita laudabilis est. Puerorum impuberum levitas a praeceptore coercetur. Ut hominum rationis participum vita moderata est, ita hominum rationis expertium immoderata est. Hominum gloriae suae superstitem sors non est optabilis. Puberum et corpora et animi vigent. Prudentiorum hominum consilio pa-

\* Or exsortium is doubtful.

rere debemus. *Plurium* hominum animi divitiis magis, quam virtutem expetunt. *Complurium* discipulorum ingenia a litterarum studio abhorrent. *Poëmatibus* delectamur. Oracula Delphica similia sunt obscuris *aenigmatis*.

Who is not delighted by (abl.) the poems of Horace? The number of men surviving their fame is very great. Obey, O boys, the precepts of wise and virtuous (= possessed of virtue, *compos*) men! Many of the tame elephants walk upon (per) a rope. As we pronounce (*praedico*) happy the life of those sharing in friendship, so we deplore the life of those destitute of friendship. The announcements of the ancient prophets were often ambiguous (*anceps*) and like enigmas.

## Determination of Gender according to the endings.

### § 38. Masculine.

Of the *masculine* gender are the nouns in: *o*, *or*, *os*, *er*, and *imparisyllables* (§ 18. Rem. 4.) in *es*.

EXAMPLES. 1) *O*: le-o generosus, the magnanimous lion; 2) *Or*: dol-or acerbus, a severe pain; 3) *Os*: fl-os pulcher, a beautiful flower; 4) *Er*: agg-er altus, a high mound; 5) *Es* in *imparisyllables*: pari-es altus, a high wall.

#### EXCEPTIONS.

##### 1) *O*:

*Feminine* are *echo*, *cäro*,  
Also nouns in: *do*, *go*, *ïo* ;  
But *masculine*: *cardo*, *harpägo*,  
*Margo* too, and *ordo*, *ligo*,  
Together with *concretes* in *ïo*.

##### 1) *O*:

*Cardo*, *ïnis*, *m.* a hinge.  
*caro*, *carnis*, *f.* flesh.  
*echo*, *echüs*, *f.* reverberation, *echo*.  
*harpägo*, *önis*, *m.* a grappling hook.  
*ligo*, *önis*, *m.* a hoe; mattock.  
*margo*, *ïnis*, *m.* a margin, edge.  
*ordo*, *ïnis*, *m.* order, series, rank.

REM. 1. The *feminines* in *io* are either abstract or collective nouns, as: *actio*, an action, *legio*, *önis*, a legion, *natio*, *önis*, a nation; still some have acquired a concrete meaning, as: *regio*, a region, (originally, a directing or direction). The *concretes* in *io* are all *masculine*, as: *scipio*, a staff, *papilio*, a butterfly, *pugio*, a dagger.

##### 2) *Or*:

Of the *feminine* gender is,  
Barely, *arbor*, *arböris* ;  
The *neuter* has but four in *or* ;  
*Marmor*, *aequor*, *ador*, *cor*.

##### 2) *Or*:

*Ador*, *öris* *n.* spelt.  
*aequor*, *öris*, *n.* a level surface, (especially of the sea).  
*arbor*, *öris*, *f.* a tree.  
*cor*, *cordis*, *n.* the heart.  
*marmor*, *öris*, *n.* marble.

3) *Os* :

Of the *feminine* are in *os*.  
Only these two : *cōs* and *dōs*.

*Ōs*, a bone, and *ōs*, the face,  
These are of the *neuter* class.

4) *Er* :

The *neuter* has many in, *er*,  
*Ver*, cadāver, *iter*, tuber,  
*Cicer*, piper, *siser*, uber,  
*Zingiber*, papāver, *suber*,  
*Acer*, *siler*, verber, *spinther*.  
But only *feminine* is *linter*.

5) *Es imparisyllable* :

*Imparisyllables* in *es*,  
Give but one as *neuter* : *aes* ;  
But as *feminine* we have *merces*,  
*Quies*, *requies* and *compes*,  
Also, *sēges*, *tēges*, *merges*.

5) *Imparisyllables* in *es*.

<i>Aes</i> , <i>aeris</i> , <i>n. brass.</i>	<i>merges</i> , <i>itis</i> , <i>f. a sheaf.</i>	<i>sēges</i> , <i>etis</i> , <i>f. a crop.</i>
<i>compes</i> , <i>edis</i> , <i>f. fetters.</i>	<i>quies</i> , <i>etis</i> , <i>f. quiet.</i>	<i>tēges</i> , <i>etis</i> , <i>f. a mat.</i>
<i>merces</i> , <i>edis</i> , <i>f. recompense.</i>	<i>requies</i> , <i>etis</i> (acc. <i>requiem</i> ), <i>f. rest, relaxation.</i>	

REMARK 2. Contrary to the general rule (§ 13.), some names of cities in *o* remain *masculine*, as : *Croto* ; also, those in *as*, *G. antis*, as : *Taras*, *antis*, *Tarentum* ; those in *es*, *G. etis*, as : *Tunes*, *etis*, *Tunis*, and those in *us*, *G. untis*, as : *Selinus*, *untis*.

XL. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

<i>Assyria</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f. Assyria.</i>	<i>amoenus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>pleasant.</i>	<i>existimo</i> 1. <i>I judge, regard as.</i>
<i>senātor</i> , <i>ōris</i> , <i>m. senator.</i>	<i>eburneus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>of ivory, ivory.</i>	<i>judico</i> 1. <i>I judge, regard as.</i>
<i>scipio</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , <i>m. a staff.</i>	<i>regius</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>royal.</i>	<i>nomino</i> 1. <i>I call.</i>
<i>legio</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , <i>f. a legion.</i>	<i>resonus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>reverberating.</i>	<i>habeo</i> 2. <i>I have, regard as.</i>
<i>imāgo</i> , <i>inis</i> , <i>image.</i>	<i>superbus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>proud,</i>	<i>maneo</i> 2. <i>I remain.</i>
<i>insigne</i> , <i>is</i> , <i>n. badge.</i>	<i>magnificens</i> .	
<i>caput</i> , <i>itis</i> , <i>n. head.</i>		
<i>chief city.</i>		
<i>aeternus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>eternal.</i>		

3) *Os* :

*Cōs*, *ōtis*, *f. a flint-stone, whetstone.*  
*dōs*, *ōtis*, *f. dowry, portion.*  
*ōs*, *ossis*, *n. a bone*, (*pl. ossa*, *ium*).  
*ōs*, *ōris*, *n. the countenance, brow, mouth.*

4) *Er* :

*Acer*, *ēris*, *n. a maple-tree.*  
*cadāver*, *ēris*, *n. a corpse.*  
*cicer*, *ēris*, *n. a chick-pea.*  
*iter*, *itinēris*, *n. a way, journey, march.*  
*linter*, *tris*, *f. a boat, skiff.*  
*papāver*, *ēris*, *n. a poppy.*  
*piper*, *ēris*, *n. pepper.*  
*siler*, *ēris*, *n. the willow.* [*res*, *m*].  
*siser*, *ēris*, *n. a carrot* (but *pl. sise-spinther*, *ēris*, *n. a bracelet.*  
*suber*, *ēris*, *n. the cork-tree.*  
*tuber*, *ēris*, *n. tumor, hump.*  
*uber*, *ēris*, *n. a dug, udder.*  
*ver*, *ēris*, *n. the spring.*  
*verber*, (commonly *plur. verbēra*),  
*n. stripes, blows.*  
*zingiber*, *ēris*, *n. ginger.*

(Comp. §§ 84, 89. 5.)

Pavo vocatur superbus. Echo resōna ab Horatio vocis imāgo vocatur. Hirundinem vocamus garrulam. Legiōnum Romanarum glōria manet aeterna. Babylōn, caput Assyriae, nominatur superba. Mala consuetūdo saepe hominibus existit perniciosā. Scipio eburneus insigne regium habetur. Regiōnes montium plenas judicamus amoenas. Senatorum ordo existimatur sanctus.

The peacock we call proud. Horace calls the reverberating echo the image of the voice. Swallows are called loquacious. Babylon, the chief city of Assyria, writers call proud. The citizens regard the order of senators as sacred. The ivory staff we regard as a royal badge. Avoid, O boys, a bad practice! The bravery of the Roman legions is extolled by (ab) writers. This region is very pleasant.

### XLI. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Pugna navālis, <i>naval</i>	natio, ōnis, <i>f. nation.</i>	firmus, a, um, <i>firm.</i>
battle.	origo, iūis, <i>f. origin.</i>	modestus, a, um, <i>mod-</i>
vacca, ae, <i>f. cow.</i>	papilio, ōnis, <i>m. butter-</i>	est.
fluvius, i, <i>m. river.</i>	fly. [thage.	opulentus, a, um, <i>pow-</i>
vitulus, i, <i>m. calf.</i>	Carthāgo, īnis, <i>f. Car-</i>	erful, rich.
vitulinus, a, um, <i>of calf.</i>	Croto, ōnis, <i>m. Croton.</i>	pallidus, a, um, <i>pale,</i>
agger, ēris, <i>m. a ram-</i>	amplus, a, um, <i>spaciōus,</i>	livid.
part.	extended, liberal.	sapidus, a, um, <i>sapid.</i>
honus, ōris, <i>m. honor,</i>	conspiciūs, a, um, <i>con-</i>	ruher, bra, brum, <i>red.</i>
post of honor.	spicuous.	hostilis, e, <i>hostile.</i>
procēres, um, <i>m. chief</i>	extrēmus, a, um, <i>outer-</i>	effundo, <i>I pour forth.</i>
men.	most, last.	

Croto erat clarus. Carthago opulenta erat. Caro vitulina tenēra est. Multarum natiōnum ac gentium origo obscura est. A deo omnia originem suam ducunt. Fluvius super extrēmum marginem effunditur. Portae cardines sunt firmi. Harpagōne ferrēo in pugna navāli hostiles naves petuntur. Discolōres papiliōnes sunt pulchri.

Milo (Milo, ōnis) was a citizen of the renowned Croton. Writers call Carthage powerful. The origin of the Roman nation is obscure. Upon (in) the remotest margin of the river there are many trees. The hinges of the door are iron. The variegated butterfly is beautiful. The grappling hooks are of iron.

Multae procērae arbōres in silva sunt. Procēres honōrum dignitāte conspicui sunt. Sorōres fratribus carae sunt. Marmor est splendidum. Corda rubra sunt. Camporum aequor amplum est. Ador matūrum est. Mores hominum varii sunt. Dura cōte acūmus secūrim ferrēam. Filia a parentibus amplā dote donātur. Durum est ōs. Juvēnis ōs

modestum esse debet. Ver nobis gratum est. Multae lintres in fluvio sunt. Mater liberis cara est. Garruli sunt anseres. Hostes circa urbem aggere altum extruunt. Cadavera sunt pallida. Zingiber est sapidum. Vacca vitulo turgida ubera praebet.

High trees surround the house of my father. The udder of the cow is swollen. The corpse is pale. A high rampart is built by (ab) the enemies around the city. The heart is red. The bones are hard. The countenances of men are various. The goose is cackling (= loquacious). The good customs of men are praised, the bad are censured. With delight we take a walk in (abl.) the spring over (per) the extended surface of the pleasant plains. Splendid marble adorns the palace (= house) of the king. Whetstones are hard. The parents present the daughter a liberal dowry. The pleasant spring exhilarates our minds. On (in) the pond in (gen.) our garden, are many and beautiful boats.

XLII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Camelus, i, m. camel.	domesticus, a, um, domestic.	pilosus, a, um, covered with hair, hairy.
condimentum, i, n. seasoning.	mestic, private.	
membrum, i, n. member.	fessus, a, um, wearied.	pretiosus, a, um, precious, costly.
paries, etis, m. wall, (of house).	honestus, a, um, honorable.	crudelis, e, cruel.
celebritas, atis, f. course, multitude.	nocturnus, a, um, nocturnal.	excölo 3. I cultivate.
		infigo 3. (with dat.) I inflict upon.

Sorores meae spinthera aurea habent. Iter est longum. Siser est dulce. Silera sunt utilia. Camelus habet tubera pilosa. Subera sunt dura. Piper est acre. Papavera rubra sunt pulchra. Cicera parva sunt. Acera sunt dura. Crudelis homo equo dura verbera fusti infligit. Orator non intra domesticos parietes excolitur, sed in luce vitae et hominum celebritate. Aera varia sunt. Campi segete laeta ornantur. Compedes durae sunt. Laborum requies grata est. Quiete nocturna hominum fessa membra recreantur. Merces laborum honesta existimatur.

The sharp pepper and sapid ginger are regarded as the seasonings of food (plur.) The walls of this house are high. The brass is splendid. The carrot is sweet. The cork tree is hard. Chickpeas are round. The ass endures hard blows patiently. Maple trees are hard. My sister has a golden bracelet. Long is the way through precepts, short and effectual through examples. The red poppy is beautiful. The willow is useful. Recompense for (gen.) labor (pl.) we regard as

honorable. Nocturnal rest refreshes the wearied limbs of men. Iron fetters press tender feet. Sleep is an agreeable (*gratus, a, um*) relaxation from (*gen.*) cares. The hump of the camel is hairy. Joyful crops adorn the plains of the extended country. The willow is useful.

### § 39. *Feminine.*

Of the *feminine* gender are nouns in: *as, is, aus, us, G. ūtis* or *udis, x*, those in *s* with a consonant before it and *parisyllables* (§ 18. Rem. 4.) in *es*.

EXAMPLES. 1) *As*: *aest-as calida, a warm summer*; 2) *Is*: *av-is pulchra, a beautiful bird*; 3) *Aus, l-aus magna, great praise*; 4) *Us, G. ūtis, udis*: *juvent-ūs (ūtis) laeta, joyful youth, inc-ūs (ūdis) ferrea, iron anvil, pal-ūs, (ūdis) alta, deep pool, pec-ūs (ūdis), single head of cattle, but pecūs, pecōris (cattle)*; 5) *X*: *lu-x clara, clear light*; 6) *S* with a consonant before it: *hie-ms aspēra, rough winter*; 7) *Es* in *parisyllables*: *nub-es nigra, black cloud*.

### EXCEPTIONS.

#### 1) *As*:

Three are *masculine* in *as*:  
*As, adāmas* and *elēphas*,  
And one is *neuter* namely, *vas*.

#### 1) *As*:

*Adāmas, antis, m. a diamond.*  
*as, assis, m. an as (a coin).*  
*elēphas, antis, m. (commonly elephantus, i, m.) elephant.*  
*vas, āsis, n. a vessel, vase.*

#### 2) *Is*:

*Masculine* are these in *is*:  
*Panis, piscis, crinis, finis,*  
*Ignis, lapis, pulvis, cinis,*  
*Orbis, amnis* and *canālis,*  
*Sanguis, unguis, glis, annālis,*  
*Fascis, axis, funis, ensis,*  
*Fustis, vectis, vermis, mensis,*  
*Postis, follis, cucūmis,*  
*Cassis, callis, collis,*  
*Sentis, caulis, pollis.*

*cucūmis, ěris, m. a cucumber.*  
*ensis, is, m. a sword.*  
*fascis, is, m. a bundle.*  
*finis, is, m. the end;*  
*plur. borders, territory.*  
*follis, is, m. bellows.*  
*funis, is, m. a rope, cable.*  
*fustis, is, m. a club.*

#### 2) *Is*:

*Amnis, is, m. a river.*  
*axis, is, m. an axletree.*  
*callis, is, m. a foot-path, path.*  
*canālis, is, m. canal, water-course.*  
*cassis, generally plur. casses, ium,*  
*m. hunter's net. [cabbage.*  
*caulis, is, m. a stalk, cabbage-stalk,*  
*cinis, ěris, m. ashes.*  
*collis, is, m. a hill.*  
*crinis, is, m. hair.*

*glis, iris, m. a dormouse.*  
*ignis, is, m. fire.*  
*lapis, ědis, m. a stone.*  
*mensis, is, m. a month.*  
*orbis, is, m. a circle.*  
*panis, is, m. bread.*  
*piscis, is, m. a fish.*  
*pollis, ěnis, m. fine flour*  
*(Nom. wanting).*  
*postis, is, m. a post.*  
*pulvis, ěris, m. dust.*  
*sanguis, ěnis, m. blood.*  
*sentis, is, m. a bramble,*  
*generally plur. sentes, a thorn bush.*  
*unguis, is, m. a nail,*  
*claw.*  
*vectis, is, m. a lever,*  
*bolt.*  
*vermis, is, m. worm.*



Scrobis, is, a *pit* and torquis, a *neck-chain* are mostly Masc. but sometimes Feminine.

## 3) X:

*Masculine* there are in *x*,  
*Fornix, onyx* and *cālix*,  
*Varix, calyx, coccyx, oryx*,  
*Tradux, bombyx*, also *sorix*;  
 Add to these most in *ex*,  
*Grexx, āpex, codex*, and *murexx*,  
*Gaudex, frutex, pollex, pulex*,  
*Sorex, verrex*; and then in *ax*  
 All Greek nouns, except *climax*.

## 3) X:

*Apex, īcis, m. a tuft, summit.*  
*bombyx, ŷcis, m. the silk-worm.*  
*calix, īcis, m. a cup.*  
*calyx, ŷcis, m. a bud, shell.*  
*caudex, īcis, m. trunk of a tree.*  
*climax, ācis, f. a ladder, climax.*  
*coccyx, ŷgis, m. a cuckoo.*  
*codex, īcis, m. a book.*  
*fornix, īcis, m. arch, vault.*

<i>frutex, īcis, m. a shrub,</i> <i>plur. a thicket.</i>	<i>onyx, ŷchis, m. the onyx.</i>	<i>sorix or sourix, īcis, m.</i> <i>a kind of owl.</i>
<i>grexx, ēgis, m. a flock,</i> <i>crowd.</i>	<i>oryx, ŷgis, m. the gazelle.</i>	<i>tradux, ūcis, m. a vine-</i> <i>branch.</i>
<i>murexx, īcis, m. a pur-</i> <i>ple fish, purple.</i>	<i>pollex, īcis, m. thumb.</i>	<i>varix, īcis, m. a varix.</i>
	<i>pulex, īcis, m. a flea.</i>	<i>verrex, ēcis, m. a wether.</i>
	<i>sorex, īcis, m. field-</i> <i>mouse.</i>	

REMARK. Styx, Stygis, a river in the lower world, contrary to the general rule (§ 13.) is of the *feminine* gender.

## 4) Es parisyllable:

*Masculine parisyllables* in *es*,  
 Are only two: *pālumbes* and *vē-*  
*pres.*

## 4) Es parisyllable:

*palumbes, is, m. wood-pigeon.*  
*vepres, is, m. a bramble.*

## 5) S with a consonant before it.

*Masculine* are in *ons* and *ens*,  
*Fons, mons, pons, dens, conflūens*,  
*Bidens, tridens, occīdens*,  
*Rudens, torrens, oriens*;  
 Two in *ops* and *ybs*,  
*Hydrops* and *chālybs*.

## 5) S with a consonant before it.

*bidens, tis, m. a hoe, mattock.*  
*chalybs, ŷbis, m. steel.*  
*conflūens, tis, m. a confluence.*  
*dens, tis, m. a tooth.*  
*fons, tis, m. a fountain.*  
*hydrops, ōpis, m. dropsy.*

<i>mons, tis, m. a moun-</i> <i>tain.</i>	<i>sun-rise, the east, east-</i> <i>ern countries.</i>	<i>torrens, (scil amnis), a</i> <i>torrent, impetuous</i> <i>stream.</i>
<i>occīdens, (sc. sol), tis,</i> <i>m. sun-set, the west,</i> <i>western countries.</i>	<i>pons, tis, m. a bridge.</i>	<i>tridens, tis, m. a trident.</i>
<i>oriens (sc. sol), tis, m.</i>	<i>rudens, (sc. funis), tis</i> <i>m. a rope, cable.</i>	

## XLIII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

<i>Nummus, i, m. money.</i>	<i>Tibēris, is, m. Tiber.</i>	<i>Venus, ēris, f. Venus.</i>
<i>aurum, i, n. gold.</i>	<i>anas, ātis, f. a duck.</i>	<i>angustus, a, um, nar-</i> <i>row, contracted.</i>
<i>Albis, is, m. Elbe.</i>	<i>cassis, idis, f. helmet.</i>	

flavus, a, um, *yellow*, occultus, a, um, *con-* gesto 1. *I carry, bear.*  
*flaxen.* *cealed.* cresco 3. *I grow.*  
 latus, a, um, *broad.* sordidus, a, um, *foul.* volvo 3. *I roll; volvor,*  
 limpīdus, a, um, *clear.* sacer, cra, crum, *sacred.* *I am rolled, roll.*

Anas timīda est. Veritas auro digna est. Albis latus habet ripas fecundas. Tibēris est flavus. Aprilis sacer est Venēri. As Romanus parvus est nummus. Adāmas durissimus est. Vās est aurēum. Imperātor aurēam casside[m] gestat. Multae aves pulchre canunt. Venātor in alto colle occultos casses tendit. In patris horto multi cucumēres crescunt. Amnis est limpīdus. Amnis altus multos alit pisces. Callis est angustus. Multi parvi vermes in sordīdo pulvĕre volvuntur. Validi sunt portārum postes. Vectis est ferrĕus.

The Elbe is broad. The worm is small. These paths are very narrow. Many fish are in that clear river. That gate has strong posts. The ducks are timid. The general wears (= bears) a golden neck-chain. This river is broad and deep. The cucumbers in the garden of my father, are ripe. Diamonds are very hard. The rivers are clear. These cucumbers are ripe. These hills are very high. Upon that high hill the nets concealed by the hunter are spread. The helmet of the general is of gold (= golden). These vases are very beautiful. In this wood are many birds. These bolts are of iron (= iron). Old age is strong, youth weak. Anvils are of iron (= iron). These pools are very deep.

#### XLIV. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Bibliothēca, ae, f. <i>library.</i>	Apollo, inis, m. <i>Apollo.</i>	triticĕus, a, um, of <i>wheat, wheaten.</i>
chora, ae, f. <i>chord.</i>	Juno, ōnis, f. <i>Juno.</i>	universus, a, um, <i>the whole.</i>
columba, ae, f. <i>dove.</i>	ovis, is, f. <i>sheep.</i>	asper, ĕra, ĕrum, <i>rough.</i>
ecclesia, ae, f. <i>church.</i>	densus, a, um, <i>dense.</i>	collustro 1. <i>I illuminate.</i>
India, ae, f. <i>India.</i>	excelsus, a, um, <i>lofty.</i>	dilacĕro 1. <i>I tear in pieces.</i>
rosa, ae, f. <i>rose.</i>	ferus, a, um, <i>wild.</i>	excito 1. <i>I excite, raise.</i>
musicus, i, m. <i>musician.</i>	frondōsus, a, um, <i>leafy.</i>	converto 3. <i>I turn around.</i> [forth.
Vesuvius, i, m. <i>Vesuvius.</i>	ignĕus, a, um, <i>fiery.</i>	evōmo 3. <i>I emit, belch</i>
sarmentum, i, n. <i>twig, branch.</i>	lapidĕus, a, um, of <i>stone.</i>	tango 3. <i>I touch.</i>
solum, i, n. <i>the ground.</i>	opĭmus, a, um, <i>fat.</i>	
	rapidus, a, um, <i>rapid.</i>	
	tortus, a, um, <i>twisted.</i>	

Leo tenĕram ovem ungue acūto dilacĕrat. Sanguis ruber est. Miles ense[m] ferrĕum gestat. Torquis est aurĕus. Sentes aspĕri sunt. Scrobis est altus. Panis triticĕus est dulcis. Universus terrārum orbis sole collustratur. Mensis Junius a Junōne nomen habet. Oc-

cultus est canālis. Lapīdes sunt duri. Ignis magnus in monte alto excitatur. Follis est plenus venti. Fustis est durus. Funis tortus est. Hostes in fines nostros irrumpunt. Mors omnium malorum certus finis est. E silvis multi sarmentōrum fascēs portantur. Poëtae Apollīni flavos crines tribūunt. Vesuvius ignēos cinēres evōmit. Caudes tenēri sunt. Terra circum axem suum summā celeritātē convertitur.

The teeth of the lion are sharp. The tender sheep are torn in pieces by (ab) the lions. Man has red blood. Axle-trees are round. The sword is sharp. This cabbage is tender. From Vesuvius, fiery ashes are belched forth. Avoid ye the rough thorn-bushes. The end of life is uncertain. The soldiers defend our borders against (contra) the enemies. Flaxen hair (plur.) is given to Apollo by (ab) the poets. This bread is good, that bad. The ropes are twisted. The sun illuminates the whole circle of the world. The clubs are hard. The month [of] June is very pleasant. The bellows are full of wind (gen.). The enemies raised a great fire in the city. The canals are concealed. High stones surround that way. Bundles [of twigs] *bound with laurel* (laureatus, a, um), with the Romans, were a badge of a victorious (victor, ōris) general. ✕

Nox est nigra. Leges sunt justae. In excelso montis apīce est turris alta. Pulcēs molesti vexant columbam. Magnus avium grex petit frutices frondōsos. Vervēces opīmi sunt. Timīdos *sorices* petunt avidi *sorices*. In India sunt multi bombyces. Tradūces tenēros solo insērimus. Murex est pretiosus. Varices sanguinis pleni sunt. Musīcus docto pollice tangit chordas. Orýges sunt velocissimi. Onyx est pulcherrimus. Alti sunt ecclesiae fornices. In bibliothēca regis magnus optimorum codicum numērus est. Rosae calyx pulcher est. Calix est plenus vini.

The cups are full of wine (gen.) The nights are dark (= black). Just laws are salutary to the state. My father has many books. On (in) the plains are many flocks of (gen.) sheep. The shrubs are leafy. In the church are high arches. Onyxes are very beautiful. Silkworms are very useful. The varix is full of blood (gen.). Vine-branches are tender. Purple-fishes are very costly. Field-mice are very timid. Husband-men have many wethers. The depressed (pressus, a, um) thumb was a sign of favor (favor, ōris) to the Romans. The trunks of trees are *full of branches* (= branchy, *ramōsus, a, um*). The gazelle is very swift. The wealthy husbandmen nourish many flocks of (gen.) sheep.

Nubes sunt nigrae. Palumbes sunt timīdi. Vepres sunt densi. Hiems est aspēra. Limpīdus fons in alto monte est. Super rapīdum torrentem pons lipidēus ducit. Omnes ferae bestiae duos et acūtos dentes habent. Durus est chalybs. Multi nautae ab extrēmo oriente ad extrēmum occidentem navigant. Rudentes torti sunt. Neptūnus magnum tridentem gestat.

The cloud is black. The wood-pigeon is timid. The cable is twisted. Dense brambles surround the clear fountain. This bridge is of stone. Many wares are carried (vehēre) by (ab) the traders, from the remotest east to (ad) the remotest west and from the remotest west to the remotest east. The teeth of wild beasts are hard and sharp. Torrents are rapid. The rough winter is disagreeable. Clear fountains are upon that high mountain. Steel is very hard.

### § 40. Neuter.

Of the *neuter* gender are nouns in: *a, e, c, l, en, ar, ur, ut, us*, G. *ēris, ōris, ūris*.

EXAMPLES: 1) *A*: poēm-*a* pulchrum, *a beautiful poem*; 2) *E*: mar-*e* magnum, *a great sea*; 3) *C*: only *la-c* (lact-is), and *ale-c* (ēcis), end in this letter, as: lac tepidum, *warm milk*, alec sapīdum, *salt fish-brine*; 4) *L*: fe-*l* amārum, *bitter gall*; 5) *En* nom-*en* clarum, *a renowned name*; 6) *Ar*: calc-*ar* acūtum, *a sharp spur*; 7) *Ur*: rob-*ur* (ōris) magnum, *great strength*; 8) *Ut*: caput humānum, *a human head*; 9) *Us*: gen-*us* (ēris) clarum, *a renowned race*.

### EXCEPTIONS:

From the *neuter* are rejected,  
By the *masculine* accepted,  
Two in *l*: *sol* and *sal*,  
With four in *en*:  
*Rēn, splēn, pectēn, liēn*.  
*Masculine* too are three in *ur*:  
*Furfur, turtur* and *vultur*;  
Add to these two words in *us*:  
*Lepus, lepōris* and *mus*.  
But *feminine* there is in *us*,  
Barely the single word *tellūs*.

*Furfur, ūris, m. bran.*  
*lepūs, ōris, m. a hare.*  
*lien, ēnis, m. (ancient form for splen), the spleen.*  
*mus, uris, m. mouse.*  
*pectēn, inis, m. comb.*  
*rēn, commonly plur. rēnes, kidney.*  
*sal, is, m. salt, wit.*  
*sol, is, m. sun.*  
*splēn, ēnis, m. spleen.*  
*tellūs, ūris, f. the earth.*  
*turtūr, ūris, m. turtle-dove.*  
*vultur, ūris, m. a vulture.*

REMARK. Contrary to the general rule (§ 13.) the names of cities in *e* remain *neuter*, as: Praeneste, and besides, Anxur, Tibur; also, robur, ōris, *live-oak*.

## XLV. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Liber, bri, <i>m. book.</i>	fulgur, ūris, <i>n. light-</i>	pavidus, a, um, <i>shy.</i>
lector, ōris, <i>m. reader.</i>	ning.	rutilus, a, um, <i>fiery red.</i>
lepor, ōris, <i>m. pleasant-</i>	Atticus, a, um, <i>Attic.</i>	mollis, e, <i>soft.</i>
ry, jest.	dentatus, a, um, <i>toothed.</i>	perrōdo 3. <i>I gnaw</i>
Hannibal, ālis, <i>m. Han-</i>	festivus, a, um, <i>delicate.</i>	through.
nibal.	jocōsus, a, um, <i>facetious.</i>	

Calcaria sunt acūta. Sol igneus est. Sal est sapius. Sales Plauti, poetae comici Romanorum sunt, valde jocos. Splen tener est. Renes humidi sunt. Pecten est dentatus. Fulgur est rutilum. Hannibalis nomen est clarum. Furfur triticus est mollissimus. Vultures saevi unguibus dilacerant turtures pavidos. Juvenum corpora sunt valida. Timidos lepores venator quaerit in silvis, festivos lepores lector in libris. Mures parvi saepe validos muros perrūdunt.

The sapid salt serves (= is) for many dishes (= foods) for seasoning. Attic wit (plur.) is extolled by writers. Vultures are destructive to turtle-doves. Mice are very small. Turtle-doves and wood-pigeons are very shy. Hares are very swift. The warm sun illuminates the whole circle of the earth. Combs are toothed.

## § 41. Of the gender of the Fourth Declension.

*Us* of the fourth is *masculine*,  
*And u* is of the *neuter* kind;  
 But *feminine* there are in *us*:  
*Tribus, acus, porticus,*  
*Domus, idus* and *manus*.

Tribus, ūs, <i>f. tribe, com-</i>	domus, us, <i>f. house,</i>	May, July and Oct.,
pany.	palace.	but 13th of the oth-
acus, ūs, <i>f. needle.</i>	idus, uum, <i>f. the Ides</i>	er months).
porticus, ūs, <i>f. portico.</i>	(15th day of March,	manus, ūs, <i>f. hand.</i>

## XLVI. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Anus, ūs, <i>old man.</i>	Juppiter, Jovis, <i>m. Ju-</i>	urbanus, a, um, <i>of the</i>
nurus, ūs, <i>daughter-in-</i>	piter (abl. Jove).	city.
law.	marmorēus, a, um, <i>of</i>	certo 1. <i>I contend.</i>
socrus, ūs, <i>mother-in-</i>	marble, marble.	aut, or; aut—aut, <i>either—</i>
law.	rusticus, a, um, <i>of the</i>	er—er.
	country.	

Magnificam regis domum amplae et marmorae ornant porticus. Tribus sunt aut urbanae, aut rusticae. In silva sunt multae vetustae

et altae quercus. Anus sunt garrulae. Socribus carae sunt nurus bonae. Puella acutam acum perita manu regit. Cum rusticis tribubus certant urbanae.

The magnificent palace of the king is adorned with (abl.) spacious and marble porticos. The royal palaces are surrounded by (abl.) high pines. The portico of the royal palace is very magnificent. Dogs guard our houses. The king is building (= builds) a very magnificent palace. The Ides are sacred to Jupiter.

#### PROMISCUOUS EXAMPLES FROM ALL THE DECLENSIONS.

#### XLVII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Aquila, ae, <i>f. eagle.</i>	jēcūr, jecōris or jeci-	vis, <i>f. power, force, quan-</i>
insidiae, arum, <i>f. snares,</i>	nōris, <i>n. liver.</i>	tity, (forms only acc.
<i>ambush.</i>	nix, nīvis, <i>f. snow (abl. e).</i>	vim and abl. vī; <i>pl.</i>
petulantia, ae, <i>f. licen-</i>	pectus, ōris, <i>n. breast.</i>	vires, <i>powers, virium,</i>
tiousness, <i>wayward-</i>	Mars, tis, <i>m. Mars.</i>	etc.).
<i>ness.</i> [cury.	sedes, is, <i>f. a seat.</i>	clausus, a, um, <i>shut up.</i>
Mercurius, i, <i>m. Mer-</i>	sēnex, sēnis, <i>old, old</i>	contentus, a, um, (c.
rusticus, i. <i>m. farmer,</i>	man, (abl. sēne; <i>pl.</i>	abl.), <i>contented.</i>
<i>rustic.</i>	sēnes, sēnum, etc.).	promptus, a, um, <i>ready.</i>
pratū, i. <i>n. meadow.</i>	supellex, ectilis, <i>f.</i>	viridis, e, <i>green.</i>
bilis, is, <i>f. bile.</i>	household-furniture,	compleo 2. <i>I fill.</i>
bos, bōvis, <i>c. ox, cow;</i>	utensils (abl. -e. <i>gen.</i>	tumeo 2. <i>I swell.</i>
<i>pl. bōves, boum, bo-</i>	<i>pl. -ium).</i>	pasco 3. <i>I pasture.</i>
<i>bus or bubus.</i>		

Sapiens parvā supellectile est contentus. Divites magnam habent copiam supellectilium. Juvenilis aetas viget corpōris viribus. In sene valde displicet petulantia. Hiēme terra nivibus completur. A Jove coelum, terrae et maria reguntur. Jecinōra saepe tument bile amārā. Rustici multos boum greges alunt. Agricōlae bobus agros arant. Multi homines aliud clausum in pectōre habent, aliud promptum in lingua. Primus hebdomadis dies appellatur dies Lunae, alter dies Martis, tertius dies Mercurii, quartus dies Jovis, quintus dies Venēris, septimus dies Solis.

The powers of the lion are great. To Jupiter the eagle is sacred. There are various kinds of house-furniture (pl.). Keep, O boys, in (abl.) memory, the precepts of wise old men. Modest manners (= customs) please in the boy, the young man and the old man. In the months November and December the clouds discharge a great quantity (vis) of (gen.) rain (plur.) and snow. In the liver is the seat of anger. Lions

prepare snares for cows. Upon (in) the green meadows are pastured a great herd of (gen.) cows.

XLVIII. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Praemium, i, n. <i>reward.</i>	voluntas, âtis, f. <i>will.</i>	lavo 1. <i>I wash.</i>
principium, i, n. <i>beginning.</i>	casus, ūs, m. <i>fall, calamity, chance.</i>	immineo 2. <i>I threaten.</i>
vinculum, i, n. <i>bond, chain.</i>	consensus, ūs, m. <i>agreement.</i>	eligo 3. <i>I choose.</i>
hebdomas, âdis, f. <i>week.</i>	arduus, a, um, <i>difficult.</i>	quotidie, <i>adv. daily.</i>
vitiositas, âtis, f. <i>vice.</i>	appello 1. <i>I call.</i>	autem, <i>conj. but.</i>
		an (in questions), <i>or.</i>

Certus amicus in re incerta cernitur. Manus manum lavat. Honos praemium virtutis est. Mors propter incertos casus quotidie nobis imminet. Omnium rerum a deo immortalis principia ducuntur. Nulum est certius amicitiae vinculum, quam consensus et societas consiliorum et voluntatum. Duae sunt vitae viae: virtutis et vitiositatis; alterutram eligere debes, o puer!

Firm (= certain) friends are seen in an uncertain thing. There are two ways of life, of virtue and of vice; the way of the one (alter) is troublesome and difficult, but leads to a peaceful life; the way of the other (alter) is easy and agreeable, but leads to a wretched life; which way (utra via = *which of the two ways*) dost thou choose, [that] of virtue, or [that] of vice?

## THIRD COURSE.

### CHAPTER I.

#### Of the Verb.

#### § 42. *Classes of verbs, (§ 6, 2.).*

a) *Active verbs*, or the form expressing *activity*, as: *laudo, floreo*; those active verbs which take an object in the *accusative*, are called *transitive*, as: *laudo puerum*; all other active verbs are called *intransitive*, as: *floreo, dormio, pareo* (alicui), *gaudeo* (de aliqua re).

b) *Passive verbs*, or the form expressing *passivity* or the *receiving of an action*.

c) *Deponent verbs* are such as have the *passive* form but the *active* signification.

### § 43. *Tenses of the Verb.*

- I. 1) Present, am-o, *I love*,  
 2) Perfect, am-ā-vi, *I have loved*;
- II. 3) Imperfect, am-ā-bam, *I loved, was loving*,  
 4) Pluperfect, am-ā-vēram, *I had loved*;
- III. 5) Future (simple), am-ā-bo, *I shall love*,  
 6) Future Perfect, am-ā-vēro, *I shall have loved*.

REMARK. The Pres., the Perf. and the two Futures are called *principal tenses*, the others *historical* or *narrative tenses*.—The Perf. in Latin, is used in a two-fold way; a) like the English Perf. as: *deus mundum creavit*, (God *has created* the earth); b) like the English Imperf. in *narrating*, as: *Romulus Roman condidit*, (Romulus *built* Rome). In the first case it is called the Perf. *present*, and is considered as belonging to the *principal tenses*, in the last the Perf. *historical*, and belongs to the *historical tenses*.

### § 44. *Modes of the Verb.*

I. The Indicative, which expresses a *fact, phenomenon, reality*, as: the rose *blooms, bloomed, will bloom*;

II. The Subjunctive, which expresses what is *imagined, supposed, conceived of*, as: *he may come, he might come notwithstanding*;

III. The Imperative, which is used in *direct expressions of the will*, as: *hear thou, teach thou*.

### § 45. *Infinitive, Participle, Supine, Gerund and Gerundive.*

Besides the Modes, the verb has the following forms:

- a) The Infinitive, which is of an intermediate nature between the verb and the noun, as: *cupio te adspicere*, *I desire to see thee* (comp. *cupio adspectum tui*, *I desire a sight of thee*);
- b) The Participle, which presents the idea of the verb in the form of an adjective, as: *puer scribens* (the boy *writing*), *filia amata* (the daughter *beloved*);
- c) The Supine in *um* and *u*, which presents the idea of



the verb in the form of a noun in either the Acc. or Abl. case, as: *canes venatum duco, I take the dogs to hunt* (to hunting,) or, *res est jucunda auditu, the thing is pleasant to hear* (in the hearing);

- d) The Gerund, which also presents the idea of the verb under the form of a noun, and indeed, in all the cases, as: Nom. *scribendum est, we (one) must write*, Gen. *ars scribendi, the art of writing*, or *to write*, Dat. *scribendo aptus est, fit for writing*, or *to write*, Acc. with a preposition, *inter scribendum, while writing*, Abl. *scribendo exerceor, I am exercised by (in, etc.) writing*;
- e) The Gerundive (or Part. Fut. Pass.), which presents the idea of the verb in an adjective form, precisely as the Gerund presents it in a substantive form, as: *epistola scribenda est, the letter is to be written*, and so through all the cases.

REMARK. The Indicative, Subjunctive and Imperative are called the *finite* or *definite* verb, because they always refer to a definite subject; the Inf. Part. Sup. Ger. and Gerundive, on the contrary, are called the *indefinite* verb, because these forms, on account of their meaning, do not admit of such a reference.

#### § 46. *Persons and Numbers of the Verb.*

The verb has, like the noun, two numbers, Sing. and Plur., and three persons both in the Sing. and in the Plur., as: *I, thou, he (she, it)* and *we, you, they*, which are expressed by the endings, as: *scrib-imus, we write*.

REMARK. Those verbs which are used only in the third person Sing. are called Impersonal verbs, as: *pluit, it rains, tonat, it thunders*.

#### § 47. *Conjugation.*

Conjugation is the inflection of a verb according to its Persons, Numbers, Modes, Tenses and Voice. The Latin language has *four* Conjugations, which are distinguished according to the ending of the Inf. as follows:

I. Conj.:	—āřě, as: am-āřě, <i>to love</i> ,	Characteristic: ā
II. “	—ēřě, “ mon-ēřě, <i>to admonish</i> ,	“ ē
III. “	—ěřě, “ reg-ěřě, <i>to govern</i> ,	“ ě
IV. “	—īřě, “ aud-īřě, <i>to hear</i> .	“ ī.

REM. 1. In parsing a verbal form, the beginner should accustom himself to observe the following order: a) *the person*, b) *the number*, c) *the mode*, d) *the tense*, e) *the voice*, f) *from what verb*, g) *the meaning*. E. g. What kind of a verbal form is *amātis*? *Amātis* is Sec. Pers. Plur. of the Indic. Pres. Act. from the verb: *amo*, *amāvi*, *amātum*, *amāre*, *to love*.

REM. 2. Every verbal form consists of two parts, the stem, which is the ground-form of the verb, remaining unchanged through all its modifications, and the inflection-ending which varies to express the number, person, etc. The last letter of the stem is called the *characteristic* to which the inflection-endings are joined sometimes with and sometimes without change. In the paradigms of the verbs, the characteristic and inflection-endings are printed in italics.

### § 48. Formation of the Tenses.

In every verb there are four forms to be observed, from which, by adding different endings, all the remaining forms are derived, viz.:

1) <i>Ind. Pres. Act.</i>	2) <i>Ind. Perfect Act.</i>	3) <i>Supine.</i>	4) <i>Infinitive Act.</i>
I. <i>amo</i>	<i>amāvi</i>	<i>amātum</i>	<i>amāre</i>
II. <i>moneo</i>	<i>monŭi</i>	<i>monĭtum</i>	<i>monēre</i>
III. <i>rego</i>	<i>rexī</i>	<i>rectum</i>	<i>regĕre</i>
IV. <i>audio</i>	<i>audīvi</i>	<i>audĭtum</i>	<i>audīre</i> .

**A.** From the *Indicative Present Active*: *amo*; *moneo*; *rego*, *capio* (I take); *audio*, as the stem, are derived:

- Indicative Present Passive*: *amor*; *moneor*; *regor*, *capior*; *audior*;
- Subjunctive Present Active* and from this *Subj. Pres. Pass.*: *amem*; *moneam*; *regam*, *capiam*; *audiam*;—*amer*; *monear*; *regar*, *capiar*; *audiar*;
- Fut. Active and Passive*: *regam* (*es*, *et*, etc.), *capiam*; *audiam*;—*regar* (*ēris*, etc.), *capiar*; *audiar*;—*amābo*; *monēbo*;—*amābor*; *monēbor*;
- Indicative Imperfect Active and Passive*: *amābam*; *monēbam*; *regēbam*, *capiēbam*; *audīēbam*;—*amābar*; *monēbar*; *regēbar*, *capiēbar*; *audīēbar*;
- Participle Present Active*: *amans*; *monens*; *regens*, *capiens*; *audiens*;

f) *Gerundive* and *Gerund*: *amandus, amandum; monendus; regendus, capiendus; audiendus.*

B. *Infinitive Active*: *amāre; monēre; regēre, capēre; audire*, as stem, are derived:

- a) *Imperative Active*: *amā; monē; regē, capē; audi*; and *Imperat. Passive*, which agrees in form with the *Infin. Act*: *amāre; monēre; regēre, capēre; audire*;
- b) *Infinitive Present Pass.* of I, II. and IV. *Conj.*: *amāri, monēri, audiri*; the III. *Conj.* adds to the stem the ending *i*: *regi, capi*;
- c) *Subjunct. Imperf. Act. and Passive*: *amārem; monērem; regērem, capērem; audirem*;—*amārer; monērer; regērer; capērer; audirer.*

C. From the *Perfect Active*: *amavi; monui; rexi, cepi; audiui*, as a stem, are derived:

- a) *Subjunctive Perfect Active*: *amavērim; monuērim; rexērim, cepērim; audivērim*;
- b) *Indicative Pluperfect Active*: *amavēram; monuēram; rexēram, cepēram; audivēram*;
- c) *Future Perfect*: *amavēro; monuēro; rexēro, cepēro; audivēro*;
- d) *Infin. Perf. Act.*: *amavisse; monuisse; rexisse, cepisse; audivisse*;
- e) *Subjunctive Pluperfect Active*: *amavissem; monuisssem; rexissem, cepissem; audivissem.*

D. From the *Supine*: *amātum; monitum; rectum, captum; auditum*, as a stem, are derived:

- a) *Partic. Perf. Pass.*: *amātus; monitus; rectus, captus; auditus*;
- b) *Part. Fut. Act.*: *amatūrus; monitūrus; rectūrus; auditūrus.*

§ 49. *Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb, sum, fui, esse, to be.*

This verb is extensively employed in forming the tenses of the verb in Latin, both by furnishing various endings to the stem of the verb, and by being joined to the participle of the verb. Thus e. g. *amav-istis, you have loved*, is composed of the stem *amav* and *estis* (you are), *amav-eram*, of *amav* and *eram*, so: by *amatus sum, I have loved*, etc.

## INDICATIVE

*sū-m, I am*  
*ēs, thou art*  
*es-t, he, she, it is*  
*sū-mūs, we are*  
*es-tīs, you are*  
*su-nt, they are*

*ēr-ā-m, I was*  
*ēr-ā-s, thou wast*  
*ēr-ā-t, he, she, it was*  
*ēr-ā-mus, we were*  
*ēr-ā-tis, you were*  
*ēr-a-nt, they were*

*fū-i, I have been*  
*fū-istī, thou hast been*  
*fū-it, he, she, it has been*  
*fū-imūs, we have been*  
*fū-istīs, you have been*  
*fū-ērunt (ēre), they have been*

*fū-ērā-m, I had been*  
*fū-ērā-s, thou hadst been*  
*fū-ērā-t, he, she, it had been*  
*fū-ērā-mūs, we had been*  
*fū-ērā-tīs, you had been*  
*fū-ēra-nt, they had been*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## Present.

*sī-m, I may be*  
*sī-s, thou mayest be*  
*sīt, he, she, it may be*  
*sī-mūs, we may be*  
*sī-tīs, you may be*  
*si-nt, they may be.*

## Imperfect.

*es-sē-m, I might be*  
*es-sē-s, thou mightest be*  
*es-sē-t, he, she, it might be*  
*es-sē-mūs, we might be*  
*es-sē-tīs, you might be*  
*es-se-nt, they might be.*

## Perfect.

*fū-ērī-m, I may have been*  
*fū-ērī-s, thou mayest have been*  
*fū-ērī-t, he, she, it may have been;*  
*fū-ērī-mus, we may have been*  
*fū-ērī-tis, you may have been*  
*fū-ērī-nt, they may have been.*

## Pluperfect.

*fū-issē-m, I might have been*  
*fū-issē-s, thou mightest have been*  
*fū-issē-t, he, she, it might have been*  
*fū-issē-mūs, we might have been*  
*fū-issē-tīs, you might have been*  
*fū-isse-nt, they might have been.*

Future Indicative.\*

ēr-ō, *I shall be*  
ēr-ī-s, *thou wilt be*  
ēr-ī-t, *he, she, it will be*

ēr-ī-mūs, *we shall be*  
ēr-ī-tīs, *you will be*  
ēr-u-nt, *they will be.*

Future Perfect Indicative.\*

fū-ērō, *I shall have been*  
fū-ērī-s, *thou wilt have been*  
fū-ērī-t, *he, she, it will have been*

fū-ērī-mūs, *we shall have been*  
fū-ērī-tīs, *you will have been*  
fū-ērī-nt, *they will have been.*

Imperative.

2. ēs, *be thou*  
2. es-tō, *thou shouldst be*  
3. es-tō, *he should be*

2. es tē, *be ye*  
2. es-tōtē, *you should be*  
3. su-ntō, *they should be.*

Infinitive.

Present	essē, <i>to be</i>
Perfect	fuissē, <i>to have been</i>
Future	futūrus, a, um esse, <i>to will be, (that something) will be.</i> The first of these forms is not used in English.

Participle.

Present	only : absens, absent, from <i>absum</i> ; praesens, present, from <i>praesum</i> = praesto <i>sum</i> .
Future.	futūrus, a, um, <i>one who (what) will, is about to be, also, future.</i>

\* The Subj. of the Fut. is wanting. See Rem. 1 to the following table of paradigms.

REM. 1. In the compound *pro-sum* (I benefit), in all the forms where a vowel follows *pro*, *d* is introduced between them, as : *pro-d-esse, pro-d-es, pro-d-est, pro-d-eram, pro-d-ero, pro-d-essem.*

REM. 2. Besides the above-mentioned forms, two others occur, viz. : *forem* (*fores, foret, etc.*), *I would be*, and the corresponding Infin. *fore* instead of *futurum esse*.

XLIX. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Absum, abfui, abesse, prosum, profui, prod-	foris, adv. without.
<i>I am absent, removed from.</i>	esse, <i>I am useful, benefit, (see Rem. 1).</i>
adsum, affui, adesse, concilio l. <i>I unite.</i>	heri, adv. yesterday.
<i>I am present.</i>	longe, adv. far.
intersum, fui, esse, (c. dat.) <i>to be in, present at (something).</i>	perēgre, adv. abroad.
	quamdū, adv. and conj.
	how long ; so (as)
	long as.
	ubi, adv. where.
praesum, fui, esse, <i>I am before, preside over, attend to.</i>	dum, conj. while.
	nisi, conj. unless.
	quum, conj. when, as.

Deus omnibus locis adest. Parvi pretii sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi. Contemnuntur ii, qui nec sibi, nec alteri prosunt. Ut

magistratibus leges, ita populo praesunt magistratus. Ratio et oratio conciliant inter se homines, neque ulla re longius absumus a natura ferarum. Ego laetus sum, tu tristis es. Si sorte vestra contenti estis, beati estis.

Dum ego, tu et amicus in schola *eramus*, sorores nostrae in horto erant. Quum tu et Carolus heri domi nostrae *eratis*, ego perègre eram. Quamdū tu et frater tuus domi nostrae *eratis*, tu laetus eras, sed frater tuus tristis erat. Quamdū tu et pater *aberatis*, ego et frater tristes *eramus*.

Cur heri in schola non fuisti? Quia cum patre perègre fui. Quamdū tu et pater tuus domo abfuistis? Sex menses abfuimus. Cur milites nostri pugnae non interfuerunt? Quia longius abfuērunt. Ubi heri fuēras, quum domi tuae eram?

I am useful to thee, and thou to me. Wherefore are you sad? We are joyful. If thou art contented with thy lot, thou art happy. While I was in the school, my sister was in the garden. As yesterday thou wast at home, I was abroad. Why were (perf.) you not in the school yesterday? because we were (perf.) abroad. How long hast thou been absent from (abl.) home? Ten months (acc.) have I been absent. Where had you been yesterday, as we were in your house? While we and you were in the school, our sisters were in the garden. While you and Charles were in our house yesterday, we were abroad.

#### L. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Desum, defūi, deesse, aetas, ātis, <i>f.</i>	age, gen-	antēa, adv. before.
<i>I am wanting.</i>	eration.	postēa, adv. afterwards.
obsum, fūi, esse, <i>I am</i>	nemo (inīs),	no-body, nuper, adv. lately.
against, injure.	no one.	repente, adv. suddenly.
occūpo 1. <i>I take pos-</i>	aegrōtus, a, um, sick.	propterēa, adv. for this
session of, seize.	avārus, a, um, avari-	reason.
pericūlum, i, <i>n.</i> danger.	cious.	[ble. quo—eo (with compa-
praedium, i, <i>n.</i> farm.	invictus, a, um, invinci-	tive), the — so much
adolescens, tis, <i>m.</i>	atrox, ōcis, terrible,	the.
young man, youth.	bloody.	

Quamdū felix eris, multi tibi erunt amici. Tota civitas in summa laetitia fuērat, quum repente ingens terror omnium animos occūpat. Pugna fuit atrocissima, propterēa quod utriusque exercitus milites fortissimi fuērāt. Ante belli initium in urbe fuerāmus. Demosthēnis aetate multi oratōres magni et clari fuērunt, et antēa fuērāt, nec postēa defuērunt. Ante tres annos apud amicum fui, in cujus praedio nuper per duo menses fuerātis. Haec res non profuit nobis, sed ob-

fuit. Quo minus honoris apud Romanos erat poetis, eo minora studia fuerunt. Si quis virtutis compos erit, semper beatus erit. Quamdiu sorte mea contentus ero, felix ero. Qualis in alios fueris, tales hi in te erunt. Si in hac vita semper virtutis studiosi fuerimus, etiam post mortem beati erimus.

So long as you shall be fortunate, you will not want friends. The upright always benefit the upright. My enemies (*immicus*) have not injured me, but benefited. If men will be virtuous, they will be happy. So long as we shall be contented with our lot, we shall be happy. If men always shall have been virtuous, the reward of virtue will not fail them.

**RULE OF SYNTAX.** In questions, to which the asker expects an answer by *yes* or *no*, the interrogative particle *ne* is attached to the word upon which the emphasis of the question is placed, as: *Fuistine* heri in schola? *wast* thou in school yesterday?

Erasne in schola, quum heri domi tuae eram? Eram. Miserne sapiens erit, quum pauper erit? Non erit. Laetusne, an tristis es? Unusne, an plures sunt mundi? Cur heri in schola non fuisti? Ae-grôtusne fuisti? Non, sed quia cum patre peregre eram. Fuerasne nuper in horto nostro? Deeritne tibi hominum laus, si semper probus fueris?

Were you in school, as\* we were at your house yesterday? Yes (= we were). Will the wise be unhappy, if they shall be poor? No (= they will not be). No one of (*gen.*) us is the very same in old-age, which he was (*perf.*) [as] a young man. Pelopidas was in (*perf.*) all dangers. Aristides was in (*perf.*) the battle of *Salamis* (*pugna Salaminia*). Poets not merely delight, but also benefit us.

Yesterday I was (*perf.*) at thy house, but thou wast abroad. The avaricious in the abundance of all things, will be very poor. Thou, thy father and thy mother have benefited us much (*multum*). We, you and your sister were very joyful yesterday, as we were at your house. Were you yesterday abroad, as I was at your house? Yes (= we were). While my brother was in the garden, I was in the school. Were our soldiers in the battle? No (= they were not in it). We were (*perf.*) not at home yesterday, but abroad.

Our soul after death will be immortal. So long as we shall be contented with our fortune, we shall be happy. Where had you been

---

\* For the reason of using *as* in this and many other places in these exercises, where *when* would seem to be required, see Synt. § 110, 1, 1.—Tr.

yesterday, as I was at your house? We had been abroad. So long as thou hadst been fortunate, *thou hadst had* (= there were to thee) many friends. The more modest thou shalt be, so much the more agreeable thou wilt be to men. If I shall benefit others, they [also] will benefit me.

As (*qualis*) I shall have been to (*in* with acc.) others, so (*talis*) they will be to me. If we shall have benefited others, they [also] will benefit us. If thou, in this life, shalt have zealously pursued virtue, thou shalt also, after death, be happy.

### LI. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Cogito 1. <i>I think, reflect upon.</i>	nescius, a, um, ignorant; non sum nescius, <i>I know perfectly well.</i>	attentus, a, um, attentive.
dubito 1. <i>I doubt.</i>	scius, <i>I know perfectly well.</i>	praeteritus, a, um, past.
pondero 1. <i>I weigh, consider.</i>	parsimonia, ae, f. frugality.	cras, adv. to-morrow.
provideo 2. <i>I foresee; c. dat. look out for.</i>	mens, tis, f. state of mind.	parum, adv. too little.
intelligo 3. <i>I understand.</i>	vectigal, âlis, n. tax, income.	prius, adv. previously.
repeto 3. <i>I run over.</i>	victor, ôris, m. conqueror.	plane, adv. wholly.
scio 4. <i>I know.</i>	or.	ne—quidem, not indeed, not even.
nescio 4. <i>I do not know.</i>		tum, then.
		non solum—sed etiam, not merely, but also.

**RULE OF SYNTAX.** In questions which depend upon a foregoing sentence (*indirect questions*), the *subjunctive\** is always used, as: *Narra mihi, ubi fuëris, relate to me, where thou hast been.*—In indirect questions the enclitic *ne* is translated by *whether*, as: *Dubito, laetusne sis, I doubt, whether thou art joyful.*

*Non sum nescius, qua mente tu et prius in nos fuëris, et nunc sis, et semper futurus sis. Non eram nescius, qua mente tu et prius in nos fuïsses, et tum esses, et semper futurus esses. Qualis sit animus, ipse animus nescit. Deus non est nescius, qua mente quisque sit. Cogita, quantum nobis exempla bona prosint. Prae gaudio, ubi sim, nescio. Non intelligunt homines, quam magnum vectigal sit parsimonia. Non, quantum quisque prosit, sed quanti pretii quisque sit, pondëra. Quo quisque animo futurus sit, nescio. Incertus eram, profuturusne tibi essem. Saepe ne utile quidem est scire, quid futurum sit. Pecunia, honores, valetudo quamdiu affutura sint, incertum est. Incertus eram, et ubi essëtis, et ubi fuissëtis. Narro tibi, et ubi heri fuerimus, et ubi cras futuri simus. Dubitamus, fuerintne milites nostri in pugna laude digni.*

\* As the subjunctive form is not so extensively used in English as in Latin, the Subj. must often be translated into English by the forms of the Indic. as will be seen in the following examples.—Tr.



*Dubium erat, civesne nostri, an hostes in illa pugna victōres fuissent. Dubium erat, profuissetne Alcibiādes patriae suae, an obfuisset.*

What to-day is and yesterday was (perf.), we know ; but what will be to-morrow, we know not. How long we shall be in this life, is uncertain. I knew perfectly well, both of what state of mind towards us you then were, and had been previously, and always would be (= were about to be). I rejoice, when I think, how much you have benefited the state, both now and before, and still will benefit [it]. It was uncertain, where the enemies were and had been, and where they would be.

*Adestōte omnes animis, qui adestis corporibus! Attenti este, discipūli! Homines mortis memōres sunt. Contenti estōte sorte vestrā! Parum provident multi tempōri futūro, sed plane in diem vivunt. Vir prudens non solum praesentia curat, sed etiam praeterita mente repētit et futūra ex praeteritis providet.*

Scholars, not merely with (abl.) the body (plur.), but also with the mind (plur.), should be in the school. Man should be mindful of death.

In school, you should be attentive, O scholars! Thou shouldest be contented with (abl.) thy lot! Men should always be mindful of the precepts of virtue.

## § 50. AC

## Of the four regular

PRELIMINARY REMARK. The following paradigms need not all be

I. Amo, āvi, amātum, amāre. Characteristic : a long.		II. Moneo, monui, monitum, monēre. Characteristic : e long.	
INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
I. Present.		I. Present.	
amō, I love	amē-m, I may love	moneo, I admonish	moneām, I may ad.
amā-s, thou lovest	amē-s, thou mayest love	monēs, thou admon- ishest	moneās, thou may- est admonish
amā-t, he, she, it loves	amē-t, he, she, it may love	monēt, he, she, it admonishes	moneāt, he, she, it may admonish
amā-mūs, we love	amē-mūs, we may love	monēmus, we ad- monish	moneāmus, we may admonish
amā-tis, you love	amē-tis, you may love	monētis, you ad- monish	moneātis, you may admonish
ama-nt, they love	amē-nt, they may love.	monent, they ad- monish	moneant, they may admonish.
II. Imperfect.		II. Imperfect.	
amā-bām, I loved, was loving	amā-rēm, I might love	monēbam, I admon- ished, was ad.	monērem, I might admonish
amā-bās, thou lov- edst, wast loving	amā-rēs, thou mightest love	monēbas, thou ad- monishedst, was a.	monēres, thou mightest ad.
amā-bāt, he, she, it loved, was loving	amā-rēt, he, she, it might love	monēbat, he, she, it admonished, was a.	monēret, he, she, it might admonish
amā-bāmūs, we lov- ed, were loving	amā-rēmūs, we might love	monēbāmus, we ad- monished, were a.	monērēmūs, we might admonish
amā-bātis, you lov- ed, were loving	amā-rētis, you might love	monēbātis, you ad- monished, were a.	monērētis, you might admonish
amā-bant, they lov- ed, were loving	amā-rent, they might love.	monēbant, they ad- monished, were a.	monērent, they might admonish.
III. Future (Indicative). <sup>1</sup>		III. Future (Indicative). <sup>1</sup>	
amā-bō, I shall love		monēbo, I shall admonish	
amā-bis, thou wilt love		monēbis, thou wilt admonish	
amā-bit, he, she, it will love		monēbit, he, she, it will admonish	
amā-bimūs, we shall love		monēbimūs, we shall admonish	
amā-bitis, you will love		monēbitis, you will admonish	
amā-bunt, they will love.		monēbunt, they will admonish.	
IV. Perfect.		IV. Perfect.	
amā-vī, I have lov- ed	amā-(vē)rīm, I may have loved	monuī, I have ad- monished	monuerīm, I may have admonished
amā-(vi)stī, thou hast loved	amā-(vē)rīs, thou mayest have l.	monuisti, thou hast admonished	monueris, thou mayest have ad.
amā-vit, he, she, it has loved	amā-(vē)rīt, he, she, i: may have l.	monuit, he, she, it has admonished	monuerit, he, she, it may have ad.
amā-vimūs, we have loved	amā-(vē)rīmūs, we may have loved	monuimus, we have admonished	monuerimus, we may have ad.
amā-(vi)stis, you have loved	amā-(vē)rītis, you may have loved	monuistis, you have admonished	monueritis, you may have ad.
amā-(vē)runt (vēre), they have loved	amā-(vē)rint, they may have loved.	monuerunt (ēre), they have ad.	monuerint, they may have ad.

TIVE.

Conjugations.

learned at once but in the order of the exercises which follow.

III. Rego, rexi, rectum, regere. Characteristic : <i>e</i> short.		IV. Audio, audiui, auditum, audire. Characteristic : <i>i</i> long.	
INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
I. Present.		I. Present.	
rego, I govern	regā, I may govern	audīo, I hear	audiām, I may hear
regīs, thou govern- est	regās, thou mayest govern	audīs, thou hearest	audiās, thou may- est hear
regīt, he, she, it governs.	regāt, he, she, it may govern	audīt, he, she, it hears	audiāt, he, she, it may hear
regīmus, we govern	regāmus, we may govern	audīmus, we hear	audiāmus, we may hear
regītis, you govern	regātis, you may govern	audītis, you hear	audiātis, you may hear
regunt, they govern	regant, they may govern.	audiunt, they hear	audiant, they may hear.
II. Imperfect.		II. Imperfect.	
regēbam, I govern- ed, was gov.	regērem, I might govern	audiēbam, I heard, was hearing	audiērem, I might hear
regēbas, thou gov- ernedst, wast g.	regēres, thou might- est govern	audiēbas, thou heard est, wast hearing	audiēres, thou mightest hear
regēbat, he, she, it governed, was g.	regēret, he, she, it might govern	audiēbat, he, she, it heard, was h.	audiēret, he, she, it might hear
regēbāmus, we gov- erned, were gov.	regērēmus, we might govern	audiēbāmus, we heard, were h.	audiērēmus, we might hear
regēbātis, you gov- erned, were gov.	regērētis, you might govern	audiēbātis, you heard, were h.	audiērētis, you might hear
regēbant, they gov- erned, were gov.	regērent, they might govern.	audiēbant, they heard, were h.	audiērent, they might hear.
III. Future (Indicative). <sup>1</sup>		III. Future (Indicative). <sup>1</sup>	
regām, I shall govern		audiām, I shall hear	
regēs, thou wilt govern		audiēs, thou wilt hear	
regēt, he, she, it will govern		audiēt, he, she, it will hear	
regēmus, we shall govern		audiēmus, we shall hear	
regētis, you will govern		audiētis, you will hear	
regent, they will govern.		audient, they will hear.	
IV. Perfect.		IV. Perfect.	
rexī, I have govern- ed	rexerim, I may have governed	audiui, (audi) I have heard	audi(v)erim, I may have heard
rexisti, thou hast governed	rexeris, thou may- est have govern.	audi(v)isti, thou hast heard	audi(v)eris, thou mayest have h.
rexit, he, she, it has governed	rexerit, he, she, it may have gov.	audivit, he, she, it has heard	audi(v)erit, he, she, it may have h.
reximus, we have governed	rexerimus, we may have governed	audivimus, we have heard	audi(v)erimus, we may have heard
rexistis, you have governed	rexeritis, you may have governed	audivistis, you have heard	audi(v)eritis, you may have heard
rexerunt (ēre), they have governed	rexerint, they may have governed.	audiverunt (ēre), they have heard	audi(v)erint, they may have heard.

I. Amo, amāvi, amātum, amāre.  
Characteristic : *a* long.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

V. Pluperfect.

amā-(vē)rām, I had loved	amā-(vi)ssēm, I might have loved
amā-(vē)rās, thou hadst loved	amā-(vi)ssēs, thou mightest have l.
amā-(vē)rāt, he, she, it had loved	amā-(vi)ssēt, he, she, it might have l.
amā-(vē)rāmūs, we had loved	amā-(vi)ssēmūs, we might have loved
amā-(vē)rātīs, you had loved	amā-(vi)ssētīs, you might have loved
amā-(vē)rant, they had loved	amā-(vi)ssent, they might have loved.

VI. Future Perfect.<sup>2</sup>

amā-(vē)rō, I shall have loved
amā-(vē)rīs, thou wilt have loved
amā-(vē)rīt, he, she, it will have loved
amā-(vē)rīmus, we shall have loved
amā-(vē)rītīs, you will have loved
amā-(vē)rint, they will have loved.

Imperative.

amā, love thou
amā-to, thou shouldest love
amā-to, he, she, it should love
amā-tē, love ye
amā-tōtē, you should love
amā-nto, they should love.

Supine.

- 1) amā-tūm, in order to love
- 2) amā-tū, to love, be loved.

Infinitive.

Pres. amā-rē, to love
Perf. amā-(vi)ssē, to have loved
Fut. amā-tūrūs, <i>a, um</i> , esse, to will love, <sup>4</sup> (that one) will love.

Participle.

Pres. ama-ns, loving
Fut. amā-turus, <i>a, um</i> , intending, wishing, about to love.

Gerund.

Nom. ama-ndum est, one (we) must l.
Gén. ama-ndi, of loving, or to love
Dat. ama-ndo, to loving, or to love
Acc. ama-ndum (e. g. <i>ad</i> ), loving
Abl. ama-ndo, by loving.

II. Monco, monūi, monitum, monēre.  
Characteristic : *e* long.

INDICATIVE: SUBJUNCTIVE.

V. Pluperfect.

monuēram, I had admonished	monuissēm, I might have admonished
monueras, thou hadst admonished	monuisses, thou mightest have ad.
monuerat, he, she, it had admonish.	monuisset, he, she, it might have ad.
monuerāmūs, we had admonished	monuissēmūs, we might have ad.
monuerātīs, you had admonished	monuissētīs, you might have ad.
monuerant, they had admonished	monuissent, they might have ad.

VI. Future Perfect.<sup>2</sup>

monuēro, I shall have admonished
monueris, thou wilt have admonished
monuerit, he, she, it will have admon.
monuerīmus, we shall have admonished
monuerītīs, you will have admonished
monuerint, they will have admonished.

Imperative.

monē, admonish thou
monēto, thou shouldest admonish
monēto, he, she, it should admonish
monēte, admonish ye
monētōte, you should admonish
monento, they should admonish.

Supine.

- 1) monitum, in order to admonish
- 2) monitu, to admonish, be admon.

Infinitive.

Pres. monēre, to admonish
Perf. monuisse, to have admonished
Fut. moniturus, <i>a, um</i> , esse, to will admonish, (that one) will ad.

Participle.

Pres. monens, admonishing
Fut. moniturus, <i>a, um</i> , intending, wishing, about to admonish.

Gerund.

N. monendum est, one (we) must ad.
G. monendi, of admonishing, or to ad.
D. monendo, to admonishing, or to ad.
A. monendum (e. g. <i>ad</i> ), admonishing
A. monendo, by admonishing.

<sup>1</sup>) The Subjunctive Future is expressed periphrastically : amatūrus, monitūrus, rectūrus, auditūrus (*a, um*) sim, sis, etc., *I will love, thou wilt love*, etc., or amaturus, etc., essem, *I would love*. <sup>2</sup>) Also the Future Perfect has no Subjunctive.

III. *Rego, rexi, rectum, regere.*  
Characteristic: *e* short.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

V. *Pluperfect.*

<i>rexeram</i> , I had governed	<i>rexissem</i> , I might have governed
<i>rexerus</i> , thou hadst governed	<i>rexisses</i> , thou mightest have g.
<i>rexerat</i> , he, she, it had governed	<i>rexisset</i> , he, she, it might have gov.
<i>rexeramus</i> , we had governed	<i>rexissemus</i> , we might have gov.
<i>rexeratis</i> , you had governed	<i>rexissetis</i> , you might have gov.
<i>rexerant</i> , they had governed	<i>rexissent</i> , they might have gov.

VI. *Future Perfect.*<sup>2</sup>

*rexero*, I shall have governed  
*rexeris*, thou wilt have governed  
*rexerit*, he, she, it will have governed  
*rexerimus*, we shall have governed  
*rexeritis*, you will have governed  
*rexerint*, they will have governed.

*Imperative.*<sup>3</sup>

*regē*, govern thou  
*regito*, thou shouldst govern  
*regito*, he, she, it should govern  
*regite*, govern ye  
*regitote*, you should govern  
*regunto*, they should govern.

*Supine.*

- 1) *rectum*, in order to govern
- 2) *rectu*, to govern, be governed.

*Infinitive.*

*Pres.* *regere*, to govern  
*Perf.* *rexisse*, to have governed  
*Fut.* *recturus, a, um esse*, to will govern,<sup>4</sup> (that one) will gov.

*Participle.*

*Pres.* *regens*, governing  
*Fut.* *recturus, a, um*, intending, wishing, about to govern.

*Gerund.*

N. *regendum est*, one (we) must gov.  
G. *regendi*, of governing, or to govern  
D. *regendo*, to governing, or to govern  
A. *regendum* (e. g. *ad*), governing  
A. *regendo*, by governing.

IV. *Audio, audiui, auditum, audire.*  
Characteristic: *i* long.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

V. *Pluperfect.*

<i>audi(ē)eram</i> , I had heard	<i>audi(vi)ssem</i> , I might have h.
<i>audi(v)eras</i> , thou hadst heard	<i>audi(vi)sSES</i> , thou mightest have h.
<i>audi(v)erat</i> , he, she, it had heard	<i>audi(vi)sset</i> , he, she, it might have h.
<i>audi(v)eramus</i> , we had heard	<i>audi(vi)ssemus</i> , we might have h.
<i>audi(v)eratis</i> , you had heard	<i>audi(vi)ssetis</i> , you might have h.
<i>audi(v)erant</i> , they had heard	<i>audi(vi)sSent</i> , they might have h.

VI. *Future Perfect.*<sup>2</sup>

*audi(v)ero*, I shall have heard  
*audi(v)eris*, thou wilt have heard  
*audi(v)erit*, he, she, it will have heard  
*audi(v)erimus*, we shall have heard  
*audi(v)eritis*, you will have heard  
*audi(v)erint*, they will have heard.

*Imperative.*

*audi*, hear thou  
*audito*, thou shouldst hear  
*audito*, he, she, it should hear  
*audite*, hear ye  
*auditote*, you should hear  
*audiunto*, they should hear.

*Supine.*

- 1) *auditum*, in order to hear
- 2) *auditu*, to hear, be heard.

*Infinitive.*

*Pres.* *audire*, to hear  
*Perf.* *audi(vi)sse*, to have heard  
*Fut.* *auditurus, a, um esse*, to will hear,<sup>4</sup> (that one) will hear.

*Participle.*

*Pres.* *audiens*, hearing  
*Fut.* *auditurus, a, um*, intending, wishing, about to hear.

*Gerund.*

N. *audiendum est*, one (we) must hear  
G. *audiendi*, of hearing, or to hear  
D. *audiendo*, to hearing, or to hear  
A. *audiendum* (e. g. *ad*), hearing.  
A. *audiendo*, by hearing.

<sup>3</sup>) These four imperatives without *e* are to be noted: *dic, duc, fac, fer*, from: *di-co, duco, facio, fero*. <sup>4</sup>) The English language has no *Infin. Future* (to will love) but uses in its stead the *Inf. Present*.

## § 51. PAS

I.		II.	
INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
I. Present.		I. Present.	
amōr, I am loved	amēr, I may be loved	monēor, I am admonished	monēār, I may be admonished
amāris, thou art loved	amēris(e), thou mayest be loved	monēris, thou art admonished	monēāris(e), thou mayest be ad.
amātūr, he, she, it is loved	amētūr, he, she, it may be loved	monētūr, he, she, it is admonished	monēātūr, he, she, it may be ad.
amāmūr, we are loved	amēmūr, we may be loved	monēmūr, we are admonished	monēāmūr, we may be admonished
amāmīnī, you are loved	amēmīnī, you may be loved	monēmīnī, you are admonished	monēāmīnī, you may be admon.
amantūr, they are loved	amentūr, they may be loved.	monentūr, they are admonished	monēantūr, they may be admon.
II. Imperfect.		II. Imperfect.	
amābār, I was loved	amārēr, I might be loved	monēbar, I was admonished	monērer, I might be admonished
amābāris(e), thou wast loved	amārēris(e) thou mightest be l.	monēbāris(e), thou wast admonished	monērēris(e), thou mightest be ad.
amābātūr, he, she, it was loved	amārētūr, he, she, it might be loved	monēbātūr, he, she, it was admon.	monērētūr, he, she, it might be ad.
amābāmūr, we were loved	amārēmūr, we might be loved	monēbāmūr, we were admonished	monērēmūr, we might be ad.
amābāmīnī, you were loved	amārēmīnī, you might be loved	monēbāmīnī, you were admonished	monērēmīnī, you might be ad.
amābantūr, they were loved	amārentūr, they might be loved.	monēbantūr, they were admonished	monērentūr, they might be ad.
III. Future.		III. Future.	
amābōr, I shall be loved		monēbōr, I shall be admonished	
amābēris(e), thou wilt be loved		monēbēris(e), thou wilt be admonished	
amābītūr, he, she, it will be loved		monēbītūr, he, she, it will be admon.	
amābīmūr, we shall be loved		monēbīmūr, we shall be admonished	
amābīmīnī, you will be loved		monēbīmīnī, you will be admonished	
amabuntūr, they will be loved.		monēbuntūr, they will be admonished.	
IV. Perfect.			
a) Indicative.			
amatūs, I have been loved	sum, I have been loved	monītus, I have been admonished	sum, I have been admonished
a, es, thou hast been loved		a, es, thou hast been admonished	
um, est, he, she, it has been loved		um, est, he, she, it has been ad.	
amatī, sūmus, we have been loved		monīti, sumus, we have been admon.	
ae, estis, you have been loved		ae, estis, you have been admon.	
ā, sunt, they have been loved.		a, sunt, they have been admon.	
b) Subjunctive.			
amatus, sim, I may have been loved		monitus, sim, I may have been admon.	
a, sis, thou mayest have been l.		a, sis, thou mayest have been ad	
um, sit, he, she, it may have been l.		um, sit, he, she, it may have been a	
amatī, simūs, we may have been l.		moniti, simus, we may have been ad.	
ae, sitis, you may have been l.		ae, sitis, you may have been ad.	
a, sint, they may have been l.		a, sint, they may have been ad.	

SIVE.

III.		IV.	
INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
I. Present.		I. Present.	
regor, I am govern- ed	regār, I may be governed	audior, I am heard	audiār, I may be heard
regēris, thou art governed	regāris(e), thou mayest be gov.	audīris, thou art heard	audiāris(e) thou mayest be heard
regitur, he, she, it is governed	regātur, he, she, it may be governed	auditur, he, she, it is heard	audiātur, he, she, it may be heard
regimur, we are governed	regāmur, we may be governed	audimur, we are heard	audiāmur, we may be heard
regimini, you are governed	regāmini, you may be governed	audimini, you are heard	audiāmini, you may be heard
reguntur, they are governed	regantur, they may be governed.	audiuntur, they are heard	audiantur, they may be heard.
II. Imperfect.		II. Imperfect.	
regēbar, I was gov- erned	regērer, I might be governed	audiēbar, I was heard	audiērer, I might be heard
regēbāris(e), thou wast governed	regērēris(e), thou mightest be gov.	audiēbāris(e), thou wast heard	audiērēris(e), thou mightest be heard
regēbātur, he, she, it was governed	regērētur, he, she, it might be gov.	audiēbātur, he, she, it was heard	audiērētur, he, she, it might be heard
regēbāmur, we were governed	regēremur, we might be gov.	audiēbāmur, we were heard	audiēremur, we might be heard
regēbāmini, you were governed	regēremini, you might be gov.	audiēbāmini, you were heard	audiēremini, you might be heard
regēbantur, they were governed	regērentur, they might be gov.	audiēbantur, they were heard	audiērentur, they might be heard.
III. Future.		III. Future.	
regār, I shall be governed		audiār, I shall be heard	
regēris(e), thou wilt be governed		audiēris(e), thou wilt be heard	
regētūr, he, she, it will be governed		audiētūr, he, she, it will be heard	
regēmūr, we shall be governed		audiēmūr, we shall be heard	
regēminī, you will be governed		audiēminī, you will be heard	
regentūr, they will be governed.		audientūr, they will be heard.	
IV. Perfect.			
a) Indicative.			
rectus, sum, I have been governed	auditus, sum, I have been heard		
a, es, thou hast been governed	a, es, thou hast been heard		
um, est, he, she, it has been govern'd	um, est, he, she, it has been heard		
recti, sumus, we have been govern'd	auditi, sumus, we have been heard		
ae, estis, you have been governed	ae, estis, you have been heard		
a, sunt, they have been governed	a, sunt, they have been heard.		
b) Subjunctive.			
rectus, sim, I may have been govern'd	auditus, sim, I may have been heard		
a, sis, thou mayest have been g.	a, sis, thou mayest have been h.		
um, sit, he, she, it may have been g.	um, sit, he, she, it may have been h.		
recti, simus, we may have been g.	auditi, simus, we may have been h.		
ae, sitis, you may have been g.	ae, sitis, you may have been h.		
a, sint, they may have been g.	a, sint, they may have been h.		

V. *Pluperfect.*

## a) Indicative.

amātus,	ērām, I had been loved	monitus,	eram, I had been admonished
a,	ērās, thou hadst been loved	a,	eras, thou hadst been ad.
um	ērāt, he, she, it had been loved	um	erat, he, she, it had been ad.
amati,	ērāmūs, we had been loved	moniti,	eramus, we had been ad.
ae,	ērātis, you had been loved	ae,	eratis, you had been ad.
a	erant, they had been loved.	a	erant, they had been ad.

## b) Subjunctive.

amatus,	essēm, I might have been loved	monitus,	essem, I might have been ad.
a,	essēs, thou mightest have been loved	a,	esses, thou mightest have been admonished
um	essēt, he, she, it, might have been loved	um	esset, he, she, it might have been admonished
amati,	essēmūs, we might have been loved	moniti,	essemus, we might have been admonished
ae,	essētis, you might have been l.	ae,	essetis, you might have been ad.
a	essent, they might have been l.	a	essent, they might have been ad.

VI. *Future Perfect, (Indicative).*

amatus,	ērō, I shall have been loved	monitus,	ero, I shall have been admonished
a,	eris, thou wilt have been loved	a,	eris, thou wilt have been admonished
um	erit, he, she, it will have been loved	um	erit, he, she, it will have been admonished
amati,	erimūs, we shall have been loved	moniti,	erimus, we shall have been admonished
ae,	eritis, you will have been loved	ae,	eritis, you will have been admonished
a	erunt, they will have been loved.	a	erunt, they will have been admonished.

*Imperative.*

amārē, be thou loved  
 amātōr, thou shouldst be loved  
 amātōr, he, she, it should be loved  
 amāmīnī, be ye loved  
 amāmīnōr, you should be loved  
 amantōr, they should be loved.

*Infinitive.*

Pres. amārī, to be loved  
 Perf. amātūs, ā, ūm esse, to have been loved  
 Fut. amātum irī,<sup>1</sup> to will be loved,  
 (that one) will be loved.

*Participle.*

Perf. amātūs, ā, ūm, loved  
 Fut. amandūs, ā, ūm, what should be loved.

*Imperative.*

monēre, be thou admonished  
 monētor, thou shouldst be admonished  
 monētor, he, she, it should be adm'd  
 monēmīnī, be ye admonished  
 monēmīnōr, you should be admonished  
 monentor, they should be admonished.

*Infinitive.*

Pres. monēri, to be admonished  
 Perf. monītus, a, um esse, to have been admonished  
 Fut. monītum irī,<sup>1</sup> to will be admonished,  
 (that one) will be admonished.

*Participle.*

Perf. monītus, a, um, admonished  
 Fut. monendus, a, um, what should be admonished.

<sup>1</sup>) amātum, monītum, rectum, audītum are Supines and hence cannot be de-



V. *Pluperfect.*

## a) Indicative.

rectus,	<i>eram</i> , I had been governed	auditus,	<i>eram</i> , I had been heard
a,	<i>eras</i> , thou hadst been governed	a,	<i>eras</i> , thou hadst been heard
um	<i>erat</i> , he, she, it had been g.	um	<i>erat</i> , he, she, it had been heard
recti,	<i>eramus</i> , we had been governed	auditi,	<i>eramus</i> , we had been heard
ae,	<i>eratis</i> , you had been governed	ae,	<i>eratis</i> , you had been heard
a	<i>erant</i> , they had been governed	a	<i>erant</i> , they had been heard.

## b) Subjunctive.

rectus,	<i>essem</i> , I might have been g.	auditus,	<i>essem</i> , I might have been heard
a,	<i>esses</i> , thou mightest have been governed	a,	<i>esses</i> , thou mightest have been heard
um	<i>esset</i> , he, she, it might have been governed	um	<i>esset</i> , he, she, it might have been heard
recti,	<i>essemus</i> , we might have been governed	auditi,	<i>essemus</i> , we might have been heard
ae,	<i>essetis</i> , you might have been g.	ae,	<i>essetis</i> , you might have been h.
a	<i>essent</i> , they might have been g.	a	<i>essent</i> , they might have been h.

VI. *Future Perfect, (Indicative).*

rectus,	<i>ero</i> , I shall have been governed	auditus,	<i>ero</i> , I shall have been heard
a,	<i>eris</i> , thou wilt have been governed	a,	<i>eris</i> , thou wilt have been heard
um	<i>erit</i> , he, she, it will have been governed	um	<i>erit</i> , he, she, it will have been heard
recti,	<i>erimus</i> , we shall have been governed	auditi,	<i>erimus</i> , we shall have been heard
ae,	<i>eritis</i> , you will have been governed	ae,	<i>eritis</i> , you will have been heard
a	<i>erunt</i> , they will have been governed.	a	<i>erunt</i> , they will have been heard.

*Imperative.*

*regere*, be thou governed  
*regitor*, thou shouldst be governed  
*regitor*, he, she, it should be governed  
*regimini*, be ye governed  
*regimīnor*, you should be governed  
*reguntor*, they should be governed.

*Infinitive.*

*Pres. regi*, to be governed  
*Perf. rectus, a, um esse*, to have been governed  
*Fut. rectum iri*,<sup>1</sup> to will be governed,  
 (that one) will be governed.

*Participle.*

*Perf. rectus, a, um*, governed  
*Fut. regendus, a, um*, what should be governed.

*Imperative.*

*audire*, be thou heard  
*auditor*, thou shouldst be heard  
*auditor*, he, she, it should be heard  
*audimini*, be ye heard  
*audimīnor*, you should be heard  
*audiuntor*, they should be heard.

*Infinitive.*

*Pres. audiri*, to be heard  
*Perf. auditus, a, um esse*, to have been heard  
*Fut. auditum iri*,<sup>1</sup> to will be heard,  
 (that one) will be heard.

*Participle.*

*Perf. auditus, a, um* heard  
*Fut. audiendus, a, um*, what should be heard.

clined. That the English language has no Inf. Fut. has already been stated.

§ 52. Inflection of verbs in *io* of the Third Conjugation.

ACTIVE, Infin. <i>capĕre</i> , to take.		PASSIVE, Infin. <i>capi</i> .		
	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunct.</i>	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunct.</i>
Present.	cap-ĭ-o <i>cap-is, cap-it</i> <i>cap-imus, capitis</i> cap-ĭ-unt.	cap-ĭ-am cap-ĭ-as etc.	cap-ĭ-or <i>cap-ĕris, cap-itur</i> <i>cap-imur, cap-imĭni</i> cap-i-untur.	cap-ĭ-ar cap-ĭ-aris etc.
Impf.	cap-ĭ-ĕbam	<i>cap-ĕrem</i>	cap-ĭ-ĕbar	<i>cap-ĕrer</i>
Fut.	cap-ĭ-am, -ĭ-es, etc.		cap-ĭ-ar, -ĭ-ĕris, etc.	
Imper.	<i>cap-ĕ, cap-ĭto, cap-ite, cap-ĭtote,</i> cap-ĭ-unto.		<i>cap-ĕre, cap-ĭtor, cap-imĭnĭ,</i> <i>cap-imĭnor, cap-ĭ-untor.</i>	
Partic.	Pres, cap-ĭ-ens, Fut. <i>cap-turus</i>		Perf. <i>cap-tus</i> , Fut. cap-ĭ-endus	
Supine: <i>cap-tum, cap-tu.</i>				

## LII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Decerto 1. <i>I contend.</i>	ram navo (c. dat.) <i>I</i>	interĭtus, ūs, m. <i>destruc-</i>
elabōro 1. (in c. abl.)	occupy myself with.	tion.
<i>I labor (zealously).</i>	numĕro 1. <i>I number.</i>	aptus, a, um, <i>fitted.</i>
flo 1. <i>I blow, wave.</i>	opĕra, ae, f. <i>toil, labor.</i>	placĭdus, a, um, <i>gentle.</i>
intro 1. (c. acc.) <i>I go</i>	somnus, i, m. <i>sleep.</i>	vehĕmens, tis, <i>violent.</i>
<i>into, enter.</i>	ventus, i, m. <i>wind.</i>	potissĭmum, adv. <i>es-</i>
liber, ĕra, ĕrum, <i>free.</i>	timor, ōris, m. <i>fear.</i>	pecially.
libĕro 1. <i>I deliver.</i>	cupidĭtas, ātis, f. <i>desire,</i>	quomōdo, <i>in what man-</i>
navo 1. <i>I pursue some-</i>	passion.	ner, how.
<i>thing ardently; opĕ-</i>		

## A) ACTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

Quum milĭtes urbem intrābant, omnes cives timōris pleni erant. Quum in silva ambulābamus, vehemens ventus per altas quercus flabat. Quamdĭu tu in horto ambulābas, ego domi littĕris opĕram navābam. Dum nos placĭdus somnus recreābat, vos vigilabātis. Quomōdo 'is libĕro imperābit, qui non suis cupiditatibus impĕrat? Ad quas res aptissĭmi erimus, in iis potissĭmum elaborabĭmus. Quamdĭu eris felix, multos amicos numerābis. Bonos semper laudābo,

impr̄obos semper vituperābo. Si acriter armis decertabitis, o milites, patriam ab interitu liberabitis. Si virtutem amabis, omnes boni te amabunt.

### LIII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Compāro 1. <i>I prepare, acquire.</i>	philosophia, ae, <i>f. philosophy.</i>	jucundus, a, um, <i>pleasant, agreeable.</i>
conjūgo 1. <i>I join together, unite.</i>	carcer, ěris, <i>m. prison.</i>	adhuc, <i>adv. still. [ally.</i>
devōco 1. <i>I call down.</i>	narratio, ōnis, <i>f. narrative.</i>	perpetūo, <i>adv. continually, as if, as.</i>
migro 1. <i>I migrate.</i>	rus, ruris, <i>n. country; ruri, in the country,</i>	num, (an interrogative word used when a negative answer is expected), <i>is it possible that?</i>
emīgro 1. <i>I move out.</i>	rure, <i>from the country,</i>	
evōlo 1. <i>I fly out from, escape.</i>	acc. rus, <i>into the country.</i>	
interrogō 1. <i>I ask.</i>		
observo 1. <i>I observe.</i>		

Ea est jucundissima amicitia, quam similitudo morum conjugavit. Vivunt ii, qui ex corporum vinculis, tanquam carcere, evolaverunt. Socrātes primus philosophiam devocavit e coelo. Quia semper virtutis praecepta observastis, magnam vobis laudem comparastis. Cur per totem noctem vigilasti? Praeceptores meos semper amavi. Acr̄iter contra hostes pugnāvimus. Quum milites urbem intravērant, ingens terror omnium civium animos occupabat. Narratio, quam mihi nuper narravēras, vehementer me delectavērat. Quum exercitus hostilis urbem oppugnāverat, nos jam emigraverāmus. Si animum virtutibus ornavēris, semper beātus eris. Ut alios homines tractaverimus, ita hi nos tractābunt. Si quis te interrogāverit, qualis sit animus, num dubia erit responsio? Si perpetūo in hac vita virtutum servaveritis, etiam in altera vita beati eritis. Quum hostes agros devastāverint, urbem ipsam oppugnābunt. Quum ego rus migrāvero, tu adhuc in urbe eris.

### LIV. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Recito 1. <i>I read to.</i>	supplicium, i, <i>n. capital punishment, 2)</i>	scelus, ěris, <i>n. offence, crime.</i>
revōco 1. <i>I recall.</i>	(any severe) punishment.	quaestus, ūs, <i>m. gain.</i>
caussa, ae, <i>f. cause; abl. causā with gen., on account of.</i>	Atheniensis, is, <i>m. an Athenian.</i>	diligenter, <i>adv. diligently, carefully.</i>
sophista, ae, <i>m. sophist.</i>	approbatio, ōnis, <i>f. approbation. [tation.</i>	fortiter, <i>adv. bravely.</i>
Francogallus, i, <i>m. Frenchman. [man.</i>	ostentatio, ōnis, <i>f. ostentation.</i>	studiōse, <i>adv. zealously.</i>
Germānus, i, <i>m. a German.</i>		

How many has the fear of the divine punishment reclaimed (= recalled) from crimes! The Germans have fought bravely against the

French (= Frenchmen). So long as we frequented school, we pursued literature diligently. The Athenians called those sophists, who for the sake of ostentation or gain pursued philosophy. To-morrow we will celebrate the birth-day of our father. So long as you shall be fortunate, you will number many friends. The more any one (quis) shall love virtue, so much the more peaceful he will be. The more zealously thou shalt occupy thyself with literature, so much the more agreeable wilt thou be to thy teachers. When [their] native country shall be in danger, the citizens will fight spiritedly against the enemies.

As thou shalt have treated others, so will they treat thee. We have always loved our teachers. Because thou hast always kept the precepts of virtue, thou hast acquired for thyself great praise. As the hostile army were entering the city, all the citizens were full of (gen.) fear. You have fought spiritedly against the enemies. When we shall have migrated into the country, you will still be in the city. When the hostile army shall have laid waste the fields, it will assault the city itself. If you shall have adorned [your] souls with virtues, you will always be happy.

As the enemies had assaulted the city, a great part of the citizens had already moved out. While thou wast watching, me gentle sleep refreshed. While we were taking a walk in the garden, you occupied yourselves with literature. The whole day I have eagerly expected my friend. When the enemies shall have assaulted the city, the condition of the citizens will be very wretched. If I shall have carefully observed the precepts of virtue, the approbation of the good will never be wanting to me. Scarcely hadst thou read to me the letter of the friend, as he entered (perf.) my house (acc.). If thou shalt pursue literature diligently, I shall praise thee.

#### LV. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Opto 1. <i>I wish.</i>	mihi est, <i>I am anxious.</i>	utilitas, âtis, <i>f. advantage.</i>
persâno 1. <i>I cure perfectly.</i>	fabûla, ae, <i>f. fable.</i>	statio, ônis, <i>f. post.</i>
postûlo 1. <i>I demand.</i>	opera, ae, <i>f. pains; occupy myself with.</i>	animal, âlis, <i>n. living being.</i>
redâmo 1. <i>I love in return.</i>	ëram do, <i>I take pains,</i>	rectus, a, um, <i>right;</i>
rogo 1. <i>I entreat, ask.</i>	condiscipûlus, i, <i>m. fellow-student.</i>	conscientia recta, <i>a good conscience.</i>
supëro 1. <i>I surpass, overcome.</i>	medicus, i, <i>m. physician.</i>	persaepe, <i>adv. very often.</i>
evënit, 4. <i>it happens.</i>	cognitio, ônis, <i>f. knowledge.</i>	ut (with Subj.), <i>that, in order that. See Synt.</i>
conscientia, ae, <i>f. consciousness, conscience.</i>	honestas, âtis, <i>f. uprightness.</i>	§ 106.
cura, ae, <i>f. care; curae</i>		

Persaepe evēnit, ut utilitas cum honestate certet. Vide, ne pecces contra virtutis praecepta. Omnes parentes optant, ut filii littēris diligenter opēram navent. Ita vivēre debēmus, ut in omni re rectam conscientiam servēmus. Omnibus viribus elaborāte, ut littēras diligenter tractētis. Medicus omnem curam adhībet, ut aegrōtum persānet. Nihil magis mihi curae est, quam ut animum virtutibus ornem. Amo te, ut me redāmes. Cura, ut condiscipūlos bonis moribus et diligentia supēres. Dux imperāvit, ut milites stationes suas servārent. Quamdiū scholam frequentabāmus, nihil magis nobis curae erat, quam ut animos bonarum rerum cognitione ornarēmus. Heri ambulābam, ut tristem animum exhilarārem. Exercitus noster acerrime pugnābat, ut urbem ab interītu servāret.

Every living being *looks to this* (id agit), that it may preserve itself. You ought to take pains, that you acquire for yourselves the praise of the good. You love us, in order that we may love you in return. I labored (perf.) with all [my] powers, in order that my teachers might praise me. The laws of this state demand, that the citizens should obey them (sibi). I entreat thee, that thou wouldst relate to me the fable. I pursue literature very zealously, in order that I may delight my parents. We ought always so to live, that we may observe the precepts of virtue.

We fought very spiritedly, in order that we might save our native country from destruction. You were more anxious for nothing, than that you might adorn [your] souls with virtues. The general commanded (perf.), that the army might enter the city (acc.). So long as I frequented the school, I labored with all [my] powers, that I might adorn [my] mind with (abl.) the knowledge of literature.

#### LVI. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Accelēro 1. <i>I hasten.</i>	perturbo 1. <i>I throw in-</i>	scholastica, scholastic
advento 1. <i>I approach,</i>	<i>to confusion.</i>	instruction.
<i>arrive.</i>	specto 1. <i>I behold, con-</i>	multitudo, ōnis, f. mul-
castigo 1. <i>I reprove,</i>	<i>template.</i>	titude. [tacking.
<i>punish.</i>	vasto 1. <i>I lay waste.</i>	oppugnatio, ōnis, f. at-
colloco 1. (in aliqua re)	mitto 3. <i>I send, dispatch.</i>	ortus, ūs, m. rising.
<i>I place, bestow (upon</i>	uva, ae, f. <i>grape.</i>	risus, ūs, m. laugh.
<i>something).</i>	argumentum, i, n. <i>con-</i>	praepropere, adv. pre-
congrēgo 1. <i>I assemble.</i>	<i>tents (of a book).</i>	cipitately. [lously.
delibēro 1. <i>I deliberate.</i>	auxilium, i, n. <i>aid.</i>	religiōse, adv. scrupu-
explico 1. <i>I explain.</i>	institutio, ōnis, f. <i>in-</i>	ubi, where; when, so
gusto 1. <i>I taste, relish.</i>	<i>struction; institutio</i>	(as) soon as.

RULE OF SYNTAX. The conjunction *quin*, with the meaning *that*, takes

the *subjunctive* after: non dubito, *I do not doubt*, nemo dubitat, *nobody doubts*, dubium non est, *it is not doubtful*, and quis dubitat? *who doubts?* See Syntax § 107, 3.

Non est dubium, quin cives, ubi patria in pericūlo futūra sit, fortiter pugnāturi sint. Quis dubitat, quin e scholastica institutione pulcherri-mus ad pueros redundaturus sit fructus? Dubium non est, quin bono-rum animi post mortem in sedem beatorum migrāturi sint. Non dubi-to, quin milites nostri hostes superaverint. Non dubitābam, quin vos patriam a servitute liberāturi essētis. Cui dubium erat, quin exercitus noster omnes labores et aerumnas facile toleraturus esset? Quis dubi-tat, quin Hannibal contra Romanos fortissime pugnaverit? Non dubi-tabitis, quin ego vos semper amaverim. Quis dubitat, quin bonos sem-per laudaverimus, malos semper vituperaverimus? Non est dubium, quin in omni vitae conditione fidem servarit. Non dubito, quin lit-teris maximam operam navaris. Nemo dubitabat, quin hostes urbem expugnavissent. Nemini civium dubium erat, quin pro patriae libertate acerrime pugnavissētis. Nemo dubitabat, quin omnem operam in eo collocavissēmus, ut hostes superarēmus. Quum hostes urbem oppug-nabant, non erat dubium, quin ingens terror omnium civium animos occupavisset. Nemo dubitabat, quin tu risum illum excitasses. Ne-mini eorum qui adērant, dubium erat, quin recte de illius libri argu-mento judicavissem.

It is doubtful to no one of those who are present, that concerning (de) the character of that man, thou hast judged correctly. Nobody doubts, that the enemies have taken the city. It is not doubtful, that from scholastic instruction the fairest advantages (= fruits) redound to the young. Who doubts, that we shall deliver the land from servitude? Nobody doubted, that all citizens, so soon as their native country should be in danger, would fight bravely. Who doubts, that you have raised a laugh? Nobody doubts, that our army will endure all the toils and hardships of war patiently. It is not doubtful, that the attacking of the city, has thrown all the citizens into confusion. No one of (gen.) us doubted, that our soldiers had overcome the enemies. No one of the Romans doubted, that Hannibal had fought very bravely against them (se). Who doubts, that we have bestowed all pains upon this (in eo), that we might overcome the enemy? Who doubts, that I have always loved thee? Nobody doubted, that we had always praised the good, [but] had always censured the bad. Who doubts, that I have kept my word (= fidelity)? Nobody doubted, that thou hadst occupied thyself earnestly with literature. To no one was it doubtful, that you had always kept the precepts of virtue.

Diligenter cura, mi amice, valetudinem tuam! Ne praepropere de rebus iudicâtes, o pueri! Ne dubita de animorum immortalitate! Perpetuo servato, mi fili, conscientiam rectam! Discipulus amato praeceptores. Laudatote probos homines, castigatote improbos! Omnes homines amanto deum.

Look out carefully, friends, for your health! Judge not precipitately concerning men and things, O boy! Doubt ye not concerning the immortality of the soul (plur.)! Scholars should love their teachers. Thou shouldest praise the upright, [but] reprove the wicked. You should always, my sons, preserve a good conscience.

(Comp. Synt. § 97.)

Parentes mei in urbem migraverunt habitatum. Legati in urbem nostram acceleraverunt auxilium postulatum Hannibalem invictum cives sui ex Italia revocaverunt patriam ab hostibus liberatum. Hostes pacem postulatum legatos ad nos mittunt. Exercitus hostilis adventavit agros nostros vastatum. Ingens hominum multitudo in urbem congregatur ludos publicos spectatum.

Uva immatura est peracerba gustatu. Multa sunt dura toleratu. Quaestio de animi natura difficillima est explicatu. Sitis non facilis est toleratu. Pira dulcia sunt gustatu.

The soldiers hastened (perf.), in order to relieve the city from the siege of the enemies. The ambassadors assembled themselves (= were assembled), in order to deliberate concerning the peace. The hostile army approached, in order to assault the city. To-morrow my parents will go (= migrate) into (acc.) the country in order to dwell [there] through the summer.

A ripe grape is sweet to taste. The rising of the sun is beautiful to behold. This thing is easy to explain.

#### LVII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Duro 1. <i>I endure, continue.</i>	avaritia, ae, f. <i>avarice.</i>	ornatus, us, m. <i>ornament.</i>
expröbro 1. <i>I reproach (one) for.</i>	cumstance, particular.	alienus, a, um, <i>foreign.</i>
investigo 1. <i>I trace out, investigate.</i>	officium, i, n. <i>duty, service.</i>	exiguus, a, um, <i>little.</i>
mico 1. <i>I glitter.</i>	calamitas, atis, f. <i>loss, misfortune.</i>	odiosus, a, um, <i>odious.</i>
obtempéro 1. <i>I obey.</i>	actio, önis, f. <i>action.</i>	teter, tra, trum, <i>foul.</i>
sudo 1. <i>I sweat.</i>	portio, önis, f. <i>drinking,</i>	coelestis, e, <i>heavenly.</i>
supplico 1. <i>I implore.</i>	drink.	praesertim, adv. <i>especially.</i>

Luscinia cantans animos nostros delectat. Coelum plenum est stel-

larum micantium. Nullum vitium tetrius est, quam avaritia, praesertim in principibus rem publicam gubernantibus. Cogitantes coelestia, haec nostra ut exigua et minima contemnimus. Odiösus est genus hominum officia exprobrantium. Ex (after) labore sudanti frigidae aquae potio perniciosissima est. Vir bonus viro bono non supplicanti succurrit. Rei veritatem investigatūri omnia ejus momenta ponderare debemus. Sapiens bona sibi comparare studet perpetuo duratura. Ciconiae, in alienas terras migraturae, in unum locum congregantur. Ingens hominum multitudo in urbem congregatur ludos publicos spectatura.

How great is the wisdom of God *who governs* (= governing) the whole world! The larks sing *as they fly* (= flying). Man does not love God, *when he does not observe* (= not observing) the precepts of virtue. The power of virtue is very great, *since it adorns* (= adorning) the souls of men with the fairest ornaments. How great are the benefits of the sun, *since it illuminates* (= illuminating) the whole earth! The citizens fought spiritedly with the enemies, *who were assaulting* (= assaulting) the city. The hostile army came up *in order to assault* (= intending to assault) the city. The invincible Hannibal, his fellow-citizens (= citizens) recalled from Italy, *that he might deliver* (= about to deliver) his native country from the enemies.

**RULE OF SYNTAX.** The Gerund takes the same case as its verb. In the Nom. with *est* and the Dat. of the agent, it should be translated by: *I (thou, he) must, ought, should, we (you, they) must, ought, should*, etc.; but without the Dat. of the agent by: *one (we) must, ought, should* (comp. Synt. § 98.).

De animorum immortalitate nobis non est dubitandum. Obtemperandum est virtutis praeceptis. Propter belli calamitates multis civibus e patria in alienas terras migrandum est. Si beati esse studemus, diligenter nobis est elaborandum, ut in omni actione virtutis praecepta observemus. Quis dubitat, quin nobis pro patriae libertate pugnandum sit.

#### LVIII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Avoco 1. <i>I call away.</i>	fortem), <i>I show my-</i>	occasio, ōnis, <i>f. occasio.</i>
dijudico 1. <i>I distinguish.</i>	self (brave).	
nato 1. <i>I swim.</i>	teneo 2. <i>I hold, under-</i>	planities, ei, <i>f. plain.</i>
praebeo, 2. <i>I afford;</i>	stand.	[lectics. idoneus, a, um, <i>suited.</i>
praebeo me (e. g. dialectica, ae, <i>f. dia-</i>		prudenter, <i>adv. wisely.</i>

**RULE OF SYNTAX.** The oblique cases of the Gerund form the cases of the Infinitive; the Acc., however, can be used only in connection with a preposition. Comp. Synt. § 98.



Nom. *Natāre* est utile, *swimming is useful*.

Gen. *Natandi* sum peritus, *I am skilful in swimming, or to swim; natan-di ars utilis est, the art of swimming or to swim is useful. Ars civitatem gubernandi, the art of governing a state is difficult.*

Dat. *Natando* homo aptus est, *man is fitted to swimming, or to swim.*

Acc. *Natāre* disco, *I learn swimming or to swim, but: ad natandum homo aptus est, man is fitted for swimming or to swim.*

Abl. *Natando* corpōris vires exercentur, *by swimming the powers of the body are exercised.*

Navigāre utilissimum est, sed ars navigandi est difficillima. Boni discipuli cupīdi sunt littēras diligenter tractandi. Princīpes civitatis periti esse debent civitatem gubernandi. Dialectica est ars vera ac falsa dijudicandi. Haec planities apta est pugnando. Ego fratrem tuum natāre doceo, gaudeoque, quod tam aptum se praebebat ad natandum. Pauci homines idonei sunt ad aliis imperandum. Virtus homines avōcat a peccando. Acrīter pugnando milites urbem ab interītu liberavērunt.

To govern a state, is very difficult; [only] a few understand the art of governing a state wisely. Avoid thou every occasion of sinning. Thy brother is very skilful in (gen.) riding. The human intellect is nourished by (abl.) thinking.

### LIX. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Crucio 1. <i>I torment.</i>	person and abl. of effusus, a, um, unre-
cruciatus, ūs, m. <i>torture.</i>	thing), <i>I deprive of.</i> strained.
emendo 1. <i>I improve.</i>	poena, ae, f. <i>punish-</i>
nuntio 1. <i>I announce.</i>	ment. piger, gra, grum, indo-
obscurō 1. <i>I obscure.</i>	morbis, i, m. <i>disease.</i> lent, slothful.
probo 1. <i>I approve;</i>	incendium i, n. <i>confla-</i>
probor (c. dat.) <i>I</i>	gration. benevole, adv. kindly,
please.	hodie, adv. to-day.
spolio 1. (with acc. of	oblivio, ōnis, f. <i>oblivion.</i> misere, adv. wretchedly,
decus, ōris, n. <i>honor.</i>	in a wretched way.

### B.) PASSIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

Quum urbs ab hostibus oppugnabātur, omnium civium animi ingenti terrōre occupantur. Dum ego cantando delectābar, tu saltando delectabāre (delectabāris). Quum pugna atrocissima erat, sol nubibus obscurabātur. Quamdū virtus decōre et dignitatē sua non spoliabātur, tamdū homines virtutis compōtes etiam in summis cruciatibus beātī erunt. Malefici post mortem justis poenis castigabuntur. Ut alios tractaveritis, ita ab iis tractabimini. Si littēris diligenter opēram naverimus, a parentibus nostris pulchris muneribus donabimur. Quo re-

ligiosius virtūtis praecepta servābo, eo magis deo probābor. Quum urbs ab hostibus expugnāta erat, omnes cives acerbissimo dolore cruciabantur. Si libēri vestri bene a vobis educāti erunt, magna ad vos laus redundābit.

As yesterday thou wast with me, I was tormented by (abl.) violent pains, but to-day I am delivered from them. If thou lovest (= shalt love) men, thou wilt be loved by them. The remembrance of renowned men is obscured by (abl.) no oblivion. The wise will even then be happy, when they shall be tormented by the severest (acerbus) pains. While we delighted ourselves (= were delighted) in (abl.) song (Gerund), you delighted yourselves in the dance (Gerund). The more scrupulously you shall observe the precepts of virtue, so much the more will you please God. As the victory of our army was announced, unrestrained joy prevailed (agitāri) through the whole city. As the city had been taken possession of by the enemy, at (abl.) the very same time three conflagrations were raised. Rejoice, boys, to-morrow Christmas (= the birth day of Christ) will be celebrated, and by your good parents you will be presented with (abl.) beautiful presents. If thou shalt please (fut. perf.) all good men, thou wilt also please God. The more kindly I shall have treated others, so much the more kindly shall I also be treated by them. As thou enteredst the house (acc.) thou wast delighted by (abl.) the arrival of thy father.

### LX. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Conformo 1. <i>I form.</i>	metus, ūs, <i>m. apprehension, fear.</i>	ignavia, ae, <i>f. cowardice.</i>
obsto 1. <i>I oppose, am a hindrance.</i>	officio 3. <i>I hinder, stand in the way.</i> [tinue.	otium, i, <i>n. ease.</i>
praeparo 1. <i>I prepare.</i>	pergo 3. <i>I go on, continue.</i>	infirmitas, ātis, <i>f. weakness.</i>
reporto 1. <i>I bear off.</i>	impedio 4. <i>I prevent.</i>	timiditas, ātis, <i>f. timidity.</i>
sollicito 1. <i>I disturb.</i>	impedimentum, i, <i>n. hindrance ; impediment.</i>	divinus, a, um, <i>divine.</i>
sollicitus, a, um, <i>disturbed, apprehensive.</i>	mentis, est, <i>it is a hindrance.</i>	immānis, e, <i>cruel.</i>
expleo 2. <i>I fulfil.</i>		terrestris, e, <i>earthly.</i>
prohibeo 2. <i>I prevent.</i>	constantia, ae, <i>f. firmness.</i>	temere, <i>adv. inconsiderately, without reason.</i>
metuo 3. <i>I apprehend, fear.</i>		

**RULE OF SYNTAX.** The conjunction *quominus* with the Subj. stands after the verbs and phrases which signify a *hindrance*, and is to be translated into English by *that*.\* (Comp. Synt. § 107, 2.).

\* Or more elegantly, often, by the prepositions, *of, from, to*, with a corresponding modification of the words which stand in connection with it.—TR.

Levitas animi multis puëris impedimento est, quominus eorum mores emendentur et ingenia litterarum studio conformentur. Militum ignavia obstabat, quominus hostilis exercitus superarëtur. Unius ducis constantia obstabat, quominus cives ab immanibus militibus misere vexarentur. Terrestrium rerum cura saepe prohibet, quominus res divinae a nobis curentur. Infirmitas vocis et timiditas animi saepe oratori officiunt, quominus laude dignus judicetur. Senectus non impedit, quominus litterarum studia studiöse a nobis tractentur. Timiditas saepe impedit, quominus animus noster contra pericula, quae nobis imminēt, praeparetur.

Weakness of voice stood in the way of *your being accounted* (= hindered you, that you should be accounted) a great orator. The firmness of the general alone prevents the citizens from being annoyed by the cruel soldiers. Already has levity been an hindrance to many boys, that their manners should be improved and their minds be formed by the study of literature. The cowardice of the soldiers hindered, that the hostile army should be overcome.

**RULE OF SYNTAX.** After the words and phrases which express *fear* or *apprehension*, *ne* with the Subj. is to be translated by *that*, and *ut* with the Subj. by *that not*. (Comp. Synt. § 106, 3.).

Piger discipulus semper metuit, ne a praeceptoribus castigetur. Metuo, ne a te vituperer. Timeo, ut victoria ab exercitu nostro de hostibus reportetur. Si tam fortiter contra hostem dimicare pergimus, non est periculum, ne ab iis superemur. Si officia vestra semper religiöse explētis; ne metuite, ut omnibus probemini. In metu eramus, ut morbo liberaremini. Vehemens cura animos nostros sollicitabat, ne ab hostibus vexarēmur. Sollicitus eram, ne in otio turbarer.

I was in apprehension that I should be censured by thee. I apprehended, that I should be disturbed in my ease. The soldiers were in apprehension that victory over the enemy would not be borne off. A violent apprehension (= care) disturbs our minds, that we may be annoyed by the enemies. Why did they apprehend, that they should not be delivered from sickness? If thou hast always fulfilled thy duties, do not fear that thou mayest not please (probor) all. If our army continues to fight so bravely against the enemies, there is no (= not) fear, that it may be overcome by them. Indolent scholars always fear, that they shall be punished by [their] teachers. We were in apprehension, that we should be accounted ungrateful by you. Not without reason so oppressive an apprehension seized you, that you would be annoyed by the enemies.

LXI. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Contamino 1. <i>I contaminate.</i>	ignominia, ae, f. <i>ignominy.</i>	aequus, a, um, <i>equal;</i> aequus animus, <i>equanimity.</i>
exoro 1. <i>I prevail upon by entreaty.</i>	flagitium, i, n. <i>foul deed.</i>	sceleratus, a, um, <i>wicked.</i>
migro 1. c. acc. <i>I transgress.</i>	proditor, oris, m. <i>traitor.</i>	sancte, adv. <i>sacredly.</i>
multo 1. <i>I punish.</i>	splendor, oris, m. <i>splendor.</i>	sanctitas, atis, f. <i>sacredness.</i>
noto 1. <i>I mark, brand.</i>	civitas, atis, f. <i>citizenship, right of citizenship.</i>	sin, conj. <i>but if.</i>
occo 1. <i>I harrow.</i>		
reparo 1. <i>I repair.</i>		

Si industrius es, laudator; sin piger, vituperator! Si leges civitatis migraveritis, multamini! Ager justo tempore arator et occator! Proditores patriae civitate spoliantor! Vos, o scelerati cives, ignominia notamini! Leges divinae ab hominibus sancte observantor! Si quid peccaveris, aequo animo vituperare! Exoramini, o mei parentes! O mi puer, delectare litterarum studio! Precibus nostris exorare, o iudex! Ne flagitiis contaminamini!

Be prevailed upon by entreaty, my father! O my boys, delight yourselves (= be delighted) in (abl.) the study of literature. If you have committed a fault (fut. perf.) *allow yourselves to be* (= be ye) censured with equanimity! Thou shouldst not be contaminated with foul deeds. If you are diligent, you will be praised; but if you are indolent, you will be censured. Virtue should always be sacredly observed. The fields, at the right time, should be ploughed and harrowed. If thou transgressest (fut. perf.) the laws of the state, thou shouldst be punished. Thou, O wicked citizen, shouldst be branded with ignominy!

LXII. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Adaequo 1. <i>I level.</i>	spero 1. <i>I hope.</i>	humanitas, atis, f. <i>humanity.</i>
appropinquo 1. <i>I approach.</i>	violō 1. <i>I violate.</i>	perniciēs, ei, f. <i>destruction.</i>
extirpo 1. <i>I extirpate.</i>	succenseo 2. <i>I am offended.</i>	eximius, a, um, <i> distinguished, excellent.</i>
extermino 1. <i>I expel.</i>	accido 3. <i>I happen.</i>	jam pridem, adv. <i>long since.</i>
fundo 1. <i>I found.</i>	dimitto 3. <i>I dismiss.</i>	interdū, adv. <i>by day.</i>
labefacto 1. <i>I shake.</i>	effresco 3. <i>I flourish.</i>	
muto 1. <i>I change, exchange.</i>	ruo 3. <i>I rush.</i>	
regno 1. <i>I rule, reign.</i>	pueritia, ae, f. <i>boyhood.</i>	
	solum, i, n. <i>the ground.</i>	

Melior est certa pax, quam sperata victoria. Terra mutata non

mutat mores. Multa in hac vita accidunt non expectata. Omnes dolores patienter tolerati minus acerbi sunt. Dux dimittit milites ob eximiam virtutem laudatos. Multi juvenes, in prima pueritia a parentibus male educati, in perniciem ruunt.

The friendship formed (= united) between good and wise [men] is disturbed by (abl.) nothing (= no thing). Dangers, *which were not expected* (= not expected) by us, discompose our minds more (magis) than dangers which were long since expected. *When thou art censured* (= having been censured) on account of a fault, be not offended at the censorer (= the one censuring). *After the walls had been leveled* (= the walls having been leveled) to the ground by the enemies, they are repaired by the citizens. By day we do not see the stars, *because they are obscured* (= they having been obscured) by the splendor of the sun.

(Concerning the *Ablative absolute* Comp. Synt. 100, 4, b).

Regnante Xerxe<sup>1</sup>), Graeci de Persis splendidissimam victoriam reportaverunt. Inter bonos viros et deum amicitia est, conciliante natura<sup>2</sup>). Appropinquante hieme<sup>3</sup>), multae aves mitiores regiones petunt.

Recuperata pace<sup>4</sup>), artes efflorescunt. Regibus exterminatis<sup>5</sup>), Romani liberam rempublicam fundaverunt. Terram mutata<sup>6</sup>), mores hominum non mutantur. Legibus divinis sancte observatis<sup>7</sup>), vita nostra beata erit.

While Numa Pompilius reigned, the Romans were very prosperous. While the larks sing, we go to walk over (per) the plains. While Augustus reigned, the splendor of the empire was the greatest. When a just king administers the state, the laws also are just. When the swallows migrate into milder regions, winter approaches.

After the plains were laid waste, the enemies assaulted (perf.) the city. When the sacredness of the laws is violated, the foundation of the state is shaken. When the city had been taken, an immense conflagration was raised.

### LXIII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Coërceo, ùi, ìtum 2. I delèo, èvi, ètum 2. I parèo, ùi 2. I obey, am restrain. destroy. obedient, follow.

<sup>1</sup>) While Xerxes reigned, or: under the reign of Xerxes. <sup>2</sup>) Since nature forms (it). <sup>3</sup>) When the winter approaches, or: on the approach of winter. <sup>4</sup>) After peace is restored, or: on the restoration of peace. <sup>5</sup>) After the kings had been expelled, or: after the expulsion of the kings. <sup>6</sup>) When the country has been exchanged, or: after an exchange of countries. <sup>7</sup>) When the divine laws are sacredly observed.

patĕo, ūi 2. <i>I stand upon.</i>	instrŭo, uxi, uctum 3. <i>to furnish, to arrange.</i>	conjuratio, ōnis, <i>f. conspiracy.</i>
valĕo, ūi, ĭtum 2. <i>I am strong, well.</i>	scribo, psi, ptum 3. <i>to write.</i>	adĭtus, ūs, <i>m. approach.</i>
absŭmo, sumpsi, sump- tum 3. <i>to consume.</i>	esuriŭo 4. <i>I hunger.</i>	acies, ĕi, <i>f. 1) edge; 2) line-of-battle.</i>
cingo, nxi, nctum 3. <i>to surround.</i>	sitiŭo 4. <i>I thirst.</i>	tenŭis, e, <i>thin.</i>
detĕgo xi, ctum 3. <i>to detect.</i>	corŏna, ae, <i>f. garland.</i>	quoad, <i>conj. so long as.</i>
excello, ui 3. <i>to be dis- tinguished.</i>	membrāna, ae, <i>f. mem- brane.</i>	fere, <i>adv. almost.</i>
	ocŭlus, i, <i>m. eye.</i>	probe <i>adv. excellently, properly.</i>
	incendium, i, <i>n. conflagration.</i>	

## C) PARALLEL EXERCISES FOR ALL THE CONJUGATIONS.

## a) Indicative Present, Imperfect and Future Active of all the Conjugations.

Laudo, exercĕo, duco, erudiŭo. Laudas, exerces, ducis, erŭdis. Laudat, exercet, ducit, erŭdit. Laudābam, exercēbam, ducēbam, erudiēbam. Laudābas, exercēbas, ducēbas, erudiēbas. Laudēbat, exercēbat, ducēbat, erudiēbat. Laudābo, exercēbo, ducam, erudiām. Laudābis, exercēbis, ducēs, erudies. Laudābit, exercēbit, ducet, erudiet. Gaudēbam, quod tu et pater tuus valebātis. Dum ego pingēbam, tu scribebas, et frater legēbat. Milites nostri castra muniēbant. Hostes aciem instruēbant.

Praeceptor gaudēbat, quod vos ejus praeceptis parebātis. Dum nos legebāmus, vos scribebātis et sorores acu pingēbant. Quum hostes urbem nostram obsidione cingēbant, cives eam custodiēbant. Tibi placēbas, aliis displicēbas. Dum tu dormiēbas, ego te custodiēbam. Omnes boni legibus divinis semper parēbunt. Quoad vives, bene vives. Dum tu dormies, ego te custodiam. Virtutis honorem nulla oblivio delēbit. Si virtutem colētis, adĭtus in coelum vobis patēbit.

We praise, we exercise, we lead, we instruct. You praise, you exercise, you lead, you instruct. They praise, they exercise, they lead, they instruct. We praised, we exercised, we led, we instructed. You praised, you exercised, you led, you instructed. They praised, they exercised, they led, they instructed. We will praise, we will exercise, we will lead, we will instruct. You will praise, you will exercise, you will lead, you will instruct. They will praise, they will exercise, they will lead, they will instruct. We rejoiced, that (quod) thou wast well. While we wrote, you read, and the brothers painted.

While the enemies were arranging the line-of-battle, our soldiers fortified the camp. The teachers rejoiced, that (quod) the scholars

obeyed their (eorum) precepts. While I was singing, thou wast learning, and the sister embroidering. While the enemy surrounded our city with a blockade, we guarded it. You pleased yourselves, others you displeased. While you slept, we guarded you. So long as you shall live, you will live well. While you shall sleep, we will guard you.

b) *Indicative Perfect Active of all the Conjugations.*

Laudavi, exercui, duxi, erudivi; Lauda(vi)sti, exercuisti, duxisti, erudi(vi)sti. Laudavit, exercuit, duxit, erudit. Graecia omnibus artibus floruit. Hostes aciem instruxerunt. Milites per totum diem sitiērunt et esuriērunt. Laudo vos, quod mentes vestras in litterarum studio probe exercuistis. Multas littēras hodie scripsimus. Natūra oculos tenuissimis membrānis vestivit. Duces cupiditātes milītum coērcuerunt. Bellum atrocissimum gessimus. Cur domūs vestrae pariētes coronis ornavistis et vestivistis? Cur tacuistis? Bellum urbis nostrae opes absumpsit. Cicēro conjunctionem Catilinae detexit. Incendium totam fere urbem absumpsit.

We have praised, we have exercised, we have led, we have instructed. You have praised, you have exercised, you have led, you have instructed. They have praised, they have exercised, they have led, they have instructed. The general has arranged the line of battle before (ante) the city. The Greeks were (perf.) distinguished by (abl.) the glory of [their] arts and literature. I praise thee, that (quod) thou hast exercised thy mind properly in the study of literature. I had written the letter. The general has restrained the passions of the soldiers. We have carried on a very bloody war. Wherefore hast thou adorned and hung (= clothed) the walls of thy house with garlands? Why hast thou been silent? The wars have consumed our resources.

LXIV. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Convolo 1. <i>I fly together, hasten together.</i>	excōlo, olūi, ultum 3. <i>to cultivate.</i>	temeritas, ātis, <i>f. inconsiderateness, rashness.</i>
specto 1. <i>I behold, have in view.</i>	metūo, ūi 3. <i>to fear.</i>	diu, <i>adv. long time.</i>
cavēo, cāvi, cautum 2. <i>to be on one's guard.</i>	neglīgo, exi, ectum 3. <i>to neglect.</i>	vix, <i>adv. scarcely.</i>
contemno, mpsi, mptum 3. <i>to despise.</i>	expedio 4. <i>I disentangle, get ready.</i>	priusquam (or prius, quam) <i>conj. sooner . . . than.</i>
edūco, xi, ctum 3. <i>to lead out.</i>	finio 4. <i>I end, conclude.</i>	simulatque, <i>conj. so (as) soon as.</i>
	obēdio 4. <i>I obey.</i>	

c) *Indicative Pluperfect Active of all the Conjugations.*

Lauda(vě)ram, exercuěram, duxěram, erudi(v)ěram. Lauda(vě)ras, exercuěras, duxěras, erudi(v)ěras. Lauda(vě)rat, exercuěrat, duxěrat erudi(v)ěrat. Haec civitas diu floruebat, quia semper legibus paruebat. Vix Caesar aciem instruxerat, quum hostes in unum locum convolverunt. Praeceptoribus vestris placueratis, quia semper eorum praeceptis obedieratis. Tu nobis valde nocueras, quia temeritatem tuam non coercueras. Incendium totam fere urbem absumpserat. Vix milites nostri castra muniverant, quum Caesar aciem instruxit.

We had praised, we had exercised, we had led, we had instructed. You had praised, you had exercised, you had led, you had instructed. They had praised, they had exercised, they had led, they had instructed. Why hadst thou been silent? Scarcely had the enemies arranged the line of battle, as Caesar led out (perf.) the soldiers from the camp. The war had consumed the resources of our state. Thou hadst pleased thy teacher, because thou hadst always obeyed his precepts. You had injured that [man] greatly, because you had not restrained your rashness.

d) *Indicative Future Perfect Active of all the Conjugations.*

Lauda(vě)ro, exercuěro, duxěro, erudi(v)ěro. Lauda(vě)ris, exercuěris, duxěris, erudi(v)ěris. Lauda(vě)rit, exercuěrit, duxěrit, erudi(v)ěrit. Nisi virtutis praeceptis parueritis, aditus in coelum vobis non patebit. Divites eritis, si divitias contempseritis. Non prius dormiēmus, quam negotia nostra finierimus. Si cupiditates vestras coercueritis, beati eritis. Simulatque litteras scripserimus, ambulabimus. Quum milites castra muniverint, ad pugnam se expedient.

We shall have praised, we shall have exercised, we shall have led, we shall have instructed. You will have praised, you will have exercised, you will have led, you will have instructed. They will have praised, they will have exercised, they will have led, they will have instructed. If thou shalt have obeyed (parēre) the precepts of virtue, thou wilt be loved by all. Thou wilt be rich, if thou shalt have despised riches. Not sooner shall I sleep, than I shall have concluded my business (plur.). If thou shalt have restrained thy passions, thou wilt be peaceful. So soon as I shall have written the letter, I will go to walk. So soon as the soldiers shall have got ready for battle, the general will lead them out of the camp.



e) *Subjunctive Present and Imperfect Active of all the Conjugations.*

Curo, ut pueri mores emendem, corpus exercēam, animum excōlam, mentem erudiā. Curo, ut pueri mores emendes, corpus exerceas, animum excōlas, mentem erudias. Curo, ut praeceptor pueri mores emendet, corpus exerceat, animum excōlat, mentem erudiat. Curābam, ut pueri mores emendārem, corpus exercērem, animum excolērem, mentem erudirem. Curābam, ut pueri mores emendares, corpus exercēres, animum excolēres, mentem erudires. Curābam, ut praeceptor pueri mores emendaret, corpus exercēret, animum excolēret, mentem erudiret. Non dubitamus, quin nobis fidem habeātis. Moneo vos, ne parentium praecepta negligātis. Cavēte, pueri, ne garriātis! Lacedaemoniorum leges id spectant, ut laboribus erudiant juventūtem. Metuēbam, ne vobis displicērem. Timēbam, ne inimicus mihi nocēret. Metuēbam, ne tacēres. Cur metuis, ne taceam? Hostes timent, ne dux milites e castris educat.

We look out [for this], that we may improve the manners of the boys, exercise [their] bodies, cultivate [their] minds, instruct [their] intellects. We look out [for this], that you may improve the manners of the boys, exercise [their] bodies, cultivate [their] minds, instruct [their] intellects. We look out [for this], that the teachers may improve the manners of the boys, exercise [their] bodies, cultivate [their] minds, instruct [their] intellects. We looked out [for this], that we might improve the manners of the boys, exercise [their] bodies, cultivate [their] minds, instruct [their] intellects. We looked out [for this], that you might improve the manners of the boys, exercise [their] bodies, cultivate [their] minds, instruct [their] intellects. We looked out [for this], that the teachers might improve the manners of the boys, exercise [their] bodies, cultivate [their] minds, instruct [their] intellects.

I doubt not, that thou hast confidence in me. I admonish thee, that thou shouldest *not* (ne) neglect the precepts of thy parents. Be on your guard, boy, how (= that, ne) thou chatterest. The laws of the Lacedaemonians had this in view, that they might instruct youth in labors. We feared, that (ne) we might displease you. We feared, that (ne) the enemies might injure us. We feared, that (ne) you might be silent. Why did you fear, that (ne) we might be silent? The enemies feared, that (ne) the general might lead out the soldiers from the camp. I fear, that (ne) I may displease you. Why dost thou fear, that (ne) thou mayest displease us?

## LXV. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Constat 1. *it is known.* lenio 4. *I relieve, soothe.* aeger, gra, grum, *sick*  
 puto 1. *I believe, think.* mollio 4. *I render pli-* (of the mind).  
 adspicio, spexi, spec- *ant, abatē.* gnaviter, *adv. zealously.*  
 tum 3. *to look at.* nuntius, i, m. *nēus.* unde, *adv. whence.*  
 combūro, ussi, ustum consolatio, ōnis, *f. con-*  
 3. *to burn up.* solation.  
 corrigo, exi, ectum 3. longinquitas, ātis, *f.*  
*to correct, improve.* length, distance.

## f) Subjunctive Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Active of all the Conjugations.

Nemo dubitat, quin ego puerum semper bene educā(vě)rim, benevōle monuērim, diligenter correxērim, gnaviter custodi(v)ērim. Nemo dubitat, quin puerum semper bene educā(vě)ris, benevole monuēris, diligenter correxēris, gnaviter custodi(v)ēris. Nemo dubitat, quin pater puerum semper bene educā(vě)rit, benevole monuērit, diligenter correxērit, gnaviter custodi(v)ērit. Nemo dubitābat, quin puerum semper bene educa(vi)ssem, benevole monuisssem, dilligenter correxisssem, gnaviter custodi(vi)ssem. Nemo dubitabat, quin puerum semper bene educa(vi)sses, benevole monuisses, diligenter correxisses, gnaviter custodi(vi)sses. Nemo dubitabat, quin pater puerum semper bene educa(vi)sset, benevole monuisset, diligenter correxisset, gnaviter custodi(vi)sset.

Nescio, cur tacueritis. Metuimus, ne hostes urbem combussērint. Narrate mihi, qua consolationē aegrum amici animum leniveritis. Non dubito, quin dux temeritatem militum coërcuērit. Nescio, cur puērum puniveritis. Narrate nobis, quid parentes scripsērint. Nescimus, unde amici hunc nuntium audivērint. Non dubito, quin pueri praecepta mea memoriā custodiērint. Hostes timent, ne dux milites e castris eduxērit. Nesciebam, cur tacuissētis. Metuebāmus, ne hostes urbem obsidiōne cinxissent. Non dubitābam, quin praecepta mea memoriā custodivissētis. Non dubito, quin puerum bene educatūrus sis. Non dubito, quin dux temeritatem militum coërcitūrus sit. Nemo dubitat, quin hostes urbem obsidione cincturi sint. Non dubitabam, quin longinquitas temporis dolorem tuum mollitura esset. Non dubitābam, quin praecepta mea memoriā servaturus esses.

Nobody doubts, that we have always brought up the boys well, have kindly admonished them, have carefully corrected them, have zealously guarded them. Nobody doubts, that you have always brought up the boys well, have kindly admonished them, have carefully corrected

them, have zealously guarded them. Nobody doubts, that the teachers have always brought up the boys well, have kindly admonished them, have carefully corrected them, have zealously guarded them. Nobody doubted, that we had always brought up the boys well, had kindly admonished them, had carefully corrected them, had zealously guarded them. Nobody doubted, that you had always brought up the boys well, had kindly admonished them, had carefully corrected them, had zealously guarded them. Nobody doubted, that the parents had always brought up the boys well, had kindly admonished them, had carefully corrected them, had zealously guarded them.

We know not, why thou hast been silent. I feared, that (ne) the enemy had burned the city. Relate to me, by (abl.) what consolation thou hast relieved the sick mind of thy friend. I doubted not, that the general had restrained the rashness of the soldiers. We know not, why thou hast punished the boy. Relate to me what the father has written. I know not, whence the enemies have heard the news. I doubt not, that the boy has kept my precepts in (abl.) remembrance. The enemies feared, that the general had led out the soldiers from the camp. We knew not, why thou hadst been silent. We feared, that the enemies had surrounded the city with (abl.) a blockade. I doubted not, that thou wouldst bring up the boy well. I doubted not, that the general would restrain the rashness of the soldiers. We doubted not, that the enemies would surround the city with a blockade. I doubt not, that length of time will abate thy suffering.

*g) Imperative and Supine Active of all the Conjugations.*

Lauda, exerce, scribe, obēdi. Laudāto, exercēto, scribīto, obedito. Praeceptor puerorum mores emendāto, corpora exercēto, animos excolīto, mentes eruditō! Tacēto, pueri! Disce, puer! Ne garrīto, pueri! Liberi parentibus obediuntō. Coelestia semper spectāto, humanā contemnīto! Cupiditates coërcitote! Puer, ne contemnīto praecepta magistrorum tuorum! Dic, quid pater scripserit. Educ nos, O dux, contra hostes! Venio te rogātum, ut mecum ambūles. Uva matura dulcis est gustātu. Cupiditātes difficīles sunt coërcītu. Haec regio pulchra est adspectu. Vox luscinae est suavis auditu.

Praise ye, exercise, write, obey. You should praise, exercise, write, obey. Teachers should improve the manners of the boys, should exercise [their] bodies, should cultivate [their] minds, should instruct [their] intellects. Be silent, boy! Learn, O boys! Do not chatter, boy! The boy should obey the precepts of [his] teachers. You

should always regard heavenly, [but] despise human [things]. Thou shouldst restrain the passions. Say, what thou hast written. Lead, O general, the soldiers against the enemies. We come, in order (Supine) to ask you, that you would go to walk with us. An unripe grape is pungent to taste. The rashness of the soldiers was difficult to restrain. These regions are beautiful to look at. The city is difficult to guard.

h) *Participle, Gerund and Infinitive Active of all the Conjugations.*

Exercitus pugnans urbem intravit. Animus, se non videns, alia cernit. Miles, se fortiter contra hostes defendens, laudatur. Hostes, urbem oppugnaturi, castra muniverunt. Sapiens bona semper placitūra laudat. Hostes veniunt, urbem obsidione cincturi. Venio auditurus, quid pater scripsērit. Ars navigandi utilissima est. Sensus videndi acerrimus est. Sapientia est ars vivendi. Obediendum est praeceptis virtutis. Hostes urbem nostram expugnare student. Cupiditātes coërcēre debēmus. Libēri parentes suos colēre debent. Milites urbem custodire debent.

The soldiers fighting entered the city. Souls, not seeing themselves, see other [things]. The soldiers, *who defend* (= defending) themselves bravely against the enemies, are praised. Boys, *who chatter* (= chattering) in school, are troublesome. The enemies come wishing to assault the city. Strive, O boys, to obtain goods, ever about to please. The enemies came wishing to assault the city. We come wishing to hear what the friend has written thee. The art of writing is very difficult. By thinking and learning, the intellect (mens) is nourished. The opportunity *to hear* (= of hearing) is rarer than the opportunity to see (= of seeing).

(Concerning the Acc. with the Infin., comp. Synt. § 105.)

Scimus, deum mundum gubernare (we know that God governs the world). Credo, meum consilium tibi placēre (I believe that my plan pleases thee). Credo, fratrem pingēre. Audimus, hostes ante urbem castra munire. Audi, milites nostros acerrime pugnasse. Quis nescit, Socrātem semper virtutis praeceptis paruisse? Constat, Cicerōnem conjurationem Catilinae detexisse. Credo, te dormisse. Spero, vos consilium meum probaturos esse. Credimus, ducem temeritatem militum coërciturum esse. Puto, patrem cras scripturum esse. Omnes cives sperant, milites urbem custodituros esse.

I believe, that thou approvest my plan. I know, that you obey me. I believe, that the father writes. I believe, that the boy sleeps. The

brother relates to me, that thou hast approved my plan. We hear, that the general has restrained the rashness of the soldiers. We believe, that the father has written. We have heard, that the enemies have fortified a camp before the city. I believe, that the soldiers will fight spiritedly. I hope, that the plan will please thee. All Romans hoped, that Cicero would detect the conspiracy of Catiline. I hope, that I shall soon hear this news.

LXVI. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Desp̄ero 1. <i>I despair.</i>	jungo, nxi, nctum 3. naturālis, e, <i>natural.</i>
augeo, xi, ctum 2. <i>to increase, enrich.</i>	to join, connect. extemplo, <i>adv. immediately.</i>
deterreo 2. <i>I frighten from.</i>	vivo, xi, ctum 3. <i>to live.</i> diately.
[fill. pose.	propositum, i, n. <i>purpose.</i> strenue, <i>adv. vigorously.</i>
oppleo, ēvi, ētum 2. <i>to oppress.</i>	difficultas, ātis, f. <i>difficulty.</i> postquam, <i>conj. after that.</i>
conspicio, exi, ectum 3. <i>to discover.</i>	subitus, a, um, <i>sudden.</i>

i) *Indicative Present, Imperfect and Future Passive of all the Conjugations.*

Laudor, exerc̄or, ducor, erudior. Laudāris, exercēris, ducēris, erudiris. Laudātur, exercētur, ducitur, eruditur. Laudābar, exercēbar, ducebār, erudiēbar. Laudabāre, exercebāre, ducebāre, erudiebāre. Laudabātur, exercebātur, ducebātur, erudiēbatur. Laudābor, exercēbor, ducar, erudiar. Laudabēre, exercebēre, ducēre, erudiēre. Laudabitur, exercebitur, ducetur, erudiētur.

We are praised, we are exercised, we are led, we are instructed. You are praised, you are exercised, you are led, you are instructed. They are praised, they are exercised, they are led, they are instructed. We were praised, we were exercised, we were led, we were instructed. You were praised, you were exercised, you were led, you were instructed. They were praised, they were exercised, they were led, they were instructed. We shall be praised, we shall be exercised, we shall be led, we shall be instructed. You will be praised, you will be exercised, you will be led, you will be instructed. They will be praised, they will be exercised, they will be led, they will be instructed.

Quum in litt̄ris exercēmur, animi nostri multarum rerum utilium cognitione augentur. Quum subitō pericūlo terrēmur, non debemus extemplo de salute nostra desperare. Quoad litt̄ris honos suus erit, Graeci et Latini scriptores in scholis legentur. Si semper bene vixēris, ab omnibus diligēre. Virtūtis honos nulla oblivione delebitur. Quum urbs ab hostibus oppugnabātur, a civibus acriter defendebātur.

When you are exercised in literature, your souls are enriched by (abl.) the knowledge of many useful things. When thou art frightened by (abl.) a sudden fear, thou shouldest not immediately despair of thy safety. The Greek and Latin writers are read in the schools. If you shall always have lived well, you will be esteemed by all. The city which was assaulted by the enemies, was defended spiritedly by the citizens.

k) *Subjunctive Present and Imperfect Passive of all the Conjugations.*

Pater curat, ut ego bene edūcer strenūe exercear, probe excōlar, diligenter erudiār. Curo, ut bene educēre, strenue exerceāre, probe excōlāre, diligenter erudiāre. Curo, ut puer bene educētur, strenue exerceātur, probe excolātur, diligenter erudiātur. Pater curabat, ut ego bene educarer, strenue exercērer, probe excolērer, diligenter erudirer. Curabam, ut bene educarēre, strenue exercerēre, probe excolerēre, diligenter erudirēre. Curabam, ut filius tuus bene educarētur, strenue exercerētur, probe excolerētur, diligenter erudirētur.

Our father looks out [for this], that we may be well brought up, vigorously exercised, properly cultivated, carefully instructed. Your father looks out [for this], that you may be well brought up, vigorously exercised, properly cultivated, carefully instructed. Parents look out [for this], that the manners of [their] children (libēri) may be improved, [their] bodies vigorously exercised, [their] minds properly cultivated, [their] understandings carefully instructed. Our father looked out [for this], that we might be well brought up, vigorously exercised, properly cultivated, carefully instructed. Your father looked out [for this], that you might be well brought up, vigorously exercised, properly cultivated, carefully instructed. The parents looked out [for this], that the manners of [their] children might be improved, [their] bodies exercised, [their] minds cultivated, [their] understandings instructed.

Quis nescit, quam praeclaris fructibus animi nostri in litterarum studiis augeantur? Timēmus, ne exercitus noster ab hostibus vincatur. Omnes cives metuebant, ne urbs ab hostibus obsidiōne cingeretur. Lacedaemoniorum leges id spectabant, ut laboribus erudirētur juvenus. Curae mihi est, ut a te diligar. Cives metuunt, ne castra ab hostibus ante urbem muniantur.

I doubt not, that the soul may be enriched with (abl.) excellent fruit in the study of literature. We feared, that our army might be conquered by the enemies. All citizens fear, that the city may be surrounded by the enemies with (abl.) a blockade. We look out [for

this], that the youth may be instructed in (abl.) labors. We are anxious, that we may be esteemed by you. The citizens apprehended, that a camp might be fortified by the enemies before the city.

1) *Indicative and Subjunctive Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Passive of all the Conjugations.*

Milites ob fortitudinem a duce laudati sunt. Pueri in litterarum studiis gnaviter exerciti sunt. Conjuratio Catilinae a Cicerone detecta est. Oculi tenuissimis membranis a natura vestiti sunt. Cupiditates militum a duce fortissimo coercitae sunt. Tria bella atrocissima gesta sunt inter Romanos et Carthaginienses. Quum rex urbem intrabat, omnium civium domus coronis et floribus vestitae et ornatae erant. Maximo incendio tota fere urbs absumpta erat. Vix acies a Caesare instructa erat, quum hostes in unum locum convolverunt. Non eris dives, nisi divitiae a te contemptae erunt.

Non prius dormiemus, quam negotia vestra finita erunt. Beati non eritis, nisi cupiditates vestrae a vobis coercitae erunt. Simulac castra munita, erunt, milites se ad pugnam expedient. Labor voluptasque naturali quadam societate inter se juncta sunt. Multae urbes ab hostibus combustae sunt. Vix hostes conspecti erant, quum milites a duce e castris in aciem educti sunt. Metuebamus, ne urbs ab hostibus obsidione cincta esset. Dic mihi, quid tibi a sorore scriptum sit. Dic nobis, qua consolatione aeger amici animus lenitus sit. Dic, cur puer punitus sit. Metuo, ne milites subito periculo territi sint.

I have been tormented by (abl.) the most pungent pains. The enemies have been frightened by (abl.) sudden fear. The upright man has been loved and esteemed by all. The sick mind of the friend has been soothed by (abl.) our consolation. I doubt not, that the passions of the soldiers have been restrained by the bravest general. The soldiers have been led out of the camp by the general. I know not, why the boys have been (subj.) punished by you. We apprehended, that, (ne) the soldiers had been frightened by (abl.) the sudden danger.

I know not what may have been written you by the sister. We fear, that (ne) the city may be encompassed by (abl.) a blockade. The enemies were discovered (perf.) before (ante) the gates of the city. After my business (plur.) shall be concluded I will go to walk. So soon as the enemies shall be seen, we will get ready for battle. I doubt not, that riches have been despised by thee. We feared, that, by the conflagration, many houses had been consumed. We fear, that many cities have been burned up by the enemies.

m) *Imperative, Infinitive and Participle Passive of all the Conjugations.*

O puer, bene educāre, strenue exercēre, probe excolēre, diligenter erudire! O puer, bene educātor, strenue exercētor, probe excolitor, diligenter eruditor. Puer bene educātor, strenue exercētor, probe excolitor, diligenter eruditor. Si quid peccavēris, aequo animo castigāre. Ne rerum difficultatibus a proposito deterremīni! Deus pie colitor! Ne vicinīni cupiditatibus. Leges divinae ne contemnuntor. Imprōbi puniuntor. Temeritas ratione coērcētor. O puer, strenue exercere in litterarum studiis! Bonus discipulus studet laudāri. Boni discipuli student exercēri in litterarum studiis. Sapientes semper ratione regi student.

Bonus discipulus litterarum cognitiōne erudiri studet. Puer, bene educātus, omnibus placet. Hostes territi in castris manent. Urbs, obsidione cincta, multis malis vexatur. Homo eruditus non solum sibi, sed etiam aliis prodest. Pueri bene educandi, strenue exercendi, probe excolendi, diligenter erudiendi sunt.

Scimus, mundum a deo gubernari. Audimus, castra ab hostibus ante urbem muniri. Constat, conjurationem Catilinae a Cicerone detectam esse. Speramus, vos rerum difficultatibus a proposito deterritum non iri.

O boys, be ye well brought up, vigorously exercised, properly cultivated, carefully instructed! O boys, you should be well brought up, vigorously exercised, properly cultivated, carefully instructed! Boys should be well brought up, vigorously exercised, properly cultivated, carefully instructed. If you shall have committed a fault in anything (quid), be reprov'd with equanimity. Be thou not frightened from thy purpose by (abl.) the difficulty of the thing. Be ye guided by (abl.) reason. Be thou not overcome by the passions. The divine law should not be despised. The impious [man] should be punished. The passions should be restrained by (abl.) reason.

O boys, *exercise yourselves* (= be ye exercised) vigorously in the study of literature! Good scholars seek to be praised. The good scholar seeks to *exercise himself* (= to be exercised) in the study of literature. The wise [man] seeks, always to be governed by (abl.) reason. Good scholars seek to be instructed in (abl.) the knowledge of literature. Well-brought-up boys please all. The frightened enemy remains in the camp. Cities encompassed by (abl.) a blockade are annoyed by (abl.) many evils. Instructed men benefit not merely themselves, but others also. The boy is to be brought up well, to be vigorously exercised, to be properly cultivated, to be carefully instructed.



We hear, that a camp is fortified by the enemies before the city. We hope, that the conspiracy will be detected. We believe that we have not been frightened from our purpose.

LXVII. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Careo 2. (c. abl.) <i>I want.</i>	capio, cēpi, captum 3. <i>to take.</i>	machinatio, ōnis, <i>f. machination, artifice.</i>
cohaereo, haesi, haesum 2. <i>to hold together.</i>	duco, xi, ctum 3. <i>to lead ; 2) to believe, to account (as something).</i>	diuturnus, a, um, <i>long continued.</i>
jaceo, ui 2. <i>to lie, be in a low state.</i>		nefarius, a, um, <i>execrable.</i>
permaneo, mansi, mansum 2. <i>to last.</i>	caussa, ae, <i>f. a reason, cause ; eā caussā, ob eam caussam, for this reason.</i>	stabilis, e, <i>stable, firm.</i>
torpeo, ui 2. <i>to be torpid, inactive.</i>		nimium, <i>adv. too much.</i>
		eo, <i>adv. on this account.</i>
		nam, <i>conj. for.</i>

D) EXERCISES TO THE SECOND CONJUGATION IN PARTICULAR.

a) *Active of the Second Conjugation.*

(Concerning the conjunction *quod* (that), see Synt. § 108.)

Multa sunt admirabilia, sed nihil magis, quam *quod* ita stabilis est mundus atque tam praeclāre cohaeret ad permanendum. Non *ea res* me deterruit a proposito, *quod* civium nefariorum contra me machinationes timēbam. *Gaudeo, quod* tu et pater tuus valētis. Non *vitupēro* te, *quod* tuum tibi consilium maxime placet ; nam plurimi nihil rectum, nisi *quod* placuit sibi, ducunt. Vehementer *dolebāmus, quod* littērae ob diuturnum bellum jacēbant. *Laudo* te, *quod* mentem tuam in litterarum studio tam probe exercuisti.

Omnes cives *gaudent, quod* duces militum cupiditates coērcuērunt. Magnā *laude digni estis, quod* malefīcos deterruistis, quominus nefaria consilia contra rempublicam caperent. *Ob eam caussam* aliis displicēbas, *quod* tibi ipsi placēbas. Ingens in urbe *laetitia* erat, *quod* milites fortissimos se praebuērunt. Haec civitas *eā caussā* diu floruerat, *quod* semper legibus paruerat. *Eo* me deterruerātis a proposito meo, *quod* ignaviā torpebātis. Tu nobis *ea re* nocuēras, *quod* temeritatem tuam non coērcuēras. *Gaudebant* parentes, *quod* ego tibi placuēram.

I rejoice, that thou hast always followed the precepts of thy teachers. I rejoiced, that thou and thy father were well. On this account (eo) he has displeased us, because he pleased himself too much. This thing has frightened me from my purpose, that thou hast wanted all courage. I rejoice, that you have maintained (tenēre) well your opinion. We praise you, that you had always obeyed the precepts of

your parents. We grieve, that thou hast displeased thy teacher. The father rejoices, that [his] sons have always shown themselves diligent scholars in school. I have grieved, that my counsel has displeased thee. The teacher praised me, that I had obeyed his precepts. We grieve, that we have not obeyed the precepts of our parents.

LXVIII. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Placo 1. <i>I appease.</i>	persuādeo, si, sum 2.	nervus, i, m. nerve,
veto, ui, itum 1. to	(c. dat.), to persuade,	sinue.
forbid.	convince.	impius, a, um, <i>impious.</i>
audeo, ausus sum,	pigritia, ae, f. <i>slothful-</i>	nullus, a, um, <i>no one;</i>
audēre, to dare.	ness.	nullus non, <i>every one.</i>
emineo, ui 2. to be emi-	prudentia, ae, f. <i>pru-</i>	praesens, ntis, <i>present.</i>
nent.	dence, wisdom.	nunquam, adv. <i>never.</i>
jubeo, jussi, jussum 2.		satis, adv. <i>enough.</i>
to bid, command.		

Legi divinae et humanae omnes parēbunt, qui secundum naturam vivere studēbunt. Si virtutis praeceptis semper parēbis, in coelum tibi aditus patēbit. Si ignaviā torpēbitis, praeclāris rebus nunquam eminebītis. Si virtute carebīmus, bonis non placebīmus. Si cupiditātes vestras coērcuerītis, in virtutis via nunquam vacillabītis. Quo quis magis mentem litterarum studio exercuerit, eo magis iis delectabitur. Quo plura beneficia parentibus nostris debuerīmus, eo gratiores animos in eos habēre debebīmus. Si milites nostri fortes se in pugna praebruērunt, victoria non erit dubia.

The more we shall have exercised our minds in the study of literature, so much the more shall we be delighted by (abl.) the same. If you shall not have obeyed the precepts of virtue, you will not please good men. If thou shalt have shown thyself an upright man, thou wilt please all the good. If I shall have afforded refuge and consolation to my enemies, they will restrain their anger against me.

Vide, ne ob pigritiam a praeceptoribus castigēre! Parēte, pueri! Illud tenēte, nervos atque artus esse sapientiae, non temēre credēre! Impius ne audēto placare donis iram deorum! Pueri mentes littēris exercento! Ut oculūs, sic animus, se non videns, alia cernit. Metus est opinio magni mali impendentis, et aegritūdo est opinio magni mali praesentis. Nulli non ad nocendum satis virium est. Acerrimus ex omnibus nostris sensibus est sensus videndi. Prudentia ex providendo est appellāta. Lex est recta ratio in jubendo et vetando. Libēri parentibus parēre debent. Persuadēto tibi, tuum consilium mihi vehementer et placuisse, et semper placitūrum esse!

Be silent, boys! See [to it], that, on account of [your] slothfulness, you are not censured by your teachers. Thou shouldest obey thy parents and teachers. The boy should exercise [his] mind in literature. The impious should not dare to appease the anger of God by presents. The citizens feared the threatening danger. Youth is a thing, destined (= about) ever to please, never to displease.

LXIX. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Concīto 1. <i>I raise.</i>	torqueo, rsi, rtum 2.	exercitatio, ōnis, <i>f.</i>
ejūlo 1. <i>I complain.</i>	to twist, torment, torture.	exercise, practice.
repūto 1. <i>I consider.</i>		seditio, ōnis, <i>f.</i> sedition.
commōneo 2. <i>I remind.</i>	video, vidi, visum 2.	impētus, ūs, <i>m.</i> attack.
commōveo, ōvi, ōtum 2. to move.	to see; videor, <i>I am seen, seem.</i>	obitus, ūs, <i>m.</i> departure, death.
edōceo, cui, ctum 2. to instruct, inform.	concordia, ae, <i>f.</i> harmony.	pristinus, a, um, former.
misceo, miscui, mistum or mixtum, to mix, disturb.	discordia, ae, <i>f.</i> discord.	diligens, tis, diligent.
	fuga, ae, <i>f.</i> flight.	continūo, <i>adv.</i> forthwith.
	moeror, ōris, <i>m.</i> grief.	sedūlo, <i>adv.</i> busily.
perterreo 2. to frighten, put in fear.	crudelitas, ātis, <i>f.</i> cruelty.	mirifice, <i>adv.</i> wonderfully.
		quoque, <i>conj.</i> also.

b) *Passive of the Second Conjugation.*

(Concerning the temporal conjunction *quum* (when, as), see Synt. § 110. 1.)

*Quum docēmur, tacēre debēmus.* *Quum optāmus*, ne respublica misceatur, civium concordiam omnibus modis servare *debēmus*. *Quum* in schola diligens *eris*, *dubitabisne*, quin bonus discipulus a praeceptoribus habere? *Quum* nobiscum *reputamus*, quantis et quam praeclāris fructibus animi nostri in litterarum studiis augeantur, mirifice *delectamur*. *Quum* magnorum virorum laudes *legimus*, *optamus*, ut eādem gloriā nos quoque digni habeamur. *Quum* militum crudelitas ducis consilio *coercebatur*, tota civitas laeta *erat*. Littērae, *quum* ob bellum diu *jacuērunt*, nunc, recuperatā pace, eo acriore studio *exercentur*.

*Quum* hostes urbem *oppugnāvērunt*, omnes cives maximo timōre *opplebantur*. *Quum* acerbissimae calamitātis nuntio *terrebar*, omne meum perfrugium ac solatium in te collocātum esse *existimābam*. *Quum* tristissimo de amici carissimi obitu nuntio graviter *commovebāre* animo, etiam nos moerōre *opplebāmur*. *Quum* de culpa nostra a parentibus *commonebāmur*, acerbus dolor animos nostros *occupābat*. *Quum* artes atque littērae in civitate nostra *florēbunt*, ejus splendor *augebitur*. *Quum* milites nostri de hostium adventu *edocebuntur*, pugnandi ardore *flagrābunt*. Ne tum quidem *ejulābo*, *quum* acerbissimis doloribus *torquebor*.

*Quum* hostium impetu perterrebimini, urbi nostrae magnum periculum imminēbit.

*Quum* milites seditionem concitassent, ducis consilio et virtute coërciti sunt. *Quum* hostes territi essent et jam in fugam se darent, dux eos monuit, ut pristinae virtutis memores essent. *Quum* exercitus de hostium adventu edoceret, continuo summo pugnandi ardore flagravit. Ne tum quidem ejulavi, *quum* acerbissimis doloribus torquerer.

When thou art taught, thou oughtest to be silent. The wise [man] is happy, even when he is tortured. When good scholars are exercised in literature, they are delighted. When I see by how great pains thou art tortured, I am deeply (= violently) moved (commoveo). When you consider by (= with) yourselves, *how many* (quot) and *how great* (quantus) toils and cares have been bestowed by your parents for your good (= welfare); you ought to be moved by (abl.) gratitude. When thou shalt see how actively I am exercised in the Latin language, thou wilt rejoice. As we were pressed by the severest (acerbus) misfortune, we placed (colloco) our whole hope in (in with abl.) our friends. As the enemy seemed to approach the city, each one (unusquisque) of the citizens was filled with fear. As you were informed of the arrival of the enemies, you were not frightened. As I read the life of Agricola, I was violently moved within (animus). As thou wast tortured with severe pains, I was filled with pity.

As the cruelty of the soldiers was restrained (subj.) by the wisdom and firmness of the general, [there] was (perf.) great joy in the city. As the city was assaulted (subj.) by the enemies, all the citizens were put in fear (perf.) As the camp of the enemies was moved (subj.), we exulted (perf.). As we were frightened from (subj.) our purpose by the difficulty of the thing, thou hast recalled us to the same. As I was moved (subj.) within (animus) by the sad news of the death of my friend, thy pity was very agreeable to me. As thou seemedst (subj.) to desert us, I was grieved (perf.) very much.

When the army shall be informed of the arrival of the enemies, it will burn with a desire to fight (gen. of Ger.). Wise men will be happy, even if tortured by the bitterest pains. When we shall be put in fear by the attack of the enemies, great danger will threaten our city. If thou shalt be virtuous (= partaking of virtue), thou wilt not even then complain, when thou shalt be tortured by the severest pains.

Ne rerum difficultatibus a proposito deterrere! Milites, ne hostium impetu perterrebimini! ☉ puer, strenue exercetor in litterarum studiis! Milites, ne inani timore oppleminor! Leges civitatis ne discordia

civium miscentor! Territis hostibus, nostri milites victoriam reportaverunt.

Be ye not frightened from [your] purpose by the difficulty of the thing. Soldiers, you should not be put in fear by the attack of the enemies! The evil passions should be restrained by the reason. It is known, that all the powers of the body and of the soul are strengthened (= increased) by exercise.

### LXX. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Verso 1. <i>I turn; versor,</i> <i>I turn myself, find</i> <i>myself, live.</i>	surgo, surrexi, surrec- tum 3. <i>to arise.</i>	perversitas, âtis, <i>f. per-</i> <i>verseness.</i>
confligo, xi, ctum 3. <i>I fight.</i>	sugo, xi, ctum 3. <i>to</i> <i>suck, suck out.</i>	pravitas, âtis, <i>f. per-</i> <i>verseness, wickedness.</i>
decerpo, psi, ptum 3. <i>to pluck off.</i>	pomum, i, <i>n. eatable</i> <i>fruit; plur. fruit.</i>	paene, <i>adv. nearly, al-</i> <i>most.</i>
pergo, perrexi, perrec- tum 3. <i>to go, con-</i> <i>tinue.</i>	pavor, ôris, <i>m. fright,</i> <i>trepidation.</i>	protinus, <i>adv. forthwith.</i>
	lac, ctis, <i>n. milk.</i>	statim, <i>adv. immediate-</i> <i>ly.</i>
	nutrix, icis, <i>f. nurse.</i>	ut, <i>conj. just as, as.</i>

### E) EXERCISES TO THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN PARTICULAR.

#### a) Active of the Third Conjugation.

(Concerning the temporal conjunctions *postquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, *simulac*, see Synt. § 110, 2.)

Hostes, *ubi* primum nostros equites *conspexerunt*, (eos) *celeriter perturbaverunt. Ut surreximus*, protinus ad te *perreximus. Simulatque* lucem *adspeximus*, in omni continuo pravitate et in summa opinionum perversitate *versamur*, ut paene cum lacte nutricis errorem suxisse videamur. *Postquam* Caesar aciem *instruxit*, omnes hostes in unum locum *convolaverunt. Ut* nostri cum hostibus *conflixerunt*, magnus eos occupavit pavor. *Simulac* litteras *scripsi*, cum fratre *ambulavi. Postquam* amicum in hortum *duxero*, dicam tibi, quid pater mihi scripsert. *Ubi* poma *decerpserimus*, edemus. *Ut surrexistis*, statim ad negotia vestra accedere debetis.

### LXXI. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Explôro 1. <i>I search out,</i> <i>examine.</i>	elicio, ūi, itum 3. <i>to</i> <i>draw out, elicit.</i>	recipio, cēpi, ceptum 3. <i>to receive, se reci-</i>
propulso 1. <i>I repel.</i>	coquo, xi, ctum 3. <i>to</i> <i>cook.</i>	pēre, <i>to betake one's</i> <i>self back.</i>
allicio, exi, ectum 3. <i>to</i> <i>draw to, allure; but,</i>	ningo, xi 3. <i>to snow.</i>	restinguo, nxi, nctum

3. to extinguish, put out.	coen <sup>o</sup> , ae, f. a meal.	pluviōsus, a, um, rainy.
relinquo, liqui, lictum	sollicitūdo, īnis, f. solicitude.	beāte, adv. peacefully.
3. to leave behind, desert.	tempestas, ātis, f. weather, storm.	antēquam, conj. before that, ere, before.

(Concerning the particles of time: *priusquam* and *antequam*, see Synt. § 110, 3.)

a) *Priusquam* animum tuum sollicitudinē angas et crucies, explorāre debes, quid sit, quod te angat et cruciet.

b) *Priusquam* bellum atrocissimum gessimus, artes et litterae in civitate nostra floruerunt. *Antēquam* bellum urbis nostrae opes absumpsit, potentissima fuit. *Antēquam* nixit, tempestas fuit valde pluviōsa.

c) Non beate vivētis, *antēquam* omnium cupiditatum ardorem retinxeritis. Non dives eris, *priusquam* divitias contempsēris. Non prius edētis, *quam* coqua coenam coxerit. Non prius te illi relinquent, *quam* te ad misericordiam allexerint. Exercitus noster non prius domum se recipiet, *quam* hostes ad pugnam elicerit.

d) Hostes propulsi sunt, *antēquam* urbem obsidiōne cingērent. Milites nostri urbem liberaverunt, *priusquam* eam hostes combussissent. Dies obrepit hostibus, *priusquam* aggērem extruxissent.

## LXXII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Contrāho, xi, ctum 3.	figūra, ae, f. figure, form.	donec, conj. so (as) long as, until, until that, even until.
demo, mpsi, mptum, 3.	conjurātus, i, m. a conspirator.	dum, conj. while, so (as) long as, until, until that.
describo, psi, ptum 3.	gladius, i, m. sword.	quoad, conj. so (as) long as, until, until that, even until that.
to describe, point out.	mathematicus, i, m. mathematician.	
stringo, inxi, ictum 3.	geometricus, a, um, geometrical.	tamdū, adv. so long as.
to touch upon, to draw (a sword).		
copia, ae, f. abundance; plur. troops.	nobilis, e, known, renowned.	

(Concerning the particles of time: *dum*, *quod*, *donec*, see Synt. § 110. 4, 5.)

*Dum* ego scribēbam, tu legēbas, et frater ludēbat. *Dum* nos canebamus, vos discebātis, et sorores pingēbant. *Quoad* vives, omnibus tuis gratus vives. Homines, *dum* docent, discunt. Archimēdes, nobilissimus mathematicus, *dum* in pulvère figūras geometricas describit attentius, Syracūsae a Romanis expugnatae sunt. *Dum* consul litteras legit, conjurāti gladios strinxerant. *Dum* dux aciem instruit, hostis totam urbem cinxerat. Cicero omni quiete abstinuit, *donec* Catilinae

conjunctionem *detexisset*. Expectāmus, *dum* nobis *dicātis*, quid parentes scripsērint. Milites cupide expectābant, *dum* dux se e castris contra hostes *educeret*. Tamdiu interrogasti, *quoad* omnem meam sententiam *elicuisti*. Tamdiu manēbo, *dum* omnem sollicitudinem tibi *dempsero*.

While I was singing, thou wast learning, and the sister was painting. While we were writing, you were reading, and the brothers were playing. So long as Cicero lived, he occupied himself with (*navo operam* c. dat.) literature. So long as I live, I shall be mindful of this kindness. While the general arranged the army in order of battle, the enemies had drawn together all [their] forces. Wait, until we tell you, what the father has written. The general waited, until the enemies had placed the army in order of battle. I waited, until thou saidst to me what the father had written.

As soon as I had arisen (perf.), I went (perf.) immediately to you. After Caesar had led out (perf.) the soldiers, the enemies arranged [their] army in order of battle. As soon as we shall have written, we will take a walk with you. As soon as thou art arisen, thou oughtest to go (*accedere*) forthwith to thy business. Before the enemies had drawn together (perf.) their troops, Caesar had captured (perf.) the city. Thou wilt not live peacefully, before thou shalt have extinguished the ardor of all passions. You will not be rich, before you shall have despised riches. My friend will not leave thee, before he shall have moved (= allured, *allicere*) thee to sympathy. Our soldiers will not betake themselves home, before that they have allured the enemies to battle. Before we trouble and torment our mind with solicitude, we ought to inquire what [it] may be, which vexes and troubles us. The enemies were repelled (perf.), before they had arranged the army in order of battle. Night overtook (perf.) us, before we had extinguished the conflagration.

LXXIII. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Seprü 1. <i>I separate, divide.</i>	fabricātor, ōris, m. framer.	arcānus, a, um, secret; arcānum, i. n. a secret.
benefācio, fēci, factum 3. <i>to do well.</i>	sermo, ōnis, m. conversation, speech.	cetēri, ae, a, the rest.
circumspicio, spexi, spectrum 3. <i>to look around, regard.</i>	affabilitās, ātis, f. affability.	perfectus, a, um, perfect.
maledico 3. (c. dat.) <i>I reproach.</i>	comitās, ātis, f. courteousness.	ante, adv. before, rather.
praedico 3. <i>I foretell.</i>	facultas, ātis, f. faculty; plur. means.	quantopere, adv. how much.
vesper, ěri, m. evening.		simpliciter, adv. simply.

Ignis urbem absumpsit. Mihi crede, nunquam vir perfectus fortunae maledixit. Nimum ne crede colōri! Fac, ut ante circumspicias, quibuscum edas et bibas, quam quid edas et bibas! Dic, quid patri scripseris! O stulte, ne praedic futura! Ne credite mendacibus! Pueri, strenue litteras discitōte! Puer in schola attendito! Principes civitatis concordiae consulunto! Difficile dictu est, quantopere conciliet animos hominum comitas affabilitasque sermonis. Mendāci homini, ne verum quidem dicenti, credere solēmus. Venio tibi dictūrus, quid amicus mihi scripsērit. Deus, fabricātor mundi, nulla re magis hominem separāvit a ceteris animalibus, quam dicendi facultate. Ex discendo maxima ad nos redundat voluptas. Optimus est orator, qui dicendo animos nostros et docet, et delectat, et permōvet. Mores puero- rum se inter ludendum simplicius detēgunt. Hominis mens discendo et cogitando alitur. Tandiu discendum est, quamdiu vivas. Pulchrum est e virtute (conformably to virtue) vivere. Scisne, patrem scripsisse? Quis scit, se ad vespērum esse victūrum? Speramus, nos vobis arcana elicituros esse.

Eat and drink thou, moderately. Trust ye not too much to color. Do thou well to try friends. Tell me, what the father has written thee. Boy, thou shouldst zealously learn literature. The boys should be attentive in school. It is incredible to say (Sup. in u), how bravely our soldiers have fought with the enemies. Lying men we are not even accustomed to believe, when they tell the truth (part.). We come in order to tell (= wishing to tell) thee, what our brothers have written (subj.) us. By diligently learning (gerund), scholars acquire for themselves the approbation of [their] parents and teachers.

#### LXXIV. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Urgeo, ursi, ursum 2.	3. to break; mola	wanting; c. dat. to
to press, oppress.	frangere, to grind.	neglect.
conjungo, nxi, nctum	frigo, xi, ctum 3.	mola, ae, f. mill. [lance.
3. to join (together).	roast, parch.	vigilantia, ae, f. vigi-
expingo, pinxi, pictum,	insculpo, psi, ptum 3.	gladiator, ōris, m. fen-
3. to paint out, draw.	to engrave.	cer, gladiator.
tingo, finxi, fictum 3.	ungo, xi, ctum 3.	novus, a, um, new.
to form, feign.	anoint.	profecto, adv. surely.
frango, frēgi, fractum	desum, fui, esse, to be	quoniam, conj. because.

#### b) Passive of the Third Conjugation.

(Concerning the conjunctions: *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, (because), see Synt. § 111.)

Quia semper e virtutis praeceptis vixisti, ab omnibus diligēris. Ci-



ves summa inopia urgebantur, quia omnes eorum facultates bello absumptae erant. Quoniam de hac re satis dictum est, jam accedamus ad novam. Cicero pater patriae appellatus est, quod ejus consilio et vigilantia conjuratio Catilinae detecta est. Omnes cives angebantur, quia metuēbant, ne urbs ab hostibus obsidione cingeretur.

Multae fabulae a poetis fictae sunt. Gladiatores uncti decertabant. Apud Homērum omnia ita descripta sunt, ut quasi expicta videantur. Omnibus in animo quasi insculptum est, esse deum. Omnia sunt profecto laudanda, quae conjuncta cum virtute sunt, et, quae cum vitiis (sc. conjuncta sunt), vituperanda. Quoad urbs obsidione cingebatur, magno metu angebāmur. Milites cupide exspectant, dum a duce e castris contra hostes educantur. Cave, ne fallāre! Timebamus, ne exercitus noster vinceretur. Nihil magis mihi curae est, quam ut a te diligar. Si ceditis, metuo, ne vincamini. Non dubito, quin fortiter a militibus defendāmur. Quum milites nostri conspicerentur, hostes ingens pavor occupavit. Quoad honeste vives, omnibus diligere. Exercitus noster, quoad bonus dux ei praeerit, non vincetur. Ab omnibus contemnēmini, si officiis vestris deeritis. Quamdiu tu abēris, ego de te angar et cruciabor. Si tam fortiter pugnare pergēmus, non vincēmur. Postquam hostes conspecti erunt, nostri milites e castris educentur. Postquam hordēum frictum erit, molis fragetur. Ubi poma decerpta erunt, a nobis edentur.

Take care (= be on thy guard), that thou art not troubled without reason. I fear that (ne) I shall be deceived. We are more anxious for nothing than that we shall be esteemed by you. If we give way, I fear that we shall be conquered. It often happens (accidit), that the good are injured by the bad. I was troubled, because I feared that I should be deceived. We feared that the city would be burnt up by the enemies. All desired (opto), that the conspirators might be discovered. We waited anxiously, until we were led against the enemies. The enemies did not doubt, that we should be conquered. Why didst thou fear, that thou shouldst be injured by us? So long as the city was surrounded by a blockade, you were oppressed with great want. So long as the enemies were seen, our [soldiers] remained in the camp. So long as the war was carried on, literature was in a low state. So long as the enemies besieged the city, we were troubled with great fear. As, lately, thou wast sick, thou wast very much troubled. If you shall continue to fight so bravely, you will not be conquered by the enemies. So long as you shall be absent, we shall be troubled concerning (de) you. Thou wilt be despised by all, if thou shalt neglect (*desum*) thy duties. Our soldiers will not be conquered, so long as a good general shall

preside over them. Homer will always be read in the schools. As soon as the letter shall be written, we will take a walk with you. When the army shall be led out from the camp, it will fight with the enemies.

LXXV. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Administro 1. <i>I manage.</i>	detrāho, xi, ctum 3. <i>to draw away, remove.</i>	lucrum, i, n. <i>gain, advantage.</i>
perpëtro 1. <i>I perform, perpetrate.</i>	distrāho, xi, ctum 3. <i>to draw asunder, waste.</i>	existimatio, ōnis, f. <i>estimation, opinion.</i>
praesto, iti, itum or ātum 1. (c. dat.) <i>to be superior to.</i>	tingo, xi, ctum 3. <i>to color, form.</i>	obsessio, ōnis, f. <i>siege.</i>
addūco 3. <i>to lead to, move.</i>	elegantia, ae, f. <i>elegance.</i>	facinus, ōris, n. <i>deed, foul deed.</i>
como, compsi, comp- tum 3. <i>to comb, adorn.</i>	fortūna, ae, f. <i>fortune; plur. gifts of fortune.</i>	appetitus, ūs, m. <i>desire, longing.</i>
consūmo, mpsi, mptum 3. <i>to consume.</i>	luxuria, ae, f. <i>luxury.</i>	diversus, a, um, <i>diverse, different.</i>
convēho, xi, ctum 3. <i>to bear together, bring together.</i>	miseria, ae, f. <i>misery, want.</i>	finitimus, a, um, <i>neighboring.</i>
destrūo, xi, ctum 3. <i>to destroy.</i>	providentia, ae, f. <i>fore-sight, providence.</i>	nitūdus, a, um, <i>splendid.</i>
	curricūlum, i, n. <i>circuit, course.</i>	innumerabilis, e, <i>innumerable.</i>
		tantopëre, adv. <i>so much.</i>

Regere ratione! Ne angitor, amice! O cives, ne lucri cupiditate, sed virtutis studio regimīnor! Animi appetitus ratione reguntur! Juvenis, litterarum morumque elegantia tinctus, omnibus placebit. Combusta urbe, omnes cives maximam miseria vexantur. Romani multis rebus praeclare gestis summam sibi comparaverunt gloriam. Contempta virtute, vita beata nulla est. Multi homines, omnibus fortunis per luxuriam consumptis et distractis, reliquam vitam miserrime agunt.

Dempta omni sollicitudine, laetitiae indulgeamus! Isocrates in diverso genere dicendi nitidus fuit et comptus. Aciem instructam dux contra hostes eduxit. Frumento ex finitimis regionibus in urbem convector, cives urbis obsessionem aequis animis expectaverunt. Caesar, contractis copiis in unum locum, hostium impetum expectavit. Stricto gladio, dux milites contra hostes eduxit. Urbs, obsidione cincta, multis malis urgetur. Gloriam detractam, quid est, quod in hoc tam exiguo vitae curriculo tantis nos in laboribus exerceamus?

Si bona existimatio divitiis praestat, et pecunia tantopere expetitur; quanto gloria magis est expetenda! Justitia propter sese colenda est. Certum est, universum mundum divina providentia regi et administrari. Quis ignorat, innumerabiles urbes a Romanis destructas esse? Om-

nes sciunt, viros bonos nunquam spe mercēdis adductum iri, ut faciūs aliq̄d perpētrent.

Be thou not conquered by the passions. Be ye governed by reason. Thou shouldst not be governed by the desire of gain, but by the pursuit of virtue. You should not be troubled, friends. The divine law should not be despised. Parents should be honored by children. I hope that all solicitude will soon be taken away from thee. The orations of Isocrates were splendid and adorned. The soldiers believed, that the troops of the enemies would be drawn together. The soldiers having been led out of the camp, fought (perf.) bravely with the enemies. In Homer, we see all things not described, but, as it were, painted out. Who does not know, that all the virtues are connected *with each other* (inter se). I hope, that you will be led to my views.

#### LXXVI. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Degusto, 1. <i>I taste.</i>	gestio 4. <i>I demean myself, am transported.</i>	ment; plur. <i>elementary principles.</i>
contingo, t̄gi, tactum	sep̄lio, īvi, ultum 4.	aequitas, ātis, <i>f. equity.</i>
3. <i>to touch; contingit, it falls to my lot.</i>	<i>I inter, bury.</i>	jucunditas, ātis, <i>f. delightfulness, agreeableness.</i>
licet 2. <i>it is permitted.</i>	servio 4. <i>I serve.</i>	accuratus, a, um, <i>accurate.</i>
minūo, ūi, ūtum 3. <i>I diminish, make less.</i>	iracundia, ae, <i>f. irascibility, anger.</i>	grammaticus, a, um, <i>grammatical.</i>
fastidio, 4. (c. acc.) <i>I feel disgust, spurn.</i>	num̄erus, i, <i>m. number; 2) harmony, rhythm.</i>	
	elementum, i, <i>n. element</i>	

#### F) EXERCISES TO THE FOURTH CONJUGATION IN PARTICULAR.

Sic vive cum hominibus, tanquam deus videat; et videt. Cave, ne tanquam parva fastidias grammatica elementa! Philosophiae servire debemus, ut nobis contingat vera libertas. Nullus dolor est, quem non longinquitas temporis minuat ac molliat. Nihil magis mihi curae est, quam ut obediam praeceptis magistrorum meorum.

Quum milites nostri castra muniēbant, hostes aciem instruēbant. Dum urbem nostram custodiebāmus, hostis eam oppugnare non audēbat. Celeritas equitum nostrorum impediēbat, quominus hostis se ad pugnam expediret. Quum milites ducem sepeirent, ingens luctus omnium animos occupavit. Litterae tuae mihi tam gratae fuērunt, ut laetitiam plane gestirem. Semper operam navavimus, ut orationem nostram verborum numerorumque jucunditate condiremus.

Nihil vos impedivimus, quominus negotia vestra finiretis. Nescivi, cur tantopere laetitiam gestires. Scisne, cur hunc puerum puniverim? Nescio, unde hunc nuntium audiveritis. Dicam tibi, cur domum nos-

tram corōnis ornaverimus et vestiverimus. Dic, cur ferieritis hunc puērū.

Placebas praeceptoribus tuis, quia semper eorum praeceptis obediēras. Vix milites nostri castra munierant, quum hostis conspectus est. Jam laetitiā gestieramus, quum repente tristissimus nuntius animos nostros summo moerore opplēvit. Quum milites totum diem siti-vissent et esurivissent, ne nocte quidem quiēti indulgēre iis licuit. Quum hostis se ad pugnam expēdivisset, milites nostri laetitiā gestiē-runt.

Non prius dormiam, quam negotia mea finivēro. Quum exercitus castra munivērit, se ad pugnam expedit. Si grammatica elementa fastidies, nunquam accuratam linguae Latinae cognitionem tibi compa-rabis. Si quid novi audiverimus, curabimus, ut brevi sciatis. Non dubitābam, quin, si semel philosophiam degustavisses, toto animo ei servitūrus esses. Ne garri, puer! Audite, pueri: si praeceptoribus vestris obedieritis, a parentibus vestris praemiis ornabimini! Puer obe-dito praeceptoribus! Homo ne servito cupiditatibus! Milites urbem custodiunto!

Puer, in scholis garriens, molestus est. Bonus discipulus semper praeceptis magistrorum obedire studet. Quis nescit, Ciceronem toto animo philosophiae servisse? Spero, vos grammatica elementa non esse fastidituros. Prohibenda est ira in puniendo. Optandum est, ut ii, qui praesunt rei publicae, legum similes sint, quae ad puniendum non iracundiā, sed aequitate ducuntur. Legendi semper occasio est, audiendi non semper.

Terra vestita est floribus, herbis, arboribus, frugibus. Urbs a militibus custoditor. Speramus, urbem a militibus custoditum iri.

To good parents, nothing is a source of greater care (*est* with *dat.*), than that they may instruct their children in (*abl.*) literature. Be on your guard, boy, that thou dost not chatter! I punished the boy, because he chattered. As the enemies were discovered, our soldiers were transported with (*abl.*) joy. So long as I was in school, I was anxious (= it was for a care to me), that I might obey the precepts of my teachers. Many with their whole soul, have given themselves up to (= served) philosophy. Often already has length of time abated the severest sufferings. We have kept in memory the precepts of our teachers.

Tell me, whence thou hast heard this news. I doubt not, that the teachers have punished the boys with (*abl.*) justice. The soldiers had hungered and thirsted the whole day. Scarcely had our soldiers got ready for battle, when the enemies were discovered (*perf.*). As the

king entered into the city, all the citizens had adorned (= clothed) the houses with flowers and garlands. The soldiers did not doubt, that the enemies had already fortified [their] camp. I knew not whence thou hadst heard this news.

The good will always obey the principles of virtue. Length of time will abate thy suffering. The precepts of our teachers are always kept in (abl.) remembrance. When you shall have heard this news, you will be transported with joy. If we shall always have obeyed the principles of virtue, the approach to heaven will stand open to us.

Serve wisdom, not the passions. Do not chatter, boys. Thou shouldst not rage against (*in c. acc.*) the enemies, O soldier. You should obey [your] teachers and parents. The scholar should keep the principles of his teacher in remembrance. Men should not serve their passions. The boys, *who chatter* (part.) in school, are troublesome to the teacher. Soldiers ought (*oportet*) to guard the city. I hope that length of time will abate thy suffering. Hast thou heard, that the enemies have fortified the camp? We come in order to (sup. in *um*) guard the city. A thoughtless boy is difficult to instruct (sup. in *u*). We must (*gerund*) serve virtue.

# § 53. DEPO

## Of the four

I. Hortor, hortātus sum, hortāri. Characteristic : <i>a</i> long.		II. Vereor, veritus sum, verēri. Characteristic : <i>e</i> long.	
INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
I. Present.		I. Present.	
hortōr, I exhort	hortē-r, I may exhort	verē-or, I reverence	verē-ār, I may reverence
hortā-rīs, thou exhortest.	hortē-ris(e), thou mayest exhort	verē-ris, thou reverencest	verē-āris(e) thou mayest rev.
hortā-tūr, he, she, it exhorts	hortē-tūr, he, she, it may exhort	verē-tur, he, she, it reverences	verē-atur, he, she, it may reverence
hortā-mūr, we exhort	hortē-mūr, we may exhort	verē-mur, we reverence	verē-āmur, we may reverence
hortā-mīnī, you exhort	hortē-mīnī, you may exhort	verē-mīni, you reverence	verē-āmīni, you may reverence
hortā-ntūr, they exhort	hortē-ntūr, they may exhort.	verē-ntur, they reverence.	verē-antur, they may reverence.
II. Imperfect.		II. Imperfect.	
hortā-bār, I exhorted, was exhorting	hortā-rēr, I might exhort	verē-bar, I revered, was rev.	verē-rer, I might reverence
hortā-bāris(e), thou exh., wast exh.	hortā-rēris(e), thou mightest exhort	verē-bāris(e), thou reverenc'dst, wast r	verē-rēris(e) thou mightest rev.
hortā-bātūr, he, she, it exh., was exh.	hortā-rētūr, he, she, it might exhort	verē-bātūr, he, she, it rev. was rev.	verē-rētūr, he, she, it might rev.
hortā-bāmūr, we exh., were exh.	hortā-rēmūr, we might exhort	verē-bāmūr, we rev. were rev.	verē-rēmūr, we might reverence
hortā-bāmīnī, you exh., were exh.	hortā-rēmīnī, you might exhort	verē-bāmīni, you rev. were rev.	verē-rēmīni, you might reverence
hortā-buntūr, they exh., were exh.	hortā-rentūr, they might exhort.	verē-bantur, they rev. were rev.	verē-rentur, they might reverence.
III. Future (Indicative). <sup>1</sup>		III. Future (Indicative). <sup>1</sup>	
hortā-bōr, I shall exhort		verē-bōr, I shall reverence	
hortā-bēris(e), thou wilt exhort		verē-bēris(e), thou wilt reverence	
hortā-bitūr, he, she, it will exhort		verē-bitūr, he, she, it will reverence	
hortā-bīmūr, we shall exhort		verē-bīmūr, we shall reverence	
hortā-bīmīnī, you will exhort		verē-bīmīni, you will reverence	
hortā-buntūr, they will exhort.		verē-buntur, they will reverence.	
IV. Perfect.		IV. Perfect.	
a) Indicative.		a) Indicative.	
hortā-tus, sūm, I have exhorted		verī-tus, sum, I have revered	
a, ēs, thou hast exhorted		a, es, thou hast revered	
um, est, he, she, it has exhorted		um, est, he, she, it has revered	
hortā-ti, sūmus, we have exhorted		verī-ti, sumus, we have revered	
ae, estis, you have exhorted		ae, estis, you have revered	
a, sunt, they have exhorted		a, sunt, they have revered	
b) Subjunctive.		b) Subjunctive.	
hortā-tus, sīm, I may have exhorted		verī-tus, sim, I may have revered	
a, sīs, thou mayest have ex.		a, sis, thou mayest have rev.	
um, sit, he, she, it may have ex.		um, sit, he, she, it may have rev.	
hortā-ti, simus, we may have exhorted		verī-ti, simus, we may have rev.	
ae, sitis, you may have exhorted		ae, sitis, you may have rev.	
a, sint, they may have exhorted.		a, sint, they may have rev.	

## NENTS

## Conjugations.

III. *Fungor, functus sum, fungi.*Characteristic : *e* short.

## INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

## I. Present.

<i>fung-or</i> , I manage	<i>fung-ār</i> , I may manage
<i>fung-ēris</i> , thou managest	<i>fung-āris(e)</i> , thou mayest manage
<i>fung-ētur</i> , he, she, it manages	<i>fung-ātur</i> , he, she, it may manage
<i>fung-īmur</i> , we manage	<i>fung-āmur</i> , we may manage
<i>fung-īmīni</i> , you manage	<i>fung-āmīni</i> , you may manage
<i>fung-untur</i> , they manage	<i>fung-antur</i> , they may manage.

## II. Imperfect.

<i>fung-ēbar</i> , I managed, was m.	<i>fung-ērer</i> , I might manage
<i>fung-ēbāris(e)</i> , thou managedst, was m.	<i>fung-ērēris(e)</i> , thou mightest manage
<i>fung-ēbātur</i> , he, she, it m., was m.	<i>fung-ērētur</i> , he, she, it, might manage
<i>fung-ēbāmur</i> , we managed, were m.	<i>fung-ērēmur</i> , we might manage
<i>fung-ēbāmīni</i> , you managed, were m.	<i>fung-ērēmīni</i> , you might manage
<i>fung-ēbantur</i> , they managed, were m.	<i>fung-ērentur</i> , they might manage.

III. Future (Indicative).<sup>1</sup>

<i>fung-ār</i> , I shall manage
<i>fung-ēris(e)</i> , thou wilt manage
<i>fung-ētur</i> , he, she, it will manage
<i>fung-ēmur</i> , we shall manage
<i>fung-ēmīni</i> , you will manage
<i>fung-entur</i> , they will manage.

## IV. Perfect.

## a) Indicative.

<i>func-tus</i> , <i>sum</i> , I have managed
<i>a</i> , <i>es</i> , thou hast managed
<i>um</i> , <i>est</i> , he, she, it has managed
<i>func-ti</i> , <i>sumus</i> , we have managed
<i>ae</i> , <i>estis</i> , you have managed
<i>a</i> , <i>sunt</i> , they have managed.

## b) Subjunctive.

<i>func-tus</i> , <i>sim</i> , I may have managed
<i>a</i> , <i>sis</i> , thou mayest have m.
<i>um</i> , <i>sit</i> , he, she, it may have m.
<i>func-ti</i> , <i>simus</i> , we may have m.
<i>ae</i> , <i>sitis</i> , you may have managed
<i>a</i> , <i>sint</i> , they may have managed.

IV. *Partior, partitus sum, partiri.*Characteristic : *i* long.

## INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

## I. Present.

<i>parti-or</i> , I divide	<i>parti-ār</i> , I may divide
<i>parti-ris</i> , thou dividest	<i>parti-āris(e)</i> , thou mayest divide
<i>parti-tur</i> , he, she, it divides	<i>parti-atur</i> , he, she, it may divide
<i>parti-mur</i> , we divide	<i>parti-āmur</i> , we may divide
<i>parti-mīni</i> , you divide	<i>parti-āmīni</i> , you may divide
<i>parti-untur</i> , they divide	<i>parti-antur</i> , they may divide.

## II. Imperfect.

<i>parti-ēbar</i> , I divided, was dividing	<i>parti-rer</i> , I might divide
<i>parti-ēbāris(e)</i> , thou dividedst, was d.	<i>parti-rēris(e)</i> , thou mightest divide
<i>parti-ēbātur</i> , he, she, it divided, was d.	<i>parti-rētur</i> , he, she, it might divide
<i>parti-ēbāmur</i> , we divided, were d.	<i>parti-rēmur</i> , we might divide
<i>parti-ēbāmīni</i> , you divided, were d.	<i>parti-rēmīni</i> , you might divide
<i>parti-ēbantur</i> , they divided, were d.	<i>parti-rentur</i> , they might divide.

III. Future (Indicative).<sup>1</sup>

<i>parti-ār</i> , I shall divide
<i>parti-ēris(e)</i> , thou wilt divide
<i>parti-ētur</i> , he, she, it will divide
<i>parti-ēmur</i> , we shall divide
<i>parti-ēmīni</i> , you will divide
<i>parti-entur</i> , they will divide.

<i>parti-tus</i> , <i>sum</i> , I have divided
<i>a</i> , <i>es</i> , thou hast divided
<i>um</i> , <i>est</i> , he, she, it has divided
<i>parti-ti</i> , <i>sumus</i> , we have divided
<i>ae</i> , <i>estis</i> , you have divided
<i>a</i> , <i>sunt</i> , they have divided.

<i>parti-tus</i> , <i>sim</i> , I may have divided
<i>a</i> , <i>sis</i> , thou mayest have divided
<i>um</i> , <i>sit</i> , he, she, it may have d.
<i>parti-ti</i> , <i>simus</i> , we may have divided
<i>ae</i> , <i>sitis</i> , you may have divided
<i>a</i> , <i>sint</i> , they may have divided.

V. *Pluperfect.*

## a) Indicative.

hortā-tus,	ērām, I had exhorted	verī-tus,	eram, I had revered
a,	ērās, thou hadst exhorted	a,	eras, thou hadst revered
um	ērāl, he, she, it had exhorted	um	erat, he, she, it had rev.
hortā-ti,	ērāmūs, we had exhorted	verī-ti,	eramus, we had revered
ae,	ērālīs, you had exhorted	ae,	eratis, you had revered
a	ērant, they had exhorted	a	erant, they had revered.

## b) Subjunctive.

hortā-tus,	essēm, I might have exhorted	verī-tus,	essem, I might have rev.
a,	essēs, thou mightest have ex.	a,	esses, thou mightest have rev.
um	essēt, he, she, it might have ex.	um	esset, he, she, it might have rev.
hortā-ti,	essēmūs, we might have ex.	verī-ti,	essemus, we might have rev.
ae,	essētīs, you might have ex.	ae,	essetis, you might have rev.
a	essent, they might have ex.	a	essent, they might have rev.

VI. *Future Perfect (Indicative)*<sup>1</sup>

hortā-tus,	ērō, I shall have exhorted	verī-tus,	ero, I shall have revered
a,	ērīs, thou wilt have exhorted	a,	eris, thou wilt have rev.
um	ērīt, he, she, it will have ex.	um	erit, he, she, it will have rev.
hortā-ti,	ērīmūs, we shall have ex.	verī-ti,	erimus, we shall have rev.
ae,	ērītīs, you will have exhorted	ae,	eritis, you will have rev.
a	erunt, they will have ex.	a	erunt, they will have rev.

*Imperative.*

hortā-rē, exhort thou  
hortā-tōr, thou shouldest exhort  
hortā-tōr, he, she, it should exhort  
hortā-mīnī, exhort ye  
hortā-mīnōr, you should exhort  
hortā-ntōr, they should exhort.

*Infinitive.*

*Pres.* hortā-ri, to exhort  
*Perf.* hortā-tūs, ā, ūm, esse, to have exhorted  
*Fut.* hortā-tūrūs, ā, ūm, esse, to will exhort<sup>2</sup>, (that one) will exhort.

*Participle.*

*Pres.* horta-ns, exhorting  
*Perf.* hortā-tūs, ā, ūm, having exhorted  
*Fut. 1) Act.* hortā-tūrūs, ā, ūm, intending, wishing, about to exhort  
*Fut. 2) Pass.* horta-ndūs, ā, ūm, what should be exhorted.

*Gerund.*

N. horta-ndum est, one (we) must ex.  
G. horta-ndi, of exhorting, to exhort  
D. horta-ndo, to exhorting, to exhort  
A. horta-ndum (e. g. ad), exhorting, to exhort  
A. horta-ndo, by exhorting.

*Supine.*

*Acc.* hortā-tūm, in order to exhort  
*Abl.* hortā-tū, to exhort, be exhorted.

*Imperative.*

verē-re, reverence thou  
verē-tor, thou shouldest reverence  
verē-tor, he, she, it should reverence  
verē-mīnī, reverence ye  
verē-mīnōr, you should reverence  
vere-ntor, they should reverence.

*Infinitive.*

*Pres.* verē-ri, to reverence  
*Perf.* verī-tus, a, um, esse, to have revered  
*Fut.* verī-tūrūs, a, um, esse, to will reverence<sup>2</sup>, (that one) will rev.

*Participle.*

*Pres.* vere-ns, reverencing  
*Perf.* verī-tus, a, um, having revered  
*Fut. 1) Act.* verī-tūrūs, a, um, intending, wishing, about to reverence  
*Fut. 2) Pass.* vere-ndus, a, um, what should be revered.

*Gerund.*

N. vere-ndum est, one (we) must rev.  
G. vere-ndi, of reverencing, to rev.  
D. vere-ndo, to reverencing, to rev.  
A. vere-ndum (e. g. ad), reverencing, to reverence  
A. vere-ndo, by reverencing.

*Supine.*

*Acc.* verī-tum, in order to reverence  
*Abl.* verī-tū, to reverence, be revered.

<sup>1</sup>) The Subjunctive of both the futures is wanting. See Remark 1) and 2) to § 50.—<sup>2</sup>) See



V. *Pluperfect.*

## a) Indicative.

func-tus,	<i>eram</i> , I had managed
a,	<i>eras</i> , thou hadst managed
um	<i>erat</i> , he, she, it had managed
func-ti,	<i>eramus</i> , we had managed
ae,	<i>eratis</i> , you had managed
a	<i>erant</i> , they had managed

parti-tus,	<i>eram</i> , I had divided
a,	<i>eros</i> , thou hadst divided
um	<i>erat</i> , he, she, it had divided
parti-ti,	<i>eramus</i> , we had divided
ae,	<i>eratis</i> , you had divided
a	<i>erant</i> , they had divided.

## b) Subjunctive.

func-tus,	<i>essem</i> , I might have managed
a,	<i>esses</i> , thou mightest have m.
um	<i>esset</i> , he, she, it might have m.
func-ti,	<i>essemus</i> , we might have m.
ae,	<i>essetis</i> , you might have m.
a	<i>essent</i> , they might have m.

parti-tus,	<i>essem</i> , I might have divided
a,	<i>esses</i> , thou mightest have d.
um	<i>esset</i> , he, she, it might have d.
parti-ti,	<i>essemus</i> , we might have d.
ae,	<i>essetis</i> , you might have d.
a	<i>essent</i> , they might have d.

VI. *Future Perfect (Indicative).<sup>1</sup>*

func-tus,	<i>ero</i> , I shall have managed
a,	<i>eris</i> , thou wilt have managed
um	<i>erit</i> , he, she, it will have man.
func-ti,	<i>erimus</i> , we shall have man.
ae,	<i>eritis</i> , you will have man.
a	<i>erunt</i> , they will have man.

parti-tus,	<i>ero</i> , I shall have divided
a,	<i>eris</i> , thou wilt have divided
um	<i>erit</i> , he, she, it will have d.
parti-ti,	<i>erimus</i> , we shall have divided
ae,	<i>eritis</i> , you will have divided
a	<i>erunt</i> , they will have divided

*Imperative.*

fung-ere, manage thou  
 fung-itor, thou shouldest manage  
 fung-itor, he, she, it should manage  
 fung-imini, manage ye  
 fung-iminor, you should manage  
 fung-untor, they should manage.

*Infinitive.*

Pres. fung-i, to manage  
 Perf. func-tus, a, um, esse, to have managed  
 Fut. func-turus, a, um, esse, to will manage<sup>2</sup>, (that one) will man.

*Participle.*

Pres. fung-ens, managing  
 Perf. func-tus, a, um, having managed  
 Fut. 1) Act. func-turus, a, um, intending, wishing, about to manage  
 Fut. 2) Pass. fung-endus, a, um, what should be managed.

*Gerund.*

N. fung-endum est, one (we) must m.  
 G. fung-endi, of managing, to manage  
 D. fung-endo, to managing, to manage  
 A. fung-endum (e. g. ad), managing, to manage  
 A. fung-endo, by managing.

*Supine.*

Acc. func-tum, in order to manage  
 Abl. fung-tu, to manage, be managed.

*Imperative.*

parti-re, divide thou  
 parti-tor, thou shouldest divide  
 parti-tor, he, she, it should divide  
 parti-mini, divide ye  
 parti-minor, you should divide  
 parti-untor, they should divide.

*Infinitive.*

Pres. parti-ri, to divide  
 Perf. parti-tus, a, um, esse, to have divided  
 Fut. parti-turus, a, um, esse, to will divide<sup>2</sup>, (that one) will divide.

*Participle.*

Pres. parti-ens, dividing  
 Perf. parti-tus, a, um, having divided  
 Fut. 1) Act. parti-turus, a, um, intending, wishing, about to divide  
 Fut. 2) Pass. parti-endus, a, um, what should be divided.

*Gerund.*

N. parti-endum est, one (we) must d.  
 G. parti-endi, of dividing, to divide  
 D. parti-endo, to dividing, to divide  
 A. parti-endum, (e. g. ad.), dividing, to divide  
 A. parti-endo, by dividing.

*Supine.*

Acc. parti-tum, in order to divide  
 Abl. parti-tu, to divide, be divided.

LXXVII. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Admiror 1. <i>I admire.</i>	conor 1. <i>I attempt, ven-</i>	somnium, i, n. <i>dream.</i>
aspornor 1. <i>I spurn.</i>	ture.	pulchritudo, inis, f.
comitor 1. <i>I accompany.</i>	interpretor 1. <i>I inter-</i>	beauty.
contemplor 1. <i>I contem-</i>	pret.	demum, adv. <i>first, at</i>
plate, consider.	consigno 1. <i>I point out.</i>	length.

## PART FIRST.

Quis non admirētur splendorem pulchritudinemque virtutis? Dux milites hortatus est, ut hostium aciem pertubare conarentur. Jam hostes urbem oppugnare conati erant, quum repente a civibus propulsati sunt. Tum demum beātus eris, quum aspernatus eris voluptatem. Contemplamīnor praeclara virtutis exempla, quae in historia consignata sunt! Venio te comitātum in hortum. Somnia difficilia sunt interpretātu.

We admire the splendor and the beauty of virtue. The general exhorted the soldiers, that they should attempt to throw the line of battle of the enemies into confusion. I have accompanied the brother into the garden. The enemies have ventured to assault the city. Thou shouldst contemplate the noble examples of virtue, which are pointed out in history. The citizens apprehended, that the enemies might assault the city. I doubt not, that thou hast interpreted the dream rightly. Tell me, why thou hast not accompanied the father into the garden.

LXXVIII. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Fateor, fassus sum, fateri 2. <i>to acknowledge, admit.</i>	aggrēdior, gressus, grēdi 3. <i>to attack.</i>	labor, lapsus sum, labi 3. <i>to glide, fall.</i>
tueor 2. <i>I keep, protect.</i>	expergiscor, perrectus sum 3. <i>to awaken.</i>	lōquor, locūtus sum, loqui 3. <i>to speak.</i>
intueor 2. <i>I look upon, contemplate.</i>	fruor, fructus or frui-tus sum, frui 3. (c. abl.) <i>to enjoy (part. fut. fruiturus).</i>	mori-or, mortuus sum, mori 3. <i>to die (part. fut. moriturus).</i>
misereor, misertus or rītus sum, miserēri 2. (c. gen.) <i>to pity.</i>	fungor, functus sum, fungi 3. (c. abl.) <i>to administer.</i>	sēquor, secūtus sum, sequi 3. (c. acc.) <i>to follow.</i>
polliceor 2. <i>I promise.</i>	irascor, iratus sum 3. <i>to be angry.</i>	inops, ōpis, destitute.
abūtor, ūsus sum, ūti 3. (c. abl.) <i>to abuse.</i>		audacter, adv. <i>boldly, confidently.</i>
adipiscor, adeptus sum 3. <i>to obtain.</i>		

Artes se ipsae tuentur. Semper miserorum hominum miserebimur, Veremini, o pueri, senectutem! Fatētor, o puer, verum! Miseremini inopum! Discipuli verentor praeceptores. Non dubito, quin tuum praesidium mihi polliciturus sis. Cum magna voluptate intuēmur praeclara virtutis exempla, quae in historia consignata sunt.

Quis nescit, quam multi eloquentiā abutantur? Per multos annos pace frūti sumus. Omnes cives metuunt, ne hostes urbem aggrediantur. Simulatque experrecti sumus, ad negotia nostra accedimus. Cives, libertatem adepti, summā laetitiā fruentur. Succurre lapsis. Tam audacter cum amico loquere, quam tecum. Ne irascimīnor iis, quos amare debētis! Si virtutis viam semper sequemur, aditus in coelum aliquando nobis patēbit. Munere tuo bene fungere. Metuo, ne amicus moriatur.

The arts themselves will always protect themselves. I doubt not, that thou wilt always pity the poor. Reverence, O boy, old age! The rich should pity the destitute. You should acknowledge the truth (=what is true,) O boys! A good scholar will always reverence his teacher. I doubt not, that thou hast promised thy protection to the destitute friend. Contemplate ye the noble examples of virtue, which are pointed out in history. Many have abused eloquence. We desire (opto), that we may enjoy peace. All the citizens apprehended, that the enemies might attack the city. You are fallen. You should speak with a friend as confidently, as with yourselves. Thou shouldst not be angry with those, whom thou oughtest to love. I doubt not, that thou wilt always follow the way of virtue. All know, how well thou hast always managed thy office.

LXXIX. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Dilabor, lapsus sum,	ficisci 3. to depart,	mentior 4. I lie.
lābi 3. to go to ruin.	proceed, march.	metior, mensus sum,
obliviscor, litus sum, li-	assentior, sensus sum	metiri 4. to measure.
visci 3. (c. gen. and	4. to assent to.	deceat 2. (c. acc. pers.)
acc.) to forget.	blandior 4. I flatter.	it is fit.
obsēquor, secutus sum,	experior, pertus sum	modestia, ae, f. modesty.
sēqui 3. to comply	4. to try.	umbra, ae, f. shade.
with, obey.	largior 4. I give freely,	commendatio, ōnis, f.
proficiscor, fectus sum,	bestow.	commendation.

Quum aegrōtus es, obsēqui debes praeceptis medici. Stulti aliorum vitia cernunt, obliviscuntur suorum. Prima pueri commendatio proficiscitur a modestia. Concordiā res parvae crescunt, discordiā maximae dilabuntur. Gloria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur.

Ne blandire malis hominibus! Puer, ne mentitor! Natūra hominibus multa bona largita est. Magnos homines virtute metimur, non fortunā. Voluptas blanditur sensibus nostris. Postquam orator orationem finivit, omnes ejus sententiae assensi sunt. Omnia prius experiri verbis, quam armis, sapientem decet.

I doubt not, that thou wilt obey me. We shall never forget thee. Tell me, why thy father has proceeded to (in) Italy. We feared, that by (abl.) discord the resources (opes) of the citizens might go to ruin. Boys, you should not lie! Who does not know, how often the discourse of men deceives (= lies)! Measure men according to (abl.) virtue, not according to fortune. Always follow the way of virtue.

## PART SECOND.

### a) DEPONENTS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

#### LXXX. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Adūlor 1. (c. dat. or acc.) <i>I flatter.</i>	opitūlor 1. <i>I lend aid.</i>	libido, inis, <i>f. unrestrained desire, caprice.</i>
arbitror 1. <i>I think.</i>	recordor 1. (generally with acc.) <i>I remember.</i>	eventus, ūs, <i>m. event.</i>
auspīcor 1. <i>I commence.</i>		libens, tis, <i>delighted.</i>
auxilior 1. <i>I aid.</i>	innocentia, ae, <i>f. innocence.</i>	aliquando, <i>adv. sometime.</i>
domīnor 1. <i>I reign.</i>		
modēror 1. c. dat. <i>I moderate; c. acc. govern.</i>	angor, ōris, <i>m. vexation.</i>	aliter, <i>adv. otherwise.</i>
		rite, <i>adv. properly.</i>

Boni viri non voluptate, sed officio consilia moderantur. Homo improbus aliquando cum dolore flagita sua recordabitur. Socrātes totius mundi se incolam et civem arbitrabatur. Disce libens: quid dulcius est, quam discere multa? Discentem comitantur opes, comitantur honores. Ubi libido dominatur, innocentiae leve praesidium est. Eventus fallit, quum aliter accidit, atque homines arbitrati sunt. Atticus potenti Antonio non est adulatus. Nihil rite sine dei immortalis ope, consilio, honore auspicabere.

#### LXXXI. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Aemūlor 1. (c. acc.) <i>I emulate.</i>	cunctor 1. <i>I delay.</i>	venēror 1. <i>I revere.</i>
augūror 1. <i>I divine, foretell.</i>	imitor 1. (c. acc.) <i>I imitate.</i>	venor 1. <i>I hunt.</i>
aversor 1. <i>I turn from, shun.</i>	jocor 1. <i>I jest.</i>	occulto 1. <i>I conceal.</i>
consector 1. <i>I pursue.</i>	laetor 1. (c. abl.) <i>I rejoice.</i>	rivulus, i, <i>m. stream.</i>
	precor 1. <i>I entreat.</i>	majores, um, <i>ancestors.</i>
		mediocris, e, <i>moderate.</i>
		quotidie, <i>adv. daily.</i>

Venerāre deum, venerāre parentes. Virtutes majorum aemulamini, vitia eorum aversamini! In silvis, venātor venātur lepōres; in scholis, pueri, venamini lepōres! Ubi res bona tractanda est, ne cunctātor! Discipuli bonos condiscipulos imitantor, malos aversantor. Quotidie, puer, precātor a deo immortalī, ut servet tibi tuos parentes! Tardi ingenii est, rivulos consecrari, fontes rerum non videre. Nulla re tam laetari soleo, quam meorum officiorum conscientia. In ira moderari animo et orationi, non mediocris ingenii est. Nescisne, Socratem in carcere paucis diebus ante mortem jocatum esse? Quis speret, se auguratum esse ea, quae menti humanae a deo sunt occultata.

### LXXXII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Adhortor 1. <i>I encourage,</i> <i>exhort.</i>	insidior 1. <i>I lie in wait</i> <i>for.</i>	immodestus, a, um, <i>im-</i> <i>modest.</i>
cohortor 1. <i>I encourage.</i>	suspīcor 1. <i>I suspect,</i> <i>conjecture.</i>	ingenūus, a, um, <i>noble-</i> <i>born, dignified.</i>
exhortor 1. <i>I encour-</i> <i>age, exhort.</i>	vagor 1. <i>I wander.</i>	profusus, a, um, <i>unre-</i> <i>strained.</i>
consolōr 1. <i>I console.</i>	praeclūdo 3. <i>I close.</i>	nemo non, <i>every one.</i>
conspīcor 1. <i>I discover,</i> <i>see.</i>	temperantia, ae, <i>f. tem-</i> <i>perance, moderation.</i>	excors, cordis, <i>senseless.</i>
gratūlor 1. <i>I congratu-</i>	aper, pri, m. <i>wild boar.</i>	admōdum, <i>adv. very.</i>
indignor 1. (with acc. or de with abl.) <i>I am</i> <i>dissatisfied with some-</i> <i>thing.</i>	legātus, i. m. <i>ambassa-</i> <i>dor.</i>	aperte, <i>adv. openly.</i>
	facētus, a, um, <i>delicate,</i> <i>witty.</i>	nequicquam, <i>adv. in</i> <i>vain, to no effect.</i>

Aperte adulantem nemo non vidit, nisi qui admōdum est excors. Menti nihil est tam inimicum, quam voluptas; nec enim, libidine dominante, temperantiae locus est. Caesar, cohortātus milites, ut acriter contra hostes dimicarent, urbem oppugnāvit. Aliorum miseriam consolatūri exempla laudare debemus viōrum fortūm, qui in acerbissimis fortunae tormentis non sunt indignāti sortem suam. Genus jocandi non profusum, nec immodestum, sed ingenūm et facētum esse debet. A venatore insidiandum est apris. Multi legati congregāti sunt in urbem ad gratulandum nobis de recuperāta libertate. Quem neque gloria, neque pericūla excitant, nequicquam hortēre: timor animi aures praeclūdit. Narra, ubi per tam longum tempus vagātus sis. Non dubitābam, quin hujus hominis consuetudinē aversātus esses. Non dubito, quin, istum adolescentem conspīcātus, continūo de ejus ingenio praeclārū quiddam suspīcatūrus sis.

We rejoice at (abl.) the joy of friends *in like manner* (aequae) as (ac) at our own (= ours), and grieve in like manner at [their] grief (= vexations). Be convinced that thou art dear to me, but that thou

wilt be much (multo) dearer, if thou wilt rejoice in good principles. The example of the leader encouraged (perf.) the soldiers, that they might imitate him. I doubt not, that thou wilt ever assist the good, [but] wilt shun the bad. I doubted not, that he would sometime remember his foul deeds (acc.) with pain. Flatter thou not a powerful [man]! Be convinced that you will commence nothing properly without the aid, counsel [and] honor of God. I exhort thee, that thou shouldst imitate good men, [but] shun the bad. Relate to me, why thou hast been dissatisfied with thy fortune. I doubted not that the enemies had lain in wait for thee.

When thou pursuest history, O boy, thou shouldst contemplate both the examples of virtue and of vice, and emulate those, [but] shun these. In a good thing, thou shouldst not delay. The rich should lend aid to the destitute. The soldiers hasten, *in order to lend aid* (sup.) to us against the enemies. *When evil desires reign* (abl. abs.), there is no (= not) place for (dat.) virtue.

#### b) DEPONENTS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

##### LXXXIII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Confiteor, fessus sum	reor, rätus sum, reri,	venia, ae, f. pardon.
2. to confess.	2. to think.	exemplar, äris, n. pattern, model.
profiteor, fessus sum	2. dubito 1. c. inf. I hesitate, entertain scruples.	cunctus, a, um, all (combined), whole.
to acknowledge freely, promise.		
medeor (without perf.)	impetro 1. I obtain.	inānis, e, empty, vain.
c. dat. to cure, remedy.	imploro 1. I implore.	cito, adv. quickly; citius, more quickly, more easily.
mereor, itus sum	2. nego 1. I deny.	liberaliter, adv. freely.
to deserve; de aliqua re, to deserve of something.	trado, didi, ditum	3. nondum, adv. not yet.
	deliver up, give up to.	penitus, adv. thoroughly, wholly.
	in alitia, ae, f. wickedness.	

Vix peccatum tuum fassus eras, quum pater tui misertus est. Jam te errasse confessus eras, quum denuo negasti. Nondum vestrum auxilium imploraveramus, quum jam id nobis professi estis. Vix inopiam nostram fassi eramus, quum liberalissime vestrum praesidium nobis polliciti estis.

Magna est vis philosophiae, quum medetur animis, inānes sollicitudines detrahit, cupiditatibus liberat. Artes magnum nobis praebent praesidium, quum se ipsae per se tuentur singulae. Praeclare de patria merentur praeceptores, quum juventutem bonarum litterarum studiis informant.

**RULE OF SYNTAX.** When the conjunction *quum* expresses a *supposed ground* and may be translated by the causal *since* (seeing that,) or *although*, it is connected with the *subjunctive*. (Comp. Synt. 110, 1.)

*Quum* philosophia animis *medeātur*, totos nos penitusque ei tradere debemus. Omnes miserebantur vestri, *quum* non propter malitiam, sed propter fortunam in miseriis *essētis*. *Quum* milites pericula *vererentur*, non audēbant cum hostibus configere. *Quum* is, qui verum amicum intuetur, tanquam exemplar aliquod *intueātur* sui; talem amicum aequae ac nosmet ipsos amare debemus. Avārus, *quum* in omnium rerum affluentia *sit*, fatebitur, se esse satiātum? *Quum*, virtutem satis in se praesidii habere ad vitam beatam, *fateāre*; etiam confitebēre, sapientem in cruciatibus beatum esse. Id si confessus eris, non dubito, quin professurus sis, sapientem in omni vitae conditione beatum esse.

When we freely acknowledge our guilt, we more easily obtain pardon. Since you have acknowledged, that virtue may have in itself sufficient of (gen.) protection for a happy life, you will also confess, that the wise [man] may be happy under (in) tortures; and when you shall have confessed this, I doubt not, that you will freely acknowledge, that the wise [man] is happy in every condition of life. Scarcely had I acknowledged my fault to thee, as I obtained (perf.) pardon from thee. Thou hast acquired for thyself great praise, *inasmuch as* (quum) thou hast pitied the destitute citizens.

Miserere nostri! Medemīnor, O cives, inopiae nostrae! Suum quisque tuētor munus. Nemo, cunctam intūens terram, de divina providentia dubitabit. Cives, hostes urbem oppugnatūros esse, rati, eos acriter propulsare studuerunt. Venio meum praesidium tibi polliciturus. Omnibus modis a vobis inopiae civium medendum est. Adolescentis officium est, majores natu vereri. Quis nescit, te praeclare de republica meritum esse? Spero, te mei miserturum esse.

Reverence, O boy, old age! Pity ye me! Thou shouldst cure the want of others. The scholar should reverence his teacher. Shall we, *when we contemplate* (= contemplating) the whole earth, doubt *as to* (de) the foresight of God? Thinking (part. perf.), that thou hast promised me thy protection, I have not hesitated to undertake (accedere) the business. Believe me, *who will freely acknowledge* (part. fut.) what is true! Thou must remedy (Ger.) the want of thy friend. I hope, that thou wilt promise to me thy protection. It is beautiful, to remedy the want of others. Who does not know, that Cicero deserved nobly of the Roman state?

## c) DEPONENTS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

## LXXXIV. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Complector, plexus sum, plecti 3. to em- brace.	adnitor 3. I endeavor, exert myself.	reddo, dīdi, dītum 3. to restore ; 2) to make.
congrēdiōr, gressus sum, grēdi 3. to en- gage.	paciscor, pactus sum, pacisci 3. to make an agreement.	gratia, ae f. thank.
nascor, natus sum, nas- ci 3. to be born, to spring from, (part. fut. nasciturus).	revertor, pf. reverti, part. reversus, inf. reverti 3. to return.	angulus, i. m. corner.
innascor 3. to be in- born, implanted.	ulciscor, ultus sum, ul- cisci 3. (c. acc.) to avenge one's self on one.	philosōphus, i, m. phi- losopher.
nitor, nixus or nixus sum, niti 3. (c. abl.), to rest upon ; 2) ad aliquid, to strive after something.	cumulo 1. I heap, load. persevero 1. I continue. discedo, cessi, cessum 3. to go away, depart.	pestis, is, f. pest, de- struction.
		semen, inis, n. seed.
		visum, i, n. appearance.
		detestabilis, e, detesta- ble.
		superior, us, superior ; conqueror.
		quotiescunque, conj. however often.

Salus hominum non veritate solum, sed etiam famā nitūtur. Cives, cum hostibus pacti, pace frūti sunt. Deum et divinum animum cogitatione complectimur. Lacte, carne multisque aliis rebus vescimur. Ne ulciscimīni inimicos vestros ! Romāni Numīdis pollicīti sunt, si perseverārent bello urgere Carthaginienses, se adnīsuros esse, ut bene cumulātam gratiam redderent. Nemo parum diu vixit, qui virtutis perfectae perfecto functus est munere. Simulatque experrecti sumus, visa in somnio contemnīmus. Aristotēles, Theophrastus, Zeno, innumera- biles alii philosōphi nunquam domum revertērunt. Nulla tam detes- tabilis est pestis, quae non homini ab homine nascatur. Non sum uni angulo natus : patria mea totus hic est mundus. Sunt ingeniis nostris semīna innāta virtutum. Hannibal, quotiescunque cum Romanis con- gressus est in Italia, semper discessit superior.

## LXXXV. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Defetiscor, fessus sum, fetisci 3. to be weary, tired out.	patior, passus sum, pati 3. to suffer.	stultitia, ae, f. folly.
elābor, lapsus sum, lā- bi 3. to glide away.	excēdo, cessi, cessum 3. (c. abl.) to retire.	dominus, i, m. lord, master. [ter.]
enitor, nixus or nixus sum, niti 3. to exert one's self.	tendo, tetendi, tentum 3. to stretch out ; ad aliquid, to strive after something.	proelium, i, n. encoun- diuturnitas, ātis, f. long continuance.
		vicinitas, ātis, f. neigh- borhood.



nefas (*indecl.*), *n. wrong.* quo, *adv. whither.* gentium, *wherever in the world.*  
 proprius, a, um (*c.gen.*), ubicunque, *adv. wherever; ubicunque.*  
*one's own, peculiar.* ever;

Optimi cujusque animus maxime ad immortalem gloriam nititur. Hostes, diuturnitate pugnae defessi, proelio excedebant. Qui virtutem adeptus erit, ubicunque erit gentium, a nobis diligetur. Avida est periculi virtus, et, quo tendat, non quid passura sit, cogitat. Augustus dominum se appellari non est passus. Animalia alia sunt rationis expertia, alia ratione utentia. Animo elapso, corpus nihil valet. Valet apud nos clarorum hominum memoria, etiam mortuorum. Regia res est, succurrere lapsis. Proprium est stultitiae, aliorum vitia cernere, oblivisci suorum. Ut plurimis proximis, eniti debemus. Irasci iis nefas est, quos amare debemus. Amicitiae, consuetudines, vicinitates quid habeant voluptatis, carendo magis intelligimus, quam fruendo. Juvēni parandum, seni utendum est. Suo cuique iudicio utendum est.

#### LXXXVI. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Ingridior, gressus sum,	accūsō 1. <i>I complain of,</i>	usitātus, a, um, <i>usual,</i>
grēdi 3. ( <i>c. acc.</i> ) <i>I go</i>	accuse.	common.
into, enter, enter upon.	deflāgro 1. <i>I burn up</i>	diu, <i>adv. long time;</i>
perfungor, functus	( <i>intrans.</i> )	diutius, <i>longer.</i>
sum, fungi 3. ( <i>c. abl.</i> )	vices plur. ( <i>gen. not</i>	intemperanter, <i>adv. in-</i>
to pass through.	used,) <i>f. vicissitudes.</i>	temperately, without
persēquor, cūtus sum,	perexigūus, a, um, <i>very</i>	moderation.
sequi 3. <i>to pursue.</i>	small.	plerumque, <i>adv. gen-</i>
		erally.

All wish, that they may reach (*adipisci*) old age, but *when they have reached* (= having reached), they complain of it. The soldiers tired out by the long march, gave themselves up to rest. Boys, you should follow the example of the good. We have enjoyed a long-continued peace. Common things escape easily from the memory, remarkable and new things remain longer. Many abuse without moderation leisure and literature. Those appear to me to have lived happily, to whom it has been permitted to enjoy the praise of wisdom. We favor those, who have entered upon the very same dangers which we have passed through. All strive after joy, but many do not know, whence they may obtain permanent (*stabilis, e*) and great joy. Alexander pursued (*perf.*) the enemies eagerly. Fortune is not merely blind itself, but it generally makes those blind also, whom it embraces. Man is not born for himself alone, but for his country and for his [*friends*], so that (*ut*) a very small part is left to himself. The condition of

mortals has such (is) vicisitudes, that adversity (res adversae) springs from prosperity (res secundae), and prosperity from adversity. He lives the best, who obeys the laws not on account of fear, but follows them, because he thinks that this may be most salutary. In (abl.) the very same night in which Alexander was born, the temple of the Ephesian (Ephesius, a, um) Diana burned up.

#### d) DEPONENTS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

##### LXXXVII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Potior 4. (c. abl.) <i>I possess myself of.</i>	tempt), which follows throughout the fourth Conj.	calor, ōris, <i>m. heat.</i>
opperior, pertus sum, periri 4. <i>to await.</i>	coorior 4. <i>I arise, break out, break forth.</i>	frons, tis, <i>f. forehead.</i>
ordior or exordior, orsus sum, ordiri 4. <i>to begin.</i>	exorior 4. <i>I appear, spring from, arise.</i>	praeparatio, ōnis, <i>f. preparation.</i>
orior, ortus sum, oriri 4. <i>to spring from, rise from; part. fut. orturus (not orturus);</i>	demolior 4. <i>I demolish.</i>	vultus, ūs, <i>m. expression, countenance.</i>
the Ind. Pres. follows the third Conj.;	eblandior 4. <i>I obtain by flattery.</i>	privātus, a, um, <i>private.</i>
orēris, orītur, orīmur; so its compounds except adorior (I attack, at-	praelōquor, locūtus sum, lōqui 3. <i>to premise.</i>	ferox, ōcis, <i>fierce.</i>
	animadverto, ti, sum 3. <i>to observe, perceive.</i>	necesse est (c. subjunctive or c. acc. et inf.), <i>it is necessary.</i>
	praeda, ae, <i>f. booty.</i>	eo, adv. <i>thither, so far.</i>
	tergum, i, <i>n. back.</i>	grate, adv. <i>gratefully.</i>
		tamen, conj. <i>yet.</i>
		vero (after the first word of its clause) conj. <i>but.</i>

Frons, oculi, vultus persaepe mentiuntur, oratio vero saepissime. Quicquid oritur, quaecunque est, caussam habeat a natura necesse est. Sol universis eandem lucem eundemque calorem largitur. Quam multi indigni luce sunt! et tamen dies oritur. Unde tandem tam repente nobis exorēris? Milites, si ferōci impetu in hostem coorimur, victoria in manibus nostris est! Dum urbem oppugnare adorimur, hostes a tergo nos aggressi sunt. Suo quisque metu pericula metitur. Sapiens et praeterita grate recordatur, et praesentibus ita potitur, ut animadvertat, quanta sint ea quamque jucunda.

† Cave, ne honores eblandiare! Oratores, priusquam exordiantur, quaedam praeloquuntur. In omnibus negotiis, priusquam ordiamur, adhibenda nobis est praeparatio diligens. Omnes cives domos suas floribus et coronis ornaverant et vestiverant, quia regem opperiebantur. Dum exercitus hostilis urbis domos privatas publicasque demoliebantur, cives maximo moerore opplebantur. Quum hostes praedam inter se partiebantur, nos vehementissimo impetu eos adoriebamur. Dux mili-

tes cohortátus est, ut omnia experirentur, quibus urbem obsidiōne liberarent. Quum saeva tempestas coirētur, ingens pavor omnes nautas occupāvit.

LXXXVIII. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Ementior 4. <i>I state falsely.</i>	conservo 1. <i>I preserve.</i>	prodigiōsus, a, um, commoditas, ātis, f. <i>wonderful.</i>
emetior, mensus sum, metiri 4. <i>I measure off, travel through.</i>	convenience. ubertas, ātis, f. <i>bounty, fullness.</i>	ridicūlus, a, um, <i>ridiculous.</i>
molior 4. <i>to move, excite, attempt.</i>	adspēctus, ūs, m. <i>sight.</i>	tantus, a, um, <i>so great.</i>
advolo 1. <i>I fly up, hasten up.</i>	usus, ūs, m. <i>use, want.</i>	consulto, adv. <i>designedly.</i>
		fortuito, adv. <i>by chance.</i>

Ridicūli sunt, qui, quod ipsi experti non sunt, id docent cetēros. Omne animal se ipsum diligit ac, simulatque ortum est, id agit, ut se conservet. Ad hominum commoditates et usus tantam rerum ubertatem natura largita est, ut ea, quae gignuntur, donāta consulto nobis, non fortuito nata videantur. Herodōtus, multas terras *emensus*, multas quidem res prodigiōsas narrāvit, sed eas non ipse *ementitus* est, sed alii, ex quibus audivit. Jam per tres menses opperti erāmus amicum, quum nobis ejus mors nuntiāta est. Repente Romanis Sulla *exortus* et atrocissimum bellum civile *exorsus* est.

Sapiens nunquam malis hominibus blandiētur, nunquam aliquid falsi ementiētur, nunquam fortunam experiētur, nunquam aliis calamitatem moliētur. Si celeriter hostem adoriēmur, non est dubium, quin brevi tempore urbe potitūri simus. Simulatque sol ortus erit, proficiscēmur. Ne blandire malis hominibus. Ne opperimīni fortunam! Hostes advolavērunt urbe potitum. Numen ~~aequālis~~ aequālis facilis est paritū. Sole oriente, profecti sumus. Coortā saevā tempestāte, omnes nautas ingens pavor occupāvit. Solem *oritūrum* cum maxima voluptate spectāmus.

The sun does not always rise and set in the very same place. Scarcely had the enemy been discovered, as we *arose* (perf.) and attacked (perf.) them spiritedly. *Men* measure the year by (abl.) the return of the sun.

Nothing prevented you, that you should begin your business. *Three days long* (= through three days) have we awaited the arrival of the friend. Every living being, as soon as it is born (= sprung), loves (diligo) both itself and all its parts. *Many* having travelled through many countries, have stated falsely many wonderful things. History

relates, that Sulla arose (perf.) suddenly against (dat.) the Romans and began (perf.) the civil war. Tell me, why thou hast not assented to my opinion. Hast thou heard that the enemies have tried all [means], *in order to possess themselves of* (= *ad* with gerund) the city?

*begin* We will not begin a new business, before that the previous [business] shall have been completed. When the camp shall be fortified, the soldiers will attack the enemy. If thou shalt lie, nobody will trust thee, *even if* (etiamsi) thou speakest (subj.) the truth. Our soldiers did not doubt, that, if they attacked (subj.) the enemy quickly, they might in (abl.) a short time possess themselves of the city. Await thou not fortune! Flatter ye not bad men! *As the sun rose* (abl. abs.), the soldiers marched against the enemies. The sun, *on the point of rising* (= about to rise), presents a splendid sight. I hope, that thou wilt never lie. All believed, that a storm would arise.

*Periphrastic*  
§ 54. *Periphrastic Conjugation.*

By joining the verb *esse* with the participles and with the gerund, a new conjugation is formed, called the *periphrastic conjugation*; under this the following forms are to be noted:

1) *Amatūrus, a, um sum, I wish, intend, am about to (will) love.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Present.</i>	
amatūrus sum, <i>I am about to (will)</i>	amatūrus sim, <i>I may be about to (will)</i>
amatūrus es, [love.	amatūrus sis, [love.
amatūrus est,	amatūrus sit,
hortatūri sumus, <i>we are about to (will)</i>	hortatūri simus, <i>we may be about to</i>
hortatūri estis, [exhort.	hortatūri sitis, [(will) exhort.
hortatūri sunt.	hortatūri sint.
<i>Imperfect.</i>	
monitūrus eram, <i>I would admonish.</i>	monitūrus essem, <i>I would admonish.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	
veritūrus fui, <i>I would have revered.</i>	veritūrus fuerim, <i>I would have rev.</i>
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
rectūrus fueram, <i>I would have gov.</i>	rectūrus fuisset, <i>I would have gov.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	
functūrus ero, <i>I shall be about to manage.</i>	wanting.

*Future Perfect.*

auditurus fuero, <i>I shall have been</i>	wanting.
partiturus fuëris. [ <i>about to hear.</i> ]	

*Infinitive.*

<i>Pres.</i>	amaturus esse, <i>to be about to (will) love</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	amaturus fuisse, <i>to have been about to love</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	amaturus fore, <i>to will love, (that one) will be ready to love.</i>

2) *Amandus, a, um sum, I must be loved, one must love me :*

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	amandus sum, <i>I must be loved, one must love me</i>	amandus sim, <i>I must be loved, one must love me</i>
	amandus es, <i>thou must be loved, one must love thee</i>	amandus sis, <i>thou must be loved, one must love thee</i>
	amandus est, <i>he must be loved, one must love him</i>	amandus sit, <i>he must be loved, one must love him</i>
	hortandi sumus, <i>we must be exhorted, one must exhort us</i>	hortandi simus, <i>we must be exhorted, one must exhort us.</i>
	hortandi estis, <i>you must be exhorted, one must exhort you</i>	hortandi sitis, <i>you must be exhorted, one must exhort you</i>
	hortandi sunt, <i>they must be exhorted, one must exhort them.</i>	hortandi sint, <i>they must be exhorted, one must exhort them.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	monendus eram, <i>I was to be admonished, one was to admonish me</i>	monendus essem, <i>I might be to be admonished, one might be to admonish me</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	verendus fui, <i>I should have been revered, one should have revered me</i>	verendus fuerim, <i>I may have been to be admonished, one may have been to admonish me</i>
<i>Plupf.</i>	regendus fueram, <i>I ought to have been governed, one ought to have governed me</i>	regendus fuisset, <i>I might have been to be admonished, one might have been to admonish me.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	persequendus ero, <i>I shall be to be pursued, one will be under obligation to pursue me</i>	wanting.
<i>F. P.</i>	audiendus fuero, <i>I shall have been to be heard, one will have been under obligation to hear me</i>	wanting.
	metiendus fuëris, <i>thou wilt have been to be measured, one will have been under obligation to measure thee.</i>	

*Infinitive.*

<i>Pres.</i>	amandus esse, <i>to be under obligation to be loved.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	amandus fuisse, <i>to have been under obligation to be loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	amandus fore, <i>to will be under obligation to be loved, (that one) etc.</i>

3) *Amandum est one must love, mihi amandum est, I must love.* Comp. Synt. § 98.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amandum est, one must love</i> <i>mihi amandum est, I must love</i> <i>tibi hortandum est thou must</i> <i>exhort</i> <i>illi timendum est, he must fear</i> <i>nobis fatendum est, we must</i> <i>confess</i> <i>vobis legendum est, you must</i> <i>read</i> <i>illis loquendum est, they must</i> <i>speak</i> <i>puero audiendum est, the boy</i> <i>must hear</i> <i>viro experiendum est, the man</i> <i>must try</i>	<i>amandum sit, one should love</i> <i>mihi amandum sit, I should love</i> <i>tibi hortandum sit, thou shouldst</i> <i>exhort</i> <i>illi timendum sit, he should fear</i> <i>nobis fatendum sit, we should</i> <i>confess</i> <i>vobis legendum sit, you should</i> <i>read</i> <i>illis loquendum sit, they should</i> <i>speak</i> <i>puero audiendum sit, the boy</i> <i>should hear</i> <i>viris experiendum sit, men</i> <i>should try.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>amandum erat, one was to love</i> <i>mihi amandum erat, I was to</i> <i>love</i>	<i>amandum esset, one might be</i> <i>to love</i> <i>mihi amandum esset, I might</i> <i>be to love</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amandum fuit, one should have</i> <i>loved</i>	<i>amandum fuerit, I may have</i> <i>been to love</i>
<i>Plupf.</i>	<i>amandum fuerat, one ought to</i> <i>have loved</i>	<i>amandum fuisset, I might have</i> <i>been to love.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>amandum erit, one shall be to</i> <i>love</i>	wanting.
<i>F. P.</i>	<i>amandum fuerit, one shall have</i> <i>been to love.</i>	wanting.

*Patria amanda est, 'one's native country should be loved, one should love his native country;'*

*patria nobis amanda est, 'we should love our native country;'*

*hic liber tibi legendus est, 'thou shouldst read this book;'*

*militēs duci adhortandi fuerunt, 'the general should have incited the soldiers.'*

*Examples for the Gen., Dat., Acc. and Abl. of the Gerundive.* Comp. Synt. § 99.

*Ars navis gubernandae, 'the art of governing a ship;'*

*peritus sum equorum regendorum, 'I am skilful in governing horses;'*

*asinus idoneus est magnis oneribus portandis, 'the ass is fitted to bearing great loads,' or, 'to bear great loads.'*

*corporis exercitationes plurimum valent ad valetudinem firmandam, 'exercise of the body avails much for confirming the health.'*

*litteris tractandis animus excolitur*, 'by the pursuit of letters the mind is cultivated.'

*Catalogue of the verbs, which in the formation of their tenses, differ from the paradigms given in § 50 and 51.*

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

### § 55. I. The Perfect with Reduplication.

REMARK. The reduplication in *do*, consists in repeating the first consonant of the stem with *e*, but in *sto*, in repeating the first two consonants of the stem with *e*, and then the *s* is dropped from the stem, hence: *steti* for *ste-sti*. Comp. *spēdo*, *spōndi* (§ 59, 7).

1. *Do*, *dēdi*, *dātum*, *dare*, to give. The *a* of the stem-syllable is short throughout, as: *dābam*, *dābo*, *dārem*; except *dās* and *dā*.

So its compounds of which the first part is a word of two syllables, as: *circumdo*, *circumdēdi*, *circumdātum*, *circumdare*, to surround. Its compounds with monosyllables, on the contrary, have: -*do*, -*didi*, -*dītum*, -*dēre*, and follow the third Conj., as: *addo*, *addidi*, *addītum*, *addēre*, to add.

2. *Sto*, *stēti*, *stātum*, *stāre*, to stand; (c. abl. to be gained at the expense of, cost).

Its compounds with monosyllabic prepositions have *stīti* in the Perf., as: *adsto* (I stand by), *adstīti*, but those compounded with dissyllabic prepositions retain the *stēti*, as: *circumsto* (I stand around), *circumstēti*. The Sup. of only a few of the compounds is used and is *stātum*; only *praesto* (to stand before, bestow), has both *praestītum* and *praestātum*. The Part. Fut. on the contrary, is always *stātūrus*, as: *praestaturus*, *constaturus*, *obstaturus*, etc.

### LXXXIX. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Circumdo, dēdi, dātum, dāre (c. dat. et acc., or c. acc. et abl.), to surround (something with something), to place (something around something).	ātum 1. to stand before, be distinguished; c. dat. to surpass, to make good, pay; se praestāre (e. g. fortem) to show one's self (brave).	vestis, is, f. garment.
consto, īti, ātum 1. (c. abl.) to consist of, to be gained at the expense of, cost.	forum, i, n. market.	conservatio, ōnis, f. preservation.
persto, īti, ātum 1. to persist.	stipendium, i, n. wages.	invītus, a, um, unwilling.
praesto, īti, ītum and classis, is, f. fleet.	interfector, ōris, m. murderer.	inspērans, tis, not hoping, contrary to expectation.
	propugnator, ōris, m. champion.	uber, ēris, c. rich, valuable.
		certo, adv. certainly.
		extrinsēcus, adv. without.

Deus nobis dedit animum, quo<sup>1</sup> nihil est praestantius. Multo san-  
 ctius nobis victoria stetit. Mater omnium bonarum artium sapientia  
 est, quae a deo immortalī uberius, nihil praestabilius hominum  
 potest. Deus corpus, ut quandam vestem, animo circumdē-  
 dit extrinsēcus. Quorum patres, aut majores aliquā gloriā  
 praestiterunt, si student plerumque eodem in genēre laudis excellēre.  
 Parentes carissimos habēre debēmus, quod ab iis nobis vita tradita est.  
 Non dedit beneficium, qui invitatus profuit. Quinam magis sunt tui,  
 quam [ii] quibus tu salutē insperantibus reddidisti? Cives acerrī-  
 mos propter libertatis se praestiterunt. Ingens hominum multī-  
 tudo oratione a foro circumstetit. Quid est tam inhumānum, quam  
 eloquentiam, a natura ad salutē hominum et ad conservationem da-  
 tam, ad bonorum pestem perniciemque convertēre? Quum stipen-  
 dium ex longo tempore non esset praestitum, seditio inter milites orta  
 est. Certo te mihi fidem praestaturum esse. Credo, nihil nobis  
 obstatur, quin hominibus victoriam adipiscāmur. Non dubitābamus,  
 quin multum fortium morte victoria constatura esset. Nes-  
 cio, persisteris in sententia tua.

The Athenians gave (perf.) to Miltiades a fleet of (gen.) 70 ships.  
 No pest has cost the human race (= race of men) more (pluris) than  
 anger. Darius promised, that he would give 1000 talents to the mur-  
 derer of Alexander. What of (gen.) time is given to each one for liv-  
 ing, with (abl.) this he should be contented. Who does not know, that  
 Socrates surpassed (perf.) all the philosophers of antiquity in (abl.) wis-  
 dom? I fear, that the victory will cost us much blood. The body,  
 as a garment, has been placed by God around (dat.) the soul. You  
 should hold [your] parents very dear, because they have given (trado)  
 life to you. Who is more thine, than [he], to whom, contrary to ex-  
 pectation, thou hast restored life (= safety)? History relates, that  
 Hannibal, so long as he may have been in Italy, surpassed (perf. subj.)  
 all the Roman generals. Since the general for (ex) a long time had  
 not paid the soldiers [their] wages, a sedition arose (perf.) among them  
 against him. I doubt not that thou wilt make good thy word (= fidel-  
 ity). Believest thou, that thy brother will persist in his opinion?

§ 56. II. *Perfect*:—*ŭi*; *Supine*:—*ĭtum*.

1. *Crĕpo, crĕpui, crĕpĭtum, crĕpāre*, to creak.
2. *Cŭbo, cŭbui, cŭbĭtum, cŭbāre*, to recline.

<sup>1</sup> than which (soul).

<sup>2</sup> than which (wisdom).



3. *Dōmo, dōm u i, dōm ĭt u m, dōmāre*, to tame, curb, subdue.
4. *Mīco, mīc u i*, Sup. wanting, *mīcāre*, to glitter ;  
So: *emīco, emīc u i, emīcātum, emīcāre*, to gush forth ; but, *dimīco, I fight*, has *dimicavi, ātum, āre*.
5. *Plicō, plicāvi* and *plīc u i, plīcātum* and *plīc ĭt u m, plīcāre*, to fold. This verb is used only in composition, as: *explīcāvi* and *ui, ātum* and *ĭtum, āre*, to explain. Cicero prefers the regular form:—*avi, atum*.
6. *Sōno, sōn u i, sōnītum, sonāre*, to sound, (but Part. Fut. *sonaturus*).
7. *Tōno, tōn u i*, (Sup. wanting), *tōnāre*, to thunder.
8. *Vēto, vēt u i vēt ĭt u m, vētāre*, to forbid.

### XC. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

<i>Incrēpāre, to reproach.</i>	<i>ply one's self</i> (to	<i>verecundia, ae. f. re-</i>
<i>percrēpāre, to resound.</i>	something).	<i>spect.</i>
<i>accūbāre, to recline by ;</i>	<i>complicāre, to fold to-</i>	<i>notiō, ōnis, f. notion.</i>
<i>to sit at table.</i>	<i>gether ; complicātus,</i>	<i>scaturigo, ĭnis, f.</i>
<i>excūbāre, to keep watch.</i>	<i>complicated, obscure.</i>	<i>spring.</i>
<i>perdōmāre, curb, sub-</i>	<i>replicāre, to roll back,</i>	<i>gemītus, ūs, m. groan.</i>
<i>due.</i>	<i>recall.</i>	<i>nutus, ūs, m. nod, com-</i>
<i>applicāre, to lean upon ;</i>	<i>cremo 1. I burn up.</i>	<i>mand.</i>
<i>se applic., to ap-</i>	<i>adūro, ussi, ustum 3.</i>	<i>plorātus, ūs, m. cry.</i>
<i>proach, to attach one's</i>	<i>to set on fire, to burn</i>	<i>passim, adv. far and</i>
<i>self (to one), to ap-</i>	<i>up. [3. to unfold.</i>	<i>wide.</i>
	<i>evolve, volvi, volūtum</i>	

Quis venit? Fores crepuērunt. Dux milites vehementer increpuit. Tota urbs vocibus civium de victoria ex hostibus reportata exsultantium percrepuit. Age, cubitum discedāmus! Romani multas gentes ac nationes armis perdomuērunt. Docēmur auctoritate nutūque legum, domitas habere libidines, coercere omnes cupiditates. Ex hoc fonte ingentes scaturigines aquae emicuērunt. Indorum sapientes, quum ad flammam se *applicaverunt*, sine gemitu aduruntur. Cicero Rhodi<sup>1</sup> ad Molonem philosophum se *applicavit*. Sapiens studet animi sui *complicatam* notionem evolvere. Quum memoriam temporum *replicaveris*, et virtutum et vitiorum multa exempla reperies. Quum urbs expugnata esset, omnia passim mulierum puerorumque ploribus sonuērunt. Terrēmur, quum serena tempestate tonuit. Nitimur in vetitum. Au-

<sup>1</sup> at Rhodes. See Synt. § 92.

gustus carmina Virgillii cremâri contra testamenti ejus verecundiam vetuit.

I have forbidden thee to go to walk, but *precisely because* (ob id ipsum, quod) I have forbidden [it], thou hast striven against (in) what has been forbidden (= the forbidden). The question concerning (de) the immortality of the soul (plur.), is nobly explained by Cicero in the first book of the Tusculan Disputations. Cicero applied (perf.) himself with [his] whole soul to the study of eloquence. Three hundred soldiers kept watch before the camp. Who does not know, that many nations and peoples were subdued by the Romans. If thou shalt have curbed thy passions (libido) and restrained (teneo) thy desires, thou wilt live happily. Already we were sitting (pluperf.) at the table, when suddenly a flame gushed forth (perf. of *emico*) from the roof. Scarcely had we retired (discedere) to sleep (= in order to recline, *sup.*), when the whole city resounded (perf. of *persono*) with discordant cries. Thy brother related to me, that it thundered (perf.) yesterday in (abl.) clear weather. As the doors had creaked (subj.), I doubted not (perf.) that thou wast coming (subj.).

§ 57. IH. *Perfect*:—*ŭi*; *Supine*:—*tum*.

1. *Frīco, frīcui, frīcātum* (rarely *frictum*), *frīcāre*, to rub.
2. *Nēco, āvi, ātum, āre*, to kill; but *enēco, enēcui, enectum, enecāre*, to kill by inches, to vex to death, to entirely exhaust.
3. *Sēco, sēcui, sectum, sēcāre*, to cut (but Part. Fut. *secaturus*).

IV. *Perfect*:—*i*; *Supine*:—*tum*.

1. *Jūvo, jūvi, jūtum, jūvāre* (c. acc.), to aid, assist.
2. *Lāvo, lāvi, lāvātum and lautum, lāvāre*, to wash.

XCI. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Adjūvāre (c. acc.), to aid, assist, support.	refricāre, to rub again, renew.	olēum, i, n. oil.
desēcāre, to cut off.	alligo 1. I bind.	principium, i, n. beginning; principio, in the beginning.
resēcāre, to cut off, remove.	coeno 1. I sup.	
perfricāre, to rub thoroughly.	attingo, tūgi, tactum 3. to touch. [fetch.	garrulitas, ātis, f. loquacity.
	peto, iŭi, itum 3. to seek,	purus, a, um, pure.



2. *Dōcĕo, dōcui, doctum, dōcĕre* (with two acc.), to teach.
3. *Miscĕo, miscui, mixtum* and *mistum, miscĕre*, to mix.
4. *Tĕnĕo, tĕnui, tentum, tĕnĕre*, to hold.
5. *Torrĕo, torrui, tostum, torrĕre*, to dry, bake.

II. *Perfect* :—*ŭi*; *Supine* :—*um*, only :

*Censĕo, censui, censum, censĕre*, to rate, judge.

So its compounds, but with the associate form of the Sup. in *itum*, as: *recenseo, recensui, recensum* and *recensitum*, to examine; except *succensĕre*, (to be displeased), *percensĕre* (to examine accurately, go through), which have no Sup.

REMARK. *Taedet* (it disgusts), has together with *taeduit*, also *taesum est*, but this is not used in the classical language; the compound *per-taedet*, has in the Perf. only *pertaesum est*, e. g. *pertaesum est* (me) *levitatis*, whence by later writers *pertaesus, a, um* (c. gen. or acc.), *disgusted*.

III. *Perfect* :—*ĕvi*; *Supinum* :—*ĕtum*.

1. *Delĕo, ĕvi, ĕtum, ĕre*, to destroy.
2. *Flĕre*, to weep.
3. *Nĕre*, to spin.
4. The compounds of the obsolete *plĕre* (to fill), as: *complĕre*. Here belongs the compound of the obsolete *ōleo* (I grow):
5. *Abōleo, abolĕvi, abolĭtum, abolĕre*, to abolish; still this verb does not occur till after the Augustan period.

Finally we have in this class :

6. *Cĭĕo, cĭvi, cĭtum, ciĕre*, to stir, raise.

So also the compounds, as: *conciĕo, ĭvi, ĭtum, iĕre*, or regular, according to the fourth Conj.: *concio, ĭvi, ĭtum, ĭre*, to excite, *exciĕo, ĭvi, ĭtum, iĕre* or *excio, ĭvi, ĭtum, ĭre*, to arouse, *perciĕo, ĭvi, ĭtum, iĕre* or *percio, ĭvi, ĭtum, ĭre*, to stir up, raise; but, *accio, accĭvi, accĭtum, accĭre*, to send for, desire to come, is of the fourth Conj. alone.

IV. *Perfect* :—*i*; *Supine* :—*tum*.

PRELIMINARY REMARK. The short vowel of the stem is lengthened in the Perf.

1. *Cāveo, cāvi, cautum, cāvĕre*, to be on one's guard

(ab aliquo, against some one); to give security, provide.

2. *Făveo, fāvi, (fautum rare) fāvère* (c. dat.), to be favorable, to favor.
3. *Foveo, fōvi, fōtum, fōvere*, to warm, nurse, cherish.
4. *Moveo, mōvi, mōtum, mōvere*, to move.
5. *Voveo, vōvi, vōtum, vōvere*, to vow, offer.

Also the following without a Supine:

6. *Ferveo, fervi* and *ferbui, fervère*, to boil.
7. *Paveo, pāvi, pavere*, to dread (commonly *expavescere*).
8. *Conniveo, (-nīvi and -nixi*, neither of them used in good prose), *connivère*, to close (*the eyes*), wink.

## XCII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Admiscere, to intermix, mingle. [occupy.	deprehendo, di, sum 3. to seize, take.	gravitas, ātis, f. gravity, dignity.
distinere, to hold apart,	excludo, si, sum 3. to	testis, is, c. witness.
sustinere, to bear.	exclude, hatch.	ascensus, ūs, m. ascent.
removere, to remove.	gallina, ae, f. a hen.	anxie, adv. anxiously.
dedico 1. I consecrate.	vigiliae, arum, f. watch-	horno, adv. this year.
implico 1. I involve.	es, night watches.	publice, adv. publicly,
respiro 1. I breathe.	pullus, i, m. the young	on the part of the
sedo 1. I quiet.	(of animals), chicken.	state, at the expense
amplexor 1. I embrace.	clades, is, f. defeat.	of the state.

Cicerōnem Minerva omnes artes edocuit. Gravitas modestiae mista maxime admirabilis est. Tot tantisque negotiis distentus sum, ut mihi non liceat libere respirare. Nescisne, quot labores, quot pericula, quot miseras milites in itinere sustinuerint? Si virtus te a malis cupiditatibus arcuerit, vita tua beata erit. Cicero, per legatos cuncta edoctus, praetoribus imperat, ut in ponte Allobriges deprehendant. Quo minus animi se admiscuerint atque implicaverint hominum vitii atque erroribus, eo facilius illis ascensus in coelum erit. Simplex animi natura est, nec habet in se quicquam admixtum. Vescimur uvis sole tostis. Horno multas uvas torruimus. Cato, Carthaginem delendam esse, censuit. Quinto quoque anno tota Sicilia censa est.

Duae urbes potentissimae, Carthago et Numantia, a Scipione sunt delatae. Graecorum Romanorumque gloriam nulla unquam oblivio delavit, nec unquam delebit. Deus bonis omnibus mundum implavit, mali nihil admiscuit. Dum abest dux, milites seditionem civerunt.

Nuntiata clades majorem, quam res erat, terrōrem in urbe excivit. Catilina neque vigiliis, neque quietibus sedabatur: ita conscientia mentem excitam vastabat.

Cautum est legibus, ut mortui post tertium diem sepelirentur. Non dubito, quin semper ab hominum impurorum consuetudine cavēris. Non ignōro, te mihi meisque semper fuisse. Pulli a matribus exclusi fotique anxie custodiuntur. Dubitabisne, quin summum semper in te fovērim amōrem? Me sic amplexati estis, sic in manibus habuistis, sic fovistis, ut nunquam illius diei obliviscērer. Brutus et Cassius, interfectores Caesāris, ingens bellum movērunt. Ingrātus est, qui, remōtis testibus, agit gratias. Multi Romanorum imperatōres pro salūte patriae sua capita vovērunt. Eodem anno tria templa sunt publice vota et dedicāta.

Cicero was instructed (perf.) by Minerva in (acc.) all literature. Tell me, who has taught thee (acc.) grammar. If thou shalt have joined (= mixed) dignity with modesty, thou wilt please all. If thou hadst abstained from the intercourse of bad men, thou wouldst now be contented with thy lot. If virtue had restrained thee from bad passions, thou wouldst now be happy. By the war all [things] have been confounded (= mixed). Knowest thou not, that we have dried many grapes this year? Under the reign of Augustus (abl. abs.) the Roman empire was rated (perf.).

All the senators judged (perf.), that they should (Gerund) lend aid to the citizens of the city destroyed by the enemies. It is known, that Scipio destroyed (perf.) two very powerful cities, Carthage and Numantia. Tell me, why thou hast wept. The death of the good king has been lamented (= wept) by all the citizens. When I shall have spun two hours, I will take a walk. The world is filled (complere) by God with all good [things], nothing of evil is intermixed. When thou hast filled thy body with food and drink, thou wilt not use thy mind well. Hast thou heard that the soldiers have raised a conspiracy against the general? It is not [possible] to quiet a mind stirred up by an evil conscience.

\* When I shall have sent for (accio) you, you will not delay to come. My brother, sent for by a letter, will come to-morrow. Philip, king of the Macedonians (Macēdo, ōnis), sent for (perf.) Aristotle [as] teacher for his son Alexander. The laws have established, that (ut) the dead should be buried after the third day. I know, that thou hast always been on thy guard against the intercourse of bad men. It was established (perf.) by the will of the king, that grain should be distribu-

ted to the destitute citizens on his birth-day. I rejoice, that (quod) thou hast always favored me and my studies. I know that thou hast always cherished great love for (*in c. acc*) me. The hen anxiously guards the chickens which she has hatched and nursed. An immense war was raised (perf. of *moveo*) by Brutus and Cassius, the murderers of Caesar. I doubt not, that thou hast been greatly moved (*commovere*) by the news. History relates, that many generals of the Romans, offered (perf.) their heads for the welfare of their country. Livy relates, that in the same year three temples were vowed and dedicated at the expense of the state.

### § 59. V. *Perfect—i; Supine—sum.*

(Comp. Prelim. Rem. to § 58. IV.)

1. *Prandeo, prandi, pransum, prandēre*, to breakfast.
2. *Sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, sēdēre*, to sit.

So the compounds with *dissyllabic* prepositions, as: *circumsēdeo, ēdi, essum, ēre, to sit around, to beset*; but those with *monosyllabic* prepositions change the *ē* of the stem-syllable into *ī*, as: *assīdeo assēdi, assessum, assidēre, to sit by*.

3. *Strīdeo, strīdi, (Sup. wanting), strīdēre*, to whiz.
4. *Vīdeo, vīdi, vīsum, vīdēre*, to see.

Also the following, of which the Perf. takes the Reduplication.

5. *Mordeo, momordi, morsum, mordēre*, to bite, afflict.
6. *Pendeo, pependi, (Sup. uncertain), pendēre*, to hang.
7. *Spondeo, spopondi, sponsum, spondēre*, to promise, to become responsible for.
8. *Tondeo, totondi, tonsum, tondēre*, to shear, cut.

The reduplication in these verbs, consists in a repetition of the first consonant of the stem with the first vowel of the stem. Concerning *spopondi*, see § 55. Rem.—The compounds of these verbs follow the simples, but are without the reduplication, as: *admordeo, admordi, admorsum, to bite into*; *praependeo, pendi, to hang before*, *respondeo, respondi, responsum, to answer*; *detondeo, detondi, detonsum, to shave off*.

### VI. *Perfect:—si; Supine:—tum.*

1. *Augeo, auxi, auctum, augēre*, to increase.

2. *Indulgeo, indulsi, (indultum rare), indulgēre*, to be indulgent, to give one's self up to.
3. *Lūgeo, luxi* (without Sup.) *lūgēre*, to mourn, lament.
4. *Torqueo, torsi, tortum, torquēre*, to twist, torture.

XCIIL. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Extorquēre, to wrest from.	lacrīma, ae, f. tear.	occāsus, ūs, m. setting.
pervidēre, to contemplate, examine.	sica, ae, f. dagger.	rabies, ei, f. madness.
residēre, to remain behind.	sicarius, i, m. assassin.	radiōsus, a, um, mad.
locuplētō 1. I enrich.	collum, i, n. neck.	extērus, a, um, external, foreign.
barba, ae, f. beard.	tonsor, ōris, m. barber.	ancillāris, e, of a maid, servile.
epistōla, ae, f. letter.	tonstricūla, ae, f. a female barber.	acūte, adv. sharply, acutely.
	probitas, ātis, f. uprightness.	

Postquam prandēro, ambulābo. Audistine, nos cras in horto pransūros esse? Quoad ulla spes in animo meo resēdit, pro patriae libertate dimicavi. Jam tres menses obsederunt hostes nostram urbem. Non ego sum ille ferrēus, qui (= ut ego) non movēar horum omnium lacrimis, a quibus me circumsessum vidētis. Multi putant, se beneficos in suos amicos visum iri, si locuplētent eos quacunque ratione. Ne prius de re aliqua judica, quam eam diligenter pervidēris. Epistōlae tuae valde me momorderunt. Si quis a cane radiōso morsus est, rabies eum occūpat. Quoad tu locutus es, puer ab ore tuo pependit. Spopondistine pro amico? Spopondi. Multa a Laelio et in senatu et in foro vel provisā prudenter, vel acute responsa sunt. Cicero narravit, Dionysium, ne tonsōri collum committēret, tondēre filias suas docuisse: ita sordido ancillarique officio regias virgīnes ut tonstricūlas totondisse barbā et capillum patris. Tanta vis probitatis est, ut eam vel in iis, quos nunquam vidimus, vel, quod majus est, in hoste etiam diligāmus.

Callisthēnem Alexander non tantum necāvit, sed etiam torsit. Romanae reipublicae magnitūdo atque amplitūdo bellis cum extēris gentibus ac nationibus gestis mirum in modum aucta est. Sicario sica de manibus est extorta. Quo magis indulseris dolōri, eo intolerabilior erit. Occāsum atque interitum reipublicae Romanae optimi quique maxime luxērunt.

Come to me to day, in order to breakfast (sup.). When we shall have breakfasted, we will take a walk. Our city has already been beset three months by the enemies. The enemies have beset the whole city. Hast thou already seen the friend? no, but I hope that I



shall see him to-morrow. I grieve, that my letter has afflicted thee. I fear that the dog will bite me. So long as thou hast been absent, we have felt anxiety for thee (*pendere animis de te*). My friend has not yet indeed become responsible for me, but I hope that he will become responsible for me. I have heard with great pleasure, that your friend has answered your letter quickly. The captives have cut (= sheared) neither the beard nor the hair for (ex) three months.

History relates, that Callisthenes was (perf.) not only killed by Alexander, but before also was tortured. The soldiers wrested (perf.) a dagger from the hands of the assassin. Catiline emboldened (= increased) [his] fierce mind and [his] consciousness of foul deeds by wicked arts. By the discourse of the generals, the courage of the soldiers was increased (perf.). I rejoice, that thou hast not been indulgent towards (dat.) the faults of thy son. Thou knowest, how very much we have lamented the death of our friend.

§ 60. VII. *Perfect* :—*si* ; *Supine* :—*sum*.

1. *Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, mulcere*, to stroke.
2. *Mulgeo, mulsi, mulsum, mulgere*, to milk.
3. *Tergeo, tersi, tersum, tergere*, to wipe.
4. *Ardeo, arsi, arsum, ardere*, to burn, take fire.
5. *Rideo, risi, risum, ridere*, to laugh.
6. *Suadeo, suasi, suasum, suadere*, to advise.
7. *Māneo, mansi, mansum, mānere*, to remain.
8. *Jubeo, jussi, jussum, juberē*, to bid, command, order.
9. *Haereo, haesi, haesum, haerere*, to hang, stick.

The following also without a Supine :

10. *Algeo, alsi, algere*, to suffer from cold, freeze.
11. *Fulgeo, fulsi, fulgere*, to glitter, lighten.
12. *Turgeo, tursi, turgere*, to swell.
13. *Urgeo, ursi, urgere*, to press, oppress.
14. *Frigeo, (frixī rare) frigere*, to freeze.
15. *Luceo, luxi, lucere*, to shine.

VIII. Perfect with passive form (*Neuter Passives*); without a Supine.

1. *Audeo, ausus sum, audere*, to dare.
2. *Gaudeo, gāvīsus sum, gaudere*, to rejoice.
3. *Sōleo, solitus sum, solere*, to be accustomed (to do something).

XCIV. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Abstergere, <i>to wipe off,</i> <i>dispel, remove.</i>	remanere, <i>to remain be-</i> <i>hind, remain.</i>	scintilla, ae, <i>f. a spark.</i>
detergere, <i>to wipe off.</i>	oblecto 1. <i>I delight.</i>	exsilium, i, n. <i>banish-</i> <i>ment.</i>
affulgere, <i>to shine upon.</i>	convivor 1. <i>I eat in</i>	caducus, a, um, <i>destin-</i> <i>ed to fall, falling.</i>
deridere 2. <i>to deride.</i>	common.	confectio, onis, <i>f. mak-</i> <i>ing, composition.</i>
dissuadere, <i>to dissuade.</i>	lateo, ui 2. <i>I remain</i>	
elucere, <i>to shine forth.</i>	concealed.	
permulcere, <i>to stroke,</i> <i>charm, soothe.</i>	perpetior, pessus sum, peti 3. <i>to endure.</i>	

Dux mitibus verbis excitos militum animos permulsit. Legendo Virgillii carmina animus meus mirifice oblectatus et permulsus est. Ita jucunda mihi hujus libri confectio fuit, ut omnes absterserit senectutis molestias. Non prius ad te veniam, quam luctum omnem abstersero. Detersane jam est tabula? Quadraginta milia librorum Alexandriae<sup>1</sup> arserunt. Non dubito, quin brevi tota Germania bello arsura sit. Quis est, cui semper arriserit fortuna? Nescio, cur a te derisus sim. Sic mihi persuasi, sic sentio, non esse animos nostros mortales. Quis credat, cives pacem dissuasuros esse? Quis confidit, semper sibi illud stabile et firmum permansurum esse, quod fragile et caducum sit? Romanorum gloria usque ad nostram memoriam remansit. Lycurgus convivari omnes cives publice jussit. Non qui jussus aliquid facit, miser est, sed qui invitatus facit. Persuasum mihi est, memoriam hujus atrocissimi belli non modo in hoc populo, sed etiam in omnium gentium sermonibus semper haesuram esse.

Milites in itineribus multos labores perpassi sunt, sudaverunt et alserunt. Superatis hostibus, nova spes salutis civitati affulsit. Pater litteris me ursit, ut primo quoque tempore litteras ad se darem. Quomodo in viro latebit scintilla ingenii, quae jam in puero eluxit! Tu me tantis beneficiis auxisti, quanta nunquam ausus sum optare. De amici tui comitate valde gavisus sum. Athenis<sup>2</sup> optimo cuique accidere solitum est, ut in exsilium pelleretur.

The poems of Virgil have delighted and charmed my mind wonderfully. The orator hoped, that he should soothe the excited minds of the citizens by mild words. Hast thou wiped off the table? it has already been wiped off. I give (ago) thee very great thanks, that thou hast removed from me all pain by thy consolation. *Under the reign* (*imperare*, abl. abs.) of Napoleon (Napoléo, onis) nearly all Europe burned (*perf.*) with war. I hope, that all citizens, will burn with a desire, *to fight* (*gen. of gerund*) for the safety of [their] country. Who

<sup>1</sup> at Alexandria. See Synt. § 92.<sup>2</sup> at Athens. See Synt. § 92.

knows, *whether* fortune will always smile upon *him* (sibine). I know not, why you have derided me. I have not dissuaded the peace, and have been convinced, that neither will you dissuade it. We hope, that our souls will remain after death. Tell me, why thou hast persisted in thy opinion. The general ordered the soldiers to attack the city. The soldiers, having been commanded (part. perf. pass. of *jubeo*) to assault the city, forthwith executed the command (= what had been commanded). I fear, that this pain will ever stick in my mind. The remembrance of (gen.) this bloody war, has remained (= stuck) in the minds of all.

The hunters have sweated and frozen. After it has lightened, it thunders. The soldiers have pressed the enemies very much. From the countenance of the man, shone (perf.) dignity and moderation. I have rejoiced, that (quod) thou hast dared to speak thy opinion freely. The Carthaginians were accustomed (perf.) formerly to use elephants in war.

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 61. I. *Perfect* :—*si* ; *Supine* :—*sum* ;

a) The stem ends in *d* or *t* :

1. *Claudo, clausi, clausum, claudere*, to close.

In the compounds *au* passes into *û*, as : *inclûdo, ûsi, ûsum, ûdêre*, to include.

2. *Divido, divisi, divisum, dividere*, to divide.

3. *Laedo, laesi, laesum, laedere*, to hurt.

In the compounds *ae* passes into *i*, as : *illido, îsi, îsum, îdêre*, to strike against.

4. *Lûdo, lûsi, lûsum, ludere*, to play.

5. *Plaudo, plausi, plausum, plaudere*, to clap.

So also *applaudo* (I applaud) ; in the remaining compounds *au* passes into *ô*, as : *explôdo, ôsi, ôsum, ôdêre*, to clap off, drive off.

6. *Râdo, râsi, râsum, râdere*, to shave, shear.

7. *Rôdo, rôsi, rôsum, rôdere*, to gnaw, slander.

8. *Trûdo, trûsi, trûsum, trûdere*, to thrust.

9. *Vâdo, vâdere*, to go ; without Perf. and Sup.

But the compounds have both, as : *evâdo, evâsi, evâsum, evâdere*, to come out, escape.

To these succeed the following :

10. *Cêdo, cessi, cessum, cedere*, to give way.

11. *Mitto, misi, missum, mittere*, to send.

12. *Quătio*, (Perf. wanting,) *qu a s s u m*, *quătēre*, to shake.

The compounds change *qua* into *cū* and form the Perf., as :  
*decūtio*, *decussi*, *decussum*, *decūtēre*, to shake down.

b) The stem ends in *g*, *c*, or *ct* :

13. *Mergo*, *mersi*, *mersum*, *mergēre*, to plunge.  
14. *Spargo*, *sparsi*, *sparsum*, *spargēre*, to scatter (sow).  
In the compounds *a* of the stem passes into *e*, as : *conspargo*, *ersi*, *ersum*, *ergēre*, to besprinkle.  
15. *Tergo*, *tersi*, *tersum*, *tergēre*, to wipe, (kindred form of *tergēre* § 60. VII. 3).  
16. *Figō*, *fixi*, *fixum*, *figēre*, to fix.  
17. *Flecto*, *flexi*, *flexum*, *flectēre*, to bend.  
18. *Necto*, *nexui*, *nexum*, *nectēre*, to unite, plait.  
19. *Pecto*, *pexi*, *peyum*, *pectēre*, to comb.  
20. *Plecto*, (*plexi*), *pleyum*, *plectēre*, to plait.

c) Finally, the two following belong here.

21. *Prēmo*, *pressi*, *pressum*, *prēmēre*, to press.

In the compounds *ē* of the stem before *m* passes into *i*, as :  
*comprīmo*, *essi*, *essum*, *imēre*, to press together.

22. *Flūo* (for *fluvo*), *fluxi*, *fluxum*, *fluēre*, to flow.

### XCV. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

<i>Committēre</i> , to commit.	<i>elidēre</i> , to dash, break.	<i>spectātor</i> , ōris, <i>m. spectator.</i>
<i>concedēre</i> , to concede, allow.	<i>imprimēre</i> , to impress.	
	<i>copulāre</i> , to join.	<i>cachinnatio</i> , ōnis, <i>f. an unrestrained laugh.</i>
<i>connectēre</i> , to join together, connect.	<i>locāre</i> (in <i>c. abl.</i> ), to place, set.	<i>histrīo</i> , ōnis, <i>m. actor.</i>
<i>corrādēre</i> , to scrape together.	<i>libra</i> , <i>ae, f. a pound.</i>	<i>perpetuitas</i> , ātis, <i>f. stability, perpetuity.</i>
<i>delūdēre</i> , to deceive.	<i>modius</i> , <i>i, m. a bushel.</i>	<i>imprūdēns</i> , <i>tis, unawares.</i>
<i>elūdēre</i> to mock.	<i>regnum</i> , <i>i, n. reign, kingdom.</i>	
<i>disclūdēre</i> , to separate.	<i>praecordia</i> , <i>orum, n. diaphragm.</i>	<i>virītim</i> , <i>adv. man by man.</i>

Templum Jani bis post Numae regnum clausum est. Si ridēre concessum sit, vituperātur tamen cachinnatio. Si concessēris, esse deum ; confitendum tibi est, ejus consilio mundum administrāri. In omnium animis dei notionem impressit ipsa natura. Magna vis est conscientiae, et magna in utramque partem, ut neque timeant [ii], qui nihil commisērint, et poenam semper ante oculos versāri putent [ii], qui peccārint. Virtūtes ita copulātae connexaeque sunt, ut omnes omnium participēs sint. Caesar popūlo praeter frumenti denos modios ac to-

ūdem olēi libras trecēnos quoque nummos virritim divisit. Qui diffidit perpetuitati bonorum suorum, timēat necesse est, ne aliquando, amissis illis, sit miser. Plato duas partes animi, iram et cupiditatem, locis disclūsit: iram in pectōre, cupiditatem subter praecordia locāvit. Omnis Gallia in tres partes divisa est. Si quis imprūdens te laesērit, ne ei irascēre. Si vitae molli et effeminātae te dedēris, brevi tempore omnes nervi virtūtis elisi erunt. Cur me elusistis! Nescisne, a perfido amico me delūsum esse? Histrionibus, qui heri praeclare partes suas sustinuērunt, omnes spectatōres applausērunt. Epicūri de vitā beatā sententia ab omnibus acutioribus philosophis explōsa est. Sunt multi, qui in pecuniā corrāsā vitae felicitatem collocātam esse putent.

★ XCVI. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Conclūdēre, to include.	emergēre, to emerge,	exagītare, to disquiet.
confluēre, to flow together, assemble.	rise up, work one's self out.	exanimare to kill.
diffluēre, to flow asunder, run into.	detrūdēre, to thrust down.	exsibilare, to hiss off.
defigēre, to fix, render firm, to turn upon something.	extrūdēre, to thrust from.	fugare, to put to flight.
transfigēre, to transfix.	discūtēre, to drive away,	hasta, ae, f. spear.
deflectēre, to deviate.	dispargēre, to disperse.	nebūla, ae, f. a mist.
demergēre, to plunge under, sink, suppress.	dispicio, spexi, spectum 3. to open the eyes.	clypēus, i, m. a shield.
		stimulus, i, m. goad.
		caligo, inis, f. darkness.
		salvus, a, um, safe.
		mobilis, e, changeable.
		quondam, adv. formerly.

Te in tantum luctum et laborem detrūsum esse, graviter doleo. Cur aedibus istum extrusisti? Spero, amicum aegrōtum e morbo evasūrum esse. Si animus e corpore evasērit, tum demum vivet et vigēbit. Sole orto, caligo discussa est. Omnia pericūla, quae urbi impendēbant, ducis fortitudo et consilium discussit. Marius senile corpus paludibus demersum occultavit. Animus coelestis ex altissimo domicilio depressus et in terram quasi demersus est. Leges, per longum tempus hostium vi demersae, tandem emersērunt. Deus immortalis sparsit animos in corpōra humanā. Omnia, quae nunc artibus conclūsa sunt, quondam dispersa et dissipāta fuērunt. Epaminondas quum superasset Lacedaemonios apud Mantinēam, atque ipse gravi vulnere exanimari se vidēret, ut primum dispexit, interrogavit, salvusne esset clypēus. Quum salvum esse a flentibus suis audisset, rogavit, essentne fugāti hostes. Quum id quoque audivisset, evelli jussit eam, qua erat transfixus, hastam. Alia omnia incerta sunt, cadūca, mobilia: virtus est una altissimis defixa radicibus. Cicero omnes suas curas cogitationes-

que in reipublicae salute defixit. Qui semel a veritate deflexit, ei ne verum quidem dicenti fides haberi solet. Non credo, te unquam de virtutis via deflexurum esse. Dic, cui hanc coronam nexueris. Ingens hominum multitudo in urbem confluit, ludos publicos spectatum.

The Romans closed (perf.) the temple of Janus twice after the reign of Numa. If it is conceded to me by thee, that there is a God, thou must confess that the world is managed by his counsel. What thou hast promised, thou must hold to (*tenere*, gerundive). The idea (= notion) of God, is impressed upon (abl.) the souls of all men by nature herself. Men, by whom crimes have been committed, are disquieted by the goads of conscience. God has connected all parts of the world together (inter se). Hast thou heard, that grain has been distributed to (dat.) the poor by the king? A virtuous (= partaking of virtue) man will be happy, even when he shall have lost all the gifts of fortune. Plato believes, that anger and passion are separated from the reason and understanding. The general has divided all the troops into four parts. It is not doubtful, that a soft and effeminate life will, in a short time, enfeeble all the powers (= nerves) of virtue. Knowest thou not, that the faithless friend has deceived me? Last (= yesterday) evening, the actors were (perf.) applauded by all. Hast thou heard, that lately all the actors have been hissed and clapped off? Many think, that, if they have scraped together (subj.) much gold, they may be happy. The heads of the captives were sheared (perf.) by the soldiers. What misery has brought thee (= thrust thee down) into so great grief? That (iste) man hast justly been thrust from the house.

I hope, that we shall escape the danger. When once (quando) a (aliquod) dream has turned out (evadere) true, many men believe, that this has not happened by chance. The sun has driven away the mists. All dangers which threatened the state, are dispelled by the wisdom and bravery of the general. I hope, that thou wilt soon emerge from the misfortune into which fortune has plunged thee. Immortal souls have been placed (= sown) by God, in mortal bodies. Our soldiers attacked (perf.) the enemies dispersed and put them to flight. All the cares and thoughts of Cicero were turned upon the welfare of the republic. I know, that thou wilt never deviate from the path of virtue through wickedness. For (dat.) whom is this crown plaited? I believe there is a great multitude of men assembled in the city, in order to behold (sup.) the public games. It is known, that the Romans of later (posterior) times, ran into (diffluere) luxury.

§ 62. II. *Perfect*:—*ŭi*; *Supine*:—*tum*,—*ĭtum*,—*sum*.

1. *Cōlo, colŭi, cultum, cōlĕre*, to attend to, cultivate, honor.
2. *Consŭlo, consŭlui, consultum, consŭlĕre*, to deliberate; c. acc., to consult some one; c. dat., to consult for some one.
3. *Occŭlo, occŭlui, occultum, occŭlĕre*, to conceal.
4. *Rāpio, rapui, raptum, rāpĕre*, to snatch, plunder, carry off.  
Compounds:—*ripio*,—*ripiui*,—*reptum*,—*ripĕre*, as: *arripio*, *I seize, appropriate to myself*.
5. *Sĕro, sĕruui, sertum, sĕrĕre*, to join together.
6. *Texo, texui, textum, texĕre*, to weave.

7. *Alō, ālui, altum, ālĕre*, to nourish.
8. *Cumbo, cŭbui, cŭbitum, cumbĕre*, to lie.  
The simple verb is not used, but its compounds, as: *discumbĕre*, *to lie down*.
9. *Depso, depsui, depstum, depsĕre*, to knead.
10. *Frĕmo, frĕmui, frĕmitum, frĕmĕre*, to murmur, grumble.
11. *Gĕmo, gĕmui, gĕmitum, gĕmĕre*, to groan, deplore.
12. *Gigno, genui, genitum, gignĕre*, to beget, produce.
13. *Mōlo, mōlui, mōlitum, mōlĕre*, to grind.
14. *Pinso, pinsui, pinsitum* (and *pinsum, pistum*), *pin-sĕre*, to bray, pound.
15. *Pōno, pōsui, pōsitum, pōnĕre* (in c. abl.), to place, lay.  
*Pōno* arises from *pōsino*, and *pōsui* from *pōsivi*.
16. *Vōmo, vōmui, vōmitum, vōmĕre*, to vomit.

17. *Frendo, frendui, fresum or fressum, frendĕre*, to gnash.
18. *Mĕto, messui, messum, mĕtĕre*, to mow, reap.

REMARK. The following want the Sup.: *sterto, stertui, stertĕre*, to snore, *strĕpo, ui, ĕre*, to rustle, sound, resound; *trĕmo, ui, ĕre*, to tremble; the compounds of *pesco*, as: *compesco, compescui, compescĕre*, to restrain; *vōlo, ui, velle*, to wish; and the compounds of *cello* except *percellĕre*: *excello, antecello, prae-cello* *I excel*, Pf. *cellui*; *excelsus* and *prae-celsus* (lofty, distinguished) are used adjectively.

## XCVII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Arripere, to seize upon.	depugnare, to fight (for life or death).	sepulcrum, i, n. grave, burial.
diripere, to plunder.		
conserrere, to join together, to be hand to hand.	jurare, to swear.	tegumentum, i, n. cover, covering.
	suo, sui, sũtum 3. to sew.	commutatio, õnis, f. change.
demetere, to cut down.	progredior, gressus sum, grēdi 3. to step forth.	migratio, õnis, f. migration.
demittere, to let down, let fall.		
disserrere, to discuss, speak.	caerimonia, ae, f. sanctity, religious ceremony.	recordatio, õnis, f. recollection.
ingignere, to implant.		mutus, a, um, dumb.
praepõnere, to place before.	praetorium, i, n. general's tent.	supremus, a, um, last.
		matũre, adv. speedily.

In omnibus negotiis, priusquam aggrediare, consulto opus est<sup>1</sup>; ubi autem consulueris, mature rem ipsam aggredere. Socrates supremo vitae die multa de immortalitate animorum disseruit. Manibus consertis, milites nostri fortitudine excelluerunt. Animus moderatur et movet id corpus, cui praepositus est. Zeno in una virtute beatam vitam posuit. Natura ingenit homini cupiditatem verum inveniendi. Omnibus animalibus a natura ingenta est conservandi sui custodia. Alexander, victor tot regum atque populorum, irae succubuit. Spero, te semper maximo studio in litteras incubiturum esse. \* Caerimonias sepulcrorum homines, maximis ingeniis praediti, non tanta cura coluissent, nisi haereret in eorum mentibus, mortem non interitum esse omnia delentem, sed quandam quasi migrationem commutationemque vitae, quae in claris viris et feminis dux in coelum soleret esse. Si ingenium tuum artibus litterisque excultum erit, et tibi et aliis utilis eris. Dux, ne milites animum demitterent, vulnera sibi inflicta occuluit. Ne crede, ullum peccatum deo occultum manere. Tegumenta corporum vel texta, vel suta sunt. Quis pulchram illam vestem texuit? Oratio tua totos nos ad se rapuit. Quaerit Socrates, unde animum arripuerimus, si nullus fuerit in mundo. Expugnata urbs ab hostibus direpta est. Scipio pugnavit cum Hannibale, prope nato in praetorio patris, fortissimi ducis, alto atque educato inter arma. Cui non locus ille mutus, ubi altus aut doctus est, cum grata recordatione in mente versetur? Agricolae frumentum non solum jam demessuerunt, sed etiam demessum in horrea congesserunt. Ipse Hector toto pectore tremuit, quum Ajax multa cum hilaritate progredieretur depugnaturus cum illo.

<sup>1</sup> there is need of one's deliberating.

*Handwritten notes:* \* in end... the greatest...



The Romans sent (perf.) ambassadors, *in order to consult* (part. fut. act.) the oracle. I know, that thou hast cared for me and mine. The soldiers were (perf.) hand to hand with the enemies. The soldiers swore, that they would not desert [their] general. God has placed the soul before the body. Nature has produced gold, silver, brass, iron, in short (denique) all metals for the use of men. The desire *to find* (gen. of the gerund) the truth (= what is true), is implanted in the human race by nature. I rejoice, that thou hast applied thyself with so great zeal to literature. I doubt not, that the wise [man] will never sink under the pains of the body. If thou shalt have cultivated thy genius by arts and literature, thou wilt be useful both to thyself and to [thy] native land. I hope, that thou wilt always honor thy parents. Why hast thou concealed thy faults from me? didst thou think, that thou wouldst always conceal them from me? The enemies, *after they had taken the city*, (abl. abs.), killed (perf.) the citizens and plundered their goods. The wise [man] will be happy, even when all the gifts of fortune may be snatched from him. Gratefully we remember the place (acc.)-where we were nourished and brought up.

### § 63. III. *Perfect* :—*vi* ; *Supine* :—*tum*.

The stem of the Pres. is strengthened by *n* or *r* :

1. *Lī-n-o*, *lēvi*, *lītum*, *linēre*, to besmear.
2. *Sī-n-o*, *sīvi*, *sītum*, *sīnēre*, to let, permit.
3. *Sē-r-o*, *sēvi*, *sātum*, *sērēre*, to sow.

In the compounds, *a* of the Sup. passes into *ī*, as: *consēro*, *consēvi*, *consitum*, *consērēre*, to seed down, plant.

The following have suffered a transposition of letters in the Perf. and Sup.:

4. *Cer-n-o*, *crēvi*, *crētum*, *cernēre*, to sift, discern.

The Perf. and Sup. occur only in the compounds.

5. *Sper-n-o*, *sprēvi*, *sprētum*, *spernēre*, to spurn.
6. *Ster-n-o*, *strāvi*, *strātum*, *sternēre*, to spread.

Finally there belong here the following in *sco* :

7. *Cre-sc-o*, *crēvi*, *crētum*, *crescēre*, to grow.

So: *accrescēre*, to grow to, increase, *excrescēre*, to grow up, *decrescēre*, to decrease, *recrescēre*, to grow again, *concrescēre*, to grow together ; the remaining compounds want the Sup.

8. *Nō-sc-o*, *nōvi*, *nōtum*, *noscēre*, to be acquainted with.

So: *internoscere*, to distinguish, *ignoscere*, to pardon, *pernoscere*, to become thoroughly acquainted with, *praenoscere*, to become acquainted with before; but, *cognoscere*, to become acquainted with, *agnoscere*, to perceive, *praecognoscere*, to become acquainted with previously, *recognoscere*, to become acquainted with again, to review, form the Sup. in *itum*, as: *cognitum*.

9. *Pa-sc-o*, *pā vī*, *pastum*, *pascere*, to pasture, feed.
10. *Qui-sc-o*, *qui ē vī*, *quietum*, *quiescere*, to rest.
11. *Sci-sc-o*, *scī vī*, *scitum*, *sciscere*, to decide.
12. *Sue-sc-o*, *su ē vī*, *suētum*, *suescere*, to be accustomed.

### XCVIII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

<i>Decernere</i> , to determine, to discern.	under, place under, to subject.	<i>obtrectatio</i> , ōnis, f. detraction, grudge.
<i>secernere</i> , to sever, separate.	<i>importare</i> , to import.	<i>venustas</i> , ātis, f. loveliness.
<i>insēre</i> , to sow in, implant.	<i>conciōnari</i> , to harangue the people.	<i>corporēus</i> , a, um, corporeal.
<i>oblīnere</i> , to besmear, daub.	<i>invidia</i> , ae, f. envy, hatred.	<i>commūnis</i> , e, common, known by all.
<i>prosternere</i> , to prostrate.	<i>vinēa</i> , ae, f. the vine.	<i>ibi</i> , adv. there.
<i>consternere</i> , to strow.	<i>butyrum</i> , i, n. butter.	<i>opportune</i> , adv. opportunely.
<i>substernere</i> , to spread	<i>comitia</i> , orum, n. assembly of the people.	<i>subito</i> , adv. suddenly.
	<i>messis</i> , is, f. crop.	

*Insita est nobis corporis nostri caritas. Ibi messis non est, ubi satum non est. Omne, quod erat concrētum atque corporēum, deus substrāvit animo. Vitā tuā malevolorum obtrectationes et invidias prostravisti. Probus, imperātor, Aurēum montem apud Moesiam superiorem vinēis consēvit. Proelio commisso, omnia longe latēque telis, armis, cadaveribus constrāta erant. Scelerātum hominem conscientia spretae virtutis exagitat. Dic, cur consilium meum spreveris. Audi, puer! Mater te rogat, cur panem butyōro oblītum oblītus sis edere. Displīcet, qui se externis moribus oblēvit. Rem dubiam decrevit saepe vox opportune emissa. Venustas et pulchritudo corporis secrēta non est a valetudine. Cato concionātus est, se comitia habēri non sitūrum (esse). Galli vinum ad se omnino importāri non sivērunt. Cur desisti (desivisti) istum librum legere? Thebanorum potentia, quoad iis Epaminondas et Pelopidas praefuērunt, mirum in modum crevit. Amicitia nostra cum aetate accrevit. Non dubitamus, quin flumen, quod subito accrevit, etiam subīto decretūrum sit.*

## XCIX. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Adsciscere, to adopt.	depōnere, to lay aside.	luxuries, ei, f. extravagance.
assuescere, (c. dat.) to accustom one's self, to be accustomed (to something).	sacra, ōrum, n. sacred rites.	alienigēna, ae, foreign, from another country.
consuescere, to accustom one's self, to be accustomed.	auctor, ōris, m. author, adviser; me auctore, on my advice.	assidūus, a, um, unremitting, constant.
approbare, to approve.	religio, ōnis, f. religion, scrupulousness.	dilucidus, a, um, clear.
levare (c. abl.) to relieve, free.	superstitio, ōnis, f. superstition.	quotidiānus, a, um, daily.
privare (c. abl.), to deprive.	suavitas, ātis, f. amiableness, amiable disposition.	futilis, e, frivolous.
		paulūlum, adv. a little.

Multi homines, labori assiduo et quotidiano assueti, quum tempestatis causa prodire prohibentur, ludis delectantur. Demosthenes summa voce versus multos uno spiritu pronuntiare consuevit. Numam Pompilius, regem alienigenam, patribus auctoribus, sibi ipse populus adscivit. Cereris sacra populus Romanus a Graecis adscita maximam religione coluit. Ubi animus paululum e negotiis requieverit, ad te advolabo, in cujus amore et suavitate spero me quietum omnesque curas doloresque depositurum esse. Si amici mei mores pernoctaveris, spero, te ejus innocentiam agniturum eique ignotum esse. Si luxuriam orationis tuae depaveris, magni oratoris laudem tueri. Bestiae, fame dominante, plerumque ad eum locum, ubi pastae aliquando sunt, revertuntur. Cave, ne incognita pro cognitis habeas iisque temere assentiare. Quid est tam futile, quam quicquam approbare non cognitum? Populus Romanus eo magnitudinis (= ad eam magnitudinem) crevit, ut viribus suis conficeretur. Quid est tam jucundum cognito atque auditu, quam sapientibus sententiis gravibusque verbis ornata oratio? Quo brevior, eo lucidior et cognito facilius narratio est. Cato, quoad vixit, virtutum laude crevit. Omnium rerum naturam cognitam, levamur superstitione.

Nature has implanted in us a love for (gen.) our body. Where thou hast not sown, there is not a crop. Believe not, that thou wilt put an end to (= prostrate) the detraction (plur.) and envy (plur.) of the wicked. We feared, that the soldiers had prostrated all [things]. If thou hast (fut. perf.) spurned virtue, thou wilt not be happy. Tell me, why my advice has been spurned by thee. Boy, hast thou eaten the bread spread with butter by thy mother? I thought (= believed) that mother had not spread it. It has been determined by the general, to

attack the enemy. Before thou shalt have separated thyself from the wicked, thou wilt seek in vain the intercourse of the good. It is certain, that the rivers which have decreased in winter, will increase in the spring. I am accustomed (perf. act. of *consuesco*), to read something from (gen.) Homer daily. Numa Pompilius was adopted (perf.) by the Roman people [as] king. It is known, that the Roman people adopted (perf.) the sacred rites of Ceres from the Greeks. Cicero, deprived of public offices, found satisfaction in the study of literature. When thou shalt have become intimately acquainted with my brother, I doubt not, that thou wilt perceive his preëminence. The sheep have eaten down the herbs of the field. The shepherd drives (agere) the sheep to pasture (= in order to pasture, *sup.*).

§ 64. IV. *Perf.*:—*ivi*; *Supine*:—*itum* (like the fourth Conj.).

1. *Cūpio, cūpīvi, cūpītum, cūpĕre*, to desire, wish.
2. *Pĕto, pĕtīvi, pĕtītum, pĕtĕre*, to seek, strive after something, to attack something; *ab aliquo*, to request of some one.
3. *Quaero, quaesīvi, quaesītum, quaerĕre*, to seek.  
In the compounds, *ae* passes into *i*, as: *exquiro, isīvi, isītum, irĕre*, to examine, trace out.
4. *Rūdo, rūdīvi and rūdi, rūdītum, rūdĕre*, to roar.
5. *Tĕro, trīvi (for terīvi), trītum (for terītum), tĕrĕre*, to rub.

The following also in *esso*:

6. *Arcesso, arcessīvi, arcessītum, arcessĕre*, to bring.
7. *Capesso, īvi, itum, ĕre*, to seize.
8. *Facesso, īvi, itum, ĕre*, to make (*negotium facessĕre*, to make trouble, to vex); to take one's self off.
9. *Incesso, īvi, (Sup. wanting,) ĕre*, to attack.
10. *Lacesso, īvi, itum, ĕre*, to provoke.

Saepe homines res, quas vehementer cupivērunt, adepti fastidiunt. Audistīne, ut leones rudivērint? Bellum ita suscipiātur, ut nihil aliud, nisi pax quaesita videātur. Quum omnem antiquitatem memoriā repetivĕris, tria vix amicorum paria invenies, qui alter pro altĕro vitam deponĕre parati erant. Ne judica de re prius, quam eam accurāte exquisivĕris! Erechthēi filiae cupīde mortem expetivĕrunt pro vita civium. Omnis Romanorum philosophia repetita est a Graecis. So-

crātes totam vitam atque aetatem contrivit in emendandis aliorum moribus. Praecepta virtutis, quamvis contrita sint et communia, tamen a paucis observantur. Constat, bello Punico secundo Hannibalem Italiae opes attrivisse. Importūnus iste homo multa mihi facessivit negotia. Non dubito, quin nova lege civibus negotium facessitum sit. Nisi milites propere ex urbe facessivissent fugamque capessivissent, cives eos armis incessivissent. Vix hostes milites nostros ad pugnam lacesivērunt, quum arma capessivērunt eosque incessivērunt. Legimus, Romanos saepe consules suos ab aratro arcessivisse. Multa sacra, ab exteris nationibus adscita atque arcessita, Romani religiosissime coluērunt.

Scarcely had the lion roared, when all the other (cetērae omnes) beasts took (perf.) flight. The soldiers, provoked by the enemies, wished (perf.) to fight, and asked (perf.) of the general, that he would lead them (se) forth from the camp against the enemies. We have sought peace, not war. Do not judge concerning a thing, before it shall have been sufficiently examined by thee. History relates, that death was sought by the daughters of Erectheus for the life of the citizens. We read, that the consuls were brought from the plough by the Romans. It is known that the Romans have brought many sacred rites from foreign nations. As soon as the enemies attacked (perf.) our soldiers, they seized their arms and fought. I have taken myself so hastily from the city, because troublesome men vexed (perf.) me daily. I fear, that thou hast provoked the friend by thy licentious jests. It is known, that the power (opes) of Italy was (perf.) formerly wasted by Hannibal.

### § 65. V. Perfect:—i; Supine:—tum.

a) The stem ends in *b* or *p*:

1. *Cāpio, cēpi, captum, cāpēre*, to take, seize, receive.

Compounds:—*cīpio, cēpi, —ceptum, —cīpēre*, as: *percipio, I perceive, incipio, I begin*.

2. *Rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, rumpēre*, to break.

*Scābo, scābi, scābēre*, to scratch, and *lambo, lambi, lambēre*, to lick, want the Supine.

b) The stem ends in *c, g* or *qu*:

3. *Ago, ēgi, actum, āgēre*, to lead, drive, do, act, make; of time: to spend.

So: *circumāgēre, to drive round, perāgēre, to carry through, satāgēre, to have enough to do*; the other compounds on the contrary, have:—*īgo, ēgi, actum, īgēre*, as: *abīgo, I drive away, exīgo,*

*I expel*, (of time) *I pass*, subġo, *I subjugate*; cōġere, *to compel* (from coāġere), has coēgi, coactum.

4. *Fācio*, *fēci*, *factum*, *fācere*, to make, do.

Concerning the Pass.: fio, factus sum, fieri, and its compounds see § 76. The compounds with prepositions have in the Imper. —*fīce*, as: perfīce; the rest retain *fac*; from *calfacere*, however, we have *calfāce*.

5. *Ico*, *īci*, *ictum*, *icere*, to strike; of a league: to conclude.  
6. *Jācio*, *jēci*, *jactum*, *jācere*, to throw.

Compounds:—jicio,—jēci,—jectum,—jicere, as: rejicio, *I throw back*, reject, subjicio, *I throw under*, subject.

7. *Lēgo*, *lēgi*, *lectum*, *lēgere*, to collect, read.

So, allēgo, *I elect to*, perlēgo, *I read through*, praelēgo, *I read before*, relēgo, *I read again*, sublēgo, *I gather from below*; the following, on the contrary, have in the Pres.—līgo, as: collīgo, *I collect*, (collēgi, collectum, colligere), delīgo and elīgo, *I choose*, recolligo, *I collect again*, selīgo, *I select*; but: dilīgo, *I love*, intelligo, *I understand*, negligo, *I neglect*, have in the Perf. exī, as: dilīgo, dilexi, dilectum, diligere.

8. *Frango*, *frēgi*, *fractum*, *frangere*, to break.

The compounds:—fringo,—frēgi,—fractum,—fringere, as: perfringo, perfrēgi, perfractum, perfringere, *to break through*.

9. *Linquo*, *līqui*, *lictum*, *linquere*, to leave.  
10. *Vinco*, *vīci*, *victum*, *vincere*, to conquer, overcome.  
*Fūgio*, *fūgi*, *fūgere*, to flee, has no Supine.

c) The stem ends in *m*:

11. *Emo*, *ēmī*, *emtum*, *ēmere*, to buy.

Compounds:—īmo, īmere, as: exīmo, exēmi, exemtum, exīmere, *to except*; but in coēmo, *I buy in quantities*, the ē remains.

d) The stem ends in *u* or *v*:

12. *Acūo*, *ācūi*, *acūtum*, *acūere*, to sharpen.

The compounds want the Supine.

13. *Argūo*, *argūi*, *argūtum*, *argūere*, to accuse.  
14. *Exūo*, *exūi*, *exūtum*, *exūere*, to put off.  
15. *Indūo*, etc. I put on, clothe.  
16. *Imbūo*, etc. I dip in; *c. abl.* I imbue with.  
17. *Lūo*, *lūi*, *lūtum*, *lūere*, to wash.  
18. *Minūo*, etc. I diminish.

19. *Nūo*, etc. I nod, in compounds, as: *adnūo*, I nod to.
20. *Rūo*, *rūi*, *rūtum*, *rūere*, to rush (but Part. Fut. *ruiturus*).
21. *Spūo*, *spūi*, *spūtum*, *spūere*, to spit.
22. *Statūo*, etc. I place firmly.

The compounds change the *a* of the stem into *i*, as: *destituō*, I desert.

23. *Sūo*, etc. I sew.
24. *Tribūo*, etc. I give.
25. *Solvo*, *solvi*, *solūtum*, *solvere*, to loose.
26. *Volvo*, *volvi*, *volūtum*, *volvère*, to roll.

*Metūere* (ui), to fear, *plūere* (plui), to rain, *sternūere* (ui), to sneeze, want the Supine.

### C. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

<i>Afficere</i> , to affect ; af-	<i>transigere</i> , to spend	<i>foedus</i> , <i>ēris</i> , <i>n.</i> league.
<i>fectus</i> , affected.	(time).	<i>potestas</i> , <i>ātis</i> , <i>f.</i> power.
<i>delinquere</i> , to do some-	<i>excerpere</i> , to make ex-	<i>furiōsus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>mad</i> ,
<i>thing wrong</i> , to be	<i>tracts from</i> .	<i>insane</i> .
<i>delinquent</i> .	<i>benefactum</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>n.</i> favor.	<i>modo</i> , <i>adv.</i> only, just.
<i>disjicere</i> , to throw a-	<i>dominatio</i> , <i>ōnis</i> , <i>f.</i> sway.	
<i>sunder</i> , scatter.		

*Eodem modo erga amicos affecti simus, quo erga nosmet ipsos. Priusquam incipias consulto et, ubi consulueris, mature facto opus est.\* Acti labores jucundi sunt. Sola virtus in sua potestate est; omnia praeter eam subjecta sunt fortunae dominationi. Unus dies, bene et ex praeceptis philosophiae actus, peccanti immortalitati anteponendus est. Conscientia bene actae vitae multorumque benefactorum recordatio jucundissima est. Appetitus rationi sunt subiecti lege naturae. Victus est Xerxes magis consilio Themistoclis, quam armis Graeciae. Quid hominem octoginta anni juvant, per inertiam exacti? Quos vicēris, amicos tibi esse cave (ne) credas. Profecto beati erimus, quum, corporibus relictis, cupiditatum erimus expertes. Quid est tam furiōsum, quam verborum vel optimorum atque ornatissimorum sonitus inānis, nullā subjectā sententiā? Pecuniam si cuipiam fortuna adēmit, tamen, dum existimatio est intēgra, facile consolātur honestas egestātem. Milites, captis armis, impetum fecerunt in hostes; hi autem propere fugam cepērunt. Hostes, foedere, quod modo icērant, rupto, subito in castra nostra irrupērunt. Si quid philosophus in ratione vitae deliquērit, eo turpior est, quod artem vitae*

\* There is need that you should consult, and act.

profitetur. Plinius nullum librum legit, quem non excerpere. Cives, ab hostibus subacti, omni libertatis recuperandae spe adempta, miseram transegerunt vitam. Milites hostium aciem perfregerunt et dissecerunt. Foedera icta ab hostibus fracta sunt.

CI. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Destituere, to desert.	gloriari, to glory.	pallium, i, n. cloak.
leave behind.	indulgentia, ae, f. indul-	discrimen, inis, n. dis-
instituire, to instruct.	gence.	tinction.
effugere c. acc. to escape.	tunica, ae, f. under gar-	prosperitas, atis, f. pros-
exacuere, to sharpen.	ment.	perity. [posite.
involvere, to involve,	annulus, i, m. ring.	contrarius, a, um, op-
envelope.	soccus, i, m. sock, shoe.	liberalis, e, liberal.
redarguere, to disprove.	obsequium, i, n. obe-	ingenue, adv. nobly, re-
respuere, to reject.	dience.	spectably.

Quis, honesta in familia institutus et educatus ingenue, non ipsa turpitudine, etiamsi eum laesura non sit, offenditur? Carthago diruta est, quum stetisset annos sexcentos sexaginta septem. Pacis nomine bellum involutum reformido. Philosophi involutam multarum rerum naturam evolverunt. Num tibi unquam placebit, quod omnium mentes aspernatae sunt et respuerunt? Milites in ipso discrimine periculi cives inerme destituerunt. Quum animus, cognitis perceptisque virtutibus, a corporis obsequio indulgentiaque discesserit, voluptatemque oppresserit, omnemque mortis dolorisque timorem effugerit, cultumque dei et puram religionem suscepit, et exacuerit ingenii aciem ad bona deligenda et rejicienda contraria: tum vita nobis erit beatissima. Num credis, improborum prosperitates redarguisse dei bonitatem? Dejanira Herculi sanguine Centauri tinctam tunicam induit. Hippas sophista gloriatus est, se non solum omnes artes, quibus liberales doctrinae atque ingenue continerentur, scire, sed annulum, quem haberet, pallium, quo vestitus, soccos, quibus indutus esset, se sua manu confecisse.

CII. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Deficere, to fail.	dissolvere, to relax.	extenuare, to extenuate,
praeferre, to set over.	persolvere, to pay.	lessen.
deminuere, to diminish.	erigere, to dig up.	severitas, atis, f. sever-
diluere, to dilute, weaken.	obruere, to cover up.	ity.
	designare, to designate.	

Homines metalla terra obruta eruerunt. Milites in expugnatae urbis cives ita saevierunt, ut omnem humanitatem exuisse viderentur. Divina lex non scripta est, sed nata: qua non instituti, sed imbuti su-



mus. Nemo est tam immānis, cujus mentem non imbuērit deorum opinio. Puēri animum tenērum virtutis praeceptis imbuimus. Cogitatio, omnes res humānas fragīles et cadūcas esse, omnes meas molestias extenuāvit et dilūit. Quae observāta sunt in usu ac tractatione dicendi, haec ab hominibus doctis verbis designāta et partibus distribūta sunt. Divitiae, quae ad extēris nationibus Romam confluxērunt, morum disciplinam severitatemque dissolvērunt. Stipendiis, quae dux militibus promisērat, non persolūtis, seditio concitata est.

The passions ought to be subjected to the reason. If thou shalt have spent thy life according to (ex) the precepts of virtue, the entrance to heaven will stand open to thee. It is hard to retain (tenēre) friendship, when thou shalt have fallen from virtue. God has set the soul over the body. Some doubt, *whether* the world may be made by *chance* (ne *whether*, attached to *casu*) or (an) by the divine reason. It was uncertain, whether the Romans had (subj.) conquered, or had been conquered. Then (tum) first (demum) will the soul enjoy a happy life, when it shall have deserted the body. The enemies have broken (rumpēre) the concluded league. When anything has been done wrong by a philosopher, it is so much the more base, because he teaches (= professes) the art of life. If any one (quis) has taken (fut. perf.) from us liberty, the light of life will be taken from us. Caesar, after the line-of-battle of the enemy was broken and scattered (abl. abs.), led his soldiers back into the camp. Thou wilt not enjoy a peaceful life, before that thou shalt have subjected the passions to the reason. The defenceless citizens were (perf.) deserted by the soldiers, in the very (ipse) crisis of danger. It is known, that the Romans destroyed (perf.) Carthage.

The soldiers fled because they feared (perf. of *metuo*), that they should be conquered by the enemies. The metals, which nature has hid in (abl.) the earth, are dug up by man. Who is not imbued with the belief in (gen.) God? Parents, who have imbued the minds of their children with the principles of virtue and have instructed them in literature, deserve well, not only of (de) their children, but also of the state. We have weakened the wine by (abl.) water. I hope that this reflection will weaken all thy troubles. Already the powers of our soldiers were diminished, when the enemies made (perf.) an attack. By the riches, which flowed together (perf.) to (acc.) Rome after the destruction (abl.) of Corinth, the ancient discipline and severity were relaxed (perf.).

Since the general had not paid [their] wages to the soldiers for (per) two months, a sedition was excited (perf.) in the camp. Hast thou heard, that the city has concluded a league with the enemies, but that

they have broken (*frangere*) it? After the troops were collected (*abl. abs.*), the general determined (*perf.*) to attack the camp of the enemies. I believe, that I have sufficiently disproved thy reasons.

§ 66. VI. *Perfect* :—*i* ; *Supine* :—*sum*.

a) The stem ends in *d* or *t* :

1. *Cando* in compounds, as: *accendo*, *accendi*, *accensum*, *accendere*, to kindle, inflame.
2. *Cudo*, *cudi*, *cusum*, *cudere*, to forge.
3. *Edo*, *edi*, *esum*, *edere*, to eat.
4. *Fendo* in compounds as: *defendo*, *defendi*, *defensum*, *defendere*, to defend.
5. *Fodio*, *fodi*, *fossus*, *fodere*, to dig.
6. *Fundo*, *fudi*, *fusus*, *fundere*, to pour.
7. *Mando*, *mandi*, *mansum*, *mandere*, to chew.
8. *Pando*, *pandi*, *passus*, *pandere*, to spread.
9. *Prehendo*, *prehendi*, *prehensum*, *prehendere*, to grasp.
10. *Scando*, *scandi*, *scansum*, *scandere*, to mount.

In the compounds:—*scendo*,—*scendi*,—*scensum*,—*scendere*, as: *adscendere*, to ascend, *scale*, *descendere*, to descend.

11. *Sido*, *sidi*, (*Sup. wanting*.) *sidere*, to sit.

In the compounds:—*sido*,—*sedi*,—*sessum*,—*sidere*, as: *considere*, to sit down.

12. *Strido*, *stridi*, (*Sup. wanting*.) *stridere*, to hiss.
13. *Verto*, *verti*, *versum*, *vertere*, to turn.

Finally, there belongs here the *neuter passive* :

14. *Fido*, *fissus*, *fidere*, to trust.

So: *confidere*, to confide in, *diffidere*, to distrust, *despair*.

b) The stem ends in *l* or *r* :

15. *Vello*, *velli*, *vulsus*, *vellere*, to pluck.
16. *Psallo*, *psalli*, (*Sup. wanting*.) *psallere*, to play the lyre.
17. *Verro*, *verri*, (*Sup. wanting*.) *verrere*, to sweep.

REMARK. It is to be noticed, that the stem-vowel of these verbs, when short in the other parts, is long in the *perf.* The two following verbs form an apparent exception :

*Findo*, *fidi*, *fissus*, *findere*, to split, (so also its compounds),

Scindo, *scīdi*, scissum, scindere, to cut (so also its compounds). But both these verbs originally took the reduplication. The same is true of the compound: percello, *percūli*, perculsum, percellere, to strike violently (from the obsolete cellere, to impel). See § 62, II. Rem.

CIII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Comprehendere, to embrace.	exedere, to consume, corrode.	liquefacere, to make liquid.
confodere, to stab.	incendere, to enkindle, inflame.	proficere, to benefit.
effodere, to dig out.		pervēhi, to bear through,
diffundere, to diffuse, disperse.	procudere, to forge; (of money) to coin.	convey.
effundere, to pour forth; 2) throw off (the rider).	lacerare, to lacerate, tear.	colonia, ae, f. colony.
offundere, to flow against, diffuse, spread over.	digerere, to dispose, digest.	velum, i, n. sail.
	inscribere (c. dat.) to inscribe, write upon.	furor, ōris, m. madness.
		vetustas, ātis, f. age.
		conspectus, ūs, m. sight.
		antiquitus, adv. anciently, formerly.

Constat, Tyrionum colonias paene toto orbe terrarum diffusas fuisse. In morte portum nobis paratum [esse] et perfugium putemus. Quo utinam velis passis pervēhi liceat! Hannibal patriam defensum ex Italia revocatus est. Nihil proficiunt praecepta, quamdiu menti error offusus est. Beate vivendi cupiditate incensi omnes sumus. Ingens nummorum numerus hoc anno procusus est. Aegritudo animum meum laceravit, exedit planēque confecit. Epigrammatis, monumento inscripti, litterae vetustate exēsae erant. Milites urbem, ab hostibus oppugnātam, acerrime defendērunt. Antiquitus magna auri argentique vis in Hispania est effossa. Milites, furore capti, ducem confoderunt. Equus repente corruit consulemque lapsum super caput effudit. Cibos mansos ac prope liquefactos demittimus, quo (= ut eo) facilius digerantur. Quo magis virtutis vim animo et cogitatione comprehenderimus, eo magis eam admirabimur. Proditores urbis deprehensi in conspectu omnium civium necati sunt. Nonne vides omnium ora atque oculos in te conversos? Multi facultatem dicendi ad hominum perniciem convertērunt.

CIV. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Convellere, to tear away, convulse.	rescindere, to tear, to break down.	motus, ūs, m. motion.
desidere, to sink down.	transgredi, to pass over.	motus terrae, earthquake.
diffindere, to split.	mora, ae, f. delay.	[ersoever.
discindere, to tear in pieces.	nodus, i, m. a knot.	quocunque, adv. whith-
	scrupulus, i, m. anxiety.	scilicet, adv. namely,
		doubtless.

Quocunque te vel oculis, vel animo convertēris, divinae bonitatis plena esse omnia, intelliges. Alexander, rex Macedōnum, Gordii nodum ense *diffidit*, scilicet *diffisus*, eum a se solūtum iri. Quum Hannibal Alpes transgrederetur, multa ingentis magnitudinis saxa *diffissa* sunt. Quis tibi vestem discīdit? Quid? discissāne est? Pompēii terrae motu desedērunt. Quis nescit, apud Romanos eloquentiam ad summum honorem adscendisse? Caesar, militum virtuti confisus, sine mora hostilem exercitum adortus est. Littērae tuae omnem scrupulum mihi ex animo evellērunt. Est boni regis officium, quum rempublicam labefactatam convulsamque videt, opitulari patriae.

The goodness of God is diffused through (abl.) the whole world. The sails are spread. Superstition has spread (offundere) darkness over (dat.) the souls of men. The king has coined a great quantity of money this year. My mind is torn and consumed by grief (aegritudo). When we shall have eaten, we will take a walk. The city, which was assaulted by the enemy, was (perf.) very bravely defended by the citizens. Anciently, the Spanish (Hispanus, i) dug up much gold and silver (= much of gold and silver). By thy bravery, thou hast turned all eyes and minds upon (in) thee. Never has a wise [man] trusted to the stability of the gifts of fortune, but rather, has always distrusted them. It is known, that the knot of Gordius was not loosed by Alexander, but severed by the sword. The general was stabbed by the soldiers, because he ventured to quiet their sedition.

How often has the faculty of speaking (gen. of ger.) been turned to (ad) the destruction of men! The enemies have broken down the bridges. Mountains and cities have been sunk down by earthquakes. We had already descended from the mountain, as we heard (perf.), that you were ascending (subj.) it. All anxiety has been removed (evellere) from my mind by thy letter. Who does not know, that the long war has shaken the state violently? Caesar by a few words inflamed the soldiers for the battle.

## § 67. VIII. *Perfect* with the Reduplication.

PRELIMINARY REMARK. The Reduplication consists here, in those verbs of which the first vowel of the stem is *i*, *o*, or *u*, in the repetition of the first consonant of the stem with this vowel, but with the remaining verbs, in the repetition of the first stem-consonant with *e*.

1. *Cādo*, *c e c i d i*, *cāsum*, *cādēre*, to fall, to happen.

Compounds:—*cīdo*,—*cīdi*,—*cāsum*,—*cīdere*; so: *occīdo*, *I*

*go to ruin, incido, I fall upon and recido, I fall back; the others want the Supine, as: concido, idi, idere, to fall together.*

2. *Caedo, cecidi, caesum, caedere, to fell, kill.*

Compounds:—cido,—cidi,—cisum,—cidere, as: occido, *I kill.*

3. *Cāno, cecini, cantum, canere, to sing.*

Compounds:—cino,—cīnui,—cinere, as: concino, *ui, ere.*

4. *Curro, cucurri, cursum, currere, to run.*

Most of its compounds are both with and without the reduplication.

5. *Disco, didici, (Sup. wanting,) discere, to learn.*

So also its compounds, as: perdisco, perdidici, perdiscere, *to learn thoroughly.*

6. *Fallo, fefelli, falsum, fallere, to deceive.*

Fallit me, *it escapes me.*—The Part. *falsus* is commonly used as an adjective, *false.* Compound: refello, refelli, (Sup. wanting), refellere, *to refute.*

7. *Pango, pepigi, pactum, pangere, to fasten, to bargain, agree to on condition.*

Compounds:—pingo,—pēgi,—pactum, pingere, as: compingo, *to fasten together.*

8. *Parco, peperci, parsum, parcere (c. dat.), to spare.*

9. *Pario, peperri, partum, parere, to bear (ova parere, to lay eggs), to acquire. Particip. Fut. pariturus (for parturus).*

10. *Pello, pepuli, pulsum, pellere, to drive, repel.*

Compounds:—pello,—pūli,—pulsum,—pellere, as: expello, expūli, expulsum, expellere, *to drive away.*

11. *Pendo, pependi, pensum, pendere, to suspend, weigh, to pay, compensate.*

The compounds have no reduplication, as: appendo, appendi, appensum, appendere, *to hang to, append.*

12. *Posco, poposci, (Sup. wanting,) poscere, to demand.*

So also its compounds, as: exposco, expoposci, exposcere, *to demand of, request of.*

13. *Pungo, pupugi, punctum,ungere, to prick, harass.*

Compounds:—pungo,—punxi,—punctum,—ungere, as: interpungo, *to distinguish.*

14. *Tango, tetigi, tactum, tangere, to touch.*

Compounds:—tingo,—tigi,—tactum, tingere, as: attingo, at-tigi, attactum, attingere, *to touch, reach.*

15. *Tendo, tetendi, tentum and tensum, tendere, to stretch, spread, extend (tendere insidias, to lay snares).*

The compounds are without the reduplication and generally with the Sup.:—tentum, as: contendo, contendi, contentum, contendere, *to draw together, exert one's self, strive.*

16. *Tundo, tundi, tunsum, tundere, to beat, stun.*

Compounds:—tundo,—tudi—tūsum—tundere, as: contundo, contūdi, contūsum, contundere, *to break in pieces, crush.*

REM. 1. The two following verbs have the reduplication in the Pres. and retain it in the other tenses:

bībo, bibi, bibitum, bibere, *to drink* (so also its compounds),  
sisto, stiti, stitum sistere, *to place, stop* (so its compounds).

REM. 2. The compounds of *dare* with monosyllabic words (comp § 55, II, 1.) also belong to this class, as: addo, addidi, additum, addere, *to add.*

CV. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Concinere, <i>to sing together, sound together.</i>	evertere, <i>to overthrow, demolish.</i>	proverbium, i, n. <i>proverb.</i>
excidere, <i>to cut off, destroy.</i>	inspicere, <i>to look upon, view.</i>	fides, is, f. <i>string</i> ; fidibus, canere, <i>to play with a stringed instrument.</i>
obtingere, <i>to fall to one's lot.</i>	recedere, <i>to go back, retire.</i>	frigus, ōris, n. <i>cold.</i>
confirmare, <i>to render permanent.</i>	restituere, <i>to restore.</i>	innoxius, a, um, <i>innocent.</i>
devolare, <i>to fly away.</i>	emollire, <i>to soften.</i>	noctu, adv. <i>by night.</i>
populari, <i>to lay waste.</i>	epulae, arum, f. <i>a meal, feast.</i>	praesto, adv. <i>present.</i>

Et discas oportet, et, quod didicisti, agendo confirmes. Male parta male dilabuntur. Ut hirundines aestivo tempore praesto sunt, frigore pulsae recedunt; ita falsi amici sereno vitae tempore praesto sunt; simulatque hiemem fortunae viderint, devolant omnes. Quid casurum sit, incertum est. Quod cuique obtigit, id quisque teneat. Clitum amicum senem et innoxium a se occisum esse, Alexander dolēbat. Ingenūas didicisse fideliter artes, emollit mores, nec sinit esse feros (eos). Non tam utilitas, parta per amicum, quam amici amor ipse delectat. Hannibālem non fefellit, ferocius, quam consultius rem hostes gesturos esse. Ex quo (sc. tempore) pecunia in honore fuit, verus rerum honor occidit. Silva vetus cecidit, ferro quam nemo cecidit.

Epaminondas fidibus praeclāre cecinisse dicitur. Cato scribit, priscos Romanos in epulis cecinisse ad tibiam clarorum virorum laudes atque virtutes. Datur cohortibus signum cornuaque ac tubae concinuērunt. In pugna, ad Trasimēnum anno CCXVII ante Christum<sup>o</sup> natum commissa, quindēcim milia Romanorum in acie caesa sunt; decem milia, sparsa fugā per omnem Etruriam, diversis itineribus urbem petiērunt.

Constat, Numantiam a Scipione excisam et eversam esse. Si id, quod dixi, falsum erat; cur me non refellisti? Hostes pacem nobiscum pepigērunt, ut milites a nobis captos restitueremus. Cleomēnes, Lacedaemonius, quum triginta dierum essent cum hoste pactae induitiae, noctu populabātur agros, quod dierum essent pactae, non noctium induitiae. Dux, quum urbem cepisset, aedificiis omnibus, publicis et privatis, sacris et profānis, sic pepercit, quasi ad ea defendenda, non expugnanda cum exercitu, urbem intrasset. Urbe expugnātā, milites, furore capti, juravērunt se non aetate confectis, non mulieribus, non infantibus parsūros esse. Ovorum inter se similitudo est in proverbio; tamen Deli\* fuērunt complures, qui, permultas gallinas alentes, quum ovum inspexērunt, quae id gallina peperisset, dicere solēbant. Mihi crede, te tua virtute maximam laudem tibi pariturum esse.

CVI. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Compungere, to prick.	conclāmāre, to cry out together.	doliarium, i, n. cellar.
condere, to found, preserve.	stimulare, to goad.	festivitas, ātis, f. agreeableness.
distinguere, to distinguish.	sustentare, to preserve, sustain.	loquacitas, ātis, f. loquacity.
percurrere, to run through.	erumpere, to break	potus, ūs, m. drink.
perdere, to destroy, ruin.	nota, ae, f. sign, mark.	spurius, a, um, spurious.
	adversarius, i, m. adversary.	

Catilina multas insidias Ciceronis vitae tetendit, sed hic omnes illius machinationes contūdīt. Admirāmur praeclaros illos viros, qui semper summis laboribus et periculis ad summam laudem gloriamque contendērunt. Garrūlus homo loquacitate sua aures meas plane tūdīt. Dic, a quo haec grana tunsa sint. Metellus in Numidiam proficiscitur magnā spe civium; avaritiā enim magistratuum ante id tempus in Numidia Romanorum opes contūsae hostiumque (opes) auctae erant. Verres, simulac tetigit provinciam, maximae avaritiae totum se tradidit. Totum librum legendo percucurri. Duae in Capitolio

\* at Delos. See Synt. § 92.

aedes multaque alia aedificia uno anno de coelo tacta sunt. Agesilāus, quotiescunque congressus est cum hostibus, multo majores adversariorum copias pepūlit. Tu temeritatis tuae maximas poenas pependisti.

Conclamābant omnes Carthaginienses, satis suppliciorum a se pro temeritate unius hominis, Hannibālis, pensum esse. Milites, urbem ingressi, non cibum, aut potum poposcērunt, non armorum onus deposuērunt. Tu ex animo scrupulum evellisti, qui me dies noctesque stimulāvisti ac pupūgit. Philosophia, si paupertas momordit, si ignominia pupūgit, si quid tenebrarum offūdit exsilium, singularum rerum proprias consolationes adhibet. Festivitatem habet narratio, distincta personis et interpuncta sermonibus. Aristarchus, grammaticus, eos Homēri versus, qui spurii ei videbantur, notis quibusdam compunxit. Omnes cives, belli calamitatibus confecti, pacem expoposcērunt. Romani in doliariis *condita* habebant vina, pipēre et melle *condita*. Graeciae civitates, dum imperāre singulae cupiunt, imperium omnes perdidērunt. Perditis rebus omnibus, ipsa virtus se sustentat.

The Gauls (Gallus, i,) have learned from the Greeks, to surround [their] cities with walls. If any one has acquired (fut. perf.) riches in a bad way (male), he will also lose them in a bad way. The thing has turned out otherwise than (atque) I had expected. Alexander, seized (capēre) by anger, killed (perf.) [his] friend Clitus, an old man. Thy friendship has always afforded me the greatest pleasure. The faithless friend has deceived me. After my sister had sung (perf.) alone (solus), we all sang together (perf.). It is known, that Scipio demolished (perf.) Numantia. The old oak, which stood before (ante) our house, was (perf.) felled yesterday. Since Cleomenes had agreed upon a truce of thirty days with the enemy, he laid waste the fields by night, because he had agreed upon a truce of days, not of nights. We have heard, that peace has been agreed upon (= bargained) with the enemy. The ship having struck against a rock, made (perf. of *facēre*) shipwreck.

The citizens of the city hoped, that Caesar, who had already spared other captured cities, would also spare theirs. It is not to be doubted, that our army, which *under the conduct of a bad general* (duce malo imperatore) has acquired for itself great praise by its bravery, under the conduct of a good general, will acquire for itself still (etiam) greater praise. A victory gained by treachery, redounds (= is) to (dat.) the conqueror not for praise but for disgrace. The rashness of Catiline was crushed by the prudence of Cicero. The dart will be discharged (emittēre) so much the more violently, the more (magis) the bow has been drawn together (contendēre) and drawn up (adducere). As



Caesar entered (*ingredi, subj.*) the captured city, the inhabitants extended (*perf.*) [their] hands to (*ad*) him, and entreated (*orare, perf.*) him, that he would spare them. Why dost thou weep boy? because I have been struck. Who has struck thee?

The firmness of the general and the bravery of the soldiers, have weakened the attack of the forth-breaking enemies. Scarcely had I reached the house, when it was (*perf.*) struck (= touched) *by lightning* (*de coelo*). Our soldiers repulsed the enemies at (*abl.*) the first attack. The whole book has been run through by me [*in*] reading (*abl. of gerund*). The traitor has paid just punishment for his offence. As soon as the horns sounded (*perf. of canēre*), all the soldiers ran (*perf.*) together. Virtue sustains itself, even if (*etiamsi*) it may have lost all.

### § 68. VIII. *Inchoative Verbs.*

All *inchoative* verbs (*in sco*), i. e. verbs which express a *becoming* or *beginning* of the idea contained in the primitive, follow the third Conj. and coincide in the Perf. and Sup. with their primitives, as :

*inveterasco* (from *invetĕrare*), *inveterāvi*, *inveterātum*, *inveterascĕre*, *to grow old* ;

*exardesco* (from *ardĕre*), *exarsi*, *exarsum*, *exardescĕre*, *to become inflamed, to be kindled* ;

*indolesco* (from *dolĕre*), *indolui*, *indolĭtum*, *indolescĕre*, *to feel pain* ;

*revivisco* (from *vivĕre*), *revixi*, *revictum*, *reviviscĕre*, *to come to life again, revive* ;

*concupisco* (from *cupĕre*), *concupĭvi*, *concupĭtum*, *concupiscĕre*, *to desire (earnestly)* ;

*obdormisco* (from *dormĭre*), *obdormivi*, *obdormĭtum*, *obdormiscĕre*, *to fall asleep*.

REMARK. The inchoative verbs from the absolute *olĕo*, *ŭi*, *olĕre*, *to grow*, (§ 58, III, 4.) vary in their formation in the following way :

*adulesco*, *adolĕvi*, *adultum*, *adolescĕre*, *to grow up*.

*exolesco*, *exolĕvi*, *exolĕtum*, *exolescĕre*, *to become old*.

*inolesco*, *inolĕvi*, (*Sup. wanting*), *inolescĕre*, *to grow into*.

Also, *obsolesco*, *obsolĕvi*, *obsolĕtum*, *obsolescĕre*, *to grow old, obsolete*, varies from its primitive, *solĕre*. Very many inchoative verbs want the Sup., as : *incalesco*, *incalui*, *incalescere*, *to become warm* (from *caleo*, *ŭi*, *ĭtum*, *ĕre*, *to be warm*). Some want both Perf. and Sup., as : *augesco*, *I increase* (from, *augeo*, *xi*, *ctum*, *ĕre*). Here especially, belong the inchoatives which are derived from substantives and adjectives, as :

repuerascere, *to become a boy again*; only a small number of these form the Perf. which is in *ui*, as: *maturesco, maturui, maturescere, to become mature.*

CVII. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Coalesco, lui, litum 3. <i>to grow together, coalesce.</i>	illucesco, luxi 3. <i>to come light, dawn.</i>	advertere, <i>to turn (hith-er).</i>
consanescio, nui 3. <i>to become well.</i>	recrudesco, dui 3. <i>to break out afresh.</i>	auditor, ōris, <i>m. hearer.</i>
consenesco, nui 3. <i>to grow old.</i>	rescisco, ivi or ii, itum 3. <i>to ascertain.</i>	viscus, ĕris, <i>n. bowels.</i>
convalesco, lui 3. <i>to become better, recover.</i>	condemnare, <i>to condemn; capitis, to death.</i>	adulterinus, a, um, <i>adulterated, counterfeit.</i>
defervesco, vi 3. <i>to burn out, subside.</i>	permānare, <i>to flow through, flow along.</i>	contra, <i>adv. on the contrary, other side.</i>
		quando, <i>adv. when.</i>

Crede, omnem diem tibi illuxisse suprēmum. Socrātis responso sic iudices exarsērunt, ut capītis hominem innocentissimum condemnarent. Ratio, quum adolēvit atque perfecta est, nominatur rite sapientia. Quaeritur, si sapiens adulterinos nummos accepērit imprudens pro bonis, quum id rescīrit, soluturusne sit eos pro bonis. Incredibile memorātu est, quam facile Romnai et Aborigēnes coaluērunt. Quum est concupīta pecunia, nec adhibīta continūo ratio, quae sanet eam cupiditatem: permānat in venas et inhaeret in visceribus illud malum. Endymīo, nescio quando, in Latmo, Carīae monte, obdormivit, necdum est experrectus. Oratori abstinendum est verbis, quae propter vetustatem obsolevērunt. Convaluistine tandem ex morbo, quo tamdiū laborasti? Illius oratoris ardor animi, qui prius omnium auditōrum animos ad se advertebat rapiebatque, jam plane defervit. Vulnus meum, quod jam consanuisse videbātur, nunc recrūdūt.

Scarcely had the day dawned, when I commenced (*perf.* of *aggrēdi*) my journey. A bloody war broke out (= was kindled) between (inter) the Romans and Carthaginians. Catiline addressed (*perf.*) his associates with these words: Our (= to us) age is vigorous (*vigēre*), the soul is strong (*valēre*); on the other side, all is grown old by years and riches. As soon as Caesar ascertained (*perf.*), that the enemies were approaching, he led out (*perf.*) the soldiers from the camp. In a short time, the minds of all had coalesced into (*abl.*) so great (*tantus*) friendship, that every distinction of rank (*ordo et locus*) was forgotten. I have perceived with great pleasure from thy letter, that thou hast recovered from thy long continued sickness. The sedition of the

soldiers, which had been quieted by the wisdom (*consilium*) of the general, broke out afresh (*perf.*) *during his absence* (*eo absente.*)

### § 69. Fourth Conjugation.

I. *Perfect* :—*vi* and —*ŭi* ; *Supine* :—*tum*.

1. *Sepelio, sepeliŭi, sepultum, sepelire*, to bury.
2. *Silio, salui, saltum, salire*, to leap.

The compounds have : — *silio*, — *silui*, — *sultum*, — *silire*, as : *assilio, assilui, assultum, assilire*, to leap upon.

II. *Perfect* :—*i* ; *Supine* :—*tum*.

1. *Comperio, compəri, compertum, compĕre*, to ascertain.
2. *Repĕrio, repĕri, repertum, repĕre*, to find, discover.

But : *aperio, rui, rtum, rire*, to open, uncover, *opĕrio, rui, rtum, rire*, to cover.

3. *Vĕnio, vĕni, ventum, vĕnire*, to come.

III. *Perfect* :—*si* ; *Supine* :—*tum*.

1. *Amicio, (amixi and amicui, both rare), amictum, amĭcĭre*, to clothe.
2. *Farcio, farsĭ, fartum, farcĭre*, to stuff.

The compounds have : — *fercio*, — *fersi*, — *fertum, fercĭre*, as : *refercio, to stuff full, fill up*.

3. *Fulcio, fulsi, fultum, fulcĭre*, to support.
4. *Haurio, hausĭ, haustum, haurire*, to draw.
5. *Sancio, sanxi, sancitum* (rare *sanctum* ; but *sanctus, a, um*, as adjective, *sacred*), *sancĭre*, to sanction.
6. *Sarcio, sarsĭ, sartum, sarcĭre*, to patch, repair, restore.
7. *Sĕpio, sĕpsi, septum, sĕpĭre*, to hedge around.
8. *Vincio, vinxi, vinctum, vincĭre*, to bind, confine.

IV. *Perfect* :—*si* ; *Supine* :—*sum*.

*Sentio, sensi, sensum, sentire*, to feel, think, suppose.

### CVIII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Consentire, to agree dissentire, to disagree, desilire, to leap down.  
with. dissent. transilire, to leap over.

exhaustire, <i>to exhaust.</i>	dumētum, <i>i, n. thicket.</i>	coetus, ūs, <i>m. assembly.</i>
indāgare, <i>to search out.</i>	ludibrium, <i>i, n. sport.</i>	affluenter, <i>adv. plentifully.</i>
dispellēre, <i>to drive asunder, disperse.</i>	parricidium, <i>i, n. parricide.</i>	immortaliter, <i>adv. immortally.</i>
catēna, <i>ae, f. chain.</i>	curatio, ōnis, <i>f. cure.</i>	rursus, <i>adv. again.</i>
munificentia, <i>ae, f. munificence.</i>	explorātor, ōris, <i>m. a spy.</i>	[ <i>nor.</i> undīque, <i>adv. from all sides.</i>
documentum, <i>i, n. proof.</i>	rector, ōris, <i>m. gover-</i>	

Regis sepulcro haec verba inscripta sunt: Probe *vixit*, imprōbos *vixit*, hostes *vicit*. Hostes *victi* et catēnis *vincti* in servitūtem abducti sunt. Imperium justis legibus fultum esse debet. Rex, pace compositā, rempublicam labefactatam sua virtute fulsit. Virtus difficilis inventu est: rectōrem ducemque desidērat. Artes innumerabiles repertae sunt, docente naturā. Vita, si undīque referta bonis est, beata dicitur. Homines urbes moenibus sepsērunt. Occultae inimicitiae magis timendae sunt, quam apertae. Quis est tam miser, ut non dei munificentiam sensērit? Dii, indūti specie humanā, fabūlas poētis suppeditavērunt, hominum autem vitam superstitione omni refersērunt. Continūis bellis reipublicae opes exhaustae sunt. Quo quis affluentius voluptates undīque hausērit, eo gravius ardentiusque sitiet. Spero, te mecum consensurum esse. Cicero Archimēdis sepulcrum, septum undīque et vestitum vepribus et dumētis, indagāvit. Fama est, ludibrio fratris Remum novos urbis muros transiluisse. Lyncurgus nihil lege ullā in alios sanxit, cujus non ipse primus in se documenta daret. Hippias gloriatus est, pallium, quo amictus esset, se manu sua confecisse. Speramus, pacem omnia belli damna brevi sarturam esse. Una victoria omnia prius accepta detrimenta sarsit. Caesar, ubi per exploratōres *compērit*, hostes adventare, protinus milites e castris eduxit. Nebūla, horā quartā sole dispulsa, *aperuit* diem. Plato Athēnis\* in Academia sepultus est. Eodem loco nostrā memoriā sepultus est Carōlus Odofrēdus Müllērus, professor Gottingensis, vir praestantissimus et de antiquitatis disciplina immortaliter meritus.

The state shaken by the war, has been supported by the virtue of the king. Trajan alone of (gen.) all the citizens is buried within (intra) the city [of] Rome. Men have invented innumerable arts, *nature teaching them* (abl. abs.). Cicero's writings upon (de) philosophy, are filled up with the most excellent principles of virtue. The just king has supported his government by just laws. O king, thou art to be pronounced (= extolled) happy, who hast always lived uprightly, hast bound the wicked, hast conquered the enemies. The cities are surrounded (= hedged around) with walls. Many philoso-

\* at Athens. See Synt. § 92.

phers say, that the soul of man has been drawn from (ab) the divine nature. The horsemen leaped down (perf.) from (ex) their horses and fought (perf.) on foot (= footmen). I know not, what thou hast thought (sentire) concerning my plan; but I hope, that thou wilt not dissent from it. What has been sanctioned by the laws, must be observed by men. Solon (Solo, ōnis) ordained (= sanctioned *perf.*) nothing concerning parricide, because it had not been committed before *his time* (= him). Peace, in a short [time], has repaired all the losses of the war. All the former (superior) losses are repaired by one victory. Whence hast thou ascertained, that my brother will come to-day? Just as physicians, *when they have discovered the cause of the sickness* (abl. abs.) believing that they have discovered the cure, so shall we, when the cause of sorrow is discovered, find the ability *of curing* (gen. of gerund) [it]. As the old man entered (subj.) the assembly, all uncovered (perf.) [their] heads; but as he left (subj.) it, all covered (perf.) [their] heads again. God has enclosed (= hedged in) and covered the eyes with (abl.) very delicate membranes.

### PARTICULAR IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 70. 1) *Pos-sum, pōt-ŭi, pos-se*, to be able (can).

PRELIMINARY REMARK. *Possum* is composed of *pot-is, e* (able), and the verb *sum*.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Perfect.</i>	
pos-sūm, I am able (can)	pos-sīm, I may be able	pōt-ūi, I have been able	pōt-uērim, I may have been able
pōt-ēs,	pos-sīs,	pōt-uisti	pōt-uēris
pōt-est,	pos-sit,	pōt-uīt	pōt-uērit
pos-sūmus,	pos-sīmus,	pōt-uīmus	pōt-uērīmus
pōt-estis,	pos-sitis,	pōt-uistis	pōt-uērītis
pos-sunt.	pos-sint.	pōt-uērunt(ēre)	pōt-uērīnt.
<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
pōt-ērām, I was able (could)	pos-sēm, I might be able	pōt-uēram, I had been able	pōt-uissēm, I m'ht have been a.
pōt-ērās, etc.	pos-sēs, etc.	pōt-uēras, etc.	pōt-uissēs, etc.
<i>Future.</i>		<i>Future Perfect.</i>	
pōt-ēro, I shall be able		pōt-uēro, I shall have been able	
pōt-ēris, etc.		pōt-uēris, etc.	
<i>Infinitive.</i>		<i>Participle.</i>	
Pres. pos-se, to be able		pōt-ens (only as adjective), able.	
Perf. pōt-uisse, to have been able		The remaining Part. are wanting.	
Fut. wanting.			
<i>Imperative</i> wanting.			

CIX. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Celare (aliquem aliquid), to conceal (something from some one).	constituere, to establish, constitute.	effector, ōris, m. creator. [situation.]
[ate. inducere, to lead to, induce.	desistere, to desist, cease.	situs, ūs, m. condition,
enumerare, to enumerate.	inducere, to lead to, induce.	adēo, adv. so, so very.
meditari (c. acc.), to think (of something).	mitescere (without Perf. or Sup.) to become mild, tame.	injuste, adv. unjustly.
pejorare, to swear falsely.		primum, adv. first.
		proinde quasi, just as if.

Pergite, pueri, atque in id studium, in quo estis, incumbite, ut et vobis honori, et amicis utilitati, et reipublicae emolumento esse possitis! Nemo adeo ferus est, ut non mitescere possit. Hoc quotidie meditare, ut possis aequo animo vitam relinquere. Quidam idcirco, deum esse, non putant, quia non apparet, nec cernitur: proinde quasi nostram ipsam mentem videre possimus. Universum mundum quum cernimus, possumusne dubitare, quin ei praesit aliquis effector et moderator? Nihil tam difficile est, quin (= ut non) quaerendo investigari possit. Sic cogitandum est, tanquam aliquis in pectus intimum inspicere possit; et potest. Satis nobis persuasum esse debet, etiamsi deum hominesque celare possimus, nihil tamen injuste esse faciendum. Potestisne dubitare, quin deus universum mundum gubernet? Non possumus. Cur nobiscum ambulare non potes?

Alciabiades Athenas Lacedaemoniis servire non poterat pati. Marcellus pedites primum, deinde equites, quanto maximo possent, impetu in hostem erumpere jussit. Agesilaus non destitit, quibuscunque rebus posset, patriam juvare. Caesar, quam potuit maximis itineribus, exercitum contra hostes duxit. Casus est, quum sic aliquid evenit, ut vel non evenire, vel aliter evenire potuerit. Omnes mundi partes ita constitutae sunt, ut neque ad usum meliores potuerint esse, neque ad speciem pulchriores. Ante occupatur animus ab iracundia, quam providere satis potuit, ne occuparetur. Vix Caesar milites e castris educere potuerat, quum hostes impetum fecerunt. Quid enumerem artium multitudinem, sine quibus vita omnis nulla esse potuisset? Quem, ut mentiatur, inducere possumus; [eum,] ut pejeret, exorare facile poterimus. Dolorem, si non potero frangere, occultabo. Facile intelligitur, nec figuram situmque membrorum nostrorum, nec ingenii mentisque vim effici potuisse fortunam. Hoc primum sentio, nisi in bonis, amicitiam esse non posse.

If you earnestly apply (fut.) yourselves to the study of literature, you will be able to be useful, as well to yourselves as to [your] friends and

the state. Socrates thought daily of this, that he might be able to die with equanimity. Canst thou tell me, why thy brother is not able to come to me to-day? No. When you contemplate the whole world, you are not able to doubt, that it is ruled by a divine mind (*mens*). The wise can be happy, even when they are tortured. If we cultivate (*colere*) virtue, we can always be happy.

Why cannot thy brothers come to me to-day? I do not know, why they cannot. But why could they not come yesterday? They could not come yesterday on account (*per*) of much business (*plur.*). What could have been (= has been able to be) given to the human race, fairer and more noble than reason? The enemies had not as yet been able to draw their troops together, as Caesar made (*perf.*) an attack upon (*in*) them. Who believes, that the world can have been (= may have been able to be) made by chance?

### § 71. 2) *Edo, ēdi, ēssum, ēdēre and esse*, to eat.

The whole irregularity of this verb, arises from its having forms like those beginning with *es* of the verb *sum*, which are used at the same time with the regular form; but the form *es* from *edo* is long, from *sum* short.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	ēdo, ēdis and <i>ēs</i> , ēdit and <i>est</i> , ēdīmus, ēdītis and <i>estis</i> , ēdunt.
<i>Imperf. Subj.</i>	ēdērem and <i>essem</i> , ēdēres and <i>esses</i> , ēdēret and <i>esset</i> , ēderēmus and <i>essēmus</i> , ēderētis and <i>essētis</i> , ēdērent and <i>essent</i> .
<i>Imperative.</i>	Sing. 2. ēde and <i>ēs</i> Plur. 2. ēdīte and <i>este</i> . 3. edunto. 2. and 3. ēdīto and <i>esto</i> . ēdītōte and <i>estōte</i> .

REMARK. So also its compounds, as: *comēdo, I eat, consume, comēdis and comēs*, etc. The forms not given in the above table are regular.

### CX. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

Symbōla, *ae, f. a con- argentum vivum, n. familiāris, e, belonging*  
*tribution of money quicksilver. to the family; res fa-*  
*or food; de symbō- spatium, i, n. space. miliaris, estate.*  
*lis edēre, to eat at curculio, ōnis, m. corn- perrumpēre, to break*  
*common expense. worm. through.*  
*adolescentūlus, i, m. moles, is, f. mass. vae, interj. alas!*  
*young man, youth.*

Esse oportet, ut vivamus; non vivēre, ut edamus. Modice bibīte et este. Heri aliquot adolescentūli convenērunt, ut de symbōlis essent. Haec herba acerba esu est. Aegritūdo lacērat, exest animum planēque

conficit. Curculiones frumentum exesse incipiunt. Argentum vivum exest ac perrumpit vasa. Majores nostri cavere non potuerunt, ne vetustas monumenta exesset. Quae unquam moles tam firma fuit, quam non exessent undae? Vae vobis, qui omnem rem familiarem luxuriâ comestis! Saturnus ex se natos comesse fingitur solitus, quia consumit aetas temporum spatia.

Eat thou and drink moderately. Ye should eat moderately. Age consumes all monuments. Where dost thou eat to-day? I came, that (ut) I might eat with thee. I know not, where you ate yesterday. My brother had called us in order to eat (sup.). An unripe grape is bitter to eat (sup. in *u*). I feared that the sorrow (aegritudo) would consume thy mind. Alas to thee, who consumest thy whole estate!

§ 72. 3) *Fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre*, to bear, bring.

<i>Present Active.</i>		<i>Present Passive.</i>	
<i>Ind.</i> fĕro, <i>fers</i> , <i>fert</i> , fĕrĭnus, <i>fertis</i> , fĕrunt.		<i>Ind.</i> fĕror, <i>ferris</i> , <i>fertur</i> , fĕrimur, fĕrimĭni, feruntur.	
<i>Infinitive. ferre</i> , to bear.		<i>Infinitive. ferri</i> , to be borne.	
<i>Im- per.</i>   S. 2. <i>fer</i> , <i>ferto</i> Pl. 2. <i>ferte</i> , <i>fertote</i> 3. <i>ferto</i> . 3. <i>ferunto</i> .		S. 2. <i>ferre</i> , <i>fertor</i> Pl. 2. fĕrimĭni, -nor 3. <i>fertor</i> . 3. <i>feruntor</i> .	
<i>Imperf. Subj. Active.</i>		<i>Imperf. Subj. Passive.</i>	
<i>ferrem</i> , <i>ferres</i> , <i>ferret</i> , <i>ferremus</i> , <i>ferrĕtis</i> , <i>ferrent</i> .		<i>ferrer</i> , <i>ferrĕris</i> (e), <i>ferrĕtur</i> , <i>ferremur</i> , <i>ferremĭni</i> , <i>ferrentur</i> .	

REM. 1. The remaining forms are derived regularly from *fĕro*, *tŭli*, *lātum*: *Subj. Pres.* fĕram, as, fĕrar, ārĭs (e); *Ind. Imperf.* fĕrĕbam, fĕrĕbar; *Fut.* fĕram, es, fĕrar, ĕris (e); *Subj. Perf.* tŭlĕrim; *Plupf.* tŭlĕram, tŭlĭssem; *Inf. Perf.* tŭlĭsse; *Inf. Fut.* lātŭrus, a, um esse; *Part. Act.* fĕrens, ntis, lātŭrus, a, um; *Pass.* lātus, a, um, fĕrendus, a, um; *Ger.* ferendum.

REM. 2. In the same manner the compounds, as: *offĕro*, *obtŭli*, *oblātum*, *offerre*, *to offer*. From the stem of the *Perf. tŭli* is derived: *tollo*, *sus-tŭli*, *sub-lātum*, *tollĕre*, *to raise*, *take away*, *carry off*.

The *Perf.* and *Sup.* are from *suffĕro* (i. e. *sursum fero*, *I carry aloft*), from which, *suffĕro* (i. e. *sub. and fero*), *sustŭli*, *sufferre*, *to bear*, *endure*, is to be carefully distinguished.

CXI. *Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.*

*Affĕro*, *attŭli*, *allātum* 3. *to bear away*, *take away* tum 3. *to bring together*, *compare*.  
*aufĕro*, *abstŭli*, *ablātum* *confĕro*, *contŭli*, *collā-* *desĕro*, *detŭli*, *delātum*



3. to bring down, praefēro, tūli, lātum 3. offer.	to prefer.	gigas, <i>antis, m. giant.</i>
effēro, extūli, elātum	refēro, tūli, lātum 3.	aeternitas, <i>ātis, f. eternity.</i>
3. to bear forth, bury.	to bring back, refer.	funditus, <i>adv. from the foundation, wholly.</i>
infēro, intūli, illātum,	decēdere, to go forth, to bring against; bel-	quī (for quo), <i>how, by die.</i>
lum infēro alicui, I	doctor, ōris, <i>m. teacher.</i>	quī, <i>whom, by what, etc.</i>
make war upon one.		

Ferte misēro atque inōpi auxilium. Confer nostram longissimam aetatem cum aeternitate, et brevissima videbūtur. Quid quaeque nox, aut dies ferat, incertum est. Incumbe in eam curam et cogitationem, quae tibi summam dignitatem et gloriam affērat. Ferre labōrem consuetūdo docet. Pecuniam praeferre amicitiae sordidum est. Ut quisque maxime ad suum commōdum refert, quaecunque agit; ita minime est vir bonus. Bonum civem reipublicae dignitatem suis omnibus commōdis praeferre oportet. Hoc doctōris intelligentis est, vidēre, quo ferat natura sua quemque. Is denique honos mihi vidētur, qui non propter spem futuri beneficii, sed propter magna merita claris viris defertur et datur.

Aristides in tanta paupertate decessit, ut, quī efferrētur, vix reliquērit. Poētae ferunt, gigantes bellum diis intulisse. Socrātes eundem vultum domum referēbat, quem domo extulērat. Quod auri, quod argenti, quod ornamentorum in urbibus Siciliae fuit, id Verres abstūlit. Multi etiam naturae vitium meditatione atque exercitatione sustulērunt. Pietate adversus deum sublātā, fides etiam et societas humani genēris tollitur. Qui, deum esse, negant, nonne omnem religionem funditus sustulērunt? Caritate benevolentiaque sublātā, omnis est e vita sublata jucunditas.

Bring thou aid to the wretched and the destitute! If we compare our longest age with eternity, it will be necessary that we acknowledge (subj.) that it is very short. What can bring to us a fairer joy, than virtue. The noble (probus) youth bore (fero) and did all, he sweated and shivered (*perf.* in each case). Julius Caesar took away (*perf.*) from king Ptolemy, almost six thousand talents (*gen.*). What bringest thou, my boy? I bring a present which my father presents to thee. Dost thou not know, that Epicurus has referred all [things] to (ad) pleasure? Pleasure is preferred by many to virtue. All (*plur.*) that we do, must be referred to virtue. The giants are said (*feror*) to have made war upon the gods. Cicero relates, that immense treasures were taken by Verres from the cities of Italy. A fault of nature has often been removed (= taken away) by exercise. The enemies were

so cowardly, that they did not even bear an attack of our soldiers. I did not doubt, that you would (imperf.) bear the injustice offered (afféro) you with equanimity. Through cruelty we are borne [on] to the foulest crimes. We feared, that war would be preferred by you to peace. Thou wilt be borne [away] by avarice to base gain. Solitude takes away the enjoyment of all pleasures. Thou shouldst not be borne [away] by avarice to base gain. When the news was brought (subj.) that the enemy approached, Caesar led out (perf.) his soldiers from the camp. The wretched [man] asked us, that we would bring aid to him (sibi).

§ 73. 4) *Volo, völäi, velle*, to will, wish.

*nölo* (from *ne volo*), *nöläi nolle*, to be unwilling;

*mälo* (from *magis volo*), *mäläi, malle*, to choose (would) rather.

Indicative.				Subjunctive.		
Present.	vōlo	nōlo	mālo	vēlim	nōlim	mālim
	vis	non vis	mavis	velis	nolis	malis
	vult	non vult	mavult	velit	nolit	malit
	volūmus	nolūmus	malūmus	velimus	nolimus	malimus
	vultis	non vultis	mavultis	velitis	nolitis	malitis
	volunt	nolunt	malunt.	velint	nolint	malint.
Impf.	vōlēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam	vellem	nollem	mallem
	volēbas, etc.	nolēbas, etc.	malēbas, etc.	velles, etc.	nolles, etc.	malles, etc.
Fut.	vōlam, es, etc.		nōlam, es, etc.		mālam, es, etc.	
Imperative (of volo and malo wanting).						
S. 2. nōlī, nolito; 3. nolito; Pl. 2. nolite, nolitōte; 3. nolunto.						
Participle.						
vōlens, ntis;		nolens, ntis;		of malo it is wanting.		

REMARK. The forms derived from the Perf. are regular: *volui, nolui, malui*; *voluerim, noluerim, maluerim*; *Inf. voluisse, noluisse, maluisse*; *Plupf. volueram, nolueram, malueram*; *voluissem, noluissem, maluissem*; *Fut. Perf. voluero, noluero, maluero*. The remaining forms are wanting.

left off here July 31st 1896  
CXII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

*Defatigare, to weary, nobilitare, to make*      *publicare, to make pub-*  
*make weary; pass. to*      *known, renowned.*      *lic.*  
*become weary.*

sectāri (c. acc.), to fol-	make binding.	serius, a, um, serious.
low after, pursue.	necessitas, ātis, f. ne-	ejusmodi, of this sort,
adstringere, to bind, to	cessity.	of this nature.

Qui virtutem suam publicari vult, non virtuti laborat, sed gloriae. Nonne poëtae post mortem nobilitari volunt? Ego non eādem volo senex, quae volūi, adolescens. Si vis amāri, ama. Bono mentis fruentum est, si beati esse volūmus. Docilis est, qui attente vult audire. Omnia benefacta in luce se collocāri volunt. Si acres ac diligentes esse vultis, magna saepe intelligētis ex parvis. Quem docilem velis facere, simul attentum facias oportet. Sic cum inferiore vivāmus, quemadmodum nobiscum superiorem velimus vivere. Praeclare Socrātes hanc viam ad gloriam proximam dicebat esse, si quis id ageret, ut, qualis habēri vellet, talis esset. Si quis veram gloriam adipisci volet, virtutis officiis fungi debēbit.

Nolūmus in conservandis bonis viris defatigāri. Homines nolunt, eundem pluribus rebus excellere. Si quid per jocum dixi, nolito in serium convertere. Libero sum iudicio, nulla ejusmodi adstrictus necessitate, ut mihi, velim nolim, sit certa tuenda sententia. Socrātes noluit ex carcere educi, quum facile posset. Ego me Phidiam esse malle, quam vel optimum fabrum lignarium. Utrum corporis, an ingenii vires tibi augeri mavis? Multi sibi malunt melius esse, quam alteri. Virtute in aliā alius mavult excellere. Quibus id persuasum est, ut nihil malint se esse, quam bonos viros; iis reliqua facilis est doctrina. Amicitiae est ea vis, ut, simulatque sibi aliquid, quam alteri, maluerit, ~~nulla sit~~. Vae vobis, qui divitias, quam virtutem sectari mavultis! Malūmus cum virtute paucis contenti esse, quam sine virtute multa habere. Aristides, Atheniensis, bonus esse malebat, quam videri.

If we wish to bear (fero) our virtue before (prae) ourselves, we do not labor for virtue but for glory. Men [when] old, do not wish the very same which they wished (perf.) [when] young. If you wish to be loved by others, you must also love others. If thou wishest to be happy, thou must cultivate virtue. Why does not thy brother wish to take a walk with us? Thou askest why he does not wish; he does wish indeed, but he cannot on account of (per) business. If you wish to undertake a great undertaking (negotium), you must make (adhibere) diligent preparation. Wilt thou come to us to-day, or (an) wilt thou not? we wish (Sub. pres.) to know. May you (= you will *subj. pres.* of *volo*) also [when] absent, love us as you are accustomed to love. If it is not allowed to live as we wish, we live as we can. We know not, why you did not wish to come to us yesterday.

Be thou unwilling to become weary in the preservation (gerund) of good men. We are unwilling, that the very same [man] should excel in several things. They, who are bound by a certain (certus) sentiment, must defend it, [whether] they will [or] not. Wouldst thou live in the country, rather than in the city? Many would (= choose to) acquire riches, rather than virtue. Timoleon chose (perf.) to be esteemed, rather than to be feared (metuo). The wise choose to stand upon (abl.) their own judgment, rather than [upon that] of another. Who would not rather be virtuous (= partaking of virtue, *compos*), than rich? Would you rather live in the city, than in the country? we would rather live in the country.

§ 74. 5) *Eo, īvi, ĭtum, ĭre, to go.*

Ten- ses.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	
Pres.	<i>ĕo, ĭs, ĭt, ĭ-mus, ĭtis, ĕunt</i>	<i>ĕam, ĕas, ĕat, ĕāmus, ĕātis, ĕant</i>	
Impf.	<i>ī-bam, ī-bas, ī-bat, etc.</i>	<i>ī-rem, ī-res, ī-ret, etc.</i>	
Futur.	<i>ī-bo, ī-bis, ī-bit, etc. ī-bunt</i>	<i>ī-tūrus, a, um sim, etc.</i>	
Perf.	<i>ī-vi, ī-visti, ī-vit, etc.</i>	<i>ī-vĕrim, ī-vĕris, ī-vĕrit, etc.</i>	
Plpf.	<i>ī-vĕram, ī-vĕras, ī-vĕrat, etc.</i>	<i>ī-vissem, ī-visses, ī-visset, etc.</i>	
F. Perf.	<i>ī-vĕro, ī-vĕris, ī-vĕrit, etc.</i>		
Imperative.		Participle.	Gerund.
S. 2. <i>ī, ī-to, 3. ī-to</i>	<i>ī-tum,</i>	Pres. <i>ī-ens,</i>	<i>eundum</i>
P. 2. <i>ī-te, ī-tōte,</i>	<i>ī-tu.</i>	Gen. <i>euntis.</i>	<i>eundi</i>
3. <i>eunto.</i>		Fut. <i>ī-turus, a, um.</i>	<i>eundo etc.</i>

REM. 1. In the same manner the compounds are declined, as : *exĕo, I go out, go forth, abĕo, I go away, redĕo, I return.* So also : *ven-ĕo, ven-īi*, (see Rem. 2.), *ven-ĭtum, ven-ĭre, to be sold* (Imper. Part. and Ger. wanting). *Ambire, to go around something, surround*, forms an exception, it being entirely regular according to the fourth Conj., as : Pres. *ambio*, *ambĭam*, Impf. *ambĭebam*, *ambĭrem*, Part. *ambiens*, G. *ambientis*, Perf. *ambivi*, Sup. *ambĭtum*, Part. *ambĭtus* (but the substantive is : *ambĭtus, ūs, a going around*), Ger. *ambiendum*.

REM. 2. The compounds generally drop the *v* in the ending of the Perf. and the parts derived from it and *vi* if an *s* follows it, as : *abii, abisti, abiit, abierim, abisse, abissem, etc., venii, venieram, veniero.*

REM. 3. In the *simple verb* of this class, only the third Pers. Sing. is used of the *passive* forms, as : *itur, one goes, ibātur, one went, ĭtum est, one has gone* ; the Infin. Fut. Pass. of all verbs is formed by the Infin. *īri* joined to their Supines, as : *amatum iri*. But the *compounds* with a *transitive meaning*, form a complete Pass. like other transitive verbs, as : *praeterire, to pass by before, pass over, praetereor, I am passed by, prae-*

teriris,—itur,—imur,—imīni,—euntur; praeteribar, etc.; *ambior* (*ambiuntur*, *ambiēbar*) also in the Pass. is regular according to the fourth Conjugation.

### CXIII. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Adire, to come to.	emōri, 3. to die.	aliquando, adv. some- time.
circumire, to go around, surround.	casa, ae, f. a hut.	
interire, to decay.	angustiae, arum, f. nar- row pass.	foede, adv. basely, in a base way.
obire, to die.	silentium, i, n. silence.	intempestive, adv. un- timely.
perire, to go to ruin, perish.	excessus, ūs, m. depar- ture.	obviam, adv. against, to meet.
transire, to pass over, through, away.	praealtus, a, um, very high, very deep.	sero, adv. late, too late.

Qui ad nos intempestive adēunt, molesti saepe sunt. Plerāque, ante oculos posita, transimus. Abēunt hirundines hibernis mensibus. Corpus mortale aliquo tempore interire necesse est. Perēunt aliquando innocentes; quis neget? nocentes tamen saepius perēunt. Omnes homines summa ope niti decet, ne vitam silentio transēant. Quis dubitet, quin ex casa vir magnus exire possit? Potius sero, quam nunquam, obviam eundum est audaciae temeritatique. Omnes cives militibus, qui e bello domum redibant, laeti obviam ibant. Si ita naturā paratum esset, ut ea dormientes agerent, quae somniarent, alligandi omnes essent, qui cubitum irent. Illud erat insitum priscis, esse in morte sensum, neque excessu vitae sic delēri hominem, ut funditus interiret. Augustias Themistōcles quaerebat, ne multitudine hostium circumirētur. Romulus ad deos transisse creditus est. Angustus obiit septuagesimo et sexto aetatis anno. Mihi nunquam persuaderi potuit, animos, dum in corporibus essent mortalibus, vivere; quum exissent ex iis, emōri. Quicquid transiit temporis, perit. Quum rure rediēro, statim te adibo. Pompēius multique alli clari viri foede periērunt. I, quo te fata vocant. Abiit ad deos Hercūles: nunquam abisset, nisi, quum inter homines esset, eam sibi viam munivisset. Muros turresque urbis praealtum mare ambiēbat.

Be on thy guard, that thou dost not go to one untimely. Very much which is set before our eyes, is passed over by us. Our body will decay at some time; but that our soul will decay, we cannot believe. Go spiritedly against self-confidence and rashness. Who does not know, how often great men come (= go) forth from huts! As the soldiers were returning (subj.) home from the war, all the citizens went (perf.) to meet them. In the spring the swallows return to us,

in the autumn they go away. As Caesar was coming out (subj.) of the woods, he was (perf.) surrounded by the enemies. When the soul shall have left the body, it will be happy. We shall go out to meet our parents, who are returning from the country to the city. Hast thou not heard, that Pompey has perished in a base way? The orators pass over all (plur.) that appears base to speak (sup. in *u*). The men, *who pass* (part. of *transire*) their lives in silence, die (obire) without fame.

§ 75. 6) *Quēo, quīvi, quītum, quīre*, to be able (can); and *nequēo, nequīvi, nequītum, nequīre*, not to be able (cannot).

Both these verbs are inflected throughout like *ēo, īvi, ītum, īre, to go*. Many of their forms, however, occur but rarely and, indeed, in good prose, not at all. These forms are omitted in the following table.

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Pres.	quēo	nequēo nequīs nequīt nequīmus nequītis nequēunt	quēam quēas quēat queāmus queātis quēant	nequēam nequēas nequēat nequeāmus nequeātis nequēant
Impf.		nequībam		nequīrem
Perf.	quīvi	nequīvi	quīvērim	nequīvērim
Plpf.	quīvēram	nequīvēram	quivissem	nequissem
F. Perf.	quīvēro	nequīvēro	wanting.	
<i>Infinitive.</i>			<i>Participle.</i>	
Perf.	quivisse	nequivisse		nequēns nequeuntis, etc.
Supine: quītum, quītu ( <i>of nequeo</i> , it is wanting). The remaining forms are wanting, or occur but rarely.				

§ 76. 7) *Fīo, factus sum, fīēri*, to become, to happen.

PRELIMINARY REMARK. This verb forms the Pass. of *facio*. (See § 65, 4.)

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
Pr.	fī-o, fī-s, fī-t, fī-unt	fī-am, fī-as, fī-at, fī-amus, fī-ātis, fī-ant	Pres. fīēri ; Pf. factus, a, um esse ; Fut. factum iri, <i>or</i> futūrum esse, <i>or</i> fore.
Imp.	fī-ēbam, fī-ēbas, etc.	fī-ērem, fī-ēres, etc.	
Fut.	fī-am, fī-es, fī-et, fī-ēmus, fī-ētis, fī-ent	<i>Participle.</i> Pres. wanting.	
Prf.	factus, a, um sum	Perf. factus, a, um	
Plpf.	factus, a, um eram	Fut. faciendus (a, um), <i>what should or must be done.</i>	
Fut.	factus, a, um ero	futūrus (a, um), <i>what will come to pass.</i>	
Prf.		All the remaining forms are wanting or occur but rarely.	

REMARK. The compounds of *facio*, which are formed from *verbs*, retain *facio* in the Act. and *fio* in the Pass., as: calefācio, calefēci, calefactum, calefācere, *to make warm* (calēre), calefio, calefactus sum, calfiēri, *to become warm*; but the compounds with *prepositions* have in the Act.—fīcio,—fēci,—fectum,—ficēre, and in the Pass.—fīcior,—fectus sum,—fici, as: perfīcio, perfēci, perfectum, perficēre, *to accomplish*, perfīcior, perfectus sum, perfīci. Only a few compounds with *prepositions* form the Pass. with *fio* and these only in particular forms, as: confit (for *conficitur*), *it is accomplished*, confīeri; defit, *it is wanting*, defiet.

#### CXIV. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Exulcērare, <i>to irritate,</i> <i>make worse.</i>	elōqui, <i>to pronounce.</i>	crebro, <i>adv. frequently.</i>
genērāre, <i>to make.</i>	adversus, a, um, <i>oppo-</i> <i>site.</i>	fataliter, <i>adv. conforma-</i> <i>bly to fate.</i> [times.
retinēre, <i>to hold back,</i> <i>prevent.</i>	cogitāto, <i>adv. with pre-</i> <i>meditation.</i>	interdum, <i>adv. some-</i> <i>polite, adv. elegantly.</i>

Intuēri solem adversum nequimus. Decōri vis ea est, ut ab honesto non queat separari. Risus interdum ita repente erumpit, ut eum cupientes tenēre nequeāmus. Dic, utrū queas, an nequēas mecum ire. Quum hostes exercitum nostrum fundēre nequērent, in castra munita sese recepērunt. Quum dux precibus retinēre militem nequēret, vim adhibendam censuit. Saepe imperitū medīci ea, quae sanare nequēunt, exulcērānt. Quum Demosthēnes “rho” dicere nequēret, exercitatione fecit, ut planissime dicēret.

Ex inimico cogita posse fieri amicum. Nemo fit casu bonus. Si

fato omnia fiunt; nihil nos admonere potest, ut cautiores fiamus. Nemo ignaviâ immortalis factus est. Permultum interest, utrum perturbatione aliqua animi, quae plerumque brevis est, an consulto et cogitato fiat injuria. Homo, quod crebro videt, non miratur, etiamsi, cur fiat, nesciat. Non ita generati a natura sumus, ut ad ludum et jocum facti esse videamur, sed ad severitatem potius et ad quaedam studia graviora atque majora. Prudentior fis, accedente senectute. Nego esse fortunam, et omnia, quae fiunt, quaeque futura sunt, ex omni aeternitate definita dico esse fataliter. Qua de caussa dicebas, omnia, quae fierent futurâve essent, fato contineri? Fieri potest, ut recte quis sentiat, et id, quod sentit, polite eloquei nequeat.

Men cannot look upon the opposite sun. The virtues are so (ita) connected and joined *together* (inter se), that they cannot be separated from each other. Often we cannot prevent a laugh, although (quavis with *Subj.*) we would. Say, whether you can go with us, or cannot. There are many diseases which cannot (*subj.*) be cured. Demosthenes could not (*perf.*) at first pronounce "rho," but by exercise he effected (= made), that he pronounced [it] very plainly.

If thou wishest to be learned, learn early. From an enemy, [one] often becomes suddenly a friend. Men do not become good by chance. If all [things] happen (*subj.*) by chance, all (omnis) foresight is useless. Dost thou believe, that a man may ever become immortal by cowardice? Men become wiser by age. Some philosophers were uncertain, *whether all* (omniâne) might happen by chance; I am convinced, that nothing happens by chance.

§ 77. *Defective Verbs, i. e. verbs of which only a few forms are used.*

1) *Aio*, I say, affirm, say yes, assent.

*Pres. Ind.* âio, âis, âit and âiunt. *Subj.* âias, âiat and âiant.

*Impf. Ind.* âiëbam, bas, bat; bamus, batis, bant. (*Subj.* wholly wanting.)

*Part.* âiens, âientis (as adjective, *affirming, affirmative*).

2) *Inquam*, I say.

*Pres.* inquam, inquis, inquit; inquitmus, inquitunt. [*Subj.* inquam].

*Impf.* inquitëbat or inquitabat, inquitëbant (*Subj.* wanting).

*Fut.* inquires and inquit. *Perf.* inquisti and inquit.

- 3) { *Memîni, meminisse* (c. gen. and acc.), to remember.  
} *Odi, ôdisse*, to hate.  
} *Coepi, coepisse*, to have begun.  
} *Nôvi, nôvisse* (*nosse*), to be acquainted with, know.



All four Perfects and the forms derived from them are entirely regular.

Perf. Ind.	memīni, <i>I remember</i>	ōdi, <i>I hate</i>	coepi, <i>I have begun</i>	nōvi, <i>I know</i>
Subj.	meminērim	odērim	coepērim	novērim (nōrim)
Pt/pf. Ind.	meminēram, <i>I remembered</i>	odēram, <i>I hated</i>	coepēram, <i>I had begun</i>	novēram (nōram), <i>I knew</i>
Subj.	meminisse	odisse	coepisse	novisse (nossem)
Fut. Ind.	meminēro, <i>I shall remember</i>	odēro, <i>I will hate</i>	coepēro, <i>I shall have begun</i>	novēro (nōro), <i>I shall know</i>
Imperat.	memento, <i>remember thou</i> mementōte, <i>remember ye</i>	wanting.	wanting.	wanting.
Inf. Perf.	meminisse	odisse	coepisse	novisse (nosse)
Fut. Particip.	wanting.	osurus esse	coepturus esse	wanting.
	wanting.	osus, exōsus, perōsus, <i>one who hates, or has hated very much.</i>	coepturus, <i>one who will begin</i> coeptus, <i>begun.</i>	wanting.

REMARK. *Novi* is nothing else than the Perf. of *nosco* (I am acquainted with). Instead of *coepi*, *coeperam*, etc., *coeptus sum*, *coeptus eram*, etc., must be used, when the accompanying Inf. is in the Pass., as: *urbs aedificari coepta est*, *the city has begun to be built*. The same is the case with *desino*.

### CXV. Words to be learned and Exercises for translation.

Abominari, <i>to execrate.</i>	comoedia, ae, f. <i>comedy.</i>	credūlus, a, um. <i>credulous.</i>
commemōrare, <i>to mention, call to mind.</i>	institūtum, i, n. <i>an institution.</i>	invidus, a, um, <i>envious.</i>
evanesco, nui 3. <i>to disappear.</i>	probrum, i, n. <i>reproach.</i>	dum, conj. (with the Subj.) <i>provided that.</i>
hebesco (without Perf. and Sup.). <i>I am inoperative.</i>	haruspex, icis, m. <i>sooth-sayer.</i>	sive (seu), or; sive (seu) — <i>sive (seu), whether — or, either — or.</i>
proferre 3. <i>to produce.</i>	bellus, a, um, <i>beautiful.</i>	
sapio, ui 3. <i>to be wise.</i>	consentanēus, a, um <i>suitable.</i>	

RULE OF SYNTAX. When the words of some one are quoted precisely as he spoke them, *inquam* is used, and is introduced among the words quoted; but if only the *sense* of what one has said is quoted, *ait* is used.

Contraria ea sunt, quorum altērum ait quid, altērum negat. Cato mirari se aiēbat, quod non ridēret haruspex, haruspīcem quum vidisset.

Ut quimus, aiunt, quando, ut volūmus, non licet. Sus, ut aiunt, docet Minervam. Tu ais, ego nego. Negat Epicūrus, quenquam, qui honeste non vivat, jucunde posse vivere. Quasi ego id curem, quid ille aiat, aut neget; illud quaero, quid ei, qui in voluptate summi bonum putat, consentaneum sit dicere. Sive tu hoc ais, sive negas; ego tuēbor sententiam meam. Negantia contraria sunt aientibus. Ain' (for *aisne*) tu? quum res occultissimas aperueris in lucemque protuleris: negabis, esse rem ullam, quae cognosci possit? Aisne? Aio. Negasne? Nego. Agricola serit arbores, quae alteri saeculo prosint, ut ait ille in Menandri comoedia. Non credimus, inquit, vera esse, quae dicimus. Tu vero, inquisti, mihi molestus nunquam eris. Amicus meus, inquires, nonne est homo bellus? Praeclare Plato: Beatum, inquit, cui etiam in senectute contigerit, ut sapientiam verasque opiniones asssequi possit.

I deny that, which thou assertest. If I say yes, he [also] says yes; if I say, no (deny), he also says no. It is said, that thou wilt leave the city. I know not, whether thou affirmist the thing, or deniest [it]. Affirmative (= affirming) opinions (sententia), are contrary to negative (= denying) [opinions]. They said, that thy father set out for (ad) Rome. It is delightful and becoming, says Horace, to die for one's country. Thou hast erred, thou wilt say perhaps. Never, says he, is a friend troublesome to me.

Meminerimus, etiam adversus infimos justitiam esse servandam. Animus meminit praeteritorum, praesentia cernit, futura providet. Beneficia meminisse debet is, in quem collata sunt, non commemorare, qui contulit. Illud semper memento: Qui ipse sibi sapiens prodesse nequit, nequicquam sapit. Quod tu mihi dixisti, pulchre meminero. Qui patriae beneficia meminērint, semper pro ejus salute arma capessere parati erunt. Memento mori.

Omnes odērunt eum, qui immemor est beneficii. Libertatis inimicos, effici non potest, quin (= ut non) odērīm. Invidi virtutem et bonum alienum odērunt. Virtus necesse est res sibi contrarias aspernētur atque odērit. Probos amamus, imprōbos odimus. Non dubito, quin mali me odērint. Vox dira et abominanda: Odērint, dum metūant. Cicero, penitus odērat Clodium. Judicem neque studere cuiquam decet, neque odisse, neque irasci. Non ita amare debemus, ut si aliquando osūri simus. Romani regum nomen perōsi sunt.

Dimidium facti, qui bene coepit, habet. Oracula evanuerunt, postquam homines minus creduli esse coeperunt. Postquam divitiae honori esse coeperunt, et eas gloria, imperium, potentia sequebatur: he-

bescēre virtus, paupertas probro esse coepit. Turpe est, rem bene coeptam male finire. Undique in murum lapides conjici coepti sunt. Urbs obsidēri coepta est.

Deum colit, qui novit. Nihil mihi stultius videtur, quam existimāre eum studiōsum tui, quem non noris. Qui se ipse norit, aliquid sentiet se habere divinum, tantōque munere dei semper dignum aliquid et faciet et sentiet. Quam quisque norit artem, in hac se exercēt.

You should forget favors conferred, [but] remember those received. We shall remember thee, even when thou art absent. If we remember the favors conferred upon us (in nos) by our parents, we shall never be ungrateful towards (adversus) them. When we remember youth happily passed (agere), we are delighted. As often as (quotiescunque) I remembered the good principles of my teachers, a desire after (gen.) those excellent men seized (occupare) me.

We hate the men, who are unmindful of favors received. Who is there, *who does not* (quin) hate (subj.) the enemies of freedom? We did not know, why he hated us. Men love the upright, [and] hate the wicked. I doubt not, that the wicked hate me. The (is) friend is not agreeable (gratus) to us, who loves us as one about to hate us. It is known, that the Romans hated (perf.) the name of kings very much. Him, who is unfortunate, all hate.

Thou hast begun the thing well, but ended badly. Scarcely had the soldiers begun to fortify the camp, when the enemies were (perf.) discovered. Already had the enemies begun to assault the city, as suddenly our soldiers came (perf.) for (dat.) aid to the citizens. *After the banishment of the kings*, (abl. abs.), two consuls began to be chosen yearly.

I know not, whether (*ne* attached to the verb) thou art acquainted with my friend, but if thou shalt become acquainted with him, thou wilt love him. Judge not concerning a man, before you know him. Do you know the way? we do not know it. When any one wishes to preside over the republic, he should (*oportet* with *Subj.*) be acquainted with its laws and institutions. Art thou personally (= from appearance, *de facie*) acquainted with my friend? (= I am not acquainted with him), but I desire (*opto*) to know (= that I may know) him.

### § 78. Impersonal Verbs (46. Rem.)

#### 1) Verbs which indicate certain appearances of Nature.

fulgurat, *it lightens*, (*it fulminat, it lightens, gēlat, it freezes.*  
*flashes.*                      *thunders.*                      *grandināt, it hails.*



## CHAPTER II.

### § 79. *Preposition.—Conjunction.—Interjection.*

1. In addition to the parts of speech which have already been treated of, there remain the *conjunction* and *interjection*. Of these, the conjunction, as it is employed in connecting sentences, will be more properly treated of in the Syntax, and the interjection needs no special treatment beyond a mere definition; for which see § 6. Rem. 2.

2. The *preposition*, in addition to the table of prepositions given in § 34, and the remarks upon its use in the Syntax (§ 93.), requires some additional illustration here. Most prepositions are used also as *adverbs*, as: ante, post, prope, juxtā, infrā, suprā, citrā, ultrā, intrā, extrā, contrā, circā (circum). Nearly all prepositions are used in *composition*, as: *interrogo*, *decēdo*, *com-pōno* (*com*, *con*, *co* = *cum* in composition), etc. *Inseparable* prepositions are those which occur only in composition, viz: *amb* (*am*, *an*) *around*, as: *amb-ire*, *am-plector*, *an-fractus*;—*dis* (*di*), *asunder*, *from each other*, as: *dis-cēdo*, *di-spergo*;—*re* (back, again), as: *re-vertor*, *re-clūdo*;—*se* (aside, apart), as: *se-pōno*;—*sus* (*su*), *up*, *upon*, as: *sus-cipio*, *su-spicio*; finally, the negative *ne*, as: *ne-scire*.

---

## CHAPTER III.

### § 80. *Formation of Words.*

#### I. VERBS.

1. *Frequentatives*, i. e. verbs which express a *repetition* of the action, are formed from other verbs by adding *itare* to the stem of the Pres., as: ago, *I drive*, ag-ito, *I drive hither and thither*, clam-o, *I cry*, clam-ito, *I cry continually*.

2. *Intensives*, i. e. verbs which express a *permanence* or *continuance* in an action, are formed from the Sup. of other verbs, as: verito, verti, versum, vertere, *to turn*, verso, *to turn hither and thither*; they follow the first Conjugation.

3. *Desideratives*, i. e. verbs which express a *desire* or *striving* after the thing indicated by their primitives, have the ending *urio*, as: *esu-rio*, *I desire to eat* (from *edo*, *edi*, *essum*), *coenat-urio*, *I long for supper* (from *coeno*, *avi*, *atum*); they follow the fourth Conjugation.

4. *Inchoatives*, i. e. verbs which express a *becoming* or *beginning* of that which their primitives express, have the endings *asco*, *esco*, *isco*, as; *exhorr-esco*, *I shudder* (from *horreo*), *concup-isco*, *I desire* (from *cupio*), *repuer-asco*, *I become a boy again* (from *puer*); they follow the third Conjugation.

5. *Diminutives*, i. e. verbs which express a *diminution* of the idea expressed by their primitives, have the ending, *illo*, as: (*canto*) *cantillo*, *I chant*.

## II. SUBSTANTIVES.

1. Nouns in *tor* (fem. *trix*), are formed from the supines of verbs and designate *persons in active relations* (actors), as: *vic-tor*, *victrix*, *a conqueror* (from *vinco*, *vici*, *victum*).

2. Those in *io*, are formed from the supines of verbs, and like English substantives in *ing*, express the action of the verbs from which they are formed as *taking place*, as: *laesio*, *an injuring* (from *laedo*, *laesi*, *laesum*), *emendatio*, *an emending* (from *emendo*, *avi*, *atum*).

3. Those in *o*, *onis*, are derived either from verbs or nouns, and designate persons with an idea of contempt, as: *capito* (from *caput*), *blockhead*.

4. Those in *us* (gen. *us*), are derived from supines, and signify mostly *a completed action*, *an effect*, as: *morsus*, *a bite* (from *mordeo*, *momordi*, *morsum*).

5. Those in *ulus*, *ula*, *ulum*; *olus*, *ola*, *olum*; *ellus*, *ella*, *ellum*; *illus*, *illa*, *illum*, indicate an object as *small* (*diminutives*), as: *hortulus*, *a little garden*, *vocula*, *a slight voice* (from *vox*); *filio-lus*, *a little son*, *filiola*, *a little daughter*, *assellus*, *an ass colt*.

REMARK. The gender of diminutives follows the gender of their primitives.

6. Those in *etum*, signify *a place abounding in that* expressed by their primitives, as: *quercetum*, *an oak-grove*, *dumetum*, *a thorn-thicket* (from *dumus*, *a thorn bush*).

7. Those in *ia* (*itia*), G. *iae*;—*tās*, G. *tātis*; *tūs*, G. *tūtis*; *tūdo*, G. *tudimis*;—*ēdo* and *ido*, G. *inis*, express an *abstract quality*, as: *audacia* (from *audax*), *boldness*, *sapientia* (from *sapiens*), *wisdom*; *laetitia* (from *laetus*), *joy*, *avaritia* (from *avarus*), *avarice*;—*bonitas* (from *bonus*), *goodness*, *celeritas* (from *celer*), *swiftness*;—*servitus* (from *servus*), *servitude*;—*fortitudo* (from *fortis*), *bravery*, *magnitudo* (from *magnus*), *greatness*;—*dulcēdo* (from *dulcis*), *sweetness*, *cupido* (from *cupidus*), *desire*.

8. *Gentile Nouns*, i. e. names of *peoples and countries*. Names of countries are mostly formed from the names of peoples, with the ending *ia*, as: (Macedō, ōn-is) *Macedonia*; (Thrax, ac-is) *Thracia*, etc. On the contrary, names of peoples having the adjective-endings: *ius*, *ānus*, *inus*, *ēnus*, *ensis* (*iensis*), *ās* (G. *ātis*), *icus*, *iācus*, *aicus*, are formed either from names of countries or cities, as: (Cyprus) *Cyprius*; (Roma) *Romānus*; (Venusia) *Venusinus*; (Pergāmus) *Pergamēnus*; (Athenae) *Atheniensis*; (Arpinum) *Arpinas*; (Colchis) *Colchicus*; (Aegyptus) *Aegyptiācus*; (Thebae) *Thebāicus*.

9. *Patronymics*, i. e. personal appellations derived from one's *descent*. These have the endings: *ides*, G. *ilae*, Fem. *is* (from primitives in *us* and *or*); *ides*, F. *eis* (from primitives in *eus*); *ādes* or *iādes*, F. *as* (*ias*) (from primitives in *as* or *es* of the first Dec. or in *ius*), as: (Priāmus) *Priamides*; (Agēnor) *Agenorides*; (Tantālus) F. *Tantālis*;—(Peleus) *Pelides*; (Theseus) F. *Theseis*;—(Aenēas) *Aenēades*; (Thestius) *Thestiades*; F. *Thes-tias*.

### III. ADJECTIVES.

1. Those in *eus*, *a*, *um*, are adjectives of *material*, as: *ferreus*, *iron*, *ligneus*, *wooden*, *marmoreus*, *of marble*.

2. Those in *inus*, *a*, *um*, and *nēus*, *a*, *um*, are principally derived from the *names of plants and minerals*, as: *faginus*, *beechen*, *of beech*, *quernēus*, *of oak*, *crystallinus*, *of crystal*; *aburnēus*, *of ivory*.

3. Those in *nus*, *a*, *um*, *ernus*, *a*, *um*, and *inus*, *a*, *um*, relate to designations of *time and place*, as: *vernus*, *belonging to spring*; *externus*, *external*; *hodiernus*, *of to-day*, *aeternus*, *eternal*; *diutinus*, *of long duration*.

4. Those in *inus*, *a*, *um*, relate, mostly, to the *different kinds*

of animals, as : leporinus (lepus, leporis, *the hare*), of the hare, caro anserina, *goose-meat*.

5. Those in *ilis* and *bilis*, express a *capability* or *fitness*, as : utilis, *useful*, docilis, *teachable* ; amabilis, *amiable*.

6. Those in *bundus*, express the idea of a *present participle* but with more *intensity*, as : populabundus, *ravaging* (stronger than *populans*), mirabundus, *full of wonder* ; those in *cundus* express a *permanent quality* or *habit*, as : facundus, *fluent*, iracundus, *passionate*, verecundus, *respectful*.

7. Those in *ösus*, *tus*, *olentus* or *ulentus*, *idus* express *fulness*, *abundance* or *excess*, as : arenösus, *sandy* (abounding in sand), auritus, *long-eared*, aurätus, *gilt* (furnished with gold), onestus, *loaded down*, vetustus, *ancient*, violentus, *impetuous*, turbulentus, *full of commotion*, herbidus, *covered with grass*.



# SYNTAX

## OR THE PRINCIPLES OF SENTENCES.

---

### § 81. Sentence.—Subject.—Predicate.

1. A thought expressed in words, is called a *sentence*, as: *the rose blooms*, *rosa floret*; *the rose is beautiful*, *rosa pulchra est*.

2. The necessary parts of a sentence are:

a) The *subject*, i. e. that of which something is asserted, as: *the rose*, *rosa*;

b) The *predicate*, i. e. that which is asserted of the subject, as: *blooms*, *floret*; *is beautiful*, *pulchra est*.

3. The subject is a *substantive*, as: *rose*, *rosa*, or some other word or clause used *substantively*, e. g. a pronoun, an adjective, an Infin., as: *I*, *thou*, *he*, *this*, *the wise*. The subject stands in the *nominative*.

4. The predicate is a *verb*, or an *adjective* or *substantive* in connection with the verb *esse*, which in this case is called the *copula* (bond).

*Rosa floret.*—*Rosa pulchra est.*—*Rosa flos est.*

REMARK. In the Latin language each form of the *finite verb* may form a sentence; for it signifies at the same time, a person of whom something is said, and that which is said of him, as: *amo*, *I love*.

### § 82. Limitation of the Subject and Predicate.

1. The *predicate* may be limited in the following ways:

a) By a case of the *substantive* which is then called the *object*, as: *virtutem amo*;

b) By the *preposition* with a substantive, as: *pro patria pugnamus*;

c) By the *infinitive*, as: *scribere cupio*;

d) By an *adverb*, as: *bene scribis*.

2. The *subject*, or *object* may be limited in the following ways:

- a) By an *adjective* (*attributive adjective*), as: *rosa pulchra*;
- b) By the *genitive* of a substantive (*attributive gen.*), as: *hortus regis*;
- c) By a *substantive* which stands in the same case as the word which it limits, as: *Alexander, rex Macedonum, Magnus appellatur*. A substantive of this kind is said to be in *apposition*.

REMARK. The attributive adjective agrees with the noun which it limits in *gender*, *number* and *case*. This is so even in the adjectives: *primus, ultimus, extremus, postremus, intimus, summus, medius, infimus, imus* and *reliquus*, although they designate only particular parts of objects and are rendered into English by partitive phrases (*first part, last part, etc. of a thing*).

### § 83. Agreement.

1. The *verb* agrees with its subject in *person* and *number*; the *adjective* in *gender*, *number* and *case* (nominative).

Ego scribo; tu scribis; ille scribit. Rosa floret. Rosae florent. Amicus fidus est. Virtus pulchra est. Corpus cadūcum est. Puer magnus. Puella parva. Corpus cadūcum. Indus omnium fluminum maximus est.

REM. 1. Sometimes, however, the predicate does not agree with the grammatical form of the subject, but with a noun implied in it (*Constructio ad intellectum*), which is particularly the case in collective nouns, as: *pars bestiis objecti sunt*.—*Magna multitudo convenerant*.

2. The substantive, as *predicate*, agrees with the subject only in *case*; it agrees with it in *gender*, *number* and *case*, only when it signifies a *person*, and hence, either has separate forms for the masculine and feminine, or is of the common gender. The same is the case with the substantive in *apposition*.

Rosa flos est. Athenae fuerunt urbs. Romulus fuit rex. Tomŷris fuit regina. Tomŷris, *regina* Scytharum, Cyrum, *regem* Persarum, devicit. Bactra, *regionis caput*, sita sunt sub monte Parapamiso.

REM. 2. When the *neuters* of adjectives, pronouns and numerals are used as nouns, and signify a *number of single things*, they do not, as is

generally the case in English, stand in the singular, but in the plural. *Omnia humana sunt fragilia* (everything human). *Futura incerta sunt* (the future). *Haec sunt vera, illa falsa* (this—that). *Multa, pauca*, etc.

3. When there are two or more subjects in one sentence, the verb stands in the *plural*. If the subjects have the *same gender*, the *adjective* as predicate, takes the *same gender* and stands in the *plural*; but if they have *different genders*, in designations of *persons*, the adjective agrees with the *masculine* subject in preference to the *feminine*, but in names of *things* the adjective generally stands in the *neuter plural*.

*Pompeius, Scipio, Afranius foede perierunt. Caesar et Pompeius fortissimi fuerunt. Terra et luna sunt globosae. Pater et mater mihi cari sunt. Inter se contraria sunt beneficium et injuria.*

REM. 3. When, however, the subjects are connected by *aut—aut, et—et* (as well—as also), *nec—nec*, or when it is designed to make one subject more *prominent* than the others, the predicate agrees with the *nearest* subject, which, in the last case, is always the subject to be rendered prominent.

4. When subjects of *different persons* are connected, the first person predominates over the second and third persons, and the second over the third, and the predicate stands in the *plural*.

*Ego et tu scribimus. Ego et frater scribimus. Ego, tu et frater scribimus. Tu et frater scribitis. Ego et fratres scribimus. Tu et fratres scribitis. Nos et fratres scribimus. Vos et fratres scribitis.*

#### CXVI. Exercises for translation. (§§ 81—83.)

I. Our body is mortal, our soul immortal. The forehead, the eyes, the expressions often lie. God is the creator and governor of the whole world. History is a good instructress. The Scythians were a very warlike people. Alexander, king of the Macedonians, carried on (perf.) a war with Darius, king of the Persians. The divine is eternal, the human frail. We often hold the unknown for (pro) known and assent to it inconsiderately. O boy, hear much [but] speak little! Gold, silver, brass, iron, in short (denique) all metals are produced (gignere) for the use of men. The father, the mother and the sister of my friend, have all died within a year. Thy son and thy daughter are very dear to me. Labor and pleasure, by a (quidam) natural alliance, are united *together* (inter se). Arrogance, hatred and envy are

foreign to the mind of the wise. I and my brother returned (perf.) yesterday from the journey. I and my brother learn, thou and thy brother play. We and my parents rejoice at (de) your return.

II. Life is short, art is long. The lark and the nightingale sing delightfully. Experience is the best instructress. The Carthaginians were a treacherous people. Wisdom is the governess of all things. Writers extol Solon, the law-giver of the Athenians, on account of his wisdom. Everything earthly is fleeting. The past we cannot change. The future is uncertain. Corinth and Charthage were (perf.) destroyed by the Romans. Dominion (plur.), posts of honor, riches, power (opes) are fortuitous. The walls and gates of the taken city were destroyed (perf.) by the soldiers. The king and queen are very dear to all the citizens. The father and mother have set out on a journey. Thy brother and sister are very good. I rejoice, that (quod) thou and thy brother are well. We and our parents shall set out on a journey to-morrow. Thou and thy sister remain in the city.

#### § 84. *Double Nominative.*

As there are two nominatives with the copula *esse*, the nominative of the subject and the nominative of the predicate, so also the following verbs take two nominatives:

- a) The verbs of *becoming*: *fio, evādo, existo, nascor*;
- b) The verb *maneo* (I remain), and *videor* (I seem, appear);
- c) The verbs which mean: *I am called*, as: *appellor, vocor, dicor*, etc.;
- d) The verbs which signify, *I am made, chosen, appointed something*, as: *creor, elīgor*, etc.;
- e) The verbs which mean: *I am considered, accounted something, I am recognized, found as something*, and the like, as: *putor, existīmor, judīcor, habeor, cognoscor, invenior*, etc.

*Brutus Romanorum libertatis vindex exstitit. Nemo doctus nascitur. Gloria Romanorum aeterna manet. Cicero consul creatus est. Cicero pater patriae appellatus est. Virtus summum bonum judicanda est.*

#### CXVII. *Exercises for translation.* (§ 84.)

I. No one has become immortal by cowardice. Cicero, in the Catilinian (Catilinarius) war, appeared (existere) [as] the defender of

the state. The rich often become (*evadere*) beggars. No one is born rich. After Romulus, Numa Pompilius was elected (*perf.*) king by the Romans. Piety is justly considered the foundation of all the virtues. The renown of Roman bravery will remain forever (= eternal). Philosophy is called by Cicero, the guide (= leader) of life, the investigator (*fem.*) of virtue and the banisher (*fem.*) of vice, the inventress of laws, the instructress of customs and of discipline. Unexpected evils appear greater than [those] expected. Demosthenes is justly considered the most distinguished orator of the Greeks. Cicero and Anthony were elected consuls.

II. Quintus Fabius was chosen (*perf.*) general by the Romans. Men become wiser by age. The orations of Demosthenes and Cicero are considered models of eloquence. A bad poet never becomes (*evadere*) a good [one]. Lycurgus came forward (*perf.* of *existere*) as the law-giver of the Lacedemonians. Virtue is justly considered the highest good. Aristides was called the just by the Athenians. The renown of some will remain eternal. Cyrus was elected the first king of the Persians. The sun appears to us smaller than it is. Thou wast born good, but hast become bad.

### § 85. *Classes of Verbs.*

1. There are two kinds of verbs, *active* and *passive*. In an *active* verb, the subject appears as *active*, as: *rosa floret*;—*puer epistolam scribit*. Those active verbs which take an *accusative* are called *transitive*, as: *puer epistolam scribit*; but the rest are called *intransitive*, as: *rosa floret*;—*sapiens meminit mortis*:—*pater tibi favet*;—*amicus gaudet adventu amici*;—*eo in urbem*.

2. In the *passive* the subject appears as *suffering* (receiving the action), as: *bonus discipulus laudatur* a preceptoribus, *malus viluperatur*.

3. Deponent verbs are those which have a *passive* form but an *active* signification, as: *dux hortatur milites*;—*morior*.

### § 86. *Tenses of the Verb.*

1. The tenses are divided into two classes:

a) *Principal Tenses*: the Pres. Perf. and Future:

scribo, *I write*, scripsi, *I have written*, scribo, *I shall write*, scripsero, *I shall have written*;

- b) *Historical Tenses*: Imperf. Pluperf. and the *narrative* Perf.: scribebam, *I wrote, was writing*, scripseram, *I had written*, scripsi, *I wrote*.

REM. The narrative Perf. is called the Perf. *historical* and is translated into English by the Imperf.; the proper Perf. is called the Perf. *present*, and is translated into English by the Perf. The Latin *historical* Perf. always expresses the action as *past*, and so also does the Latin Imperf. but yet always as *standing in relation to another past action to which it corresponds in time*, as: scribebam, quum veniebas (veneras). Hence the Perf. is used in relating *principal events*, the Imperf. in relating *accompanying circumstances*. Caesar urbem intravit; omnes cives laetabantur victoriamque de hostibus reportatam ei gratulabantur.

### CXVIII. Exercises for translation. (§ 86.)

I. God has made the whole world. Romulus built Rome. Hannibal vanquished the Romans in (abl.) the second Punic war. The enemies assaulted the city, which lay upon a hill. The city was captured by the enemies, but the citizens had already deserted it. So long as thou shalt be fortunate, thou wilt number many friends. In a short [time] I shall have finished this business. If we shall have fulfilled our duties, we shall be happy (beatus). Even as we shall have treated others, will they treat us.

II. The book, which you sent me, I have read through carefully. Carthage and Corinth were destroyed by the Romans. The Romans carried on many wars with the Germans, who were a very brave people. An immense number of men had come together into (in with acc.) the city. The remembrance of renowned men will be obscured by no oblivion. After a few days I shall have returned. As thou shalt have sown (sementem facere), [so] thou wilt reap (metere). The more we shall have exercised our minds by the study of literature, so much the more we shall delight in it. If thou shalt have adorned the soul with virtues, thou wilt be happy.

### § 87. Modes of the Verb.

1. The *Indicative* is the mode which expresses *facts, realities*.

Rosa floret. Pater epistolam scripsit. Ambulabo.

2. The *Subjunctive* is the mode which is employed in expressing what is *imagined* or *barely conceived* of.

- a) The Subjunctive of the *principal tenses*, especially of the Pres., is used in *principal sentences* to express a *supposition* or *presumption*, a *doubting question*, an *encouragement*, *exhortation*, a *wish*. We may often translate this Subjunctive into English, by the Subj. Imperf. or by the auxiliaries, *ought*, *might*, *could*, *should*, *would* with the Infin.

Nemo sanus de virtutis pretio dubitet. Quis de animorum immortalitate dubitet? Eamus! (let us go! or: we would go!) Utinam amicus convalescat!

- b) The Subjunctive of the *historical tenses* is used in *principal sentences* to express a *supposition the opposite of what really is, or is not*, as: errares, *thou wouldst err*; errasses, *thou wouldst have erred*; si hoc diceres, errares, *if thou shouldst say this, thou wouldst err*; sic hoc dixisses, errasses, *if thou hadst said this, thou wouldst have erred*; so: non errares, non errasses; hence crederes, putares, cerneret, videres (one might believe, might see); besides, the Subj. of these tenses is used to express a *wish* of which one *knows that it will not be realized* (imperfect), or *has not been realized* (pluperfect), as: utinam amicus convalesceret! utinam amicus convalescisset! finally, the Subj. Imperf. is used in a *doubting question* in reference to *past time*, as: quid facerem? (what should I have done?)

3. The *Imperative* is used to express *commands*, as: scribe. The two forms of the second person of the imperative are thus distinguished: the shorter forms (ama, amate) have a *milder*, the longer forms (amato, amatote) a *stronger* meaning; hence these last should be translated by *should* or *must* and are used especially in *directions* and *injunctions*.

Ferte misero atque inopi auxilium. Colito virtutem. Leges observantor. Discipulus amato praeceptores.

REMARK. The *negative* with the Imper. and also with the Subj. of *encouraging* and *exhorting*, is expressed by *ne* (not by *non*), as: ne scribe;

*ne* eamus. However, instead of *ne* with the Imper. *noli*, *nolite* with the Infinitive are often used, as : *noli scribere*, *do not write* ; *nolite garrire*, *pueri* !

### CXIX. Exercises for translation. (§ 87.)

I. The view of Epicurus concerning the highest good, I could not approve. Why should we doubt concerning (de) the immortality of the soul (plur.)? We should love our native country! We would bear with equanimity, all which happens to us! The principles of virtue we would not neglect! The beginning (principium *plur.*) of all things should be taken (ducere) from the immortal gods! What *has fallen to the lot* (obtingere) of each one, this each one should hold fast (tenere). O that all would strive after virtue! Without thy aid, I had been the most unhappy man. O that thou hadst been silent! What should I have answered? Flatter ye not bad men. Thou shouldst obey [thy] parents and teachers. Scholars should respect (vereri) their teachers. O boys, you should be present at school not only with (abl.) your bodies, but also with your minds.

II. The betraying of his country no one should praise. Nobody should believe a lying man. Who should not admire the beauty of the world! We would not without reason expose (offerre) ourselves to dangers. We should rejoice at the prosperity of others! We should be affected in the very same way towards friends as (quo) towards ourselves. O that all men would honor virtue! Mayest thou always live happily (beate)! The sedition of the soldiers, a word of the general would have quieted. O that thou hadst been present sooner! I should not now be so unhappy. Whither should we have fled! Do not chatter, boys! We should always contemplate the heavenly and despise the human. Evil desires should always be restrained by the reason. We should contemplate the illustrious (illustis, e) examples of virtue which are pointed out in history.

### OF THE CASES.

#### § 88. A. The Genitive.

The *genitive* stands in answer to the question : *whose?* *of whom?* *of what?* and indeed, with the following words and expressions :

1. With *misereor*, *I pity*, and the impersonals *me pudet*,



*piget, poenitet, taedet and misēret, I am ashamed of, disgusted at, repent of, loathe, pity (something).*

*Infeliciū hominū misereor. Me misēret tui. Nunquam primi consilii deū poenitet. Me vitæ taedet.*

2. With *egēre* and *indigēre*, *to need, want*, (which also sometimes take the *ablative*), and the adjectives: *cupīdus, avidus, studiōsus*.

*Agrōtus medicinæ eget. Virtus plurimæ exercitationis indiget. Vir sapiens veritatis est studiosus.*

3. With the verbs: *memīni, reminiscor, obliviscor*;—*admo-neo, commoneo, commonefacio* aliquem;—with the adjectives: *memor, immemor; conscius, nescius, inscius; gnarus, ignārus; prudens, imprudens; perītus, imperītus; consultus, rudis*.

*Pueri, meminērint verecundiae. Boni homines præteriti temporis cum voluptate reminiscuntur. Verus amicus amici nunquam obliviscitur. Veteris te amicitiae commonefacio. Cono prudens rei militaris fuit. Beneficiorum memōres estote.*

REMARK 1. *Memini, reminiscor, obliviscor* are often, and *recordor* almost always connected with the *accusative*.

4. With many participles in *ans* and *ens*, when they have the meaning of *adjectives*, and with many *verbal adjectives* in *ax*.

*Homo gloriæ appētens sæpe a virtutis via deflectit. Quis famulus amantior domini est, quam canis? Ciceronis aetas virtutum ferax fuit. Vir probus tenax est propositorum bonorum.*

5. With verbs of *accusing, criminating, condemning, convicting* and *acquitting*, the *charge* or *crime* is put in the *genitive* (occasionally in *Abl.*).

REM. 2. The *punishment* when *capital* (*caput*) or when it is a *fine* is sometimes in the *Gen.* and sometimes in the *Abl.* Other punishments are generally put in the *Acc.* after *ad*.

*Miltiades proditiōis est accusatus. Cicero Verrem avaritiæ coarguit. Themistocles absens proditiōis est damnatus. Judex absolvit reum criminis. Athenienses Socratem capitīs condemnarunt. Roscius parricidii accusatus est.*

6. With the adjectives: *particeps, expers, consors, exsors*,

*proprius*; *similis*, *dissimilis*, *superstes* (which are also found with the *dative*); *pōlens*, *impōtens*, *compos*; *plenus*, *fertilis*, *inops* (which are also found with the *ablative*).

*Bestiae rationis et orationis sunt expertes.* *Homo rationis est particeps.* *Omnes virtutis compōtes beati sunt.* *Ira impōtens sui est.* *Viri propria maxime fortitudo est.* *Terra variarum herbarum plena est.*

7. The genitive with *esse* signifies: a) the object (person or thing) in which something is *inherent*, or to which something *belongs* (possessive genitive); b) the object to which something is *peculiar*, in which case, that which is peculiar to the object is commonly expressed by the infinitive; this last genitive may be translated by: It is the *part, manner, custom, characteristic, duty, sign, mark of some one; it is incumbent on one*, and the like.

*Hic liber fratris mei est* (belongs to my brother). *Petulantia est adolescentium* (is inherent in). *Imbecilli animi est superstitio* (belongs to). *Virorum fortium est*, toleranter dolorem pati.

REM. 3. Instead of: *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri est*, we must use here, *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum est*, as: *nostrum est*, parentes amare.

8. The *genitive* or *ablative* of a substantive joined with an *adjective* stands with *esse*, in order to express the *nature* or *quality* of the subject (genitive or ablative of quality); this Gen. or Abl. may also, without *esse*, be joined to a noun as an *attributive*.

The Gen. denotes *essential*, the Abl. *accidental* qualities, hence, the the designations of *measure by number, time and space* are always expressed by the *genitive* (never by the *ablative*), these being essential qualities of an object.

*Vir bonus summae pietatis* (or *summa pietate*) *erga deum est.* *Xerxis classis mille et ducentarum navium longarum fuit.* *Tarquinius fratrem habuit Aruntem, milis ingenii* (or *miti ingenio*) *hominem.* *Aristotēles, vir summo ingenio* (or *summi ingenii*), *prudentiam cum eloquentia junxit.*

9. The Genitive stands as an expression of the *value*, with verbs of *valuing* and *esteeming*, of *buying* and *selling*, as: *puto, duco, aestimo*;—*pendo, facio, habeo*,—*emo, vendo, venō.* Of this kind are the genitives: *magni, pluris, pluri-*

*mi,—parvi, flocci, minimi,—tanti, quanti, nihili* (much, more, very much, little, etc.) (*Genitive of price*).

Si prata et areas quasdam magni aestimamus, quanti est aestimanda virtus! Divitias minoris aestimare debemus, quam virtutem. Divitiae a sapienti viro minimi putantur. Quanti emisti hunc librum? Discipuli praeceptores plurimi (or maximi) facere debent.

10. With the impersonal verb *interest* (it concerns), the *person* whom something concerns, stands in the genitive. Instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns: *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*: *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā*, are always used, and in this case *refert* can be used instead of *interest* in the same sense.

*How much or how little* one is interested in a thing is expressed: a) by *adverbs*, as: *magnopere, multum, magis, maxime, nihil, parum, minime*;—b) by the *adverbial* neuter: *multum, plus, plurimum, minus, minimum, tantum*, etc.—c) by the *genitives*: *magni, pluris, parvi, tanti, quanti*.

*The thing* which interests or concerns one, is not expressed by a substantive, but: a) by an *infinitive*; b) by the *accusative with an infinitive*; c) by a subsidiary sentence with *ut* (that), *ne* (that not) and the Subjunctive; d) by an *indirect question* (in the Subj.).—The general expressions: *this, that, what* one is interested in, are expressed by the *accusatives*: *id, illud, quod, quid*.

*Interest omnium, recte facere. Quid nostra refert (interest,) victum esse Antonium? Praeceptoris multum interest, discipulos summo studio in literas incumbere. Magni mea interest (refert), ut te videam. Omnium magni interest feliciter vivere.*

11. Finally, the genitive stands with a *substantive* as a *nearer definition* of it, as: *hortus regis* (= *hortus regius*). Comp. § 82, 2, b.)

REM. 4. Hence the genitive with the substantives: *caussā, gratiā*, *ergo* which we render by *on account of, for the sake of*, and with *instar, like*. Instead of the genitives: *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*: *meā tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā*, are used with *caussā* and *gratiā*, as: *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā caussā* or *gratiā* (on my account, thy account, etc.).

12. This *attributive genitive* signifies :

- a) the *author* or *cause*, as: *conjuratio Catilinae*; *desiderium patriae* (longing after (excited by) one's country);
- b) the *possessor*, as: *hortus regis*;
- c) the *whole*, from which a *part* is taken (*partitive genitive*), as: *partes corporis*.

The *partitive Gen.* stands also with other words besides nouns, when they signify *a part of a whole*, viz: with *comparatives* and *superlatives*, *pronouns* and *numerals*, and the *neuters*: *multum*, *plus*, *plurimum*; *nihil*, *minus*, *minimum*; *tantum*, *quantum*, and the like used *substantively*, with *adverbs* of *quantity*, as: *satis parum*, and with *adverbs of place* in certain connections.

*Duorum fratrum major natu. Cicero omnium Romanorum praestantissimus fuit orator. Romanorum unus. Multum pecuniae. Satis eloquentiae. Ubi terrarum? where in all the world? Nusquam terrarum, nowhere in the world.*

REM. 5. The genitive in these cases must often be rendered into English by the prepositions: *of, for, after, about, concerning, before, with*, as: *memoria praeteriti temporis* (of), *desiderium patriae* (for), *consuetudo amicorum* (with).

### CXX. Exercises for translation. (§ 88.)

I. a. We pity those who repent (= whom it repents) of their faults. A scholar, who loathes labor, will not make progress in literature. Who would not be ashamed of ignorance? Many are dissatisfied with their fortune. I pity thee my boy! We should pity those, who, by fortune not by wickedness, find themselves (*esse*) in adversity (*miseriae, arum*). The truth needs not approbation. The rich are often greedy after greater riches. A good scholar *occupies himself zealously* (*studiosus sum*) with literature. The ancient Germans were very eager for war. The people (*gens*) of the Gauls were very greedy for gold.

I. b. Who repent of their sins, may hope [for] pardon (*venia*). No one will repent of a good deed (*actio*). The indolent [man] will some time repent his indolence. Just as God pities thee, so thou shouldst pity others. Pity thou the destitute. Bad men *are* often wearied (*tædet*) of life. Thou wilt some time be ashamed of thy bad life. The

powers of the body and the soul need exercise. Caesar and Pompey were very eager for fame. The wise [man] *earnestly seeks* (studiosus sum) a quiet life. We hate the men who are greedy of gold. Catiline was eager for a revolution (res novae).

II. a. Vespasian was unmindful of injuries (offensa, ae). Those men live happily who are conscious of no wickedness. The mind remembers the past, perceives (cernere) the present [and] foresees the future. The Romans were very skilful in war. Deserters (perfuga, ae) very familiar (= acquainted) with the country, had spied out (explorare) the march of the enemies. The spirit of man is ignorant of (nescius) [its] future fortune (fatum). Cinna forgot (perf.) the favors which he had received of Augustus. Remind not the wretched of his wretchedness (plur.). The soldiers, mindful of [their] former bravery, fought (perf.) spiritedly. We should forget favors conferred (conferre), [but] remember [those] received. The people of the Samnites were very skilful in war. The Scythians were unskilful in literature and the arts. The Romans always longed (appetens sum) after fame and were eager for praise. We hate the man despising divine and human laws. Camels endure (patiens sum) hunger and thirst.

II. b. The mind conscious of crimes cannot be quiet. A good man easily forgets an injury, [but] always remembers a favor. We hate those men who are unmindful of favors received. The ancient Germans were rude in the arts and literature. Already the youth should be mindful of age. Dionysius, the older, tyrant of Syracuse, was brave and acquainted with war. The wise [man] is always mindful of human frailty. Caesar and Pompey were two generals very skilful in warfare. Foolish men forget their faults, but see (cernere) the faults of others. Pursue those things diligently in which thou art skilful, but abstain from those in which thou art unskilful. The general reminded (perf.) the soldiers of [their] former bravery. It is not necessary to remind an upright man of a favor. Cicero was versed (consultus) in justice and eloquence. The fate (fatum) of many peoples reminds us of human infirmity (infirmitas). The ancient Germans *did* not *love* (amans sum) arts and literature, but endured (patiens sum) thirst, cold, heat and labors. Man, by (abl.) nature, seeks (appetens sum) after propriety of conduct. We esteem a man loving virtue.

III. a. Many men accuse (insimulare) themselves of a sin, if they have spoken anything cheerful (= bright) in grief. Catiline was convicted (perf.) by Cicero of a conspiracy against [his] native country. Alcibiades, *while absent* (absens), was condemned to death. Brutus,

the vindicator (vindex) of Roman freedom, condemned even (etiam) his sons to death. Phocion was accused of treason, because he had consulted (consulere) badly for (dat.) his country. The judge Coelius absolved him from injury, who had expressly (nominatim) injured (laedere) the poet Lucilius on the stage (scena). The human soul is partaking of reason. Alexander, not master of [his] anger, killed (perf.) his friend Clitus. Germany is very fruitful of grain. It is incumbent upon an orator, to speak fitly, clearly (distincte) and ornately. Wretched is he, who is destitute of friends. Fish are destitute of a voice. Greece, at the time of the Trojan war, was very productive of brave men. Human life is full of cares and troubles.

III. b. Pausanias, king of the Lacedemonians, was accused of treason. The Athenians charged (insimulare) Socrates with impiety (impietas adversus deos) and condemned him to death. Cicero charged (coarguere) Verres with the greatest avarice. Roscius was accused of parricide. Miltiades was accused of treachery and condemned to death, but afterwards was absolved from capital punishment (caput). Man alone of (ex) so many kinds of living beings is partaking of reason. The drunken [man] is not master of his understanding (mens). Alexander, king of the Macedonians, was not master of his anger. Beasts are destitute of reason and speech. Bravery is peculiar to man in the highest degree (maxime). The earth is full of various herbs, flowers and trees. The period of Augustus was productive of good poets, [but] destitute of good orators. Sicily is very productive of grain.

IV. a. Inconsiderateness is inherent in youth, providence in old age. To the Romans, in (abl.) the time of Augustus, belonged almost the whole of the then known circle of the earth. What belongs to me, belongs also to my friends. Great bravery was inherent in the Roman soldiers. It is the duty of the wise to teach the ignorant. It is a sign of inconstancy, now to trust and now to distrust the very same men. It is our duty to defend our country. It is the duty of the scholar, to apply himself with all his powers, to the study of the liberal arts and letters. It is not always a quality of the very same man, to think correctly and to express his thoughts elegantly in (abl.) discourse. A man of elevated soul despises riches. Caesar was not of large stature, but of a brave mind and a fierce spirit. The fleet of the enemies consisted of 253 ships. Cato *possessed* (= was of) a remarkable (singularis) wisdom in all things.

IV. b. In boys and youths waywardness is inherent, in men and old

men seriousness. All Syria belonged to the Macedonians. It is the duty of the intelligent, to guide the unintelligent by counsel. In the people of the Samnites, a great knowledge of war was inherent. It is the duty of parents to bring up [their] children well. It is incumbent on you, O boys, to obey the precepts of your teachers! Every man *may* (by *esse*) err, but no one, except (nisi) the unwise, *is wont* (by *esse*) to persist in error. It is incumbent on the chiefs (princeps) in (gen.) the state, to look out for the welfare of the humble and poor. It is the duty of the wealthy, to relieve the want of the destitute. It is incumbent on young men, to honor old age. It is not the part of the wise [man], now to trust and now to distrust the very same view. It is your duty, O boys, to esteem your parents and teachers. It is incumbent on the *principal men of the state* (optimâtes), to listen to the prayers of suppliants with benevolent hearts. Agesilaus was of humble stature and small body. Boys of a quick genius and happy memory are adapted to (ad) the study of literature. The fleet of Xerxes consisted of 1200 ships. The ancient Germans *possessed* (= were of, etc.) an immense size of body, incredible bravery and familiarity (= exercise) with war.

V. a. In every (omnis) service, we should value the will of the *giver* the highest. Alexander valued Hephaestion very high. For how much has thy father sold [his] garden? *for just so much* (tantumdem), as (quantum) he *gave for* (= bought) it. We despise the men who esteem virtue [but] little. Pericles valued Anaxagoras, his teacher, very much. For how much did you buy this book? Parents are much interested, that [their] children be brought up well. I am much interested, that you apply yourselves with all zeal to the study of literature. All good men are much interested, to be loved by others. We are much interested in this, what good men judge concerning us.

V. b. We should value that (is) victory much, which is gained (parère) not by arms but by words. We value those (is) men much, who love virtue. The wise [man] esteems riches very little. Many esteem their own little, [but] desire another's. The traders sell [their] wares not *so dearly* (tantumdem), as (quantum) they have bought them. How much has thy father bought the horse [for]? All citizens are much interested, that peace be restored. We are much interested, that we be instructed by good teachers. I am much interested, that thou mayest soon return from (ex) the journey. The state is much interested, that literature flourish (= bloom). All good citizens should be much interested, carefully to observe the laws.

VI. a. Homer is the oldest (*vetus*) of all the Greek poets. Socrates was the wisest of all the Greeks. No one of the Romans surpassed Cicero in (*abl.*) eloquence. Tarquinius Superbus was the last of the Roman kings. Virtue has in itself sufficient assistance for a peaceful life. The less honor there is to literature, so much the less studies there are. We draw much pleasure from literature. *What kind* (*quid*) of business are you pursuing? The scholar should be diligent in school, not so much (*tam*) on account of his teachers, as on his own account. We do much on account of friends, which we should not do on our own account. The Greeks built before Troy, a house like a mountain. Many Romans had houses like mountains. Misfortune is an occasion for virtue. We should strive to obtain intercourse with (*gen.*) good men. Not the fear of punishment, but the love of virtue should keep us from wrong. The memory of renowned men will be obscured by no oblivion. The passion for honor is a hard mistress.

VI. b. The city Syracuse was the greatest and fairest of all the Greek cities. Anciently the Spaniards dug up much gold and silver. Who lives in prosperity, has sufficient joy. From the reading of a good book, we draw *very much* (*plurimum*) pleasure. Hannibal was the most renowned general of the Carthaginians. Crassus had sufficient money, but too little (*parum*) prudence. More disadvantage lies (*est*) in the wrong itself, than advantage in the (*is*) things acquired by the wrong. Those were called sophists by the Athenians, who pursued philosophy on account of gain or ostentation. The Egyptians built pyramids like mountains. Plato in *the estimation of Cicero* (= was to Cicero) *equal to* (*instar*) all philosophers. He is beneficent who acts (*facere*) kindly (*benigne*), not on his own, but on our account. True virtue desires (*desiderare*) no recompense for labors and dangers. Intercourse with true friends is agreeable. The remembrance of time happily spent (*exigere*) is agreeable. Hannibal burned (*ardere*) with (*abl.*) great hatred against the Romans.

### § 89. B. *Accusative.*

1. The accusative stands in answer to the question, *whom?* or *what?* It signifies a *passive object*, as: *rex civitatem regit*, or *that which is produced by an action* (effect), as: *scribo epistolam*. Hence it stands with all *transitive verbs*.

2. The following verbs take the *accusative*, although they might seem from their meaning to require a different case,



and some of them are in fact occasionally constructed with prepositions in English: *jūvo* and *adjūvo*; *deficio* and *fugio*; *aequo* and *aequipāro*; *deceat* and *dedecet*; *sēquor*, *sector*, *ae-mūlor* and *imītor*.

*Atticus adolescentē Marium juit opibus suis. Fortes fortuna adjūvat. Tempus me deficit. Malus fugit bonum* (flees before the good = flees the good.) So also: *defugio*, *effugio*, *subterfugio*. *Pedītes equitem cursu aequabant* (kept up with). So also *adaequo*. *Verecundia deceat puerum. Gloria virtutem* tanquam umbra *sequitur*. So also: *consēquor*, *subsēquor*. *Equites regem sectabantur*. So also *consector*. *Quis Sullam imītetur? Virtutes majorum aemulēmur!*

REM. 1. Many strictly intransitive verbs, also, govern the Acc. in Latin, when compounded with prepositions which govern the Acc.; or uncompounded when used transitively, or when the noun is from the same stem as the verb, as: *vivere vitam*.

3. The accusative stands in answer to the questions: *how long? how far? how wide (broad)? how high? how deep? how thick? how many (much)? how great? etc.; as to what?* (Greek, Acc.).

*Quaedam bestiōlae unum diem vivunt. Cato annos quinque et octoginta natus (old) excessit e vita. Zama quinque dierum iter ab Carthagine abest. Turris pedes ducentos alta est. Vite caput tegitur.*

4. The accusative stands in an *exclamation* either with or without an interjection.

*Me miserum! O fallacem hominum spem!*

5. A double accusative stands in the following cases:

a) With verbs which signify *to call* (name); *to make*, *choose*, *appoint one something*; *to account*, *consider as something*; *to show one's self as something*; *to give*, *take*, *have as something*.

*Julius Caesar dictatorem se fecit. Homines caecos reddit cupiditas et avaritia. Romulus urbem ex nomine suo Romam vocavit. Ciceronem universus populus consulem declaravit. Sapientem beatum habemus. Antistius se praestitit acerrimum propugnatorem communis libertatis. Athenienses Miltiadem sibi imperatorem sumpserunt. Epaminondas praeceptorem habuit Lysim. Romani Ciceronem patrem patriae appellaverunt.*

REM. 2. The passive of these verbs has a double nominative (§ 84.), as: *pavo superbus dicitur*.

- b) With the verbs : *celo, doceo, interrōgo* ;—*oro, rogo, flagito* ; finally, *posco, postūlo*.

*Ciceronem Minerva omnes artes edocuit. Ne quid turpe amicum roga ! Ego te sententiam tuam rogo. Nullam rem te celo.*

REM. 3. But *peto* (properly : *I strive after*), *I request, entreat*, is constructed with *ab*, and *quaero* (properly : *I seek*), *I ask*, with *ab* or *ex*, as : *pēto a te librum, quaero a (ex) te sententiam*.

REM. 4. With most of the above verbs, in the *passive* construction, the *personal object* becomes the *nominative* and the *accusative of the thing* remains. *Cicero a Minerva omnes artes edoctus est. Cato rogatus est sententiam*. Still with verbs of *demanding*, the *accusative of the thing* becomes the *nominative*, and the *accusative of the person* remains and is governed by a *preposition*, as : *pecunia a me poscitur, flagitatur*.

### CXXI. Exercises for translation. (§ 89.)

I. a. It is the duty of intelligent men to assist others with counsel. It is honorable (*honestus*) to emulate the good, [but] base to imitate the bad. No people of antiquity equalled (*aequiparare*) the Romans in (*abl.*) bravery. It becomes us to follow the example of good men. Time often fails the orator sooner (*citius*) than words (= the discourse). Fortune assists the bold. The soul escapes the view of the eyes. The women and children were accustomed to follow the army of the Germans. The temple of the Ephesian Diana was 400 feet long and 200 broad. No one of the Grecian orators equalled Demosthenes in power of discourse. Want and contempt follow indolence. Mithridates reigned 60 years, lived 72, [and] carried on (*perf.*) war 40 years with the Romans. Alcibiades died (*perf.*) about 40 years old (*natus*). Much becomes a boy, which does not become a man. Saguntum, the most powerful city of Spain, which Hannibal destroyed, was removed something like 1000 paces from the sea.

I. b. We assist him with delight who has assisted us. No one of the Thebans could equal Alcibiades in bodily powers. The enemies, whom the Romans followed swiftly, could not escape their hands. We should imitate those who love virtue. What becomes boys, often does not become men. It is our duty to assist the wretched. Flee the bad and emulate the good. The soldiers made (= drew) a trench 600 feet long, 8 feet broad, 10 feet deep. Death no one can escape. Not courage, but strength (*plur.*) failed our soldiers. Troy was besieged (*perf.*) 10 years by the Greeks. A long time the Lacedaemonians held (*perf.*) the supremacy of Greece. Theophrastus died

(perf.) 84 years old (natus). In hatred against the Romans, no one equalled Hannibal.

II. a. Nicomedes, king of Bithynia, by his will, made the Roman people his heir. The Romans called the supreme (summus) council (= counsel) senate. The people chose Ancus Martius king. Duty demands, that (*ut* with Subj.) we behave (praestare) ourselves religiously and uprightly not only in great but also in small matters. We should acknowledge virtue as the greatest good to men. Children should conceal nothing from [their] parents. Jugurtha, by ambassadors, entreated Metellus for peace. The ambassadors of Darius requested (petere) help of the Carthaginians against Greece. Give me the book, which I *long since* (jam pridem) requested (perf.) of thee. I ask of thee thy opinion. Grain was demanded by the citizens. Reason makes man lord of the earth. Recompense for labor we consider honorable. The Parian marble the Greeks considered precious. [They] are ridiculous, who teach others what they have not themselves learned (=ascertained). Eumenes concealed from all, the journey, *which he was designing to make* (Subj. periphrast.). The greatest affairs were concealed from me by thee. Cicero, informed (= instructed) by the ambassadors of all [things], commanded (imperare) the pretors, that they should take (deprehendere) the Allobroges by ambuscade. The ambassadors demanded back of the enemies, all which had been taken from the citizens during (per) the truce. Socrates demanded of those, *who enjoyed his instruction* (ejus consuetudine utebantur), no money for his instruction. Caesar demanded of the Edui, the grain which they had promised (polliceri). Cicero was asked his opinion in the senate.

II. b. Friendship makes prosperity more splendid, and adversity lighter (levis). The resounding echo, Horace calls the image of the voice. Prosperity is not merely itself blind, but also generally makes (efficere) [those] blind, whom it has embraced. The soldiers demanded all the arms of the citizens of the captured city. All arms were demanded of the citizens. I ask thy opinion of this object. The ambassadors of the Gauls requested peace of Caesar. The Romans elected Camillus dictator. Eloquence effects, that (*ut* with Subj.) we may be able to teach others what we know. The Tarentines demanded of Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, aid against the Romans. The future has rightly been concealed from men, by the divine Providence. I have given thy brother the book which he had requested of me. The Athenians requested (petere) a general of the Lacedemonians. He is a

true friend, who conceals nothing from us. Many youths were taught wisdom by Socrates. My friend, asked by me [as to] his opinion, concealed nothing from me. We esteem those (is) men much, who consider virtue the highest good. Cicero showed himself the most spirited defender (propugnator) of the common freedom. Catiline instructed (edocere) the youth, whom he had led away (illicere), in all bad deeds. The Tarentines, involved in (abl.) a war with the Romans, requested aid of Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.

### § 90. C. Dative.

1. The dative stands in answer to the questions: *to whom? to what? for whom? for what? for whose advantage? for whose disadvantage? for what end?* It generally stands with verbs and adjectives where, in English, the prepositions *to* or *for* are used to govern the case, or where the relation involved is similar to that expressed by these prepositions, as: *do, placeo, prosum, noceo* etc., *utilis, inutilis, aptus, idoneus, gratus, similis, par, aequālis, communis*, etc.

REM. 1. Hence all *transitive* verbs may take together with the Acc., the Dat. of the *person* (or *thing*) who *shares in* the action (Dat. of the remote object).

Do *tibi* donum. Epistolam *tibi* scribo. Non *scholae*, sed *vitae* discimus. Litterarum studium *hominibus* utilissimum est. Canis lupo *similis* est. Ratio *omnibus* *hominibus* communis est.

REM. 2. *Similis* and *dissimilis* are often also connected with the *genitive*.

2. The following verbs take the *dative* in Latin, while in English they take the accusative: *nubo, parco, benedico,—maledico, supplico,—obtrecto, studeo,—arrideo, invideo persuadeo,—medeor* and *patrocīnor*.

Venus nupsit *Vulcano*. *Parce* *mihi*. Ne *infantibus* quidem *parcebat* (not even children were spared). *Benedicimus* (praise) *bonis*, *maledicimus* (censure) *malis*. Donum tuum valde *mihi* *arrisit*. Probus *invidet* *nemini*. *Mihi* *invidetur* (I am envied). *Omnibus* *amicis* pro te libentissime *supplicabo* (entreat). Mali *bonis* *obtrectare* (disparage) solent. Nunquam *tibi* *persuadebo*. *Mihi* *persuadetur* (I am persuaded). Pueri *litteris* *studere* debent (study). Omnes homines *libertati* *student* (strive after). *Philosophia* *medetur* *animis*. Bonus *bono* *patrocīnatur* (protects).

REM. 3. Also, many verbs by composition with prepositions, especially with the following: *ab, ad, ante, cum (con), de, ex, in, inter, ob, post, prae, pro, sub* and *super*, acquire a meaning which makes them take the dative.

3. The dative stands with *est* and *sunt* to express the person or thing who *has* or *possesses* something. The thing *possessed* stands in the nominative as subject.

*Suus cuique mos est. Semper in civitate [ii], quibus opes nullae sunt, bonis invident. Multi mihi sunt libri.*

REM. 4. In *nomen mihi est* (I have the name, am called), the name stands either in the *dative* or *nominative*, as: *nomen mihi est Carōlo (Carōlus).*

4. The dative of the *end* (in answer to the question: *for what end?*), to which besides, a *dative* of the *person* is commonly added, stands:

- a) With *sum*, which, in this case, is to be rendered *conduce to, serve for*;
- b) With *do, accipio, relinquo, deligo, mitto, venio, habeo*, etc; also with *do, duco, tribuo, verto* in the meaning: *to impute to*.

*Bonum non potest esse cuiquam malo. Virtutes hominibus decōri gloriaeque sunt. Virtus sola neque datur dono, neque accipitur. Pausanias venit Atticis auxilio. Vitio mihi dant, quod mortem hominis necessarii graviter fero.*

## CXXII. Exercises for translation. (§ 90.)

I. a. Nobody errs for himself alone, but spreads (spargere) folly (dementia) [also] among (in) those next [to him]. Pleasure flatters our senses. A good man labors for virtue, not for fame. Sleep is very much like death. Socrates, conscious of no wickedness to himself, did not supplicate the judges. Julia, daughter of Augustus Caesar, first married Marcellus, then Marcus Agrippa, finally (postremum) Tiberius. Time cures grief best. The more fortune smiles upon one (quis), so many the more friends he has. It is base, to disparage (obtrektare) the fame of a great man. The Germans *from childhood* (ab parvulis) earnestly pursued labor and hardness (duritia). No physician can cure all diseases. The sister of Atticus married (perf.) Cicero. Death spares no mortal. Bad men reproach the good. Neither of the two should we praise (benedicere), neither the impious nor the

flatterer. The orator convinced the citizens of the advantage of his counsel. The wise [man] envies no one.

I. b. We live not merely for ourselves, but also for our country and other men. The dog is like the wolf. A good citizen obeys the laws with delight. Whoever reviles others, reviles himself [also]. It is easy to convince a good man of the value of virtue. It is base to disparage others (alter). It is a mark of an ill-disposed man, never to praise a good man. They have many friends, upon whom fortune smiles. Philosophy cures sick (aeger, gra, grum) souls. We are attached (studere) to those, who preserve (conservare) [their] fidelity. The upright [man] envies nobody, [but] is envied by many. Save time, O boys! Scarcely any one (ullus) of mortals, does fortune always smile upon. *It is better* (praestat), by the capital punishment of one wicked man, to restrain the wickedness of many, than on account of (propter) many wicked [men] to spare one. To the priestesses (sacerdos, ôtis) of Vesta, it was not permitted to marry a man.

II. a. Cicero possessed a remarkable eloquence. Man has many faculties of body and soul. In Sicily there is a volcanic mountain, called Aetna. Riches conduce to the destruction of (= are for destruction to, etc.) many men. Bad customs conduce to the destruction of a state. Just laws serve for safety to a state. Attalus, a king of Asia, gave his kingdom to the Romans for a present. Caesar left behind 500 soldiers for protection to the camp. Bravery is imputed to the Romans for praise. Caesar came to the city, besieged by the enemies, for aid. Poverty should be imputed to no man for a reproach. From whom hast thou received this book as a present? The father has given me the book for a present. Xerxes, king of the Persians, gave to Themistocles Myus (Myus, untis), a city of Asia, for a present. Industry is imputed for praise to the scholar.

II. b. Where caprice reigns (dominari), innocence has [but] little (levis) protection (praesidium). Man has a mortal body, [but] an immortal soul. My friend is called Charles. The struggle (= effort) after truth serves all men for ornament. God is not accustomed to aid (auxilio esse) those who thrust (immittère) themselves inconsiderately into danger. A victory won (parère) by treachery, does not conduce to the praise of the conqueror, but to [his] reproach. It is our duty to come for aid to the wretched. Caesar chose a fit place for the camp. Two thousand footmen and a thousand horsemen were left behind for protection to the city. The desire after dominion is imputed to Caesar for a fault. Modesty is imputed to a boy for praise,

immodesty for censure. Contempt of money is imputed to men for praise. Caesar sent 3000 soldiers as aid to the besieged city.

### § 91. D. Ablative.

The ablative expresses :

1. The *place in which* something takes place (*where?*), as: *terrā marique, hoc loco*, also in connection with *totus* and *omnis*, as: *totis campis, totā urbe*, and so in many other similar expressions; but otherwise *in* generally stands with ablatives of this kind.

2. The *time in or within which* something happens (*when?* and *at or within what time?*)

*Qua nocte* natus Alexander est, *eādem* Dianae Ephesiae templum deflagavit. Agamemno cum universa Graecia vix *decem annis* unam cepit urbem. Epaminondas *die uno* Graeciam liberavit.

3. The *ground or cause* (*whereby? on what account? whence?*); hence it stands with: *gaudeo, laetor, glorior,—labōro, valeo, floreo,—excello, praesto, sup̄ero,—fīdo, confīdo, nitor*;—*laetus, fretus, contentus, natus, ortus, genitus*, etc.

In culpa sunt, qui officia desērunt *mollitiā* animi (from). Gubernatoris ars *utilitate*, non *arte* laudatur (on account of). *Concordia* res parvae crescunt, *discordia* maximae dilabuntur. *Delicto dolere, correctione gaudere* oportet. Salus hominum non *veritate* solum, sed etiam *fama* nititur. Nemo potest aut corporis *firmitate*, aut fortunae *stabilitate* *confidere*. (*Fido* and *confido* are quite as often, and *diffido* almost always joined with the Dat.) *Contenti estote sorte vestra*.

4. The *means and instrument*, also the *material* (*where-with? wherefrom? whence?*).

*Oculis* videmus, *auribus* audimus. Britanni *lacte et carne* vivunt.

REM. 1. When a *person* is employed as a *means* or *instrument*, the *accusative* is generally used with *per*, as: *per tuum patrem* miseriā liberatus sum. With *passive* or *intransitive* verbs, the *agent* or *doer* is expressed by the *ablative* with the preposition *a*, as: *mundus a deo creatus est*. The *accompanying person* is expressed by the *ablative* with *cum*, as: *cum fratre* ambulavi.

5. Hence the *ablative* of the *instrument* or *material* stands more particularly:

- a) With verbs of *furnishing, forming, instructing, being accustomed.*

Natura oculos tenuissimis membrānis vestivit et sepsit. So also with *afficio*, I affect (fill). Litterae tuae summo gaudio me affecerunt. Pater filium littēris erudit (or instituit, imbuit, instruit). Milites continuo labore assueti (*assuefacti*) erant.

- b) With expressions of *fulness, plenty* and *want*, as : *abundo, affluō*, and *scateo*,—*compleō, satio*, and *careo*,—*egeo* and *indigeo*; *refertus, inops, praeditus*.

Germania abundat fluminibus. Quid afferre consilii potest [is], qui ipse eget consilio? Miserum est carere consuetudine amicorum. Insula Delos referta erat divitiis.

REM. 2. *Egere* and *indigere* are oftener found with the *genitive*. See § 88, 2.

- c) With the impersonal *opus est* (there is need of), the *thing* stands in the *ablative*, the *person* in the *dative*. But when *opus est* is used *personally*, the *thing* stands as subject in the *nominative*.

Multis non duce tantum opus est, sed adiutore et coactore. Dux nobis opus est. Duces nobis opus sunt.

REM. 3. When the thing *which is needed* is a verb, it is generally the *infinitive* or the *acc. with the infinitive*. Nihil opus est, rem pluribus verbis commemorare. Si quid erit, quod te scire opus sit, scribam.

- d) With, *utor, fruor, fungor, potior* and *vescor*.

Multi beneficio dei perverse utuntur. Augustus Alexandria brevi potitus est. Vescimur bestiis. Cicero consulatu bene functus est.

REM. 4. *Potiri rerum* means, *to appropriate to one's self (obtain) supreme power*.

6. The *ablative* expresses that *according to which* something is *measured* or *judged of* (*according to what?*)

Magnos homines virtute metimur, non fortunā. Quod rectum est, nec magnitudine aestimatur, nec numero, nec tempore.

7. Hence with the *comparative*, the object with which another is compared is put in the *ablative* instead of *quam* with the *Nom.* or *Acc.*

Pater filio doctior est, *than the son*, or pater doctior est, *quam* filius Patrem filio modestiorem cognovi.



8. Especially is the ablative used to express a *respect* or *nearer definition* (*wherein? in what respect?*).

Epaminondae nemo Thebanus par fuit eloquentiâ. Multi sunt corpore validi, mente infirmi. Magnus, major, maximus natu. Natione Medus fuit.

9. The ablative expresses the *measure*, and indeed:

a) In answer to the question: *by how much (many)?* particularly with *comparatives* and *superlatives*.

Sol multis partibus major atque amplior est, quam terra. Here belong the ablatives: *multo*, by much, much, *parvo*, *paullo*, by little, little, *quo* and *quanto*, the, *eo* and *tanto*, so much the.

b) In answer to the question: *how long before or after?* before the prepositions *ante* and *post*.

Numa Pompilius annis permultis ante fuit, quam Pythagoras. Laelius sermonem de amicitia habuit paucis diebus post mortem Africani.

REM. 5. But in the question: *how long before or after the present time?* the *accusative* is used with either *ante*, *abhinc* or *post*, as: *ante tres annos te vidi. Post paucos dies te videbo. Tres abhinc dies amicum vidi.*

c) With expressions of *buying* and *selling*, *costing*, *hiring*, *exchanging*, the *price*, and with *dignus* and *indignus*, the *thing of which* something is *worthy* or *unworthy*, *worth* or *not worth* stands in the ablative.

Hunc librum parvo pretio emi. Multorum sanguine et vulneribus ea Poenis stetit victoria. Excellentium hominum virtus imitatione, non invidia digna est. Veritas auro digna est.

REM. 6. Here belong also the ablatives: *magno* (for much, dear), *parvo* (for little, cheap), *plurimo*, *minimo*, *tanto*, *quanto* and the like, with verbs of *buying* and *selling*. Instead of the Abl. the Gen. is also used, as: *magni*, *parvi*, etc. (§ 88, 9).

10. The ablative signifies the *way* and *manner in which* something takes place.

Vir sapiens aequo animo injuriam fert.

11. Finally, the ablative stands with expressions of *removing* and *separating*, of *freeing* and *depriving*.

Caesar castra loco movit. Hospitem arcere tecto nefas est. Cognitio naturae nos levat superstitione, liberat mortis metu. Robustus animus et excelsus omni est liber cura et angore.

CXXIII. *Exercises for translation.* (§ 91.)

I. a. Xerxes brought (*perf.*) war upon Greece by land and by sea (*mare*). The enemies were discovered upon all the plains. In the second Punic war Hannibal wasted (*perf.*) the power (*opes*) of Italy. Socrates, on the last (*supremus*) day of his life, spoke (*disserere, perf.*) much concerning the immortality of the soul (*plur.*). Xerxes was conquered (*perf.*) more by the wisdom of Themistocles than by the arms of Greece. The minds of men are often tormented by distressing (*acerbus, a, um*) cares. We ought to grieve at faults, to rejoice at [their] correction (*correctio*). It is the part of a bad man to glory in his faults. Greece formerly flourished (= bloomed) in power (*opes*), dominion [and] glory. Crassus suffered from an immoderate desire for riches. Caesar, by his arrival, humbled (*frangere, perf.*) the Gauls trusting to (*fretus*) their bravery. The wise [man] does not trust to the stability of fortune. Upon the goods of the soul alone (*solus, a, um*) can we depend (*niti*). Nature is satisfied with little attention.

I. b. The Romans by sea (*mare*) and by land have carried on many wars. The colonies of the Syrians were spread (*diffundere*) over almost the whole circle of the world. The Romans awaited in a suitable place the attack of the enemies. In the spring the swallows return to us, in the autumn they go away. In the months October and November the fruits are collected from (*ex*) the trees. Not from fear but from choice the upright man avoids (= flees) wicked deeds. Navigation is praised on account of the advantage. Who would glory in his ignorance? Parents rejoice at the welfare of [their] children and grieve at their adversity. At nothing are we accustomed to rejoice *so much* (*tam*) as at the consciousness of our duties. The Roman state suffered from two vices, avarice and luxury. Aristides was distinguished (*floreo*) by the fame of [his] justice. Happy is he who trusts to virtue, unhappy [he] who rests upon riches or any other goods of fortune. The enemies, *trusting to* (*fretus*) the number of their troops, desired to fight. If we are contented with our lot, we shall be happy (*beatus*).

II. a. The sun illuminates the whole earth with its light. The ox defends himself with the horns, the horse with the feet, the boar with the teeth. Cicero, by his eloquence, had acquired for himself immortal fame. Cicero was expelled from Rome by Clodius. Parents, who have imbued the minds of their children with the principles of virtue, and instructed them in literature, deserve well (= deserve) not only of their children but also of the state. The earth, in the spring, is

clothed with herbs and flowers. Crassus, king of Syria, abounded in gold and silver. Spain anciently abounded in lead, iron, silver [and] gold. God has filled the world with all good [things]. The sea is full of (scatere) fishes. It is a misfortune (miserum), to be deprived of (carere) the intercourse of friends. We all need (egere) the aid of others. The earth abounds in all things which men need (egere). Man is endowed with reason and speech. There is need of a wise general to even the bravest army. There is need of repose after labors, to the body and the soul. There was need of ready aid to the captured city. The Carthaginians were accustomed (perf.) formerly to use elephants in war. Pronounce (= extol) him happy who enjoys good health. Use the powers which God has given thee. Whoever (= who) wishes to obtain true renown, must perform the duties of virtue. The Numidians generally fed upon (vesci) milk and venison. Cimon, the son of Miltiades, had (uti) a very hard beginning of youth (adolescentia, ae). Alexander, king of the Macedonians, possessed himself of the whole Persian kingdom.

II. b. We see with the eyes, hear with the ears, smell with the nose (nares, ium), taste with the palate, feel with the nerves. Very high mountains are covered with perpetual (perennis) snow and ice. We often attain more by goodness than by force. The Roman state was delivered from destruction by Cicero. God has enclosed (sepire) and covered (vestire) the eyes with very delicate membranes. We ought to aid those most, who need (indigere) our aid most. They are all rich who are endowed with virtue. The fortunate abound with friends, the unfortunate are destitute (carere) of friends. The sun fills all [things] with its light. The Roman consul, Aemilius, enriched (ditare) his soldiers with great booty. Our mind is filled (afficere) with joy when we have done something good. Greece abounded in great poets. The body has need of food and drink (potio). When we act rightly, we have need of neither dissimulation (simulatio) nor deception (fallacia). Any one you please of the sailors can govern the ship in (abl.) a quiet sea, [but] when (ubi) a violent (saevus) storm has arisen, then they have need of a pilot. The Helots (Helôta, ae) with the Lacedemonians, performed the office of slaves. That (is) ship performs (conficere) the course best, which has (uti) the most skilful pilot. Many men abuse reason. Discharge scrupulously the office committed to thee. The covetous [man] does not enjoy the riches which he has. The Greeks anciently ate acorns. Alexander possessed himself of the kingdom of Darius.

III. a. Scholars in school, are judged of and estimated not accord-

ing to rank (= genus), but good manners, a teachable spirit and active (acer) industry. The wise man measures men not according to fortune but according to character. There is nothing more amiable than virtue. Ireland is smaller by a half than Britain. Carthage was founded eighty-two years before Rome. Cimon, five years after he had been expelled, was recalled to [his] native country. In the sixty-second year *after the founding of the city Rome* (post urbem conditam), the third war against the Carthaginians was undertaken. The friend, whose arrival I had expected three days before, has come to day, and will depart again after ten days. Chrysogonus bought (perf.) a Corinthian vase for an immense price. For how much has thy father sold his horse? he has sold it for so much (tantum), as (quantum) he bought it for. The war has cost (stare) us much blood. An ungrateful mind is unworthy of favors. Virtue and wisdom are worthy of man. Receive those into friendship whom thou shalt consider worthy of thy love. The wise man endures the hardships of life with equanimity. Cicero, deprived of public offices, found satisfaction in the study of philosophy. The winds purify the air from noxious vapors. Timoleon, with incredible success (fortuna), expelled Dionysius from all Sicily.

III. b. Not according to greatness of stature, but from a brave and fierce mind we judge of a soldier. According to character, not according to property (facultates) we should estimate men. Nothing is more excellent than truth. No (nemo) Theban was equal to Epaminondas in eloquence. Pompey was only *two years* (biennium) older than Cicero. Carthage was founded eighty-two years after Rome and destroyed in the 700dth year afterwards. Agricola died in the fifty-sixth year of his age, the tenth day *before the Calends of September* (ante Kalendas Septembres). My brother, who departed six days ago, will return after two years. The trader sells the wares for a greater price than he has bought them for from others. Thou canst buy neither virtue nor wisdom for gold. They are unworthy of favors who are unmindful of them. The victory over the Romans cost Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, much. The deeds of Caesar are worthy of eternal renown. They deserve praise who honor virtue. Folly is unworthy of man. Pausanias, king of the Lacedemonians, lived, after the custom of the Persians, more luxuriously than was proper (par). Jugurtha expelled (perf.) Adherbal, an ally and friend of the Roman people, from his kingdom and all [his] possessions (fortuna). Themistocles, a general of the Athenians, delivered Greece from servitude.

§ 92. *Construction of the Names of Cities.*

1. The names of *cities* (towns, villages and small islands) of the *first* and *second Dec. Sing.* stand, in answer to the question *where?* in the *genitive*; but the names of cities of the *third Dec.* and of the *Plur.* of the *first* and *second Dec.*, in the *ablative*, without *in*. In answer to the question, *whither?* they all stand in the *accusative*, and in answer to the question, *whence?* in the *ablative*, in each case without a preposition.

Ut *Romae* consules, sic *Carthagine* quotannis bini reges creabantur. Talis *Romae* Fabricius, qualis *Athenis* Aristides fuit. Pompeius hie-mare *Dyrrhachii* et *Apolloniae* constituerat. *Delphis* Apollinis oraculum fuit. Cono plurimum *Cypri* vixit, Iphicrātes in Thracia, Timothēus *Lesbi*. Curius primus *Romam* elephantos quattuor duxit. Pompeius *Luceriā* proficiscitur *Canusium* atque inde *Brundisium*. Lycurgus *Cretam* profectus est ibique perpetuum exsilium egit. Aeschines cessit *Athenis* et se *Rhodium* contulit. Consul *Romā Athenas* profectus est.

REM. *Domus* and *rus* have the same construction as the names of cities: *domi* (at home), *domi meae, tuae, suae, nostrae, vestrae, alienae*, (at my house, etc.), *domum* (to the house), *domo* (from the house, home);—*ruri* (not *rure*), in the country, *rus* (into, to, the country), *rure* (from the country). Besides, *humi* (on the ground), *domi militi-aeque* or *domi bellique* (at home and abroad, in peace and in war).

2. The words in *apposition* with the names of cities, as: *urbs, oppidum, caput* (chief city), in answer to the question, *where?* stand in the *ablative* generally without *in*; in answer to the question, *whither?* in the *accusative* without *in*; in answer to the question, *whence?* in the *ablative* without *ab*.

Archias poëta *Antiochiae* natus est, *celebri* quondam *urbe* et *copiosa*. Cicero profectus est *Athenas, urbem celeberrimam*. Demarātus *Corintho, urbe amplissima*, Tarquiniōs fugit.

CXXIV. *Exercises for translation.* (§ 92.)

I. As long as Cicero was at Athens, he earnestly pursued philosophy. At Ephesus, a city of Asia, was a very renowned (*celeber*) temple of Diana. At Sparta was the most honorable (*honestus*) abode of

old age. The arts and literature flourished (= bloomed) at Athens. Demarātus fled from Corinth, a city of Greece, to Tarquinii, a city of Etruria. Timotheus, compelled by the hatred of the ungrateful state, betook (perf.) himself to Chalcis. Marius was born and brought up (perf.) at Arpinum, a city of Latium. At Alexandria, a city of Egypt, was a renowned (eximius) library. Brutus proceeded to Ardea to the camp. Hannibal proceeded from Carthage to Spain. Dionysius, the tyrant, sent for (arcessere, perf.) Plato from Athens. Augustus died at Nola, a city of lower Italy (Italia inferior). I have lived three years at Rome, one year at Corinth, two years at Athens, two at Philippi, three at Sparta. My father will return home tomorrow from the country, and, after three days, will go again from home into the country and will pass the whole summer in the country. When I am in my house, I do not trouble myself (curare) about (acc.) *what is without* (aliēnus, plur.). When a friend is in the house of a friend, he is (versari) as it were, in his own house, not in anothers. The Egyptians embalmed (condire) the dead and *laid them away* (condēre) at home. The Athenians were very renowned in peace (domus) and in war (militia). Many men would rather (malo) live in the country than in the city. By good counsels, the welfare of the state will be secured (constituēre) at home and abroad. I shall remain at home, [but] my brother will go into the country.

II. In Sparta, the boys were scourged (caedēre) with thongs (lorum) at the altar of Diana. Cicero, in Rhodes, *attached himself* (se applicare) to Molon. Artemisia, the wife of a king of Caria, built at Halicarnassus a famous (nobilis) sepulchre. In the times of Pericles, many renowned men lived at Athens. Hannibal was born at Carthage. Themistocles, presented with great presents by Artaxerxes, returned (perf.) to Asia and established (constituēre) his abode at Magnesia. The corpse of Alexander was removed (transferre, perf.) from Babylon, the chief city of Assyria, to Alexandria, a city of Egypt. Dionysius, the tyrant, fled (perf.) from Syracuse, the most powerful city of Sicily, to Corinth, a very renowned (celeber) city of Greece. Cato took away (perf.) his life at Utica, a city of Africa. Hannibal was recalled from Italy to Carthage. Scipio often *hurried away* (evolare) from the city into the country, [and] then returned to business from the country into the city. Alexander died (perf.) at Babylon, the chief city of Assyria. The soldiers returned (perf.) home joyful at the victory. The soul in the body is, as it were, in a foreign house. In the time of Pyrrhus, the first elephants came to Rome. Nowhere *does one live* (vivitur) so conveniently (commōde) as at home. Archimedes was killed (perf.)

at Syracuse, a city of Sicily, by a Roman soldier. Marius died at his house an old man. Laelius *hastened forth* (evolare) into the country from the city, as if (tanquam) from chains. The superiority (virtus) of Caesar had been acknowledged at home and abroad. Socrates brought back to the house the very same expression which he had carried forth from it. Cicero often lived in the country. The poet Ovid lived *a long time* (aliquamdiu) at Tomi, a city of Moesia, in exile.

### § 93. *Remarks on the use of the Prepositions.*

1. *Ab* and *de* (from, by, of) differ thus: a) of *place*, *ab* means, *away from* a place, *de*, *down from*, or *away from*.—b) *ab* is used with an *active* object, and hence stands with the *agent* or *doer* after passive verbs, *de* on the contrary, is used with a *passive object*.

Milites *ab urbe* profecti sunt. Lucretius *de muro* se dejecit. *De foro* cives discesserunt (away from the forum). Multae fabulae *de Hercule a poetis* fictae sunt (many fables have been invented concerning Hercules by the poets). Multa *de te a fratre tuo* audiui (I have heard much of thee from thy brother).

2. *Circum* is used only of *place* (not of *time*), as: terra se *circum axem* convertit.

3. The verbs: *pono*, *loco*, *collōco*, *constituo*, *defīgo* and some others take *in* with the *ablative* where the *accusative* seems to be required, since they express motion.—*Super* and *subter* are very rarely used with the *ablative*.

### CXXV. *Exercises for translation.* (§ 93.)

I. The Gauls were conquered (perf.) by Caesar. Caesar has related much of the Gauls. Cornelius Nepos wrote (perf.) a book concerning the life and customs of Cato. The life and customs of Cato were written by Cornelius Nepos. The citizens, besieged by the enemies, placed all hope in the wisdom and firmness of the general. From whom hast thou heard this news concerning the arrival of my father? from thy brother. We would place the highest good in virtue! The wise man fixes (defigere) his thoughts not upon pleasure, but upon virtue.

II. Cicero wrote (perf.) three books concerning duties. Three books concerning duties were written by Cicero. Excellent precepts have been left (tradere) us by Plutarch concerning the instruction of children

(puer). Plato placed the reason in the head, anger in the breast. Cicero, in the first book of the Tusculan Disputations, speaks (disputare) of the immortality of the soul. Much has been related to us by our teacher of the bravery of the Romans. Cicero fixed (defigere) all his cares and thoughts upon the welfare of his country. Let us place a peaceful life in virtue!

### § 94. *Of the use of the Pronouns.*

1. The personal pronouns in the Nom. : *ego, tu, nos, vos* are expressed with the verb, only when a particular *stress* rest upon them, hence, especially in *contrasts*. The possessive pronouns also : *meus, tuus*, etc. are used only in this case, or for the sake of *perspicuity*.

*Ego fleo, tu rides. Meus frater diligens est, tuus piger.* But : *Frater me amat* (not : *frater meus me amat*).

2. The genitives *nostri* and *vestri*, like *mei, tui, sui* are *objective* (not possessive), but *nostrum* and *vestrum* are used *partitively*.

*Memoria nostri* (of us). *Memor sum vestri. Memini vestri. Quis nostrum haec dixit? Nemo vestrum, sua officia explevit.* Besides, we should distinguish : *pars nostri, vestri* (a part of us, you, = of our, your being), e. g. *animus est pars nostri*, from : *pars nostrum, vestrum*, a part or some of us.

3. The pronouns : *sui, sibi, se ; suus, a, um*, are used when an object (person or thing), is opposed to itself.

*Omnia animalia se diligunt. Haec oratio sibi repugnat. Alexander, quum interemisset Clitum, familiarem suum, vix a se manus abstinuit. Hannibalem sui cives e civitate ejecerunt. Dux cum militibus suis fugit. Oravi amicum, ut sibi consulëret.*

4. When these reflexive pronouns stand as the subject of an *Infin.*, or with a *Part.*, or in dependent clauses and refer to the subject of the leading clause, they may generally be translated into English by, *he, she, it, to him, to her, to it, him, her, it, they, them, to them*.

*Animus sentit, se sua vi moveri* (the soul is conscious, that *it* is moved by its own power). *Caesar exercitu per se comparato rempublicam*



liberavit (with an army collected by *him*). Caesar milites adhortatus est, ut *se* sequerentur (that they should follow *him*).

5. The oblique cases of *is*, *ea*, *id*, on the contrary, are used, when an object is *not* opposed to *itself*, but to *another object*; *ejus*, *eorum*, and *earum* in this case, are translated into English by *his*, *her*, *their*.

Pater *ei* ignovit (*him*, e. g. his son, or *her*, e. g. his daughter; but: pater *sibi* ignovit, *himself*). Pater semper *ejus* memor erit (*his*, e. g. friends). Pater *eum* valde diligit. Mater *eam* valde amat. Dux et milites *ejus* fugerunt (and *his* soldiers; but: dux cum militibus suis fugit). Caesar fortissimus fuit: *ejus* facta admiramur (*his* deeds). Hostes multas urbes exciderunt, *earumque* incolas in servitutem abduxerunt (and *their* inhabitants).

6. The pronoun *ipse*, *a*, *um* often stands with the personal pronouns, either in the same case with the *subject*, when the subject is *contrasted with other subjects*, or in the same as the *object*, when the object is *contrasted with other objects*.

Ego *me ipse* vitupero (*I* and not another). Ego *me ipsum* vitupero (*myself* and not another). Saepe ii homines, qui *sibi ipsis* maxime placent, aliis maxime displicent. De *me ipse* loquor. De *me ipso* loquor.

7. The genitives: *ipsius*, *ipsorum* and *ipsarum*, which often stand in connection with the possessive pronouns, are to be translated into English by, *own*.

*Meus ipsius* pater (my *own* father). *Mea ipsius* mater (my *own* mother). *Meum ipsius* consilium (my *own* counsel). *Tuus ipsius* frater. Dux *sua ipsius* culpa victus est. *Noster ipsorum* pater. *Vestra ipsorum* mater. Duces *sua ipsorum* culpa victi sunt. Sorores *mea sua ipsarum* voluntate domi manent.

8. Besides what was said of the difference in usage between the interrogatives *quis*? *quid*? and *qui*? *quae*? *quod*? in Rem. 3. § 30; it should be here stated, that, when *quis* has a noun with it, the noun is to be regarded as in *apposition* with it; that *quis* inquires barely after the *name* of the person or thing (what), *qui* after its nature (what sort of), as: *quis philosophus*? (what philosopher?), *qui philosophus*? (what sort of a philosopher?).

REM. 1. For the distinction between the double forms of the indefinite pronouns *quis*, *qua*, *quid*, *qui*, *quae quod*, etc. See § 31.

9. The indefinite pronoun *quis* (*qui*), *qua* (*quae*), *quid* (*quod*), *some one*, *one*, is less emphatic than *aliquis*, etc., and stands most commonly after *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, *num*, *quum*, *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, *quo* or *quanto* (*the*, with the comparative).

*Si quis* de immortalitate animorum dubitat, insanus est. Vide, *ne quem* laedas. *Num quis* dubitat hac de re? *Quo (quanto) quis* sapientior est, eo (tanto) modestior est.

10. When *quisque* is connected with the pronouns *sui*, *sibi*, *se*, *suus*, it stands *immediately after* them.

Trahit *sua quemque* voluptas. Minime *sibi quisque* notus est.

11. When *quisque* stands after *superlatives*, it may be translated by *precisely the*, *the very*, and when it stands after *ordinal numbers* by *each*, *every*.

*Sapientissimus quisque* virtutem maxime amat (precisely the wisest). *Quarto quoque* anno (every fourth year).

12. *Uterque* (each of two, both) in connection with a *noun* takes the same *gender*, *number* and *case* as the noun; but when *uterque* is connected with a *pronoun*, this pronoun stands in the *genitive*. In both cases the predicate is in the singular.

*Uterque dux* clarus fuit (both leaders were renowned). *Uterque eorum* clarus fuit (both these were renowned). *Uterque nostrum, vestrum* (we both, you both). *Quorum uterque* (both of whom).

REM. 2. The plural of *uterque* is used when *two parties* are spoken of, to *both* or at least, *one* of which, *several* belong, or when it stands in connection with nouns used only in the plural, as: *utrique duces* (the generals, of which there are several on both sides). *Utrique*, Caesar et hostes. *Utræque* castra (both camps).

13. *Uter*, *alter*, *neuter* are used when the discourse is of *only two*; *quis*, *alius*, *nullus*, on the contrary, when the discourse is of *several*.

*Uter* fratrum ad te venit (which of the two brothers)? *Uter* vestrum hoc dixit (which of you two)? Duo sunt fratres: *alter* (the one) litteris operam dat; *alter* (the other) miles est. *Neuter* nostrum (neither of

us two). When a comparison occurs with *uter*, *alter*, *neuter*, the comparative is used where we sometimes use the superlative, as: *uter fortior est? which of the two is the bravest?*

14. The phrases, *alius aliud*, *alius aliter*, etc., are translated: *the one this, the other that; the one in this way, the other in that.*

*Alii aliud probant. Alii aliter vivunt.*

REM. 3. The indefinite pronouns, *one*, *they*, *we* are expressed in Latin:

- a) By the third Pers. Plur. Act. as: *dicunt, ferunt, tradunt*;
- b) By the third Pers. Sing. Pass., as: *narratur; bene vivitur*;
- c) By the *personal* Pass., as: *amor, one loves me, amaris, one loves thee, sapientes beati existimantur, we account the wise happy*;
- d) By the first Pers. Plur. Act. (in this case the speaker must be included under the *one*), as: *viro sapienti libenter paremus*;
- e) By the second Pers. Sing. Act., particularly of the Subj., as: *credas* (one may believe).

#### CXXVI. Exercises for translation. (§ 94.)

I. a. Parents love their children. Manlius punished (multare) the bravery of his son with death. The remembrance of you will always be agreeable to us. To each of us the love of life is inborn. The soul is the governor of us. The hand is a part of us. A part of us, to-morrow, will betake ourselves into the country. Pity thou me, wretched. Few of us have fulfilled their duties. A good king cares less for himself than for the welfare of the citizens. The wise man zealously corrects the faults inborn in him. So long as Hannibal was in Italy, nobody resisted him in battle (acies). After the general had fallen (perf.) in battle, the soldiers fled. My friend and his son have set out for Rome. The Allobroges entreated (orare) Umbrenus, that (*ut* with *Subj.*) he would pity them. Cicero had effected by Fulvia, that (*ut* with *Subj.*) Curius might disclose (aperire) to him the plans of Catiline. The Germans occupied themselves (studere) with agriculture, and the greatest part of their food (victus, ūs) consisted of (consistere with abl.) milk, cheese and flesh. I have often reflected (cogitare) with myself concerning the immortality of the soul (plur.). We see (cernere) faults (delictum) in others more than in ourselves. The soul itself moves itself. Our soldiers have conquered the enemies, not by the wisdom (consilium) of their general, but by their own bravery. We ought to care (inservire, c. dat.) not only for our own advantage, but also for [that] of others.

I. b. Children love their parents. It is the duty of the king to look out for the welfare of his subjects. Lysander, king of the Lacedæmonians, left behind (perf.) a great report of himself. With delight we pity thee. Each of us will always recollect thee and thine. I shall always preserve a recollection of you. The best part of us is immortal. A part of us had remained at home. Many of us have deserved [well] of (de) our country. The general and his soldiers have distinguished themselves in battle by bravery. Men use beasts for their advantage. [His] friends exhorted Darius, that (*ut* with *Subj.*) he should subject Greece to himself. The king Eurystheus commanded (imperare) Hercules, that (*ut* with *Subj.*) he should bring (afferre) to him the arms of the queen of the Amazons. Cleopatra admitted (admittere) a viper (aspis, idis) to herself and was killed (extinguere, perf.) by its poison. After the encounter at Issus, the mother of Darius, his wife and his daughter, were taken captives. We ourselves ought to govern (imperare) ourselves. Virtue itself protects itself. Many are wise for themselves indeed, but not for others. The (is) general cannot restrain (continere) [his] army, who does not restrain himself (se ipsum). The companions of Ulysses perished (perf.) by their own folly. Many evils happen to us by our own fault (culpa).

II. a. Each one is the architect (faber) of his fortune. Assign to each his own. With the greatest difficulty (= most difficulty) does each one judge correctly of himself. Each one ought to protect his own. Precisely the best [man] undertakes most easily dangers and labors for his country. Money has always been despised by the very best [men]. Every fifth year, all Sicily was rated (perf.) Demosthenes and Cicero were the most renowned orators of antiquity; to which dost thou give the preëminence (palma)? Virgil, Ovid and Horace were very distinguished poets of Rome; which dost thou consider the best? Each is a fault, both to believe each and [to believe] neither. I believe neither, neither thee nor thy brother. Both, Homer and Virgil, were distinguished poets; the one of them was a Greek and the other a Roman. Both, the Romans and the enemies, fought bravely. One excels in this, another in that. One occupies himself with this, another with that.

II. b. Each virtue deserves (deberi) its particular (proprius) praise. Each has (by esse) his way. Each is accustomed to measure dangers according to his fear. Fortune will form each one by his character. The very best, we ought always to place before (propōnere) others for imitation. The olive (olēa) does not bear every year, but general-

ly every two (alter) years. Who of you has heard this news? Who is the greatest orator of antiquity? Scipio and Hannibal were very renowned generals, the one was the general of the Romans, the other of the Carthaginians; which dost thou prefer? The very most learned men are the most modest. Both, Caesar and Pompey were great men; which dost thou consider the greatest? Both the Romans and the Germans were very brave; which considerest thou the bravest? Neither of us all is free from faults. Neither, neither the wicked [man] nor the flatterer, ought we to praise. Dangers threaten one *from here* (= hence), another *from there* (= thence). This pleases one, that another.

III. a. Justly one censures those who act rightly from (prae) fear. All is uncertain, when one departs (discedere) from right. One laughs. They praise me. One has praised me. The earth is surrounded (circumfundi) by that sea which we (= one) call ocean. We prepare the mind for (ad) all. He who fears what one can avoid, can in no manner live with a quiet mind. In prosperity, let us flee pride and arrogance. Without virtue we cannot be happy. What is sweeter, than to have [a friend] with whom one may dare to speak as with himself? It is becoming, to do religiously what one does.

III. b. They called those philosophers sophists, who pursued philosophy for gain or ostentation. They run. *Honorable conduct* (= the honorable) excites (movere) the approbation of those with whom one lives. They will censure me. We deride fools. The perversities (pravitas) of the soul, one properly (= correctly) calls faults. *The means of living* (victus) and care of the body, we refer to health and strength, not to property. How short is the longest life of man, when one compares (subj.) it to eternity! What one has promised, he must make good. By entreaties, one often effects (perficere) more than by force. It is becoming, not to censure that which one does not understand (intelligere, Subj.).

### § 95. Of the Numerals.

1. Concerning *mille* and *milia*, see § 33. Rem. 4.
2. The *distributives*, which answer the question, *how many each?* or *how many at a time?* are used when one wishes to express, *that a number is divided equally among several objects, or a certain number of times.*

*Pater filiis senos libros dat* (six books a piece, i. e. the father gives each of his sons six books; hence, if we suppose three sons, the father

divides eighteen books into three equal parts). *Sex fossae, quinos pedes altae, ducebantur* (each six feet deep).

3. Besides, the distributives are used for the *cardinal* numbers with nouns which have only the plural, as: *bina castra, two camps*. For *singuli, ae, a*, in this case, *uni, ae, a* is used, as: *una castra, one camp, unae nuptiae, one wedding, unae litterae, one letter, trina castra, three camps* (but: *terna castra, three camps a-piece*).

### CXXVII. *Exercises for translation.* (§ 95.)

I. A thousand soldiers have defended the city spiritedly against 3000 enemies which assaulted it. All (*omnis*) Gaul which is embraced (*continère*) by the Pyrenees mountains, the Alps and the Sevens (*mons Gebenna*) is 3,200,000 paces. The leader of our army has pursued the enemy with 1000 soldiers. As at Rome two consuls, so at Carthage two kings, were annually elected. The Roman legions consisted (*esse*) at certain times of 5000 footmen and 300 horsemen. The army of the enemies had pitched 2 camps, ours 3. The father wrote a letter to each of his 4 sons. Very often by a truce, have the already enfeebled powers of an army been restored (*reparare*). Two acres of land a-piece were divided (*perf.*) to the people. The mother gave to each child 1 apple, 6 pears, 7 plums, 8 cherries. The enemies pitched (*perf.*) 3 camps, each of which 3 trenches surrounded.

II. The army of the enemies consisted (*esse*) of 28,000 footmen and 13,500 horsemen. According to (*ex*) the opinion of Posidonius, there are 20,000,000 stadia from the earth to the moon [and] 5,000,000 stadia thence to the sun. The citizens with 1000 soldiers have defended the city against the enemy. The mother gave (*perf.*) to each boy 2 apples, 3 pears, 4 plums and 12 cherries. Caesar divided (*perf.*) among (*dat.*) the people, man for man, 10 bushels of grain and just so many pounds of oil and 300 sesterces (*nummus*). The enemies drew (*perf.*) around the camp 3 trenches, 11 feet deep and 6 feet broad. Two walls surround the city, 18 feet high and 8 feet broad. The towers upon the walls of Babylon, were about 10 feet higher than the walls. In each camp of the enemies, there were 7000 footmen and 4000 horsemen. Cicero received (*perf.*) in one day, 3 letters from (*ex*) each of three different places. How many scholars are in a class in (*gen.*) your school? about 30. The fingers of men have 3 joints, the thumb 2. A father divided (*perf.*) equally among (*dat.*) his 4 sons

4444 dollars, how many dollars did each receive (perf.)? 1111. My brother has 3 writing-tablets. Yesterday I received (perf.) 2 letters. The city has 6 towers, each of which is 268 feet high. After a long time, at length (tandem) a letter came, and this whole letter consisted (esse) of these 22 letters: Si vales, bene est; ego valeo.

### § 96. Infinitive.

The Infinitive is used:

- a) As *subject*, as: dulce et decōrum est pro patria mori;
- b) As *object*; this is especially the case with verbs signifying *to will, to be able, ought, should*, as: volo (*cupio, studeo, possum, debeo*) discere.

REM. 1. In animated description, the Latins often used the Infin. Pres. for the finite verb (*historical infinitive*), as: multum ipse *pugnare*, saepe hostem *ferire*.

REM. 2. For the Acc. with the Infin., see § 105.

### § 97. Supine.

1. The Supine in *um* stands with verbs of *going, coming, sending, calling*, in order to express the *end* of these verbs. It takes the same case as its verb.

In urbem migravi *habitatum*. Ingens hominum multitudo in urbem convēnit ludos publicos *spectatum*.

2. The Supine in *u* stands: a) with many adjectives as a *nearer definition* of them, as: *dulcis, jucundus, molestus, dignus, indignus, facilis, difficilis*; b) with *fas est* (it is lawful), *nefas est* (it is not lawful) and *opus est*.

Pira dulcia sunt *gustatu*. Fas est *dictu*. Nefas est *dictu*. *Deliberatu* opus est.

## CXXVIII. Exercises for translation. (§§ 96, 97.)

I. To a cultivated and learned man, to think is to live. They, whose fathers or apestors have distinguished (*praestare*) themselves by some renown, seek to excel in the very same kind of praise. Practice teaches to bear (*ferre*) labor. Without virtue nobody can be happy. The army hastens, in order to deliver the city from the siege. The Romans sent (perf.) ambassadors to Delphi, in order to consult the oracle. What is so pleasant (*jucundus*) to perceive and to hear, as a

discourse adorned with wise thoughts and weighty (gravis) words? An unripe grape is bitter to taste. The fish is easy to catch in disturbed water.

II. To prefer money to friendship is base. Poets wish both to delight and to profit. The soul cannot decay. It is easier to see errors than to correct [them]. All that comes to pass by our fault (culpa), we ought to bear patiently. A great multitude of men assembled (perf.) in (in with acc.) the city, in order to see (spectare) the public games. The shorter a narrative is, the plainer (dilucidus) and easier it is to understand (cognoscere). The orators pass over all which is base to speak.

### § 98. Gerund.

1. The gerund in the Nom. in connection with *est*, as: *scribendum est*, is translated into English: *it is to be* (written) or: *one must, one should* (write). The person which *must* or *should* do something is put in the dative. Hence we may translate it into English by: *I, thou, he, she, it must, should* (write), *we must, should* (write), etc.

2. The gerund, like the infinitive, takes the same case as its verb. But instead of the gerund with an object in the accusative, the *gerundive* is used. See § 99. 1.

*Obtemperandum est virtutis praeceptis. Suo cuique iudicio utendum est* (each one must use his own judgment).

3. The remaining cases of the gerund supply the cases of the Infin. Still the Acc. of the gerund is used only in connection with a *preposition*. The use of the cases of the gerund is the same as the use of the cases of substantives. Nom. *Natare* est utile (swimming is useful).

Gen. *Natandi* ars utilis est (the art of swimming is useful). *Natandi* sum peritus (I am skilled in swimming).

Dat. *Natando* homo aptus est (man is fitted for swimming).

Acc. *Natare* disco (I learn to swim, or swimming); but: *ad natandum* homo aptus est (is fitted for swimming, or: to swim). *Inter natandum* (while swimming); *ob natandum* (on account of swimming).

Abl. *Natando* corporis vires exercentur (by swimming). *In natando* (in swimming), *a natando* (by swimming), *ex natando, de natando*.



REMARK. The Gerund being of the nature of a noun, is governed in its different cases in the same manner as a noun.

4. The gerund in the oblique cases also, like the Infin., takes the same case as its verb. Still, instead of the gerund in the Dat. and Acc. with an object in the *accusative*, the *gerundive* is used. See § 99. 1.

*Arx pueros bene educandi difficilis est. Pauci idonei sunt ad aliis imperandum.*

### CXXIX. Exercises for translation. (§ 98.)

I. Man should always think that life is short. The laws of Lycurgus formed (erudire) the youth by labors, by hunting, running, hungering, thirsting, freezing, sweating. The effort to relieve the misery of others, is very agreeable to good men. Avoid thou all enticements to (gen.) sinning (peccare). Not for (dat.) the school, but for life we should learn. A good scholar is desirous of learning much. During (inter) the deliberation (consultare) one ought not to contend (decertare) with arms. One must not spare an enemy. Boys and youths should use exercise of body and mind. Who has not learned to obey, is not fit (idoneus) to command. Caesar and Pompey were inclined (propensus ad) to spare the enemies. By nothing do men approach (accedere) nearer to God, than by giving safety to men. By teaching we learn.

II. It is sufficiently known, that good men must contend with the bad. Socrates was accustomed, by inquiry (percontari) and questioning (= asking) to elicit the sentiments (opinio) of those with whom he discoursed (disserere). One must come for aid, not merely to the body, but much (multo) more to the understanding and the mind. We should forget injuries. Who does not know, that the hope of impunity is a very great enticement to (gen.) sin (peccare). All the citizens burned (exardescere, *perf.*) with desire to fight for the safety of their country. One must use the occasion. Learn, O boys, early the art of using time wisely! Few men are fitted (*idoneus* with *dat.*) to speak. Man is born to act. The Persians were very skilful in (gen.) riding. The character (mos, *plur.*) is discovered (= uncovered) in (inter) playing freely. From delaying (cunctari) Fabius was called the delayer. One must abstain from ignoble pleasures.

### § 99. Gerundive.

1. When the gerund would take an object in the *accusative*,

the *gerundive* is *commonly* used instead of the gerund in the Gen. and Abl. and *always* instead of the gerund in the Nom., Dat. and Acc. The *agent or doer*, as with the gerund, stands in the *dative*.

2. The change of the construction of the gerund into that of the gerundive takes place in the following manner :

- a) The noun standing in the Acc. with the gerund, is put in *the same case in which the gerund stands* ;
- b) The gerund is changed into the gerundive.
- c) But the gerundive is put in the *same case, number and gender* as the noun.

E. g. If in the phrase : *ars pueros educandi* one would use the gerundive instead of the gerund, he must : a) put the Acc. *pueros* in the case of the gerund *educandi*, hence in the Gen. : *puerorum* (*ars puerorum*) ; b) he must then change the gerund *educandi* into the gerundive *educandus, a, um* ; c) finally, must put this gerundive in the same gender, number and case as *puerorum*, hence *educandorum*.

<i>Nom.</i>	Nobis bene <i>educandum</i> est <i>pueros</i> , must be changed into :	<i>Pueri</i> nobis bene <i>educandi</i> sunt.
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Ars civitatem gubernandi</i> est difficillima ; for which commonly :	<i>Ars civitatis gubernandae</i> est difficillima.
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Asinus idoneus</i> est <i>onera portando</i> , must be changed into :	<i>Asinus idoneus</i> est <i>oneribus portandis</i> .
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Puer aptus</i> est ad <i>litteras tractandum</i> , must be changed into :	<i>Puer aptus</i> est ad <i>litteras tractandas</i> .
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Litteras tractando</i> ingenium acuitur, for which commonly :	<i>Litteris tractandis</i> ingenium acuitur.

REMARK. But the gerund in the Gen., Dat. and Abl. is not changed into the Gerundive when the object in the Acc. is the *neuter* of an *adjective* or *pronoun*, as : *studium vera cognoscendi* (not *verorum cognoscendorum*), *cupidus sum hoc audiendi* (not *hujus audiendi*).

3. The gerundive stands also with verbs signifying to *take, to give, care, attend to, give up, cause* and the like, in order to express an *intention* or *end*.

*Urbs a duce militibus diripienda data est* (for plundering). *Urbem dux militibus diripiendam dedit*. *Perfugam Fabricius reducendum curavit* (caused to be led back).

CXXX. *Exercises for translation.* (§ 99.)

I. When wrath moves thee very much (maxime), thou must curb thy tongue very carefully. The art of governing (gubernare) a state well and wisely, is very difficult. Many are more desirous of increasing [their] riches than of exercising [their] virtue. One must account wisdom the art of living well and peacefully. The camel is fitted (aptus, a, um, with *dat.*) for bearing great loads. Water is very useful for preserving our health. Gymnastic exercises avail very much (plurimum) for (ad) confirming the health. The Phenicians were very skilful in the art of governing ships. No possession is to be esteemed higher than virtue. The soldiers tried (experiri) all [things] in order to (ad) capture the city. The first book of Cicero's Tusculan Disputations treats (est) of the contempt of death; the second of the enduring of pain; the third of the relieving of sorrow. Socrates passed (perfi.) [his] whole life in improving the morals of others. To be drawn (abdūci) from *active duties* (res gerere) by the effort to investigate truth, is *inconsistent with duty* (contra officium). The life of the wise man consists in the exercise of virtue. Good parents bestow (*collocare in* with *abl.*) all care upon the proper (= good) bringing up of their children. Some (nonnulli) sports are not unprofitable for (*dat.*) sharpening (acuere) the wits (ingenium) of boys. The contempt of death avails very much in delivering the soul from fear. Nature has given (tradere) to woman, the attending to (procurare) and managing (administrare) the domestic affairs (res). Caesar gave up (concedere) the taken city to the soldiers, for plundering (diripere). Good parents take care (curare) to instruct their children well.

II. He (is) is to be accounted (existimare) free, who serves no vice (turpitude). The desire (cura) to preserve itself, is inborn by nature in every living being. In joking (jocari), we must preserve (adhibere) temperance. The faculty of curbing the tongue is very useful. Many, on account of a desire for fame, are desirous to carry on war. We should pronounce nobody happy before death. Virtue has the greatest power of freeing minds from the passions. Soldiers should know how (= be acquainted with) to endure hunger and thirst. Innumerable things have been created by God in order (*dat.*) to delight men. Many plants are useful for (*dat.*) healing wounds. How many things are necessary for the preservation of life! Thou must try all [things] in order to obtain the praise of the good. The winds are very useful for (ad) dispersing the injurious dust. By the pursuit (tractare) of literature, we should become (evadere) not merely more learned, but

better also. The book of Plutarch concerning the bringing up of children (*puer*) contains many useful precepts. In the performance (*persēqui*) of all duties, one must bestow an effort (*contentio*) of the soul. Be unwilling to receive an office to the management (*administrare*) of which thou *art not competent* (= hast not grown). In the selection (*eligere*) of friends, we should bestow the greatest foresight. Conon caused (*curare*) the walls of Athens, destroyed by Lysander, to be repaired (*reficere*). We give the boys good books to read. Mithridates *took means* (*curare*) to kill all Roman citizens in (*abl.*) the whole of Asia in one day.

### § 100. *Participle.*

1. The participle, like the *Infin.*, governs the same case as its verb, as: *epistolam scribens, hostibus parcentis*, and like an adjective, agrees in gender, number and case with its noun, as: *puer laudatus, puella laudata*.

2. The participle is used as follows:

- a) Wholly as an *adjective*, as: *rosa florens pulchra est* (the blooming rose). *Rosa est florens* (the rose is blooming);
- b) Instead of the relative *who, which* with some form of the *finite verb*, as: *cives acriter cum hostibus dimicabant urbem oppugnantibus* (who were assaulting the city);
- c) Instead of the conjunctions, *while, as, after, when, if, because, since, although* with the *finite verb*, as: *cogitantes coelestia, haec nostra ut exigua et minima contemnimus* (when we think upon heavenly things). *Hostes, amnem transgressi, castra muniverunt* (after they had passed over the river).

3. The *Part. Fut. Act.* is often used in order to express a *design* or *purpose*, and in this case is to be rendered by *that, in order that* with the *finite verb*, or by *in order to* with the *Infin.*

*Ingens hominum multitudo in urbem convēnit ludos publicos spectatura.*

4. There are two kinds of *participial construction* in

Latin: the one is called the *conjunctive participial construction*, the other the *ablative absolute*. Since we generally translate the participle into English by a subordinate clause, the difference between these two constructions may be explained as follows:

- a) The *conjunctive participial construction* is used, when the subordinate clause has no subject of its own, but has for its subject either the subject or object of the principal clause. In this case, the participle agrees in gender, number and case with this subject or object.

*Sol oriens* pellit noctem (when the sun rises, it (i. e. the sun) chases away the night). *Aristides*, patriā *pulsus*, Lacedaemōnem fugit (as Aristides had been expelled from his country, he (Aristides) fled to Lacedaemon). *Hostes*, victoriam *adepti*, in castra se receperunt (after the enemy had obtained the victory, they (the enemy) returned to the camp). Caesar *hostes fugatos* persecutus est, after the enemy had been put to flight, Caesar pursued them (the enemy).

- b) The *ablative absolute* is used, when the subordinate clause has its own subject, which is neither the subject nor the object of the principal clause. In this case the subject of the subordinate clause stands in the *ablative* and the participle is added in the same case.

*Sole oriente*, nox fugit (when the sun rises, the night flees). *Recupera-tā pace*, artes efflorescunt (as soon as peace is regained, the arts flourish).

REM. Very often both the *conjunctive participle* and the *ablative absolute* may be translated by a *substantive* with or without a *preposition*, as: the rising of the sun dispels the night; after obtaining the victory, the enemy returned to the camp; with the setting of the sun night flees.

REM. 2. *Substantives* and *adjectives* also, are often used in the same way as participles, as: bellum Gallicum, *Caesare imperatore*, gestum est (under the conduct of Caesar). *Naturā duce*, errare nullo pacto potest (under the guidance of nature). Natus est Augustus, *Cicerone et Antonio consulibus* (in the consulship of Cicero and Anthony).

### CXXXI. Exercises for translation. (§ 100.)

I. a. What is so inhuman, as to convert (convertēre) eloquence, which is given by nature for the safety and preservation of men, to the

destruction of the good? Change of country does not always change the morals. The enemies pitched a camp in a place which was surrounded by marshes (*palus*) and woods. When we wish to begin (*exordior*) a work, we must (*gerundive*) bestow a careful preparation. Tarquinius Superbus was deprived of [his] dominion, as he was besieging Ardea. Since the Romans feared the snares of the Germans, they returned over the Rhine. After Dionysius the tyrant had been expelled from Syracuse, he instructed (*docère*) boys at Corinth. A laugh sometimes breaks forth so violently, that we cannot, even when we desire, restrain (*tenerè*) [it]. Hephaestion, of all the friends of Alexander, was the most dear, because he had been brought up in like manner with himself. When the storks wish to migrate (*abire*) they assemble at (*in* with *acc.*) one place. In the third Punic war, Scipio passed over to Africa in order to destroy Chathage.

I. b. What do eighty years, which are spent (*exigère*) in (*per*) inactivity (*inertia*), profit (*juvare*) a man? Two friends are like one soul which dwells in two bodies. When Alexander had possessed himself of Egypt, he built Alexandria. Hipparchus, a son of Pisistratus, fell in the battle of Marathon (*Marathonius*, a, um), while he was bearing arms against his country. Sulla was sent to Asia, in order to carry on war with the king Mithridates. After the enemies had possessed themselves of the city, they plundered it. *By day* (*interdiu*) we do not see the stars, because they are obscured by the light of the sun. We have confidence in upright men, even if they are not sworn. The enemies dispersed (*dilâbi*, *perf.*) into the city, in order to protect themselves, by (*abl.*) the walls (*moenia*). We cannot live happily (*beate*), if we fear death.

II. a. When we strive against nature, the labor is vain. Men have invented innumerable arts, while nature taught [them]. What solicitude would torment the wicked, if the fear of capital punishment were taken away? Since God guides human affairs, we should be destitute of all fear. When humanity is extirpated from the soul, the man ceases to be man. When Cato had read through (*passive*) the *Phædo* of Plato, he took his life. Under the reign of Augustus, the Roman empire was rated (*perf.*). After the troops were drawn together, the general determined (*perf.*) to attack the camp of the enemies. After taking away piety and religion, disturbance of life and a great confusion follow. At the instigation (by *auctor*) of the magians, Xerxes was to have burned (*inflamare*) the temples of Greece. The wise man remains rich even after the loss (*amittere*) of all the goods of fortune. We hope, that our army, which has distinguished itself under the con-

duct (regere) of a bad general, will acquire for itself still (etiam) greater glory under the conduct of a good general.

II. b. When pleasure (voluptas) reigns (dominari), all great virtues are in a low condition. The wise man will not be unhappy, after the loss of all his goods. After the rising of the sun, the mists were scattered (discuti, *perf.*). After a knowledge (cognoscere) of the nature of all things, we are freed (levare) from (abl.) superstition. Caesar, after the line-of-battle of the enemies was broken through and scattered, led back his soldiers into the camp. The sedition of the soldiers, which had been quieted by the wisdom (consilium) of the general, *broke out again* (recrudescere, *perf.*) in his absence. After the expulsion of the kings, Junius Brutus and Tarquinius Collatinus were made consuls. Under the reign of Augustus, Christ was born; under the reign of Tiberius, he died. The Greeks took possession of Thermopylae as the Persians approached. Caesar, although he had conquered (passive) the Gauls, did not dismiss the army. The Greeks, under the conduct of Cimon, fought against the Persians at Marathon. Because the night came on (ingruere), Caesar led back his soldiers into the camp.

## COMPOUND SENTENCES.

### § 101. A. *Coördinate Sentences.*

1. Coördinate sentences are those which have a common reference to each other, but otherwise are independent of each other, as: Demosthenes was a great orator, Cicero also was a great orator.

2. The relation of coördinate sentences is:

- 1) *Copulative*, which is expressed: a) by: et, atque, ac (never before a vowel or *h*), que, *and*; b) by: etiam, quoque, *also*; c) neque or nec (and not, also not); d) et—et, *both—and, as well—as also*; e) non modo (solum, tantum)—sed etiam, *not only (merely)—but also*; f) quum—tum, *so well—as especially*; g) modo—modo, or nunc—nunc, or tum—tum, *now—now, then—then*; h) neque (nec)—neque (nec), *neither—nor*;

- 2) *Adversative*, which is expressed by: sed, *but, but*

*rather*; *autem*, *at*, *vero*, *verum*, *but*; *tamen*, *yet*; *attāmen*, *veruntāmen*, *but yet*;

- 3) *Disjunctive*, which is expressed by: a) *aut*, *vel*, *ve*, *sive* (*seu*), *or*; b) *aut—aut*, *vel—vel*, *either—or*; *sive—sive*, *whether—or*, *either—or*;
- 4) *Causal*, which is expressed by *nam* and *enim* (*for*);
- 5) *Deductive*, which is expressed by: *igitur*, *itāque*, *ergo*, *hence*, *therefore*; *ideo*, *on this account*, and the like.

REM. 1. *Que* and *ve* always stand attached to the word to which they belong, as: *pater materque*, *pater materve*; *autem*, *vero*, *enim*, *quoque*, *igitur* do not stand at the beginning of the sentence, but after the first word.

REM. 2. *Sive—sive* are used with the *indicative*, as: *sive id verum est*, *sive falsum* (whether it be true or false). *Aut—aut* and *vel—vel* differ from each other in this, that in *aut—aut* the one clause *really* and *necessarily* excludes the other, so that one can be conceived of as holding good only when the idea of the other is excluded; but in *vel—vel* the exclusion is only *allowable* or *optional*.

## § 102. B. Subordinate Sentences.

1. Subordinate sentences are those which *complete* or *define* other sentences and hence are dependent.

2. The sentence to which another belongs as a dependent part, is called the *principal sentence*, the dependent sentences or clause, on the contrary, is called the *subordinate sentence*. E. g. in the compound sentence: "when the spring comes, the trees bloom," the last clause: "the trees bloom," is the principal sentence, and the first "when the spring comes," the subordinate sentence.

3. Subordinate sentences are:

- a) *Substantive sentences*, i. e. such as are but the expanded idea of some case of a *substantive*, as: I rejoice, *that thou art in health* (= I rejoice *at thy health*);
- b) *Adjective sentences*, i. e. such as are but the expanded idea of an *adjective* (or *participle*), as: the



rose, *which blooms*, is beautiful (= *the blooming rose*);

- c) *Adverbial sentences*, i. e. such as are only an expansion of an *adverb* or an *expression of the nature of an adverb*, as: *after the enemy was conquered*, our soldiers returned (= *after the conquering of the enemy*).

### § 103. *Of the use of the Modes in Subordinate Sentences.*

1. In the subordinate sentences which are introduced by the indefinite relative pronouns: *quisquis*, *quicunque*, *qualiscunque*, *quotcunque*, *ubicunque*, *quocunque*, *quotiescunque*, *utcunque*, *quotquot*, etc. the *indicative* is used in Latin, while we, in English, generally use the pronoun *whoever*, etc. with the *subjunctive*.

*Sapiens, ubicunque est*, beatus est (wherever he may be). *Quoquo modo res sese habet*, in sententia mea permanebo (however the thing may be). *Quicquid est*, ego te non deseram (whatever it may be).

2. The use of the Subj. in subordinate sentences will be more fully explained in treating of particular subordinate sentences. For the present the following may suffice:

- a) *Ut, that, in order that, ne, in order that not, that not, quin* (after the phrases: *it is not doubtful, I do not doubt*), *that*, always take the Subj.;
- b) In questions depending upon another sentence (*indirect questions*) the Subj. is always used, as: *dic mihi, cur rideas* (tell me, why you laugh). *Nescio, ubi fueris* (I do not know, where you have been).

### § 104. *Succession of the Tenses in Subjunctive Subordinate Sentences.*

The following rules may be given for the succession of the tenses in subjunctive subordinate sentences:

- a) Upon a *principal tense*: Pres. Perfect-present and

Fut., there follows again a *principal Tense*: Pres. Perfect. present and the Future Periphrastic Present, according as the discourse in the subordinate sentence is of a *like timed, completed or future action*;

b) Upon an *historical tense*: Imperf. Perfect-historical and Plupf., there follows again an *historical tense*: Imperf. Plupf. and Future Periphrastic Imperf., according as the discourse in the subordinate sentence is of a *like timed, completed or future action*.

*Scio, quid agas.*

*Scio, quid egeris.*

*Scio, quid acturus sis.*

*Cognovi (I have learned), quid agas.*

*Cognovi, quid egeris.*

*Cognovi, quid aucturus sis.*

*Audiam, quid agas.*

*Audiam, quid egeris.*

*Audiam, quid acturus sis.*

*Sciebam, quid ageres.*

*Sciebam, quid egrisses.*

*Sciebam, quid acturus esses.*

*Cognovi (I learned), quid ageres.*

*Cognovi, quid egrisses.*

*Cognovi, quid acturus esses.*

*Cognoveram, quid ageres.*

*Cognoveram, quid egrisses.*

*Cognoveram, quid acturus esses.*

*Opto, ut ad me venias. Optabam, ut ad me venires. Te rogo, ne mihi succenseas. Te rogabam, ne mihi succensereres. Non dubito, quin rem tuam bene geras. Non dubitavi (I have not doubted), quin rem tuam bene geras. Non dubitabo, quin rem tuam bene gesturus sis. Non dubitabam (dubitavi, I doubted, dubitaveram), quin rem tuam bene gereres (gessisses, gesturus esses).*

## CXXXII. Exercises for translation. (§ 103, 104.)

I. In whatever way the thing has itself, it is not permitted to thee to desert (deserere) the post committed to thee. Whoever that wretched [man] may be, we would lend aid to him! The goods of the body and of fortune, however great they may be, are uncertain and frail. Wherever thou mayest be, thou shouldst live uprightly. Who is so powerful, that he can *dispense with* (carere) the aid of others. Tell me, what thou doest now, did yesterday, and wilt do to-morrow. The friend related to me, where he had been, where he was, and where he would be. Who doubts, that Hannibal fought very bravely against the Romans? Nobody doubted, that Hannibal fought very bravely against the Romans. I do not doubt, that our soldiers will bear off the victory over the enemy. Nobody doubted, that we should bear off the victory over the enemy.

II. Whatever the opinion of the philosophers may be concerning

the highest good, virtue has in itself sufficient protection for a peaceful life. Whatever we may do, we should do it deliberately. I do not doubt, that you have benefited your country. However great thy wisdom may be, thou shouldst still always be modest. Whithersoever thou mayest turn thy eyes, thou seest the traces of the divine wisdom. What man is so wise, that he can never be deceived? I do not doubt that thou art now contented with thy lot. I did not doubt, that thou wast contented with thy lot. Tell me where thou hast journeyed and whither thou art about to [journey]. It is not doubtful, that, when (ubi) [their] country may be in danger, the citizens will fight bravely. It was not doubtful, that, when [their] country was in danger, the citizens would fight bravely.

## I. SUBSTANTIVE SENTENCES.

**PRELIMINARY REMARK.** In the English language, *substantive sentences* are introduced by the conjunctions: *that, that not, in order that, in order that not*. In Latin they are expressed by: a) the accusative with the Infin.; b) by substantive sentences with *ut, ne, quo, quomānus, quin, quod*.

### § 105. A. *Accusative with Infinitive*.

1. When a sentence, as: *rosa floret*, is the *object* of one of the verbs mentioned below (No. 2.), in Latin, the subject (*rosa*) is changed into the Acc. (*rosam*) and the finite verb into the Infin., as: *video rosam florere* (I see, that the rose blooms). When the predicate is expressed by an *adjective* or *substantive* with the verb *sum, fio*, etc. (§§ 84.), the adjective or substantive is also put in the Acc., as: *aqua frigida est*; *sento aquam frigidam esse* (I perceive, that the water is cold). *Audimus, Cyrum regem Persarum fuisse* (we hear, that Cyrus was king of the Persians). This construction is called the Acc. with the Infinitive.

**REM. 1.** In English, this construction is generally expressed by *that* with a *finite verb* and a noun, adjective or participle in the *nominative*.

2. The Acc. with the Infin. is used in the following cases:
- a) After verbs of *believing, thinking, feeling* and *perceiving*; of *saying* and *relating*;

- b) After verbs of *willing, desiring, letting, bidding* and *forbidding*; *volo, nolo, malo, cupio, studeo*; *sino* and *patior*; *jubeo* and *veto*;
- c) After the expressions: *apparet*, (it is evident), *constat*, (it is known), and the like; *opus est*, (it is necessary), *licet, justum est, aequum est, mos est*, and the like.

*Sentimus calere ignem, nivem esse albam, dulce mel. Historia narrat, Romam a Romulo conditam esse. Volo te ex itinere mox redire. Virtus non patitur nos luxuria indulgere. Caesar milites castra munire jussit. Caesar milites pontem rescindere vetuit. Constat inter omnes, Romanos fuisse fortissimos.*

REM. 2. When no *agent* is expressed after *jubere, vetare, sinere* and *pati* in the *Infin.*, the *Infin. Pass.* is used in Latin. *Caesar castra muniri jussit. Caesar pontem rescindi vetuit. Caesar urbem diripi passus est.*

REM. 3. With *licet* (it is permitted) there is commonly found the *Dat.* (of the person) with the *Infin.*, instead of the *Acc.* with the *Infin.* as: *quieto esse tibi licet.*

REM. 4. *Oportet* and *necesse est* are connected either with the *Acc.* with the *Infin.* or with the *Subjunctive* without *ut*, as: *oportet nos virtuti studere*, or, *virtuti studeamus oportet. Necesse est sapientem semper beatum esse*, or: *sapiens semper beatus sit necesse est.*

3. The *Nom.* with the *Infin.* stands with the *passives*: *dicor, trador, feror* (they say that I, or I am said); *putor, credor, existimor* (they believe that I), *videor* (it seems that I), *jubeor, vetor* (they bid me, forbid me).

(*Ego*) *bonus esse dicor* (they say, that I am good, or: I am said, etc.)

(*Tu*) *bonus esse diceris* (they say, that thou art good, or: thou art said, etc.)

*Romulus fortissimus fuisse dicitur (traditur, fertur).*

(*Nos*) *boni esse putamur* (they believe, that we are good).

(*Vos*) *boni esse putamini (credimini, existimamini, judicamini).*

*Romani fortissimi fuisse dicuntur (traduntur, putantur).*

*Romulus ad deos transisse creditus est.*

(*Ego*) *rem intelligere videor* (I seem to understand the thing, or: it seems that I understand). (*Tu*) *laetus esse videris. Ille laetus esse videtur.*

(*Nos*) *laeti esse videmur. (Vos) laeti esse videmini.*

*Illi laeti esse videntur. (Ego) laetus esse videbar, etc.*

(*Ego*) *jubeor* scribere (they bid me write). (*Tu*) *vetaris* scribere (they forbid thee to write). *Milites* pontem facere *jussi sunt* (they commanded the soldiers to build a bridge).

### CXXXIII. Exercises for translation. (§ 105.)

I. I know that my body is mortal, [but] that my soul is immortal. Aristotle shows, that the poet Orpheus never existed. It is known, that the Romans destroyed Carthage. Some philosophers believed, that the world *came into existence* (*nasci*) by chance. Titus was unwilling, that *any one* (*quisquam*) should go away from him sad. We hope, that thou wilt soon return from (ex) the journey. Who can deny, that God governs the whole world? It is known, that Hannibal fought very bravely against the Romans. History relates, that, in the Persian wars (*bella Persica*), innumerable troops of the Persians were routed by the Greeks. Darius promised, that he would give 1000 talents to the murderer of Alexander. It is not permitted to many men, to be idle. The Germans suffered no (non) wine to be imported (*importare*, see Rem. 2.) to them. We should be willing (*velle*) to live with an inferior (*inferior*), as we wish a superior (*superior*) to live with us. There is no one, who should not wish, that his children should be happy. Demosthenes did not permit, that the Athenians should make peace with Philip, king of Macedon. It is related (*tradi*) that Aristides, was the most just of all the Athenians. They relate that the Milesian Thales first (*primus*) predicted *an eclipse of the sun* (*defectio solis*). Who reigns well, must (*necesse est*) sometime (*aliquando*) have obeyed. We should (*oportet*) serve philosophy, in order that true freedom may fall to our lot. A good citizen should (*oportet*) prefer the dignity of the state to all his own advantages. Caesar bade (*perf.*) his soldiers to assault the city. Caesar caused (*jubere*) the city to be assaulted. The general forbade his soldiers, to plunder the taken city. The general forbade, to plunder the taken city. They say, that Ceres first (*prima*) taught the use of grain to men. Alexander allowed the grave of Cyrus to be opened. It seems, as though the sun were smaller than the earth. It is said, that the war is finished.

II. Who does not know, that the wise man is peaceful in every (*omnis*) condition of life? Who can deny, that he has ever done wrong? It is known of all, that Athens was the inventress of most arts and literature. It is better (*sati*) that we benefit even the bad on account of the good, than that we *be wanting* (*deesse*) to the good on account of the bad. The wise man frankly (*ingenue*) acknowledges,

that he does not know much. Thales said, that water is the beginning of all things. We know, that the course of life is short, [but] that [the course] of fame will be eternal. It is known, that the conspiracy of Catiline was detected by Cicero. Who does not know, that the health is strengthened by the exercise of the body? The laws do not permit, that an injury should be done to the citizens. I would rather, that the enemies should hate me, than that I them. Hadrian wished, that the Euphrates (Euphrâtes, is) might be the border of his kingdom. I hope, that by length of time, thy sorrow will be abated. Alcibiades could not endure (pati), that Athens should serve the Lacedemonians. Men are not willing, that the very same [man] should be distinguished in very many things. It was not permitted to the Romans, to depart uninjured from the country of the enemy. It is related (tradi), that Romulus and Remus, the founders of Rome, were brought up by Faustulus, a royal shepherd. They relate (ferri), that the giants made war upon the gods. It is believed, that letters were invented by the Phenicians. It is necessary (necesse est), that the world be ruled by God. It is needful (oportet), both that thou shouldst learn, and that thou shouldst establish (confirmare) what thou hast learned by deed (agere, gerund). Whom you (second pers. subj.) would make learned, you must (oportet) at the same time make attentive. It is necessary (oportet), that virtue should despise (aspernari) and hate what is opposed (= opposite) to it. Marcellus first bade (perf.) the footmen, then the horsemen to break forth against the enemies. Reason forbids us, to obey (obtemperare) the passions. The general caused (jubere) three camps to be fortified. Caesar forbade the soldiers, to desert the camp. It appears, as if thou hast not understood the thing. It appears, that you have read this book carefully. It is said, that the enemy have broken into our camp.

§ 106. B. *Ut, ne, ut ne, ut non* with the Subjunctive.

1. *Ut, that* (ne, ut ne, *that not*, neve (neu), and *that not, nor*), in the first place, is used to express the *end* or *object* (ut final), and stands after expressions of *making* and *effecting*; *caring* and *striving*; *asking*, *demanding*, *exhorting*, *persuading*, *advising*, *exciting*, *urging*, *commanding* (impēro), *ordering*; of *wishing*, *allowing* or *permitting* (concēdo, permitto); finally, after every sentence, in order to express an *end* or *object* (ut = *in order that*, ne = *in order that not*).

*Sol efficit, ut omnia floreat. Ante senectutem curavi, ut bene viverem; in senectute, ut bene moriar. Oro te, ut mihi succurras. Te rogo, ne defatigēre, neu diffidas. Caesar milites hortatus est, ut acriter dimicarent. Dux imperavit, ut milites stationes suas servarent. Edimus, ut vivamus; non vivimus, ut edamus.*

REM. The verbs: *volo, nolo, malo, cupio* are more frequently used with the Acc. with the Infin., than with *ut* and the Subj. Comp. §§ 105, 2. b). *Impero* is used with the Acc. with the Infin. only when the Infin. is in the *passive*, as: *dux imperavit urbem diripi*. Concerning *jubeo* and *veto* see § 105, 2. b.) and Rem. 2.

2. In the second place, *ut* (that), *ut non*, *that not*, is used in order to express a *result* (*ut consecutive*), and stands especially after: *est, fit, accidit, evenit, contingit; reliquum est, restat* and the like; after *ita, sic, adeo, tam, tantus, talis*, etc.; finally, after any sentence, in order to express a *result* (*ut = so that*).

*Persaepe evenit, ut utilitas cum honestate certet. Restat, ut de litterarum utilitate loquar. Ita vivere debemus, ut in omni re recti conscientiam servemus.*

3. After expressions of *fear* and *solicitude*, *ne* is to be translated by *that* and *ut* and *ne non* by *that not*.

*Omnes cives metuebant, ne urbs ab hostibus expugnaretur. Timeo, ut hos labores sustineas. Vereor, ne non perficiam, quod suscepi.*

#### CXXXIV. Exercises for translation. (§ 106.)

I. Cicero, informed (edocēre) of all [things] by the ambassadors, commanded the pretors, that they should seize the Allobroges at the bridge. The laws of the Lacedemonians looked (spectare) to this (id), that the youth should be formed by labors. Virtue alone effects, that we may please God and man. It often happens, that advantage contends with uprightness. The teacher exhorted the scholars, that they should not devote themselves to indolence. Reason demands, that we should restrain the desires. The citizens of the captured city entreated Caesar, that he would spare their children. Love virtue, in order that thou mayest live happily (beate). Themistocles sought a narrow pass, in order that he might not be surrounded by the multitude of the enemies. At Athens it was accustomed to happen to the very best, that he was banished (in exilium pelli). The wise man is excited (movēre) to act rightly by virtue itself, not by advantage. The power of upright-

ness is so great, that we esteem it, whether (vel) in those whom we have never seen, or (vel) even in an enemy. Aristides died in so great poverty, that he scarcely left behind wherewith (quī) he might be buried (efferre). It is possible, that one (quis) may think (sentire) correctly, and [yet] that which he thinks may not be expressed (eloqui) elegantly (polite). I fear (vereor), that I may have renewed (refrigere) thy pain by my letter. A great (ingens) fear had seized the Roman senate, that a tribune of the people would be chosen from the plebeians (plebs). We feared, that our measures had displeased you. The enemies apprehended, that their allies could not bear the attack of the Romans.

II. Before old age, we should look out, that we live well, in old age, that we die well. If all [things] happen (fieri) by fate, nothing can admonish us, that we should be more cautious. Nature incites us, to strive to obtain the agreeable, to flee the disagreeable. The sun effects, that all trees, plants and herbs bloom and reach maturity. It comes to pass by (abl.) nature, that children are loved by [their] parents. Parents look out, that [their] children are not surrounded by bad men. Themistocles advised, that the Athenians should desert the walls and defend themselves with ships. The soldiers demanded, that the citizens should deliver up their arms. Many praise others, in order that they may be praised [in turn] by them. The Gauls, after they had received the gold of the Romans (abl. abs.), returned, in order to besiege the capitol. Caesar commanded the soldiers, not to go out from the camp. He is happy (beatus), to whom it happens, to obtain (assēqui) wisdom. The composing of the book concerning old age, was so delightful to Cicero, that it took from (abstergere) him all the burdens (onus) of age. In a short time, the minds coalesced into (abl.) so great friendship, that every distinction of rank (ordo et locus) was forgotten. So great is the multitude of stars, that they cannot be counted. It happened, that the very same night in which Alexander the great was born, the temple of the Ephesian Diana was burned (conflagrare). There was very great fear at Rome, that the Gauls would return the second time (itērum) to Rome. The Romans feared, that the victory would cost them much blood. All the citizens feared, that the peace would not be of longer continuance.

### § 107. C. Quo, quominus and quin with the Subjunctive.

1. Quo is used for *ut eo*, and indeed: a) in the meaning, *in order that thereby*; b) in the meaning, *that (in order that, so that) so much the*, when a comparative follows.



Haec lex data est, *quo* malefici *deterrentur*. Caesar milites cohortatus est, *quo* animo *fortiore* essent.

2. *Quominus* stands after expressions of *hindering, preventing, resisting, refusing* and is to be translated into English by *that*.

Aetas non *impedit*, *quominus* litteras *tractemus*. Quid sapienti potest *obstare*, *quominus* beatus sit? Non *repugnabo*, *quominus* hunc librum *legas*.

3. *Quin* is used:

a) In the meaning *that not*, instead of *ut non* after a *negative* principal clause.

*Facere non possum*, *quin* quotidie ad te *mittam* litteras (I cannot forbear to write to you daily). *Fieri non potuit*, *quin* urbs ab hostibus *caperetur*. *Nihil abest*, *quin* *sim* miserrimus. *Non multum abfuit*, *quin* hostes *vincerentur*. *Homines barbari sibi non temperabant*, *quin* in *Italiam* *contenderent*.

b) In the meaning *that*, after *non dubito*, *nemo dubitat*, *quis dubitat?* *dubium non est*.

*Non dubito*, *quin* verum *dixeris*. *Quis dubitat*, *quin* in virtute *divitiae sint positae?* *Dubium non erat*, *quin* *victoriam* de hostibus *reportaturi essemus*.

REM. Besides, *quin* is used after a principal *negative* clause instead of *qui non*, *quae non*, *quod non*, as: *nemo est*, *quin optet*, ut liberi sui virtutem ament.

#### CXXXV. Exercises for translation. (§ 107.)

I. Good scholars bestow all toil and care, that they may make the better progress in literature. Pride did not stand in the way to our ancestors, to imitate foreign institutions. Indolence prevents, that scholars should make progress in literature. Not even faults of nature could deter Demosthenes from studying eloquence. By the swiftness of our horsemen it was prevented, that the enemies should attack our troops. Caesar could not forbear, to reprove the seditious soldiers. It is not possible, that we should not consider (judicare) him foolish, who is (subj.) not master of himself. Nothing is so sacred, that rashness may not violate it. It cannot be doubted, that already before Homer, poets lived (esse). Who can doubt, that the whole world is ruled by God? It is not doubtful, that all which is considered evil,

seems severer (*gravior*, *us*) [when] unforeseen. There is nobody who may not wish, that his children may love virtue. Nothing is found in nature, which is not very wisely constituted by God.

II. Good parents do not cease (*intermittunt*) to exhort [their] children to virtue, in order that they may grow better daily (*in dies*). All the soldiers believed, that nothing would stand in the way of their gaining (*adipisci*) the victory. Superstition prevents attaining (= reaching) much true knowledge of things. No hindrance deterred Alexander from penetrating (*penetrare*) to the Ocean. Nothing keeps a wise man from pursuing (*studere*) virtue. Avarice prevents men from enjoying the good [things] which they possess. Who [ever] contemplates (*fit*.) the heavens, the earth and the order of the whole world, will not doubt, that there is a God. We do not doubt, that our souls are immortal. The soldiers did not doubt, that they should bear off a victory over the enemies. It is not possible, that they who are contented with their lot do not live happy. We cannot forbear despising those who prefer money to virtue. Nothing was so sacred to the enemies who had captured the city, that they might not violate it. There was then no one in the city, who did not desire peace. There is almost nothing so difficult, that man, by the exertion of his powers, cannot do it.

### § 108. D. *Quod* (that) with the Indicative.

1. *Quod* (that) introduces a substantive sentence, which gives the *explanation* or *ground* of the predicate or some other word of the principal clause. The *subjunctive* stands with *quod*, only when the sentence is expressed as the sentiment of another. The cases in which *quod* is used are the following:

- a) After certain expressions, as: *bene, male, prudenter facio*; *bene, male evēnit, accidit* and the like;
- b) In order to introduce the *explanation* of a *substantive* or *pronoun* in the principal sentence;
- c) After verbs signifying *an affection of the mind*, as: *laetor, gaudeo, doleo, indignor, aegre fero, moleste fero, queror, miror, glorior*; also after verbs of *praising, censuring, accusing, thanking*.

*Bene facis, quod me adjuvas. Magnum beneficium est naturae, quod*

*necesse est mori. Gaudeo, quod vales. Laudo te, quod rem tuam bene gessisti. Laudat Africanum Panaetius, quod fuërit abstînens.*

REMARK. Verbs signifying an affection of the mind are more frequently connected with an Acc. with the Infin., as: *te valere, gaudeo.*

### CXXXVI. Exercises for translation. (§ 108.)

I. Thou hast done me a great favor, that thou hast sent me (ad me) this book. The generals of the king of Persia sent ambassadors to Athens, in order (sup.) to complain (queri), that Chabrias was carrying on war against the king of Egypt. The Lacedemonians sent ambassadors to Athens, who should accuse Alcibiades, that he had made a league with the king of the Persians, for subjecting (opprimere) Greece. I rejoice, that thou and thy brother are well. We wonder, that Greece, which excelled in fame, glory, learning (doctrina), the greatest number of arts, in dominion and warlike (bellicus) praise (laus), occupied (tene-re) so small a place in Europe. Nobody will censure thee, that thou hast aided thy friend.

II. It is very agreeable to me, that thou hast already returned from (ex) the journey. Thou doest well, that thou wishest to live in the country for the strengthening (gerundive) of thy health. We rejoice, that thou and thy brother are returned safe. It is a great kindness to boys, that they are instructed in literature in school. We grieve very much, that you are not able to come. Unjustly was Socrates accused by the Athenians, that he corrupted (corrumpere) the youth. Caesar praised the soldiers, that they had fought so spiritedly against the enemies. All citizens rejoiced, that the city was delivered from the siege. That Caesar was killed by Brutus, we complain (= censure). How great is the goodness of nature, that she produces so many, so various and so agreeable [things]!

### § 109. II. Adjective Sentences.

1. The relative *qui, quae, quod* agrees in *gender* and *number* with the word to which it refers; the *case* of the relative, on the contrary, depends upon the construction of the clause to which it belongs.

*Beati sunt ii homines, quorum vita virtutis praeceptis regitur. Deus est, qui omnem hunc mundum regit.*

2. The *person* of the verb in adjective sentences, is deter-

mined by the person of the substantive or pronoun, to which the relative refers.

*Ego, qui scribo; tu, qui scribis; pater, qui scribit; nos, qui scribimus; vos, qui scribitis; fratres, qui scribunt.*

3. *The subjunctive* stands in adjective sentences in the following cases:

- a) When the adjective sentence expresses an *aim* or *result*, and *qui* seems to stand for *ut ego, ut tu, ut is*; especially after *dignus, indignus, aptus, idoneus*; after *is* (such), *talis, ejusmodi, tam, tantus*;
- b) With the indefinite expressions: *est, sunt, qui; reperiuntur, inveniuntur, qui; nemo est, nullus est, qui; nemo est, nullus est, qui; nihil est, quod*;
- c) With the expressions, *est, quod; non est, quod; nihil est (quid est?), quod; habeo, non habeo, nihil habeo, quod, there is reason (no reason), I have reason (no reason), that* (with the finite verb) or *to* (with the Infin.), etc.
- d) When the adjective sentence gives a *reason*, where *qui* can be translated by *since I, since you, since he*.

Hostes ad Caesarem legatos miserunt, *qui pacem ab eo peterent* (who were to ask). Vir probus *dignus est, cui fidem habeamus* (deserves, that we give him our confidence). *Sunt, qui censeant, una animum et corpus occidere. Nullum est animal praeter hominem, quod habeat notitiam aliquam dei. Non is eram, qui aliorum miseriam ad me non pertinere censërem.* O fortunate adolescens, *qui tuae virtutis Homerum praeconem invenëris!*

#### CXXXVII. Exercises for translation. (§ 109.)

I. Thou art worthy (*dignus es*) on account of thy uprightness, *that we should have confidence in thee* (= to whom). Who does not love his parents, is unworthy, that he should be loved by any one (*ullus*). God has given us reason, in order that by it we may govern the appetites (*appetitus, ūs*) of the soul. There is no duty so sacred, that avarice is not accustomed to infringe (*comminuëre*) and violate it. There are men, who think (*censëre*), that the soul is mortal. There is

nothing so difficult, that it cannot be traced out (*investigāre*) by searching (=seeking). Who does not honor virtue, is not fit, that we should receive him into our friendship. The Romans sent ambassadors to Antiochus, who might remind him of the Roman alliance. Many have been found, who were ready to devote (*profundēre*) not only money but life even to their country. What is sweeter, than to have [a friend] with whom thou canst share *every thing* (= all) as with thyself? There is no living being, except man, which has any knowledge (*notitia*) of God. There is no reason, that one should envy those, whom the people (*populus*) call great and good. Innocence is such a state of the soul, as injures nobody. You have always been such, that you considered life without the pursuits of literature disagreeable (*in-suavis*). You are worthy, that we should obey your will in all things. O fortunate (*fortunatus*) youth, since you are eminent among all by so many noble deeds!

II. Who obeys modestly, seems worthy sometime (*aliquando*) to command. Every upright man is undeserving (*non dignus est*), that the ungrateful citizens should deride him. Fabricius was such, that he could not be corrupted by the money of Pyrrhus. The husbandmen cultivate the earth, in order that it may bear fruit. Caesar sent horsemen, who might pursue the fleeing enemy. History is *of that nature* (*idoneus*), that by it the mind of the boy may be cultivated. There are and have been philosophers, who think (*censēre*), that God has no concern (*procuratio*) *at all* (*omnino*) about human affairs. Thou art worthy, that we should have confidence in thee in all things. There is no grief of the soul, which may not be abated by length of time. There were philosophers, who said, that property is the highest good. Nero was not worthy, to reign over the Romans. What (*quis*) so great advantage was there in prosperity, when thou hadst not a friend who would rejoice at it *in like manner* (*aeque*) as (*ac*) thyself? There was nothing so sacred, that it was not violated by the insolence of the enemy. You are not such (*ii*), that we should obey you. There is nothing by which a boy can please others more, than by modesty. I pronounce myself happy, that I have [a friend], who rejoices at my prosperity *even as* (*aeque atque*) I myself. There is no reason, that we should fear death.

## III. ADVERBIAL SENTENCES.

§ 110. a. *Adverbial Sentences of Time.*

1. Adverbial sentences of time are introduced by the conjunctions : *quum*, *postquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, *simulatque*, *ex quo* (since), *priusquam* and *antēquam*, *dum*, *quoad*, *donec*. These conjunctions *generally* take the Indic. but sometimes the Subj.

1) *Quum* is used either of *time* or *cause*. The *temporal quum* (when, while, as) is used with the *indicative* of all the tenses, yet almost invariably with the *subjunctive* of the *imperfect* and *pluperfect*, when a *perfect* stands in the principal clause. The *causal quum* (since), is always connected with the *subjunctive*.

- a) *Quum* coelum *contemplamur*, dei magnitudinem admiramur (*when*). Ager, *quum* multos annos *quievit*, uberiores fructus efferre solet (*when, after*). Sapiens non ejulabit, *quum* doloribus *torquebitur* (*when*). *Quum* ad me litteras *dedēris*, ad te proficiscar (*when*).
- b) *Quum* milites de hostium adventu *edocerentur*, continuo summo pugnandi ardore *flagraverunt* (*as*). Alexander, *quum* *interemisset* Clitum, familiarem suum, vix a se manus *abstinuit* (*as*).
- c) *Quum* philosophia animis *medeatur*, totos nos penitusque ei tradere debemus (*since*). *Quum* milites pericula *vererentur*, non audebant cum hostibus *confligere* (*since*).

2) *Postquam* (after that), *ut* (just as = as soon as), *ubi* (as), *simulatque* (*simulac* never before a vowel or *h*), *as soon as*, are connected with the *indicative*, and indeed, most frequently with the *perfect* which we commonly translate into English by the Plupf.

*Postquam* Caesar aciem *instruxit*, omnes hostes in unum locum *convolaverunt*. *Ut* dies *illuxit*, profectus sum. Hostes, *ubi* nostros equites *conspexerunt*, *fugerunt*. *Simulatque* aliquid *audiēro*, ad te scribam.

3) *Priusquam* and *antēquam* (before that, ere, before), are connected :

a) With the Subj. Pres., more rarely with the Indic. Pres.;

b) With the Indicative Perfect;

c) With the Indicative Fut. Perf.;

d) With the Subj. Imperf. and Pluperf.

a) *Tempestas minatur, antequam surgat.*

b) *Antequam bellum urbis nostrae opes absumpsit, potentissima fuit.*

c) *Non dives eris, priusquam divitias contempsēris.*

d) *Hostes propulsati sunt, antequam urbem obsidione cingerent. Dies obrepsit hostibus, priusquam aggērem extruxissent.*

4) *Dum* in the meaning *while, at the same time, as long as*, and *quoad* in the meaning *as long as* are connected with the *indicative*.

*Dum haec geruntur, hostium copiae conveniunt. Lacedaemoniorum gens fortis fuit, dum Lycurgi leges vigeant. Cato, quoad vixit, virtutum laude crevit.*

REMARK. *Dum* in the meaning *at the same time that* is commonly used with the Indic. Pres., whatever tense stands in the principal sentence, as: *dum dux aciem instruit, hostis totam urbem cinxerat.*

5) *Dum, quoad* and *donec* in the meaning *till, until, till that* are generally connected with the *subjunctive* of the Pres., Imperf. and Pluperf., or with the *indicative* of the Perf. and Fut. Perf.

*Milites exspectant, dum dux se e castris contra hostes educat. Milites exspectabant, dum dux se e castris contra hostes educēret. Cicero omni quiete abstinuit, donec Catilinae conjurationem detexisset. Milites tamdiu restiterunt, quoad hostes fugam cupessiverunt. Tamdiu manebo, dum omnem rem cognovero.*

### CXXXVIII. Exercises for translation. (§ 110.)

I. a. When we contemplate the lives of abandoned men (maleficus) we are deterred from vices. When a wise man is derided (fut.) by the foolish people, he will not be indignant. As Caesar entered (ingredi) the captured city, the inhabitants extended [their] hands to (ad) him, and intreated (orare) him, that he would spare them. Health we are *then at length* (tum demum) accustomed to estimate high (multum), when we have recovered from a severe sickness. As Tullus Hostilius had reigned 32 years, he was struck (icēre, *perf.*) by lightning. As

(ubi) Caesar had ascertained (perf.) by spies, that the enemies approached, he led (perf.) forth his soldiers out of the camp. As (quum) the enemies could not rout the army of the Romans, they betook (perf.) themselves back to the fortified camp. As soon as the enemies were discovered (perf.), the soldiers seized (capessere, perf.) their arms. Why should we fear death, since our souls will not decay at the same time with our bodies? After Caesar had seen (perf.) that the troops of the enemies approached, he hastened (maturare, perf.) to conduct (transducere) his army over (acc.) the river.

I. b. We shall be happy, when we shall be free from passion (plur.). He, who does not prevent (defendere) injustice nor repel (propulsare) it when he can, acts (facere) unjustly. A virtuous man will be happy (beatus), even when he shall have lost all the gifts of fortune. Since the weather is clear, we will take a walk. As Caesar came out of the wood, he was surrounded (perf.) by the enemies. As Alexander had taken Thebes, he spared (perf.) the family of the poet Pindar. As soon as Verres had reached (perf.) the province, he gave (tradere) himself wholly (totus) to avarice. After the general had fallen, the soldiers fled (perf.). As (ubi) the Romans heard, that the enemies approached, they went (perf.) spiritedly against them.

II. a. The enemies did not cease (desistere) to flee, before they came (perf.) to the Rhine. When Epaminondas went to a [social] circle, in which a conversation was (subj.) held (habere) either concerning the state or concerning philosophy, he never went away from there before the conversation had been brought to an end. Before thou reapest, thou must (oportet) sow. Mithridates thrust through (transfigere) Datamas with a sword, and before any one (quisquam) could come to his assistance (succurrere), killed [him]. As long as (quoad) the city was guarded by the citizens, the enemies did not dare (perf.) to assault it. I shall wait until thou returnest. Epaminondas held back the iron in [his] body, until (quoad) it was announced (renuntiare, perf.) that the Boeotians had conquered. The Romans waited, until the enemies had approached the camp. The soldiers remained in the camp, until the day dawned (illucescere).

II. b. The storm threatens before it arises; buildings creak before they fall (corruere). In all business (plur.), before thou enterest upon [it], thou shouldst make (adhibere) careful preparation. The Gauls came into (transcendere) Italy 200 years before they took (imperf.) Rome. Ere Ariovistus had arranged the line of battle, Caesar attacked (perf.) the Germans. The Romans pursued the enemies until it was evening (advesperascere). Wait thou, till I come. As long as



Hannibal lived, he burned (*flagrare*) with anger against the Romans. As long as (*quoad*) Epaminondas and Pelopidas presided (*perf.*) over the Thebans, their power increased (*perf.*) in a wonderful (*unicus*) manner. I remained at home yesterday, till my brother had returned. Until the citadel was surrendered (*dedere perf.*), *slaughters took place* (*caedes fit*) every where (*passim*) through (*abl.*) the whole city. We should (*gerundive*) remove (*subtrahere*) from the enraged, those whom they are offended at, till [their] anger *burns out* (*defervescere*).

### § 111. b. Causal Adverbial Sentences.

Adverbial sentences expressing the *cause* or *ground*, are introduced by the conjunctions: *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*. These conjunctions are properly used with the *indicative*; the *subjunctive* is used with them, only when the cause is given as the *sentiment* or from the *view* of another. (Concerning the causal *quum* see § 110, 1).

Cicero pater patriae appellatus est, *quod* ejus consilio et vigilantia Catilinae conjuratio *detecta est*. *Quia* natura mutari non *potest*, idcirco verae amicitiae sempiternae sunt. *Quoniam* jam nox *est*, in vestra tecta discedite.

### § 112. c. Conditional Adverbial Sentences.

1. Conditional adverbial sentences are introduced by: *si* (if), *nisi* and *si non* (if not, unless).

2. The *indicative* is used in sentences of this kind, when the condition is expressed as *real* and *certain*. In this case the Indic. is generally used in the principal sentence also.

*Si hoc dicis*, erras. *Si hoc dicebas*, errabas.

3. The *subjunctive* is used, when the condition is spoken of as something barely *imagined*; and in the principal sentence, in this case, the *subjunctive* is used also.

a) The Subj. Pres. and Perf. is used, when the condition is represented as a mere *supposition*;

b) The Subj. Imperf. and Pluperf., when the condition is represented as a *supposition the contrary of what actually is or is not*.

*Si hoc dicas, erres* (if thou shouldst say this, thou wouldst err.) : *Si hoc diceres, errares* (if thou saidst this, thou erredst; but I know thou didst not say it; hence thou didst not err). *Si hoc dixisses, errasses* (if thou hadst said this, thou wouldst have erred; but I know thou hast not said it; hence thou hast not erred).

REMARK. *Nisi* makes a supposition *negatively* but leaves the thing supposed *affirmative*: "if it be *not* supposed, that something is;" but *si non* makes a supposition *affirmatively* while the thing supposed is *negative*: "if it be supposed, that something is *not*." Non potes jucunde vivere, *nisi cum virtute vivis*. Homo beatus est, *si cupidatibus non succumbit*.

4. *Dum, dummodo, modo* in the meaning *provided that, if only*; *dum ne, dummodo ne, modo ne* (provided that not, if only not) always take the *subjunctive*.

Multi omnia recta et honesta negligunt, *dummodo* potentiam consequantur.

#### § 113. d. *Concessive Adverbial Sentences.*

Concessive sentences are introduced by :

- a) *etsi, tametsi* (even if, although), *quamquam* (although), commonly with the *indicative*;
- b) *etiamsi* (even if, although), more frequently with the *subjunctive* than with the *Indic.*;
- c) *quamvis* (although, however), and *licet* (although) are always connected with the *subjunctive* of one of the principal tenses.

Viri boni recte agunt, *etsi* nullum consecuturum emolumentum vident. *Etiamsi* secundissimis rebus utāre, tamen beatus non eris, *si* virtute cares. Sapiens dolorem patienter tolerat, *quamvis* acerbus sit.

#### CXXXIX. *Exercises for translation.* (§§ 111, 112, 113.)

I. Themistocles said, that he walked (*ambulāre*) by night, because he could not sleep (*somnum capere*). If we shall always follow the way of virtue, the entrance to heaven will sometime stand open to us. If our friend had obeyed (*obsequi*) the prescriptions (*praeceptum*) of the physician, he surely would not have died. If we shall not have removed (*resecare*) the passions, we shall strive in vain to be happy. Men desirous of fame endure all hardships, if they may only obtain what they wish (*subj.*). Although (*etsi*) the place was unfavorable,

nevertheless Caesar determined to attack the enemy. However thou mayest have suffered under misfortune (incommōdum, *plur.*), thou shouldst not be offended at fortune. Even if the body is bound, yet no chains are placed (injicere) upon the soul. Who is not offended (offendēre) by a foul deed itself, even if it does not hurt him?

II. The laws we obey, not from (propter) fear, but we follow them, because we judge, that this is most salutary. As Xenocrates was asked, why he was almost always silent (silēre), he answered: Because it has often (aliquando) repented me to have spoken (dicere), but never to have been silent (tacere). If you hate those whom you should love, you act wickedly. If we discharge our office religiously, we shall enjoy the good opinion (bona existimatio) of men. If we do not follow virtue, we cannot live peacefully (beate). If all [things] happened by fate, all (omnis) foresight would be useless. Fire becomes extinct, if it is not nourished. We are ready to endure toils and burdens, if we may only obtain (adipisci) the victory. Folly thinks (credere), that it has never obtained (consequi) enough, although (etsi) it has obtained (adipisci) what it desires (concupiscere). Nobody, however wealthy he may be, can be without the aid of others. We should cultivate virtue (honestas), even if no advantage may follow it. The good [man] does not avenge himself on his enemies, even if he has obtained (nancisci) an opportunity. It is a terrible (dirus) and abominable (abominandus) saying (= word): They may hate, if only they fear.

#### § 114. e. *Adverbial Sentences of Comparison.*

1. The comparing of the subject of the principal sentence in respect to *manner*, or *greatness* and *degree* is expressed:

- a) By: *ut* (*uti, sicut, quemadmōdum*) with the *indicative* —*ita* (*sic*), *as, even as—so*; *tam* (*tantopĕre, tantum*) —*quam* (*quantopĕre, quantum*), *so great—as*; *non tam* —*quam, not so much—as*.

REM. 1. In a barely *imaginary* comparison, the subordinate sentence is introduced by: *quasi, tanquam* and the like, with the *subjunctive*. The succession of the tenses in this case is according to the principles already stated (§ 104.).

- b) By the *comparative* with *quam* (than).

*Melior tutiorque est certa pax, quam sperata victoria.*

REM. 2. Instead of *quam* with the Nom. or Acc., the *ablative* without *quam* may be used with the comparative of the first member. See 101, 7. The English *even, still* with the comparative, is expressed by *etiam*, as: *etiam major* or *major etiam*.

2. When two *qualities* or *actions of one object* are compared with each other, *both* adjectives or adverbs are put in the *comparative* and the last is connected to the other by *quam*.

*Pestilentia minacior quam perniciosior*, cogitationes hominum a certaminibus publicis avertit (a more threatening than destructive pestilence). *Bellum a civibus nostris fortius, quam felicius gestum est* (with more bravery than success).

REM. 3. The comparative is very often used without the second member of the comparison, and may then be translated by *too, too much, very, somewhat* with the positive, as: *senectus est loquacior* (somewhat loquacious; properly: *more loquacious* i. e. more loquacious than is proper).

REM. 4. When the comparison is limited definitely to *two* objects, in Latin, the *comparative* and not the superlative is used, as: *uter vestrum est major natu?* (which of you two is the older?)

3. *Quo—eo*, or *quanto—tanto* (*the—so much the*) in connection with two comparatives, express a *uniform proportion* between two qualities or actions.

*Quo plura habent homines, eo ampliora expetere solent.*

4. When the discourse is of an *indefinite* subject, instead of the last mentioned mode of expressions we commonly find: *ut quisque—ita* with two *superlatives*.

*Ut quisque est sapientissimus ita est modestissimus* (the wiser a man is, the more modest he is).

#### CXL. Exercises for translation. (§ 114.)

I. Many men, forgetting (perf. part.) the precepts of virtue, complain of their lot, as if it had not been permitted (perf.) them to enter (ingredi) the way of virtue. Many men live, as though they had been born to pleasures. One should so think, as if (tanquam) some one (aliquis) could look into his inmost breast. A more threatening than destructive disease turned the minds of men from public duties (munus, ěris). Alexander pursued the enemies more cautiously (prudenter) than eagerly. When pleasure is too great and too long,

it extinguishes all (*omnis*) the light of the soul. Old men are too loquacious. The air (*aër*) is so much the thicker, the nearer it is to the earth (*plur.*). The better any thing is, so much the rarer it is. We are all influenced (*trahere*) by the struggle (= effort) after praise; and the better one is, so much the more is he governed by fame. The more prudent one is, the more cautious he is. The more one refers whatever (*quaecunque*) he does (*agere*) to (*ad*) his own advantage, so much the less is he a good man.

II. Most men strive eagerly to obtain riches and power, [and] neglect virtue, as if true prosperity rested not upon virtue, but upon riches. Always act thus (*sic*), as though thou wast seen and heard by others. The words of the orator were more acute than true. It did not escape Hannibal (*fallo, perf.*), that the enemies would dispatch (*gerere*) affairs, *with more spirit* (*ferociter*) than deliberation (*consulto*). The wise man abstains from too violent emotions of the soul. This book is somewhat difficult to understand. The greater and more divine the excellence in minds, so much the greater care they need (*indigere*). The more eminent (= higher) men are, so much the more condescending they should be to the more humble. The better one is, so much the more he serves his descendants. The better one is, so much the more his mind strives to obtain immortal fame. The better one is, *with so much the more difficulty* (*difficile*) he considers others bad.

### § 115. Of Interrogative Sentences.

1. Questions are either *independent* (direct), as: Wast thou at school yesterday? or *dependent* upon another sentence going before (indirect questions), as: I do not know, *whether thou wast at school yesterday*.

2. In the direct question the *indicative* is used, when it is asked *positively*, the *subjunctive* when it is asked *doubtfully*. In the indirect question the *subjunctive* is always used.

*Quid agis?* *Quid agamus?* (what can we do?). *Dic, quid agas.*

3. Both direct and indirect questions are introduced:

- a. By interrogative and relative pronouns, as: *quis, uter, qualis, quantus, ubi, unde, quo, quando, quomodo, cur*, etc.

*Quis hunc librum legit?* *Uter vestrum major natu est?* *Cur ad*

me non venisti? Dic, *quis* hunc librum legerit. Nescio, *uter* vestrum major natu sit. Narra, *cur* ad me non veneris.

b. By the interrogative words *ne*, *nonne*, *num*, *utrum*.

- a) *Ne*, which is always attached to the accented word, leaves it undecided whether the interrogator expects an *affirmative* or *negative* answer;
- b) *Nonne* (not?) always implies that the interrogator expects an *affirmative* answer;
- c) *Num* (is it possible that?) always implies that the interrogator expects a *negative* answer;
- d) *Utrum* is used only in *double* questions.

REM. 1. *Ne* and *utrum*, in *direct* questions, can be translated into English by no particular word. In *indirect* questions, *ne*, *utrum*, *num*, may be translated by *whether*, and *nonne* by *whether not*.

*Fuistine* heri in schola? Dic, *fuistine* heri in schola? *Nonne* sapiens beatus est? Quaeris ex me, *nonne* putem sapientem beatum esse? *Num* vita beata in divitiis posita est? *Dubito*, *num* vita beata in divitiis posita sit.

4. In *disjunctive* questions, in which one member excludes the other, the first member is introduced by *utrum* or the enclitic *ne*, and the second by *an* (or), both in *direct* and *indirect* questions.

*Utrum* unus, *an* plures sunt mundi? Quaeritur, *utrum* unus, *an* plures sint mundi. *Mortalisne*, *an* immortalis est animus humanus? Quaeritur, *mortalisne*, *an* immortalis sit animus humanus.

REM. 2. *Or not* is expressed in Latin, by *annon* in *direct*, by *necne* in *indirect* questions.

5. The answer *yes* or *no* is expressed:

- a) *Yes*: by a repetition of the word upon which the stress of the question lies; and *no* in the same way, but with *non* placed before it;
- b) *Yes*: by, *ita*, *ita est*, *sane*, *vero* and the like; *no*: by, *non*, *non ita*, *minime* and the like; *Yes (no)* rather, by, *immo* with the addition of a word expressing the opposite of what is implied in the question.

Fuistine heri in schola? *Fui.* Fuistine heri domi? *Vero.* Estne frater domi? *Non est.* Venitne pater tuus? *Minime.* Egebat amicus tuus? *Immo locuples erat.*

CXLI. *Exercises for translation.* (§ 115.)

I. What each night and each day may bring [with itself], is uncertain. On account of fear, I know not who I am. Who has said this? I know not, who has said this. When (quum) we behold (cernere) the whole earth, we cannot doubt, that a governor presides over it. Is the sun greater, or smaller, than the earth? Is it possible that thou believest, that our souls decay after death? I doubt, whether the news is true. Ere thou beginnest a thing, deliberate, whether it be good or bad. Has not God filled the earth with all good things? Was the world made (efficere) by chance, or by a divine power? Is thy brother at home? Yes. Is it possible that the three-headed Cerberus in the lower regions frightens thee? Wast thou yesterday at my house, or not? Tell me, whether thou hast been at my house or not? I know not, whether I can come to thee to-morrow. Wilt thou go to walk to-day, or not? Tell me, whether thou wilt go to walk to-day, or not? Who knows, whether fortune will always smile upon him. There were philosophers, who doubted, whether the world was made by chance, or by the divine reason. Hast thou read the book, which I lately sent thee? No. It is a question, whether wisdom makes men happy, or not. Will thy father return to-morrow from (ex) [his] journey? Yes. Is the wise man alone to be accounted happy? Yes. Wast thou at home yesterday? no rather I was far from home.

II. What will be to-morrow, we know not. Is lead, or gold the heavier? Did (perf.) Philip, or his son accomplish (efficere) the greatest deeds? Is not virtue to be preferred to the greatest riches? Is it possible that thou doubttest concerning the immortality of the soul? Who wrote (perf.) this letter? Tell me, who wrote this letter. Is it possible that thou believest, that I do not know where thou wast yesterday? We would first see, whether the world is governed by the providence of God; then, whether he [also] cares (consulere) for human affairs. Among the generals of the Athenians there was a great strife, whether they should defend themselves by (abl.) the walls, or should go against the enemies. Hast thou read Cicero's book concerning friendship? Yes. It is a question, whether wisdom alone makes us happy (beatus), or not. Hast thou read this book, or not? I do not know, whether I shall approve thy view or reject it. Dost thou approve my view, or not? I do not know, whether I shall approve

thy view, or not. It was uncertain, whether the Romans had conquered, or been conquered. Anciently many doubted, whether the earth was round. Wast thou in school yesterday? Yes. Canst thou tell me, what the soul is? No. Hast thou received joyful news concerning the health of thy brother? No rather, very sad [news].

§ 116. *Of the Form of direct and Indirect Discourse.*

1. *Oratio recta* (*direct discourse*), is that kind of discourse, in which the words of a person are repeated precisely as they were pronounced by him, as : The messenger announced : *peace is concluded*.

2. *Oratio obliqua* (*indirect discourse*), is that kind of discourse, in which the words of a person are made *dependent* upon some verb of *perceiving* or *communicating*, as : The messenger announced : that *peace was concluded*.

REMARK. Of the two verbs : *inquam* and *ait*, the first is used in *direct* and the second in *indirect* discourse. *Inquam* is never placed before the words quoted, but is introduced among them.

3. *Principal* sentences in *indirect* discourse, are expressed :

- a) By the Acc. with Infin., when they express a simple statement, as : *nuntius allatus est, pacem esse compositam* (*direct discourse* : *pax est composita*) ;
- b) By the *subjunctive*, when they express a *command* or *wish*, as : *dux dixit, omnia esse perditam ; milites suae salutis consulerent* (*direct discourse* : *omnia sunt perditam ; consulite, milites, vestrae salutis*).

4. *Subordinate* sentences in *indirect* discourse are expressed by the *subjunctive*.

Caesar dixit, se, *postquam* hostes *fusi essent*, castra muniturum esse. Apud Hypänim fluvium Aristotēles ait bestiōlas quasdam nasci, *quae* unum diem *vivant*.

CXLII. *Exercises for translation.* (§ 116.)

We should be sufficiently convinced, that, [even] if we could conceal [it] from God and men, still nothing should be done unjustly (injuste). I can never be persuaded, that the soul (plur.), while it is in



the mortal body, lives, [but] when it has departed from it, dies. The Lacedemonians wrote to Pausanias, that, if he did not return home, they would condemn him to death. Tanaquil said, The king still lives; let the Romans be quiet and obey Servius Tullius.

II. Nobly Socrates said, that the nearest way to renown is, when one *exerts himself* (id agere) that he may be such as (qualis) he wishes to be considered. When ambassadors had come from king Mithridates requesting peace, Sulla answered, that he would not give it unless (nisi) he, after deserting the fields which he had taken, should return into his own kingdom (regnum). The ambassadors announced to the senate, That the Aeduans had pitched their tent in their territory and were laying waste the country; that the Romans should come and bring aid to them.

---

## FIRST APPENDIX.

---

### OF PROSODY.

#### § 117. *Quantity of Syllables.*

PRELIMINARY REMARK. The general rules of quantity have already been given (§ 3.) and should be reviewed before proceeding to the following special rules.

1. The *derived* word generally follows the quantity of its *primitive*, as: *ā*mor, *ā*maris, *ā*micus, *ā*mor, *redā*mo.

REM. 1. In *declension* are excepted; *lār*, *pār*, *sāl*, Gen. *lāris*, *pāris*, *sālis*;—In the *verb* it is a general principal, that, the forms of the different tenses, have the same quantity as the tense-forms from which they are derived, i. e. either as the Pres. Perf. Sup. or Infin. according as they are derived from the one or the other; e. g. (*divīdo*), *divīdam*; (*divīsi*), *divīseram*; (*divīsum*), *divīsurus*; (*divīdere*), *divīderem*.

REM. 2. Concerning the quantity of the Perf. and Sup. the following should be observed:

1) All *dissyllabic* perfects and supines lengthen the short syllable of the stem, as: *vīdeo*, *vīdī vīsum*; *mōveo*, *mōvī mōtum*, etc. (but, *lūi*, *rūi*, *sūi* according to § 3, 3).

Ten dissyllabic *supines* have the stem-syllable short: *dātum*, *stātum*, *rātum*, *sātum*, *ītum*, *quītum*, *cītum*, *lītum*, *sītum*, *rūtum*, from: *do*, *sisto*,

reor, sero, eo, queo, cieo, lino, sino, ruo. The compounds of *sto* have together with *stātum*, *stītum* also; two compounds of *nosco*, *nōtum* also: cognosco and agnosco, have in the supine: cognītum, agnītum.

2) *Reduplicated* perfects, besides the short syllable of reduplication, have also the stem-syllable following its short, as: cado, cēcīdī, disco, dīdīcī, etc. (but mōmōrdī, cūcūrri from: mordeo, curro are long according to § 3, 4).

To reduplicated perfects belong also: dēdī, stēti, stīti; *tūli* is contracted from tētūli; *bibi* comes, apparently, from an obsolete stem *bo*; finally, *fīdī* and *scīdī* have rejected their syllable of reduplication.

REM. 3. In *derivation* and *composition* also, there are some departures from the general rule (rule 1), as: *sōpor* and *sōpire*, *dūc* (in *dux dūcis*) and *dūco*, *rēg* (in *rex, rēgis*) and *rēgo*, etc.

2. For the quantity of the *penult* we have the following alphabetical list. (The quantity of the penult in declension and conjugation is best learned from the paradigms).

-*ācus*, -*ūcus*, -*ūca*, as: merācus, cadūcus, lactūca; Exc.: -*ācus* in: Aegyptiācus, Corinthiacus and others of the kind;

-*ādes*, and -*ides* in Patronymics, as: Priamīdes, Atlantiādes; but *īdes* in Patronymics from primitives in *eus* and *cles*, as: Pelides, Atrides, Heraclides, and in Belides, Lycurgides, Amphiarīdes, Coronīdes;

-*āgo*, -*ēgo*, -*īgo*, -*ūgo* in nouns, as: vorāgo, vertigo, lanūgo (but the Greek *harpāgo* has *a* short);

-*āis*, -*ēis*, -*īlis*, -*ōtis*, -*ōis*, -*īne*, -*ōne* in Patronymics, as: Ptolemāis, Chryseīs, Memphītis, Icarīōtis, Minōis, Nerine, Acrisiōne; Exc.: Danāis, Thebāis, Phocāis, Nerēis;

-*ālis*, -*ēlis*, -*ēla*, -*ūlis*, -*ūra*, as: canālis, conjugālis, fidēlis, querēla, edūlis, pictūra;

-*āmen*, as: exāmen, flāmen;

-*ānus*, -*āna*, -*ēnus*, -*ēna*, -*īnus*, -*īna*, -*ōnus*, -*ōna*, -*ūnus*, -*ūna*, as: montānus, membrāna, egēnus, habēna, peregrīnus, canīnus, Gabīnus, sagīna, piscina (except *pagīna*), patrōnus, annōna, tribūnus, lacūna; but *īnus* is short in adjectives which express *time* or *material*, as: crastīnus, diutīnus, cedrīnus, elephantīnus, except in: vespertīnus, matutīnus, repentīnus;

-*ārus*, -*āris*, -*ōrus*, -*ōsus*, as: avārus, singulāris, canōrus, pilōsus; Exc.: barbārus, opipārus, hilāris;

-*ātīm*, -*ītīm*, -*ūtīm*, as: privātīm, virītīm, tribūtīm (in *affātīm*, *stātīm* the *a* belongs to the stem);

-*āvus*, -*īvus*, -*īva*, as: octāvus, aestivus, salīva;

-*ēdo*, -*īdo*, -*ūdo* in substantives, as: albēdo, cupidō, consuetūdō;

-*ēgo*, see *āgo*;

-*ēis*, see *āis*;

-*ēlis*, -*ēla*, see *ālis*;

-*ēmus*, as: extrēmus;

- ēni and -īni in distributive adjectives, as : bini, vicēni ;
- ēnus, -ēna, see ānus ;
- ēro, -īco (īcor), -īgo, -īno (īnor, cīnor), -īlo, -ūlo (ūlor), -īto, verbal endings, as : vitupēro, claudīco, rustīcor, levīgo, fulmīno, destīno, crimīnor, patrocīnor, mutīlo, pullūlo, gratūlor, ventīto ; but the *i* is long when it belongs to the stem and is long there, as : cornīcor (from *cornix*, *icis*), festīno, sagīno, opinor, propino, inclino, from : festīnus, sagīna, opinio, *πίνω, κλίνω* ;—besides, *i* in the ending *ito* is long when the stem has an *i* immediately before it, as : dormīto (for *dormi -ito*) ;
- ētus, as : flētus ;
- ērus, as : infēri, postēri ; but *ērus* in : austērus, sincērus, sevērus, procērus ;
- ētum, -ēta, as : dumētum, monēta ;
- īco, see ēro ;
- īcus, -īca, as : modīcus, famelīcus, so also adverbs in *icus*, as : modīcus ; Exc. : amicus, pudicus, apricus, anticus, posticus mendicus, umbilicus ; formica, lectica, lorica, urtica vesica ;
- īdes, see ādes ;
- īdo, see ēdo ;
- īdus, as : cupīdus ;
- īgo, see āgo ;
- īgo, see ēro ;
- īlis, -īlus (a, um), -ōlus (a, um), -ūlus (a, um), as : humīlis, parīlis, similis, utīlis, and all in *ilis* which come from *verbs*, as : facilis, ferūlis, sterilis ; rutilus, filiōlus, filiōla, catūlus, canicūla, bacūlum ; adjectives derived from personal appellations have the *i* long, as : servilis, puerilis ; also, exilis, subtilis, and the names of the months, as : Aprilis ;
- īlo, see ēro ;
- īmen, as : specīmen, regīmen ; Exc. : those derived from verbs of the fourth Conj. have *imen*, as : lenimen, farcimen ;
- īmus in : bīmus, trīmus, quadrimus, of *two, three, four years*, and in : opīmus, matrimus, patrīmus, primus, imus (lowest) ; but -īmus in superlative-endings, as : probissīmus, and in finitūmus and intīmus ;
- īne, see āis ;
- īni, see ēni ;
- īno (īnor), see ēro ;
- īnus, īna, see ānus ;
- ītim, see ātim ;
- ītis, see āis ;
- īto, see ēro ;
- ītor and ītus retain the quantity of the supine from which they are derived, as : monītor (from *monitum*) auditor (from *auditum*), exītus (from *exitum*) ;
- ītus, -īter, adverbial endings, as : divinītus, acriter ;
- īvus, -īva, see āvus ;
- ōis, see āis ;
- ōne, see āis ;
- ōnus, -ōna, see ānus ;

-*ōrus*, -*ōsus*, see *ārus*;

-*ōtis*, see *āis*;

-*ūcus*, -*ūca*, see *ācus*;

-*ūdo*, see *ēdo*;

-*ūgo*, see *āgo*;

-*ūlis*, see *ālis*;

-*ūlo* (*ūlor*), see *ēro*;

-*ūmen* in *tegūmen* (for *tegimen*), but -*ūmen* in: *acūmen*, *cacūmen*, *flūmen* (contracted from *fluvimen*);

-*ūnus*, -*ūna*, see *ānus*;

-*ūra*, see *ālis*;

-*ūtim*, see *ātim*;

3. For the quantity of *final* syllables ending in a vowel, we have the following general rule: *a*, *e*, *y*, are *short*; *i*, *o*, *u* are *long*. To this rule there are the following exceptions:

*a* is *long*: 1) the Abl. of the first Dec., as: *mensā*; 2) in the Voc. of Greek proper names in *as*, as: *Aeneā* (from *Aenēas*, *ae*), *Pallā* (from *Pallas*, *antis*); the Voc. of those in *es* has partly *ā* and partly *ā̃*, as: *Anchisā*, *Atridā*; 3) in the Imper. of the first Conj., as: *amā*, except *putā* in the meaning *namely, to wit*;—4) in adverbs, prepositions and conjunctions of two or more syllables, as: *circā*, *juxtā*, *intrā*, *infrā*, *suprā*, *anteā*, *posteā*, *praetereā*, *frustrā*; Exc.: *itā*, *quā* and the interjection *eiā*; 5) in the indeclinable numerals, as: *trigintā*;

*e* is *long*: 1) in the Abl. of the fifth Dec. as: *rē*, *speciē*, *diē* (hence also, *hodiē*, *postridiē*, *priediē*, *quarē*; also *famē*);—2) in all Greek words of the first Dec., as: *crambē*, *epitomē*, and those used in the plural only, as: *Tempē*, *melē*, *cetē*;—3) in the Imper. of the second Conj., as: *docē*; but *e* is double-timed in: *cavē*, *habē*, *tacē*, *manē*, *valē*, *jubē*, *vidē* (hence *vidēsis* for: *vide*, *si vis*);—4) in adverbs derived from adjectives of the *second* Dec., *pulchrē*, *longē*, *acerbē*, *valdē* (from *validus*); so also: *ferē*, *fermē* and the interjection *ohē*; but *e* is short in: *benē*, *malē*, *temerē*, as well as in all adverbs derived from adjectives of the *third* Dec., as: *facilē*, *impunē*;

*i* is *short*: 1) in: *mihī*, *tibī*, *sibī* (in the *arsis* sometimes *long*), and *cui* when it is two syllables; but it is commonly one syllable and is *long*, so also its compounds: *cuidam*, *cuilibet*;—2) in the Voc. of Greek words, as: *Alexī*, and in the Dat. of Greek imparisyllabic words, as: *Paridī* (from *Paris*, *idis*);—3) in: *nisī* and *quasī* (although *si* is *long*), *sicubī*, *necubī*; but *ubi* and *ibi* are double-timed, in: *ubinam*, *ubivis*, *ubicunque* *i* is generally *short*, while in: *ubique*, *ibique* it is always *long*, generally also in *ibidem*;—4) in: *utique*, *utinam* the *i* is short, although they come from *utī*;

*o* is *short*: 1) in the adverbs: *citō*, *immō*, *illicō*, *cedō* (give here, say), *modō* with its compounds, as: *dummodō*, *postmodō*, *quomodō* (but separated, *quo modō*);—2) in: *egō*, *duō*, *octō*; but commonly *ambō*;—3) in verbal endings and in the Nom. and Vocative-endings of Latin words

of the third Dec. the poets of the golden age generally made *o* long, as: amō, amaverō, amatō, scribō, scribitō, scripserō; origō, consuetudō; in Greek words *o* is always long, as: echō, Argō;

*u* is always long and *y* always short according to the rule, except in the contracted Dat., as: Coty for Cotyi.

4. For the quantity of final syllables in words of two or more syllables ending in a *consonant*, we have the following general rules:

I. *c* final makes the preceding vowel *long*, as: alēc, illūc; Exc.: donēc:

II. *ās, ēs, ōs* are *long*; *īs, ūs, ŷs* are *short*; to this general rule, there are the following exceptions:

- a) *as* is *short*: 1) in the Nom. of Greek words of the third Dec. which have *adis* in the Gen., as: lampās, ādis, Pallās, ādis; so anās, ātis;—2) in the Acc. Plur. of Greek words of the third Dec. as: heroās, Arcadās from *heros, Arcas*;
- b) *es* is *short*: 1) in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. of imparisyllabic words of the third Dec. whose genitive has the *penult* short, as: milēs, itis, segēs, ētis, praesēs, īdis, hebēs, ētis; Exc.: Cerēs, abiēs, ariēs, pariēs and the compounds of *pēs*, as: tripēs, except praepēs, ētis;—2) in the Voc. Sing. of Greek words in *es*, where in Greek the termination is *es*, as: Demosthenēs (but Demosthenēs in the Nom. = ης);—3) in the Nom. and Voc. Plur. of Greek words, as: Arcadēs, Troadēs; but in Latin words, or such as were naturalized in the language, *es* is long, as: patrēs, matrēs;—4) in the compounds of *ēs* (thou art), as: adēs, abēs, potēs;—5) in the preposition *penēs*;
- c) *os* is *short*: 1) in: compōs, impōs (ōtis), exōs (from *os, ossis*);—2) in Greek words, when *os* corresponds to *os* in Greek, as: Delōs, chaōs, melōs; Palladōs, Gen. of Pallas (but: herōs = ἥρως, Minōs = Μίνως, Nicocleōs = Νικόκλεως);
- d) *is* is *long*: 1) in the Dat. and Abl. Plur., as: mensis, pueris, nobis, vobis; hence also, in the adverbs: gratis, foris;—2) in the Acc. of the third Dec. (for *es*), as: omnis;—3) in the Nom. Sing. of proper names of the third Dec. which have the *penult* of the Gen. long, as: Samnis, itis, Salamis, inis, Simois, entis;—4) in the second person Sing. Pres. of those verbs which have *itis* in the second person Plur., as: audis, possis (as well as: sis from *sum*), velis, nolis, malis; also in: mavis, quivis, quamvis, utervis, since *vis* (from *volo*) is long; in the second person Sing. of the Fut. Perf. *is* of itself is *short*, but by the necessity of the verse is often made *long*, as: dixeris; so also is the *i* in the plural-endings *imus, iis* of the Fut. Perf. often made long by the poets for the same reason, as: scripserimus, scripseritis; *third*
- e) *us* is *long*: 1) in the Nom. Sing. of words of the ~~second~~ Dec.

which have *u* long in the *penult* of the Gen., as: *virtūs*, *ūtis*, *palūs*, *ūdis*, *tellūs*, *ūris*, (but: *corpūs*, *ōris*, *vetūs*, *ēris*, etc.);—2) in the Gen. Sing. and in the Nom. Acc. Voc. Plur. of the fourth Dec., as: *fructūs* (contracted from *fructuis* and *fructues*);—3) in Greek words, when *us* corresponds to *ους* in Greek, as: *tripūs*, *ōdis* (*τριπους*), *Panthūs*; in the Gen.: *Sapphūs* from *Sappho* (*Σαπφοῦς*), *Cliūs* from *Celio*. etc.; but in: *Oedipūs*, *i*, *polypūs*, *i*, the Greek *ους* becomes *ūs*, in Latin;

- f) *ys* is *long*: 1) in words which have an associate form in *yn*, as: *Phorcȳs* and *Phorcȳn*;—2) when *ys* stands by contraction for *yes* and *yas*, as: *Erinnȳs*.

III. *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *d*, *t* final, make the vowel of the final syllable *short*, as: *animāl*, *tectūm*, *circūm-ago*, *carměn*, *carcēr*, *amōr*, *apūd*, *viděn* (for *videsne*), *nostĭn* (for *nostine*), *Thetĭn*, *Pylōn*, *Ilĭōn*, *illūd*, *capūt*, *amāt*, *monēt*, *regĭt*, *audĭt*. To this general rule there are the following exceptions, in which the vowel before these consonants is long:

- a) *l*: in Hebrew proper names in *el*, as: *Daniēl*;  
 b) *n*: 1) in the Greek Acc. of words in *as*, *es*, *e*, as: *Aeneān*, *Anchisēn*, *Calliopēn*, *epitomēn*;—2) in the Nom. of masculine and feminine nouns which come from the Greek, as: *titān*, *hymēn*, *Salamĭn*, *Pandiōn* (except *Lacedaemōn* and some others), and in the Latin *liēn*;  
 c) *r*: in the compounds of *pār*, as: *dispār*, and in Greek imparisyllables in *er*, as: *aēr*, *aethēr*, *cratēr*, *Ibēr*.

5. *Monosyllabic* words are *long*, as: *sāl*, *sōl*, *mōs*, *spēs*, *pār*, *hōc*, etc.

EXCEPTIONS: 1) the substantives: *mēl*, *fēl*, *ōs* (*ossis*), *a bone*, (but: *ōs*, *ōris*, *the face*), *cōr* (rarely *cōr*);—2) the pronouns: *quĭs*, *quĭd*, *quōd*; *is*, *id*; *quōt*, *tōt*; *hic*, *this*, is generally, and *hic*, *here*, always *long*;—3) the adverbs: *bīs*, *tēr*, *sāt*;—4) the verbal forms in *t*: *fĭt*, *sĭt*, *scĭt*, *dāt*, *dēt*, *stāt*, *stēt*, *it*; the imperatives *fēr*, *fāc* and *ēs* thou art (but *ēs*, *thou eatest*);—5) the particles: *āb*, *ād*, *ān*, *āt*, *cĭs*, *ēt*, *in*, *nēc*, *ōb*, *pēr*, *pōl*, *sēd*, *sūb*, *ūt*, *vēl*, and the *suffixes* (enclitics): *quē*, *vē*, *cē*, *nē* (but: *nē*, *that not*, *in order that not*), *tētutē*, *ptē* (*suoptē*).

### § 118. *Hexameter Verse.*

1. A verse is a series of poetic feet forming, in general, a line of poetry. The particular feet or members of which it is composed are called *metres*.

2. When the last foot of a verse is complete, the verse is called *acatalectic*; but when incomplete, *catalectic*.

3. Every foot or metre consists of an *arsis* and a *thesis*. The *arsis* is that part of the foot (in hexameter verse, the first syllable of the foot), on which the stress or elevation of the voice is placed in pronouncing it. The rest of the foot (whether one syllable or more) is called *thesis*, and is to be pronounced in a falling tone of voice. The stress of voice laid on the arsis is called the *ictus* (beat) and may be regarded as the poetic accent; hence it is often marked as such by the sign (·). A succession of feet pronounced with due regard to arsis and thesis constitutes *rhythm*.

4. Hence it will be apparent, that a line of poetry, in a given kind of measure, consists of a fixed number of feet and a variable number of words, which, of course, must occasion a disagreement between the terminations of the feet and words. Besides, as *rhythm* was the leading element in ancient poetry, it was not, except for a given purpose, attempted to produce a coincidence between the feet and words, that it might be apparent that the rhythm was independent of the words as such. This *division* of the feet by the terminations of the words is called *caesura*, as:

Infandúm | regína | jubés | renováre | dolórem.

In feet of three syllables, as: - ~ ~, the word may end either after the arsis (— | ~ ~) or in the middle of the thesis (— ~ | ~). In the first case it is called the *masculine*, in the second the *feminine* caesura. The *coincidence* of the termination of a word with the termination of a foot is called *diaerësis*, as:

Persequár | ét rarís habitáta, mapália, téctis.

In certain kinds of verse, certain caesuras and diaereses are necessary, and are to be especially observed in reading the verse; these are called *principal caesuras* and *diaereses*.

5. Hexameter verse is measured by six feet which may be either *spondees* or *dactyles*, except the last foot, which is a dissyllabic catalectus (No. 2). A spondee consists of

two long syllables, designated thus: --; a dactyle of one long and two short, designated thus: - ~ ~. Hence we have:

— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —
Sed fugit	intere	a fugit	irrepa	rabile	tempus.
Adspici	unt ocu	lis Supe	ri mor	talia	justis.

REM. 1. The *fifth* foot is generally a dactyle, rarely a spondee, and only when the poet wishes to give the line a character of *slowness, seriousness* and *solemnity*; such a verse is called a *spondaic* verse, a dactyle usually precedes the spondee and the verse generally closes with a word of three or four syllables, as:

Cara deum suboles, magnum Jovis | incrē | mentum.

REM. 2. *Dactyles* often express a rapid and brisk, as *spondees* do a slow and heavy motion, as:

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungulo campum  
Illi inter sese magna vi brachia tollunt.

REM. 3. The *principal* caesura in Hexameter verse, generally occurs *after the arsis* of the *third* foot and sometimes in the *thesis* of the same foot; but occasionally also, after the arsis in the fourth foot, in which case another caesura generally precedes, after the arsis of the second foot. Sometimes, also, several caesuras of this kind are found in the same verse; in which case the sense must determine which is to be observed as the principal one. Besides the principal caesura, there may be other subordinate caesuras, e. g.

Sed | fugit interea, || fugit irreabile tempus.  
Dum vires | annique | sinunt, || tolerate labores.  
Oderunt | peccare | boni, || virtutis | amore.  
Nudus | ara, | sere | nudus; || hiems | ignava | colono.  
Infandum | regina | jubes || renovare | dolorem.

REM. 4. The commonest and most graceful close of an hexameter verse is made by a word of two or three syllables.

### § 119. Scansion.

Scansion is the division of a verse into the feet or members of which it is made up. In doing this, however, the proper terminations of the words must not be wholly overlooked, but should be observed by making a slight pause at each of the caesuras and a marked pause at the principal; caesura, as far as this can be done without obscuring the proper division into feet. In scanning, the following things are to be observed:



a) A vowel at the end of a word before another vowel or an *h* in the following word is *absorbed* (elision), as:

Núlla n(e) habés viti(a)? ímm(o) ali(a), haúd fortásse minóra.

REM. 1. Elision rarely takes place at the end of a line, as:

O'mnia Mércurió similis vocémque colóremque  
E't crinés flavós et mēmbra decóra iuventae.

In this case, the last syllable is to be joined to the first of the following line. Such a line is called *versus hypermēter*.

REM. 2. When elision is neglected in the beginning or middle of a verse, there arises what is called the *hiatus* (gaping, difficulty of pronunciation). This the poets endeavor if possible to avoid; yet it is allowable before monosyllables, before one of the stronger punctuation marks, and in a long vowel followed by a short one; also in the *arsis*, the hiatus occasions less difficulty of pronunciation, as:

O' et dé Latiá, O ét de gēnte Sabína.  
E't succús pecorí et lác subducitur ágris.  
Pósthabitá coluisse Samó: *hic* illíus árma.  
Núbibus ésse solét aut púrpureáe Aurórae.

REM. 3. Occasionally a long vowel in the *thesis* before another vowel is *short*, as:

Ínsulae Íonió in mágno.

b) An *m* at the end of a word with a vowel before it and before a vowel in the following word long by nature or position, is, together with the vowel before it, omitted in reading (ecthlipsis), as:

Quód latet, ignót (um) ést; ignóti núlla cupído.

REM. 4. In monosyllabic words which stand in the *arsis*, principally before a strong punctuation mark or in the caesura, the ecthlipsis is sometimes omitted. Before a short syllable the ecthlipsis is difficult.

c) When the last syllable of a word ends with a consonant and the following word in the same line begins with a consonant, that final syllable is uniformly *long*, as:

Némo adeó ferus ést, ut *nón* mítescere póssit.

d) The *ictus* often makes a short syllable long; still this is generally the case only: a) when the short syllable ends in a *consonant*, especially *r*, *s* or *t*;—b) when the caesura follows it;—c) when upon a vowel in the close of a word, a word follows beginning with two consonants; e. g.

O'mnia víncit Amór, et nós cedámus Amóri.  
Tē canit ágricolá, | magná quum vénerit úrbe.  
Níl opus ést morté *pro* mé, sed amóre fidéque.

e) Two vowels in two successive syllables are often contracted into one (*Synaerēsis* or *Synizēsis*), as: Phaethon, Thesēi, deērunt, vehemens (two syllables), particularly, huic, cui, ii, iidem; so also, dein, dehinc, deinceps, deinde, proinde, prout; so also those vowels which are pronounced with more difficulty in one sound, as: quoad, postea, alveo pueri.

f) A short *u* or *i* is often rejected before *l* and *m*, as: *periclum* for *periculum*, *tegmen* for *tegimen*. or *tegumen*.

g) The letters *i* and *u*, having been originally both consonants and vowels, when they follow another consonant and are followed by a vowel, make the preceding vowel *long by position*, as: fluviorum (= fluvjorum); genua (= genva), etc.

h) From the necessity of the verse, a *long* syllable is sometimes used as *short* (*Systōle*), and, on the contrary, a *short* syllable as *long* (*Diastōle*). The *systōle* is very common in the third person Plur. Indic. Perf. Act., and in *alterius* and in *names*, as: Aenēades;—the *diastōle* is used especially in the Subj. Perf. Act. and Fut. Perf. Act., (*audiveritis*), also in *names*, in which three short syllables follow one another, of which the first is then made long by the *ictus*, as:

O'bstupui, steteruntque comae, vox faucibus haesit.

## SECOND APPENDIX.

### § 120. Of Abbreviations.

1) Personal Names: A. Aulus. App. Appius. C. or G. Caius or Gaius. Cn. or Gn. Cnaeus (Gnaeus). D. Decimus. K. Kaeso. L. Lucius. M. Marcus. M'. Manius. N. Numerius. P. Publius. Q. Quintus. Ser. Servius. Sex. or S. Sextus. Sp. Spurius. T. Titus. Ti. Tiberius.

2) Appellatives: P. Pater. F. Filius. Fr. Frater, etc.

3) Designations of honor and office: Aed. Aedilis. Cos. Cos. Coss. Consules. Cos. d. Consul designatus. D.

*Divus.* Imp. *Imperator.* O. M. *Optimus maximus.* P. C. *Patres conscripti.* P. R. *Populus Romanus.* Pr. *Praetor.* Praef. *Praefectus.* P. M. *Pontifex Maximus.* P. S. *Plebs-citum.* S. P. Q. R. *Senatus populusque Romanus.* S. C. *Senatus consultum.* Tr. Pl. *Tribunus plebis.*

4) Designations of money and weight: HS. or H-S. *Sestertius (Sestertium).* L. *Libra.* L. L. *Dupondius.*

5) Designations of time: A. D. *Ante diem.* A. U. C. *Ab urbe condita.* C. or K. *Calendae (Kalendae).* Id. *Idus.* Non. *Nonae.*

6) Abbreviations in letters: S. *Salutem.* S. D. *Salutem dicit.* S. P. D. *Salutem plurimam dicit.* S. V. B. E. E. V. *Si vales, bene est; ego valeo.*

### THIRD APPENDIX.

#### § 121. *Of the Roman Calendar.*

1 *Kalendae* means the *first* day of each month; *Nonae* the *seventh* day of March, May, July and October, but the *fifth* of the remaining eight months; *Idus* was the *fifteenth* of the four months named above, and the *thirteenth* of the other eight.

2. Since the names of the months are properly adjectives, they generally agree with *Kalendae*, *Nonae* and *Idus* in gender, number and case, and are rarely governed by them in the Gen. as: *Calendis Juniis, on the first day of June;* *Nonis Octobribus, on the seventh of October;* *Idibus Septembribus, on the thirteenth of September.*

3. The days lying between the three fixed days just mentioned, were reckoned backwards from each of these fixed days, as, the 1st, 2d, 3d etc., day before the *Kalends*, *Nones*, or *Ides* as the case might be, and *dies* and *ante* were generally omitted. The day from which one began to reckon was always included in the number mentioned, as: *Claudius excessit III. Idus Octobres, i. e. tertio die ante Idus Octobres, on the thirteenth of October.* Hence, in order to get the true day before one of the divisions, we must subtract one from the number mentioned.

4. In determining what day of the previous month any day before the Calends of a given month is, we must know how many days the month has (see table) and reckon back from the Calends of the month mentioned (i. e. the month following), as: *tertio Calendas Apriles, on the 30th of March*; *tertio Calendas Maias, on the 29th of April*; *tertio Calendas Martias, on the 27th (28th) of February*; since March has 31, April 30 and February 28 (in leap year 29) days.

The days of our months.	March, May, July, and October (have 31 days).	January, August, and December (have also 31 days.)	April, June, September, and November (have 30 days).	February (has 28, and in Leap Years 29 days).
1	<i>Kalendis.</i>	<i>Kalendis.</i>	<i>Kalendis.</i>	<i>Kalendis.</i>
2	VI	IV } ante	IV } ante	IV } ante
3	V } ante	III } Nonas.	III } Nonas.	III } Nonas
4	IV } Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas	Pridie Nonas.
5	III } Nonis.	Nonis.	Nonis.	Nonis.
6	Pridie Nonas.	VIII } ante	VIII } ante	VIII } ante
7	Nonis.	VII } ante	VII } ante	VII } ante
8	VIII } ante	VI } Idus	VI } ante	VI } ante
9	VII } ante	V } Idus	V } Idus	V } Idus.
10	VI } ante	IV } Idus.	IV } Idus.	IV } Idus.
11	V } Idus.	III } Idus.	III } Idus.	III } Idus.
12	IV } Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13	III } Idus.	Idibus.	Idibus.	Idibus.
14	Pridie Idus.	XIX } ante	XVIII } ante	XVI } ante
15	Idibus.	XVIII } ante	XVII } ante	XV } ante
16	XVII } ante	XVII } ante	XVI } ante	XIV } ante
17	XVI } ante	XVI } ante	XV } ante	XIII } ante
18	XV } ante	XV } ante	XIV } ante	XII } ante
19	XIV } ante	XIV } ante	XIII } ante	XI } ante
20	XIII } ante	XIII } ante	XII } ante	X } ante
21	XII } ante	XII } ante	XI } ante	IX } ante
22	XI } ante	XI } ante	X } ante	VIII } ante
23	X } ante	X } ante	IX } ante	VII } ante
24	IX } ante	IX } ante	VIII } ante	VI } ante
25	VIII } ante	VIII } ante	VII } ante	V } ante
26	VII } ante	VII } ante	VI } ante	IV } ante
27	VI } ante	VI } ante	V } ante	III } ante
28	V } ante	V } ante	IV } ante	Prid. Kalendas
29	IV } ante	IV } ante	III } ante	Martias.
30	III } ante	III } ante	Prid. Kalendas	
31	Prid. Kalendas of the fol. month.	Prid. Kalendas of the fol. month.	of the fol. month.	

# COLLECTION OF LATIN READING LESSONS.

---

## I. FABLES.

### 1. *Lupus et capra.*

Lupus, capram conspicatus, quae in rupe pascebatur, quum ad eam accedere non posset, eam, ut de rupe descenderet, hortabatur, apud se mollia prata ac varias herbas esse praedicans. Ei vero capra respondit: Mi amice, non me ad pascua vocas, sed ipse cibi indiges!

### 2. *Lupus et opiliones.*

Opiliones aliquot, caesa atque assata ove, convivium agebant. Quod quum lupus, qui praedandi caussâ forte stabula circumibat, videret, ad opiliones conversus: Quos clamores, inquit, et quantos tumultus vos contra me excitaretis, si ego facerem, quod vos facitis? Tum unus ex iis: Hoc interest, inquit: nos, quae nostra sunt, comedimus; tu vero aliena furaris.

### 3. *Vulpes et uva.*

Vulpes, extrema fame coacta, uvam appetebat ex alta vite dependentem. Quam quum, summis viribus saliens, attingere non posset, tandem discédens: Nondum matura est, inquit; nolo acerbam sumere. Sic saepe homines, quae facere non possunt, verbis elévant.

---

2. Opilio, ōnīs, *m. shepherd.* asso 1. *to roast.* convivium, *i, n. feast*; conv. agēre, *to have a feast.* stabŭlum, *i, n. stable.* tumultus, ūs, *m. ado.* furor 1. *steal.*

3. Vitis, *is, f. vine.* dependeo, *di, 2. to hang down from.* elēvo 1. *to raise up*; 2) *to disparage.*

4. *Rusticus et canis fidelis.*

Rusticus in agros exiit ad opus suum. Filiolum, qui in cunis jacebat, reliquit custodiendum cani fideli atque valido. Arrepsit anguis immanis, qui puerulum exstincturus erat. Sed custos fidelis corripit eum dentibus acutis, et, dum necare studet, cunas simul evertit super exstinctum anguem. Mox ex arvo rediit agricola; ut videt cunas ever-  
sas cruentumque canis rictum, irā accenditur. Temēre igitur custo-  
dem filioli interficit ligone, quem manibus tenebat. Sed ubi cunas restituit, supra anguem occisum repērit puerum vivum et incolūmem. Sera tum poenitentia fuit facinoris temere patrati.

5. *Leo, asinus et vulpes.*

Vulpes, asinus et leo venatum iverant. Amplā praedā factā, leo asi-  
num illam partiri jubet. Qui quum singulis singulas partes poneret  
aequales, leo eum correptum dilaniavit et vulpi negotium partiendi tri-  
buit. Illa astutior leoni maximam partem apposuit, sibi vix minimam  
reservans particulam. Tum leo subridens ejus prudentiam laudare, et,  
unde hoc didicerit, interrogare coepit. Et vulpes: Hujus me, inquit,  
calamitas docuit, quid minores potentioribus debeant.

6. *Asinus pelle leonina indutus.*

Asinus fugitivus repērit forte in silva pellem leoninam, eāque indu-  
tus territare coepit homines et bestias. Venit is, qui asinum perdide-  
rat, eumque quaerit. Asinus, quum herum vidisset, horrendum in  
modum rugire coepit, ut illum quoque falleret. At herus, comprehen-  
sis auriculis, quae exstabant: Etiamsi alios, inquit, fallas, me tamen  
non falles. Ita probe verberat domumque abiit.

7. *Rusticus et filii.*

Inter filios rustici cujusdam grave dissidium ortum erat. Diu frustra  
operam impenderat pater, hortans, ut pacem atque concordiam cole-  
rent. Tandem filiis: Virgūlas, inquit, mihi afferte quinquaginta et con-

4. Arrēpo, psi, ptum 3. *to creep up.* corripio, ripui, reptum 3. *to seize.*  
cruentus, a, um, *bloody.* rictus, ūs, *m. mouth.* poenitentia, ae, *f. repentance.*

6. Pellis, is, *f. skin;* p. leonina, *lion's skin.* fugitivus, a, um, *run-away.*  
territo 1. *to frighten.* auricula, ae, *f. ear-lap.* rugio 4. *to roar.* exsto, stiti  
1. *project.*

7. Dissidium, i, *n. disagreement.* virgūla, ae, *f. stick.* fasciculus, i, *m.*  
*bundle.* colligo 1. *to collect.* concors, rdis, *united.*

sidite. Tum omnes virgulas in unum fasciculum colligavit, eumque constrictum singulis filiis obtulit, hortans, ut frangerent. Illi autem quanquam vim omnem adhibebant, frustra laborarunt, nec quicquam profecerunt. Tum pater nodum discidit singulasque illis virgulas dedit, quas sine ullo labore confregerunt. Quo facto, rusticus filios ita allocutus est: Haec res vobis exemplo sit. Tuti eritis ab inimicorum injuriis, quamdiu vos amabitis et concordēs eritis; at, simulac facta erit dissensio atque discordia, inimici securi in vos irrumpent.

### 8. *Luscinia et cuculus.*

Luscinia verno quodam die dulcissime canere coepit. Pueri aliquot haud procul abērant in valle ludentes. Hi quum lusui essent intenti, luscinae cantu nihil movebantur. Non multo post cuculus coepit cuculare. Continuo pueri, lusu neglecto, ei acclamabant vocemque cuculi identidem imitabantur. Audisne, luscinia, inquit cuculus, quanto me isti plausu excipiant et quantopere cantu meo delectentur? Luscinia, quae nollet cum eo altercari, nihil impediēbat, quominus ille suam vocem miraretur. Interēa pastor fistula canens cum puella lento gradu praeteriit

Cuculus itērum vociferatur, novas laudes captans. At puella pastorem allocuta: Male sit, inquit, huic cuculo, qui cantui tuo odiosam vocem intermiscet. Quo audito, quum cuculus in pudorem conjectus conticuisset, luscinia tam suaviter canere coepit, ut se ipsam superare velle videretur. Pastor, fistulā depositā: Consideramus hic, inquit, sub arbore et lusciniā audiamus. Tum pastor et puella cantum luscinae certatim laudare coeperunt, et diu taciti intentis auribus sedent. Ad postremum adeo capta est puella sonorum dulcedine, ut etiam lacrimae erumperent. Tum luscinia ad cuculum conversa: Videsne, inquit, quantum ab imperitorum opinionibus prudentiorum iudicia distent? Una sane ex istis lacrimis, quamvis muta sit, locupletior tamen est artis meae testis, quam inconditus iste puerorum clamor, quem tantopere jactabas. Monet fabula, magnorum artificum opera non vulgi opinione, sed prudentium existimatione esse censenda.

---

8. Cuculus, i, m. cuckoo. vallis, is, f. valley. cuculo 1. to coo. acclāmo 1. to cry out to. altercor 1. to quarrel. fistula, ae, f. pipe. lentus, a, um, slow. gradus, ūs, m. step. vociferor 1. to screech. intermisceo, miscui mixtum or mistum 2. to intermingle. certatim, adv. emulously. disto 1 without Perf. and Sup. to differ.

9. *Auceps et vipera.*

Auceps ibat venatum et mox vidit in altissima arbore palumbem; appropërat eum capturus, sed inter eundum premit forte pedem altero viperam in herba latentem, quae illum mordet. Me miserum, inquit, dum alteri insidior, ipse dispereo.

10. *Mendax.*

Puer in prato oves pascebat atque per jocum clamitabat, ut sibi auxilium ferretur, quasi lupus gregem esset adortus. Agricolae undique succurrebant, neque lupum inveniebant. Ita ter quaterque se elusos a puero viderunt. Deinde, quum ipse lupus aggredereetur, et puer revera imploraret auxilium; nemo gregi subvenit, et oves lupi praeda sunt facta. Mendaci homini non credimus, etiam vera quum dicit.

11. *Formica et columba.*

Formica sitiens descenderat ad fontem; sed undae eam abripuerunt, nec multum abërat, quin misera periret. Quum vero columba sortem ejus videret, misericordiã tacta ramulum in aquam iniecit. Hunc assecuta est formica in eoque natans effugit mortem. Paullo post venator, arcu instructus, illuc venit, columbamque telo suo transfixurus fuit. Periculum sentit formica, et, ut piae columbae opem ferret, accurrit atque venatoris talum momordit. Dolore impeditus ille telum non recte misit, et columba incolūmis avolavit. Juva et juvabëre; raro beneficium perit.

12. *Vulpes et corvus.*

Corvus, quum frustum carnis rapuisset, in arbore quadam consedit. Quo conspecto, vulpes, carnem cupiens, accurrit eumque callidis verbis adoritur. O corve, inquit, quam pulchra es avis, quam speciosa! Te decuit esse avium regem. Sane omnes aves regiis virtutibus antecederes, si vocem haberes. His corvus laudibus inflatus, ne mutus haberetur, clamorem edidit, sed simul, aperto rostro, carnem amisit; quum vulpes statim rapuit, atque irridens dixit: Heus, corve! Nihil tibi deest praeter mentem.

9. Auceps, ūpis, *m. fowler.* vipëra, *ae, f. viper.* appropëro 1. *to approach.* dispereo, ii, 4. *to perish.*

10. Clamito 1. *to cry out often.* revëra, *adv. in earnest.*

11. Formica, *ae, f. ant.* ramulus, *i, m. branch.* talus, *i, m. ankle.*



## II. DIALOGUES.

1. *Excusatio.*

*Geta.* Quid caussae est, quod tam diu nos non invisēris? Quid impedimento fuit, quominus jam diu feceris nobis tui videndi copiam?

*Syrus.* Volui quidem saepe te convenire, sed non licuit mihi per mea negotia; non licuit per valetudinem; laboravi enim aliquamdiu febri; non licuit denique per tempestatem, quae saepe fuit pluviosa. *G.* Equidem accipio tuam excusationem, sed hac lege, ne saepius utare. Excusatio tua justior est, quam vellem, siquidem valetudo fuit in causa. Haec lege mihi purgatus eris, si, quod cessatum est, me saepe invisendo compenses. *S.* Tu nihil moraris istius modi officia nimium vulgaria. Amicitia nostra firmior est, quam ut sit officiis istis vulgaribus alenda. Satis crebro invisit, qui constanter amat. *G.* Male sit istis curis, quae te nobis adimunt. Quid imprēcor istis negotiis, quae talem amicum nobis invident? Pessime sit isti febri, quae nos tam gravi desiderio torsit tui. Male pereat ista febris, te quidem incolumi.

2. *Colloquium jocosum.*

*Andrēas.* Salve, mi Mauriti. *Mauritius.* Gratias ago, mi Andrēa. Quid affers? *A.* Me ipsum. *M.* Sic rem haud magni pretii huc attulisti. *A.* At magno constiti patri meo. *M.* Credo pluris, quam quisquam te aestimet. *A.* Sed Rudolphus estne domi? *M.* Nescio. Pulsa fores ejus et videbis. *A.* Heus, Rudolphe! domine es? *R.* Non sum. *A.* Impudens! Non ego audio te loquentem? *R.* Immo tu es impudens. Nuper ancillae vestrae credidi, te non esse domi, quin tamen esses, et tu non credis mihi ipsi? *A.* Aequum dicis; par pari retulisti. *R.* Equidem ut non omnibus dormio, ita non omnibus sum domi. Nunc vero adsum. *A.* Sed tu mihi videris cochleae vitam agere. *R.* Quid ita? *A.* Quia perpetuo domi latitas, nec unquam prorēpis. *R.* Foris nihil est negotii. *A.* At serenum coelum nunc invitat ad deambulandum. *R.* Ita est. Si igitur deambulare libet, te comitabor; nam per totum hunc mensem pedem portā non extuli. Vocabo Mauritium, ut una nobiscum eat. *A.* Placet. Sic enim jucundior erit ambulatio.

---

1. Cesso 1. *to omit.* compenso 1. *to make up.* imprēcor 1. *to imprecate.*

2. Aestimo 1. *to estimate.* pulso 1. *to beat.* latito 1. *to keep one's self concealed.*

3. *Colloquium ejusdem generis.*

*Syrus.* Opto tibi multam felicitatem. *Geta.* Et ego tibi duplicatum opto, quicquid optas mihi. *S.* Quid agis rei? *G.* Confabŭlor. *S.* Quid? confabularis solus? *G.* Ut vides. *S.* Fortasse tecum. Proinde tibi videndum est, ut cum homine probō confabulēre. *G.* Immo cum lepidissimo congerrone confabulor; lego enim librum joci plenum. *S.* Tu perpetuo littēris studes. *G.* Non est ūlla studiorum satietas. *S.* Verum; sed est tamen modus quidam. Non omittenda quidem sunt studia, sed tamen intermittenda nonnunquam. Nihil suave, quod perpetuum. Voluptates commendat rarior usus. Tu littēris studes noctes ac dies. *G.* Age, tuo more facis. Rides me, ut soles. Non me fallit tuus jocus. Ipsi codices pulvere situque obducti loquuntur, quam sim immodicus in studio. *S.* Emoriar, ni loquor ex animo.

4. *Ludus.*

*Carŏlus.* Veni, mi Ludovice! *Ludovicus.* Quo tandem? *C.* In hortum; satis jam legimus et scripsimus; ludamus quoque. *L.* Ego pensum meum ante absolvam. *C.* Nondum absolvisti? *L.* Nondum omnia. Tune jam omnia didicisti et scripsisti, quae praeceptor nos discere et scribere jussit? *C.* Non omnia. *L.* Ergo nondum licet ludere. *C.* Cur non liceat? Reliqua discam et scribam post ludum. *L.* Sed praestat, primum discere, deinde ludere. *C.* Quam morosum sodalem habeo! *L.* Non sum morosus, sed facere volo, quae jussa sunt. *C.* Ergo una ediscamus. Ego tibi recitabo, tu mihi. Deinde, quum omnia didicerimus, statim ad ludum properabimus. *L.* Placet; nam peracti labores jucundi sunt.

5. *De surgendo.*

*Fridericus.* Heus, heus, Carole! expergiscēre! Tempus est surgere. Audisne? *C.* Non audio. *F.* Ubi ergo habes aures? *C.* In lecto. *F.* Hoc video. Sed quid facis adhuc in lecto? *C.* Quid faciam? Dormio. *F.* Dormis? et loquēris tamen mecum? *C.* Saltem volo dormire. *F.* Nunc autem non est tempus dormiendi, sed surgendi. *C.* Quota est hora? *F.* Septima. *C.* Quando tu surrexisti e lecto? *F.* Jam ante duas horas. *C.* Num sorores meae jam surrexerunt? *F.* Iam pridem. *C.* Sed frater meus certe adhuc jacet in lecto. *F.* Erras. Quum expergefacerem eum, statim reliquit nidum suum. *C.* Mox igitur surgam.

---

3. Duplīco 1. *to double.* confabŭlor 1. *to chat.* congerro, ōnis, *m. comrade, play-fellow.* satiētas, ātis, *f. satiety.* intermitto 3. *to intermit.*

6. *Ambulatio.*

*Fridericus.* Age, mi frater, ambulemus; tempestas serena est. *Augustus.* Placet; sed ubi ambulabimus? Num in pratis? *F.* Minime; prata enim pluvia inundavit, et viae lutulentae sunt. Placetne adscendere in montem, quem e fenestra prospicimus? *A.* Placet; jam pridem enim in monte non fuimus. *F.* Hiems nos prohibuit; hieme enim mons glacie et nive tectus erat. Quid stas autem? *A.* Duae viae ducunt ad montem: altera recta, altera flexuosa. Utram eligemus? *F.* Flexuosam censeo; est enim umbrosior, et sol fervet. Descendentes alterā ibimus et ambulationem variabimus. Vesper enim sol minus fervet. *A.* Eamus igitur!

7. *Naufragium.*

*Mauritius.* Redisti nobis obesior ac procerior. *Cyprianus.* At equidem mallem prudentior, aut doctior. *M.* Imberbis abiēras, redisti barbatulus. At quid sibi vult hic pallor? quid frons corrugata? *C.* Ut est fortuna, sic est corporis habitus. *M.* Num adversa? *C.* Nunquam mihi quidem alias secunda; sed nunquam, quam nunc, reflavit odiosius. *M.* Dolet mihi tua calamitas. Sed quid hoc mali est? *C.* Universae pecuniae naufragium feci. *M.* In mari? *C.* Non, sed in littore, nondum navem ingressus. *M.* Ubinam? *C.* In littore Britannico. *M.* Bene habet, quod ipse nobis vivus enatasti. Praestat pecuniae jacturam facere, quam vitae. Levius est pecuniae damnum, quam famae. *C.* Vitā famāque incolumi, periit pecunia. *M.* Vita sarciri nullo pacto potest, fama aegre potest, pecunia facile alicunde sarcietur. Quī malum hoc accidit? *C.* Nescio, nisi quod sic erat in fatis meis. Sic visum est sup̄eris. *M.* Vides igitur, doctrinam ac virtutem tutissimas esse divitias, quae nec eripi possunt, nec onerant circumferentem. *C.* Pulchre tu quidem philosopharis; sed interim ego ringor.

8. *Jussum herile.*

*Rabinus.* Profer ocrēas; nam equitandum est. *Syrus.* En adsunt.

6. Pluvia, ae, *f. rain.* inundo 1. *to overflow.* lutulentus, a, um, *muddy.* fenestra, ae, *f. window.* flexuosus, a, um, *winding.* umbrōsus, a, um, *shady.* ferveo, vi 2. *to burn* (intrans.). vario 1. *to vary.*

7. Obesus, a, um, *fat.* imberbis, e, *beardless.* barbatulus, a, um, *slightly bearded.* pallor, ōris, *m. paleness.* corrugatus, a, um, *wrinkled.* reflō 1. *to blow against.* odiōse, adv. *odiously.* Britannicus, a, um, *British.* enāto, 1. *to swim out.* circumfēro, tūli, latum 3. *to carry around.* philosophor 1. *to philosophize.* ringor 3. *to show the teeth; 2) to be fretful.*

8. Albeo 2. *to be clean.* rigeo 2. *to be stiff.* siccitas, atis, *f. dryness.* uvi-

*R.* Probe quidem abs te curatae; totae albescent situ. Opinor nec deteras, nec unctas hoc anno, adeo rigent prae siccitate. Deterge uvidūlo panno: mox unge ad ignem diligenter, ac macera, donec molliantur. *S.* Curabitur. *R.* Ubi calcaria? *S.* Adsunt. *R.* Verum; sed obducta rubigine. Ubi frenum et ephippia? *S.* Sunt in promptu. *R.* Vide, ne quid desit, aut ne quid ruptum, aut mox rumpendum, ne quid nobis sit in mora, quum erimus in cursu. Propere hoc lorum sarcindum cura. Reversus inspicere soleas equorum, num qui clavi desint, aut vacillent. Quam macri sunt equi, quamque strigosi! Quoties absterges, aut pectis illos in anno? *S.* Immo quotidie. *R.* Nimirum res ipsa loquitur. Jejunia colunt, opinor, nonnumquam totum triduum. *S.* Minime. *R.* Negas tu quidem, sed aliud dicturi sint equi, si loqui liceat: quanquam satis loquuntur ipsa macie. *S.* Curo sedulo. *R.* Cur igitur tu habitior equis? *S.* Quia non pascor foeno. *R.* Hoc igitur restat. Adorna manticam celeriter. *S.* Fiet.

### 9. *Monita paedagōgi.*

*Paedagogus.* Tu mihi videris non in aula natus, sed in caula: adeo moribus es agrestibus. Puerum ingenuum decent ingenui mores. Quoties alloquitur te quispiam, cui debes honorem, compone te in rectum corporis statum, aperi caput. Vultus sit nec tristis, nec torvus, nec impudens, nec protervus, nec instabilis, sed hilari modestia temperatus: oculi verecundi, semper intenti in eum, quocum loqueris: juncti pedes, quietae manus. Nec vacilles alternis tibiis, nec manus agant gestus, nec mordeto labrum, nec scabito caput, nec fodito aures. Vestis item ad decorum componatur, ut totus cultus, vultus, gestus et habitus corporis ingenuam modestiam et verecundam indolem prae se ferat. *Puer.* Quid, si mediter? *Pae.* Fac. *Pu.* Siccine satis? *Pae.* Nondum. *Pu.* Quid, si sic? *Pae.* Propemodum. *Pu.* Quid, si sic? *Pae.* Hem satis est; hoc tene, ne sis inepte loquax, aut praeceps. Neve vagetur animus interim, sed sis attentus, quid alter dicat. Si

dūlus, a, um, *slightly moist*. pannus, i, m. *rag*. macero 1. *to soak*. rubigo, inis, f. *rust*. ephippium, i, n. *horse-cloth*, (corresponding to our saddles). clavus, i, m. *nail*. macer, cra, crum, *lean*. strigōsus, a, um, *lank*. nimirum, *adv.* *doubtless*. jejunium, i, n. *fast*, jej. colere, *to keep fast*. triduum, i, n. *the space of three days*. macies, ei, f. *leanness*. habitus, a, um, *fleshy*. foenum, i, n. *hay*. mantica, ae, f. *portmanteau*.

9. Monitum, i, n. *admonition, instruction*. paedagōgus, i, m. *private tutor*. caula, ae, f. *sheep-cote*. agrestis, e, *rustic, rude*. torvus, a, um, *stern*. protervus, a, um, *shameless*. instabilis, e, *unstable*. verecundus, a, um, *respectful*. alternus, a, um, *alternate*. gestus, ūs, *gesture*; gestus agere, *to make gestures*. labrum, i, n. *lip*. scabo, 3. *to scratch*. fodio, ōdi, ossum, 3.

quid erit respondendum, id facito paucis ac prudenter, interdum praefatus honorem, nonnunquam etiam addito cognomine, honoris gratia: atque identidem modice flectas alterum genu, praesertim ubi responsum absolveris. Neve abeas, nisi praefatus veniam, aut ab ipso dimissus. Nunc age, specimen aliquod hujus rei nobis praebe!

Quantum temporis abfuisti a maternis aedibus? *Pu.* Jam sex ferme menses. *Pae.* Addendum erat: domine. *Pu.* Jam sex ferme menses, domine. *Pae.* Non tangeris desiderio matris? *Pu.* Nonnunquam sane. *Pae.* Cupis eam revisere? *Pu.* Cupio, domine, si id pace liceat tua. *Pae.* Nunc flectendum erat genu. Bene habet. Sic pergito! Quum loqueris, cave, ne praecipites sermonem, aut haesites linguā, aut palato murmures, sed distincte, clare, articulatim consuescito proferre verba tua. Si quem praeteribis natu grandem, magistratum, sacerdotem, doctorem, aut alioqui virum gravem, memento aperire caput. In convivio sic te praebebis hilarem, ut semper meminēris, quid deceat aetatem tuam: postremus omnium admoveto manum patinae. Si quid datur lautius, recusato modeste: si instabitur, accipe, et age gratias: mox, decerpta particula, quod reliquum est, illi reddito, aut alicui proxime accubanti. Si quis praebibet, hilariter illi bene precator, sed ipse bibito modice. Si non sitis, tamen admoveto calicem labris. Arride loquentibus: ipse ne quid loquare, nisi rogatus. Ne cui obtrectato, ne cui temet anteposito, ne tua jactato, ne aliena despicio. Esto comis, etiam erga tenuis fortunae sodales. Ita fiet, ut sine invidia laudem invenias, et amicos pares. Si vidēris, convivium extrahi, precatus veniam, ac, salutatis convivis, subducito te a mensa. Vide, ut horum memineris. *Pu.* Dabitur opera, mi praeceptor! Numquid aliud vis? *Pae.* Adito nunc libros tuos. *Pu.* Fiet.

### 10. Venatio.

*Paulus.* Trahit sua quemque voluptas; mihi placet venatio. *Thom-*

---

*to dig*; f. aures, *to pick the ears.* indoles, is, f. natural disposition, nature. propemodum, adv. almost. hem, interj. hem! ah! inepte, adv. foolishly. praefor 1. *to premise*; praefatus honorem, *premising: with your leave be it said*; praefari veniam, *to first ask permission.* cognomen, inis, n. title. specimen, inis, n. specimen.

maternus, a, um, *mother's.* reviso, visi, isum 3. *to revisit.* praecipito 1. *to hasten.* haesito 1. *to hesitate.* palatum, i, n. throat. murmuro 1. *to mutter.* distincte, adv. distinctly. articulatim, adv. articulately. alioqui, adv. otherwise. patina, ae, f. dish. lautus a, um, *dainty.* recuso 1. *to refuse.* praebibo, i, 3. *to drink to.* extraho, traxi, tractum 3. *to protract.* subduco, xi, ctum 3. *to withdraw.*

10. Venabulum, i, n. *hunting-spear.* cuniculus, i, m. *rabbit.* laqueus, i,

*as.* Placet etiam mihi; sed ubi canes, ubi venabŭla, ubi casses? *P.* Valeant apri, ursi, cervi et vulpes! nos insidiabimur cunicŭlis. *Vincentius.* At ego laqueos injiciam locustis. *Laurentius.* Ego ranas captabo. *Barthŏlus.* Ego papiliones venabor. *L.* Difficile est sectari volantia. *B.* Difficile, sed pulchrum; nisi pulchrius esse ducis sectari lumbricos aut cochlŕas, quia carent alis. *L.* Equidem malo insidiari piscibus; est mihi hamus elegans. *B.* Sed unde parabis escam? *L.* Lumbricorum ubivis magna est copia. *B.* Est, si tibi velint prorepere e terra. *L.* At ego mox efficiam, ut multa milia prosiliant. *B.* Quo pacto? incantamentis? *L.* Videbis artem. Imple hanc sitŭlam aqua. Hos juglandium summos cortices virentes confRACTOS immittito. Hac aqua perfunde solum. Nunc observa paulisper. Vides emergentes? *B.* Rem prodigiosam video. Sic olim, opinor, exsiliebant armati ex satis serpentis dentibus. Sed plerique pisces delicatioris et elegantioris sunt palāti, quam ut esca tam vulgari capiantur. *L.* Novi quoddam insecti genus, quo talibus insidiari soleo. *B.* Tu vide, possisne imponere piscibus; ego ranis facessam negotium. *L.* Quomodo? reti? *B.* Non; sed arcu. *L.* Novum piscandi genus. *B.* At non injucundum. Videbis et fatebĕre. *V.* Quid, si certemus nucibus? *P.* Nuces pueris relinquamus; nos grandiores sumus. *V.* Et tamen nihil aliud adhuc, quam pueri sumus. *P.* Sed quibus decorum est ludere nucibus, iisdem non indecorum est equitare arundine longa. *V.* Tu igitur praescribito lusus genus; sequar, quocunque vocaveris. *P.* Et ego futurus sum omnium horarum homo.

### 11. *Reditus patris.*

*Petrus.* Quid ita laetus es, mi Sigismunde? *Sigismundus.* Quia pater domum rediit. *P.* Ubinam fuit? *S.* Lipsiae. *P.* Cur eo fuerat profectus? *S.* Nescisne, mercātum ibi esse habitum, cŭmque frequentari a mercatoribus negotiandi caussa? *P.* Utrum pedes, an eques rediit, an in rheda? *S.* Equo vectus est. *P.* Quando advĕnit? *S.*

---

*m. noose.* locusta, ae, *f. locust.* lumbrīcus, i, *m. earth-worm.* ala, ae, *f. wing.* hamus, i, *m. fishing-hook.* esca, ae, *f. bait.* prosilio, lui 4. *to leap forth.* incantamentum, i, *n. magic influence.* sitŭla, ae, *f. pail.* juglans, ndis, *f. walnut.* immitto, mīsi, mīssum 3. *to put in.* perfundo, fŭdi, fŭsum 3. *to wet.* exsilio, lui 4. *to spring forth.* serpens, tis, *serpent.* delicātus, a, um, *delicate.* impōno, posui, posĭtum 3. *to impose upon;* c. dat. *to deceive.* piscor 1. *to fish.* indecŏrus, a, um, *unbecoming.* arundo, īnis, *f. reed.* praescribo, psi, ptum 3. *to prescribe.*

11. Lipsīa, ae, *f. Leipsic.* mercātus, ūs, *m. a fair.* rheda, ae, *f. wagon.*

Ante horam. *P.* Quis tibi tam cito nuntiavit? *S.* Famulus, qui eum jam e longinquo venientem viderat. *P.* Jamne salutasti? *S.* Salutaui, quum vix ex equo descendisset. *P.* Quid amplius illi fecisti? *S.* Calcaria detraxi et ocrēas. *P.* Bene fecisti; sed miror, te propter adventum ejus non domi mansisse. *S.* Id nec pater permisisset, nec ego ipse vellēm, quum nunc tempus adsit in scholam eundi. *P.* Id quidem laudē dignum est; sed quomodo valet pater tuus? *S.* Optime dei beneficio. *P.* Ego gaudeo tecum, quod salvus rediit. *S.* Sed alias pluribus colloquemur. Nunc in scholam eamus!

## 12. *Colloquium scholasticum.*

*Cornelius.* Scite tu quidem scribis; sed charta tua perfluit. Charta subhumida est ac transmittit atramentum. *Andreas.* Quaeso, ut appares mihi pennam hanc. *C.* Deest mihi scalprum librarium. *A.* En tibi. *C.* Hui, quam obtusum! *A.* Accipe cotem. *C.* Utrum soles scribere cuspide duriore, an molliore? *A.* Accommoda ad manum tuam. *C.* Ego molliore soleo. *A.* Quaeso, ut mihi describas ordine figuras elementorum. *C.* Graecas, an Latinas? *A.* Latinas primum conabor imitari. *C.* Suppedita chartam. *A.* Accipe. *C.* Sed meum atramentum dilutius est saepius infusā aquā. *A.* At meum atramentarium prorsus exaruit. Rogabo alicunde. *C.* Praestat habere domi, quam rogare mutuū. *A.* Quid est discipulus sine calamo et atramento? *C.* Quod miles sine clipeo et gladio. *A.* Utinam mihi sint digiti tam celeres! Equidem non possum dictantis vocem scribendo assēqui. *C.* Prima cura sit, ut bene scribas; proxima, ut celeriter. Sat cito, si sat bene. *A.* Belle; sed istam cationem cane praeceptori, quum dictat: Sat cito, si sat bene.

---

12. Scite, *adv. skilfully.* charta, *ae, f. paper.* perflūo, *uxi, uxum* 3. *to flow through.* subhumidus, *a, um, somewhat moist.* transmitto, *īsi, issum* 3. *to let through.* atramentum, *i, n. ink.* quaeso, *I ask.* appāro 1. *to prepare;* app. pennam, *to mend a pen.* scalprum librarium, *i, n. pen-knife.* hui, *interj. Oh!* obtūsus, *a, um, dull.*—cuspis, *īdis, f. point.* accommodo 1. *to fit.* infundo, *fūdi, fūsum* 3. *to pour in.* atramentarium, *i, n. inkstand.* exaresco, *arui* 3. *to become dry.* mutūus, *a, um, reciprocal;* mutuū rogare, *to borrow.* calāmus, *i, m. stalk, quill.* dicto 1. *to dictate.* belle, *adv. finely.* cantio, *ōnis, f. song.*

## III. REMARKABLE SAYINGS.

1. E Lacedaemoniis unus, quum Perses hostis in colloquio dixisset glorians: Solem prae jaculorum multitudine et sagittarum non videbitis: *In umbra igitur, inquit, pugnabimus.*—*C. Tusc.* 1, 42, 101.

2. Lacaena quum filium in proelium misisset et interfectum audisset: *Idcirco, inquit, genueram, ut esset, qui pro patria mortem non dubitaret occumbere.*—*Ibid.* 102.

3. Cyrenaeum Theodorum, philosophum non ignobilem, nonne miramur? cui quum Lysimachus, rex Thraciae et Macedoniae, crucem minaretur: *Istis quaeso, inquit, ista horribilia minitare purpuratis tuis! Theodori quidem nihil interest, humine, an sublime putescat.*—*Ibid.* 43, 102.

4. Diogenes, Cynicus, projici se post mortem jussit inhumatum. Tum amici: Volucrisne et feris? *Minime vero, inquit; sed bacillum propter me, quo abigam, ponitote.* Qui potëris? illi (quaesiverunt); non enim senties. *Quid igitur mihi ferarum laniatus obërit nihil sentienti?*—*Ibid.* 43, 104.

5. Praeclare Anaxagoras, quum Lampsäci moreretur, quaerentibus amicis, velletne Clazomënas in patriam, si quid accidisset, auferri: *Nihil necesse est, inquit; undique enim ad infëros tantundem viae est.*—*Ibid.*

6. Anaxagoram ferunt, nuntiata morte filii, dixisse: *Sciebam, me genuisse mortalem.*—*Ibid.* 3, 14, 30.

7. Noctu ambulabat in publico Themistocles, quod somnum capere non posset: quaerentibusque respondebat, *Miltiädidis tropaeis se e somno suscitari.*—*Ibid.* 4, 19, 44.

8. Socrates, quum esset ex eo quaesitum, Archeläum, Perdiccae filium, qui tum fortunatissimus haberetur, nonne beatum putaret: *Haud scio, inquit; nunquam enim cum eo collocutus sum.* Ain' tu? aliter id scire non potes? *Nullo modo.* Tu igitur ne de Persarum quidem rege magno potes dicere, beatusne sit? *An ego possim, quum ignorem, quam sit doctus, quam vir bonus?* Quid? tu in eo sitam vitam beatam

1. Perses, ae, *m. a Persian; adj. Persian.* jaculum, i, *n. javelin.*

3. Cyrenaeus, i, *m. Cyrenean, from Cyrene, chief city of Lybia.* crux, ucis, *f. cross.* purpuratus, i, *m. a courtier.* sublime, *adv. in the air.* putesco, tui 3. *to rot.*

4. Cynicus, i, *m. the Cynic.* projicio, jëci, jectum 3. *to cast forth.* inhumatus, a, um, *unburied.* bacillum, i, *n. staff.* laniatus, us, *m. the tearing.*

5. Lampsäcus, i, *f. Lampsacus, city of Mysia.* Clazomënae, arum, *f. Clazomenae, city of Ionia.* si quid accidisset, *if any thing should happen to him, i. e. if perchance he should die.* tantundem viae, *just as long a way.*



putas? *Ita prorsus existimo: bonos, beatos; improbos, miseros. Miser ergo Archelaus? Certe, si injustus.*—C. Tusc. 5. 12, 34. 35.

9. Lacedaemonii, Philippo minitante per litteras, se omnia, quae coenarentur, prohibiturum, quaesiverunt, *num se esset etiam mori prohibiturus.*—*Ibid.* 14, 42.

10. Xenocrātes, quum legati ab Alexandro quinquaginta ei talenta attulissent, quae erat pecunia temporibus illis, Athenis praesertim, maxima, abduxit legatos ad coenam in Acadēmiam; iis apposuit tantum, quod satis esset, nullo apparatu. Quum postridie rogarent eum, cui numerari (sc. pecuniam) juberet: *Quid? vos hesternā, inquit, coenulā non intellexistis, me pecunia non egere?* Quos quum tristiores vidisset, triginta minas accepit, ne aspernari regis liberalitatem videretur.—*Ibid.* 32, 91.

11. Lacedaemōne quum tyrannus coenavisset Dionysius, negavit, se jure illo nigro, quod coenae caput erat, delectatum. Tum is, qui illa coxerat: *Minime mirum; condimenta enim defuerunt. Quae tandem?* inquit ille. *Labor in venatu, sudor, cursus ad Eurotam, fames, sitis; his enim rebus Lacedaemoniorum epulae condiuntur.*—*Ibid.* 34, 98.

12. Quum Athenis, ludis, quidam in theatrum grandis natu venisset, in magno consessu locus ei a suis civibus nusquam est datus. Quum autem ad Lacedaemonios accessisset, qui, legati quum essent, certo in loco consederant, consurrexerunt omnes et senem illum sessum receperunt. Quibus quum a cuncto consessu plausus esset multiplex datus, dixit ex iis quidam: *Athenienses sciunt, quae recta sunt; sed facere nolunt.*—C. Sen. 18, 63.

13. Bias, qui numeratur in septem sapientibus, quum ejus patriam Priēnen cepisset hostis, ceterique ita fugerent, ut multa de suis rebus secum asportarent, quum esset admonitus a quodam, ut idem ipse faceret: *Ego vero, inquit, facio; nam omnia mecum porto mea.*—C. Parad. 1. 2, 8.

14. Quum tyrannus Hiēro quaesivisset de Simonide, quid Deus esset, [hic] deliberandi sibi unum diem postulavit. Quum idem ex eo pos-

10. Appōno, posui, posītum 3. *to place before.* apparātus, ūs, *m. fitting out.* hesternus, a, um, *of yesterday.* coenūla, ae, *f. a spare meal.* mina, ae, *f. mina (worth about 17½ dollars).*

11. Jus, uris, *n. broth, soup.* venātus, ūs, *m. hunting.* Eurōtas, ae, *m. Eurotas, river in Sparta.*

12. Ludis, *games.* theātrum, i, *n. theatre.* consessus, ūs, *m. assembly.* consurgo, surrexi, surrectum 3. *to arise.* senem sessum receperunt, *received the old man, in order to seat him, i. e. took him to their seat.* multīplex, īcis, *manifold.*

tridie quaereret, biduum petivit. Quum saepius duplicaret numerum dierum, admiransque Hiero requireret, cur ita faceret: *Quia, quanto, inquit, diutius considero, tanto mihi res videtur obscurior.*—C. N. D. 1. c. 22.

15. Quum Hannibal, Carthagine expulsus, Ephësum ad Antiöchum venisset exsul, proque eo, quod ejus nomen erat magnâ apud omnes gloriâ, invitatus esset ab hospitibus suis, ut Phormiönem philosophum audiret; quumque is se non nolle dixisset: locutus esse dicitur homo copiosus aliquot horas de imperatoris officio et de omni re militari. Tum, quum ceteri, qui illum audierant, vehementer essent delectati, quaerebant ab Hannibale, quidnam ipse de illo philosopho judicaret. Hic Poenus non optime Graece, sed tamen libere respondisse fertur, *multos se deliros senes saepe vidisse; sed qui magis, quam Phormio, deliraret, vidisse neminem.* Neque mehercûle injuriâ! Quid enim aut arrogantius, aut loquacius fieri potuit, quam Hannibali, qui tot annos de imperio cum populo Romano, omnium gentium victore, certasset, Graecum hominem, qui nunquam hostem, nunquam castra vidisset, nunquam denique minimam partem ullius publici muneris attigisset, praecepta de re militari dare?—C. De Or. 2, 18, 75.

16. Quum, Tarento amisso, arcem tamen Livius Salinâtor retinuisset, multâque ex ea proelia praeclara fecisset, quum aliquot post annos Maximus id oppidum recepisset, rogaretque eum Salinator, ut meminisset, operâ suâ se Tarentum recepisse: *Quidni, inquit, meminero? nunquam enim recepissem, nisi tu perdidisses.*—C. De Or. 2. 67, 273.

17. Nasica quum ad poëtam Ennium venisset, eique ab ostio quaerenti Ennium ancilla dixisset domi non esse; Nasica sensit illam domini jussu, dixisse, et illum intus esse. Paucis post diebus quum ad Nasicam venisset Ennius, et eum a janua quaereret, exclâmat Nasica, se domi non esse. Tum Ennius: Quid? ego non cognosco vocem, inquit, tuam? Hic Nasica: *Homo [inquit] es impudens. Ego quum te quaererem, ancillae tuae credidi, te domi non esse; tu mihi non credis ipsi?*—Ib. 68, 276.

18. Orator quidam malus quum in epilögo misericordiam se movisse putaret, postquam assedit, rogavit Catulum, videreturne misericordiam movisse: *Ac magnam quidem, inquit; neminem enim puto esse tam durum, cui non oratio tua miseranda visa sit.*—C. De Or. 2. 69, 278.

---

15. Exsul, *ülis, m. exile.* proque eo, quod, *and on account of this, that* non. nolle, *to will with pleasure.* res militâris, *warfare.* hic, *here.* Poenus, *i, m. Carthaginian.* Graece, *adv. in Greek.* delirus, *a, um, silly.* deliro *1. to be silly. mehercûle, adv. by Hercules, indeed. arrogans, tis, arrogant.*

## IV. NARRATIVES.

1. *Xerxes. Leonidas. Themistocles.* (Cf. Justin. 2, 10. 11.)

Xerxes bellum a patre coeptum adversus Graeciam per quinquennium instruxit. Septingenta milia de regno armaverat et trecenta milia de auxiliis, ut non immerito proditum sit, flumina ab exercitu ejus siccata, Graeciamque omnem vix capere exercitum ejus potuisse. Naves quoque milia ducentas numero habuisse dicitur.

Ut introitus Xerxis in Graeciam terribilis fuit, ita turpis ac foedus discessus. Nam quum Leonidas, rex Lacedaemoniorum, cum quattuor milibus militum angustias Thermopylarum occupasset, Xerxes contemptu paucitatis eos pugnam capessere jubet, quorum cognati Marathoniam pugnam interfecti fuerant: qui, dum ulcisci suos cupiunt, principium cladis fuere: succedente deinde inutili turba, major caedes editur. Triduum ibi cum dolore et indignatione Persarum dimicatum: quarto die, quum nuntiatum esset Leonidae, a viginti milibus hostium summum cacumen teneri, tunc hortatur socios, recedant, et se ad meliora patriae tempora reservent: sibi cum Lacedaemoniis fortunam experiendam: plura se patriae, quam vitae, debere: ceteros ad praesidia Graeciae servandos. Audito regis imperio, discessere ceteri, soli Lacedaemonii remanserunt. Initio hujus belli sciscitantibus Delphis oracula responsum fuerat, aut regi Lacedaemoniorum, aut urbi cadendum esse.

Et idcirco rex Leonidas, quum in bellum proficisceretur, ita suos firmaverat, ut ire se parato ad moriendam animo scirent. Angustias propterea occupaverat, ut cum paucis aut majore gloria vinceret, aut minore damno reipublicae caderet. Dimissis igitur sociis, hortatur Lacedaemonios, meminerint, quocunque modo proeliaturi sint, cadendum esse: caverent, ne fortius mansisse, quam dimicasse viderentur; nec exspectandum, donec ab hoste circumvenirentur, sed, dum nox occasionem daret, securis et laetis superveniendum; nusquam victores honestius, quam in castris hostium perituros. Nihil erat difficile persuadere paratis mori: statim arma capiunt, et sexcenti viri castra quingentorum milium irrumpunt; statimque regis praetorium petunt, aut

---

1. Quinquennium, *i, n. the space of four years.* armō 1. *to arm.* immerito, *adv. not without justice.* numēro, *abl., in number.* Thermopylae, *arum, f. Thermopylae, a narrow pass in Thessaly.* contemptus, *ūs, m. contempt.* paucitas, *ātis, f. fewness.* cognātus, *i, m. relative.* Marathonius, *a, um, of Marathon.* triduum, *i, n. space of three days.* indignatio, *ōnis, f. indignation.* sciscitor 1. *to inquire.* proelior 1. *to fight.* circumvenio, *vēni, ventum 4. to*

cum illo, aut, si ipsi oppressi essent, in ipsius potissimum sede morituri. Tumultus totis castris oritur. Lacedaemonii posteaquam regem non inveniunt, per omnia castra victores vagantur, caedunt sternuntque omnia, ut qui sciant se pugnare non spe victoriae, sed in mortis poenam. Proelium a principio noctis in majorem partem diei tractum. Ad postremum non victi, sed vincendo fatigati, inter ingentes stratorum hostium catervas occiderunt.

Xerxes, duobus vulneribus terrestri proelio acceptis, experiri maris fortunam statuit. Ante navalis proelii congressionem miserat Xerxes quattuor milia armatorum Delphos ad templum Apollinis diripiendum: prorsus, quasi non cum Graecis tantum, sed etiam cum diis immortalibus bellum gereret: quae manus tota imbris et fulminibus deleta est, ut intelligeret, quam nullae essent hominum adversus deos vires. Post haec Thespias, et Plataeas, et Athenas vacuas hominibus incendit: et quoniam ferro in homines non poterat, in aedificia igne grassatur. Namque Athenienses post pugnam Marathouiam, praemonente Themistocle, victoriam illam de Persis reportatam, non finem, sed causam majoris belli fore, ducentas naves fabricati erant. Adventante igitur Xerxe, consulentibus Delphis oraculum responsum fuerat: Salutem muris ligneis tuerentur.

Themistocles, navium praesidium demonstratum ratus, persuadet omnibus, patriam municipales esse, non moenia; civitatemque non in aedificiis, sed in civibus positam. Itaque melius salutem navibus, quam urbi commissuros. Hujus sententiae etiam Deum auctorem esse. Probato consilio, conjuges liberosque cum pretiosissimis rebus abditis insulis, relictâ urbe, demandant; ipsi naves armati conscendunt. Exemplum Atheniensium etiam aliae urbes imitatae sunt. Itaque quum conjuncta omnis sociorum classis, et intenta in bellum navale esset, angustiasque Salaminii freti, ne circumveniri a multitudine posset, occupasset; dissensio inter civitatum principes oritur. Qui quum, deserto bello, ad sua tuenda dilabi vellent, timens Themistocles, ne discessu sociorum vires minuerentur, per servum fidelem Xerxi nuntiat, uno in loco eum contractam Graeciam capere facillime posse. Quodsi civitates, quae jam abire vellent, dissiparentur, majore labore ei singulas consecandas. Hoc dolo impellit regem, ut signum pugnae daret.

---

*go around, surround. supervenire, to surprise. sterno, stravi, stratum 3. to prostrate. ut qui, as those, who. fatigo 1. to weary. caterva, ae, f. troop. statuo, ui, utum 3. to determine. quam nullae essent hominum vires, how insignificant the power of man might be. congressio, onis, f. engagement. Thespieae and Plataeae, arum, f. cities in Boeotia. vacuus, a, um (c. abl.), empty. grassor 1. to walk; in aliquid gr. to rage against. praemoneo, ui,*

Graeci quoque, adventu hostium occupati, proelium collatis viribus capessunt.

Interea rex, velut spectator pugnae, cum parte navium in littore remānet; Artemisiā autem, regina Halicarnassi, quae in auxilium Xerxi venerat, inter primos duces bellum acerrime ciebat: quippe ut in viro muliēbrem timorem, ita in muliere virilem audaciam cerneret. Quum anceps proelium esset, Iōnes ex praecepto Themistoclis pugnae se paullatim subtrahere coeperunt: quorum defectio animos ceterorum fregit. Itaque circumspicientes fugam pelluntur Persae et mox, proelio victi, in fugam vertuntur. In qua trepidatione multae captae sunt na- ves, multae mersae; plures tamen, non minus saevitiā regis, quam hostem, timentes, domū dilabuntur.

## 2. *Piso orator et servus.*

Marcus Piso, orator Romanus, servis praeceperat, ut tantum ad inter- rogata responderent, neve quicquam praeterea dicerent. Evēnit, ut Clodium ad coenam invitari juberet. Hora coenae iustabat; adērāt ceteri convivae omnes, solus Clodius expectabatur. Piso servum, qui solebat convivas vocare, aliquoties emisit, ut videret, veniretne. Quum tandem jam desperaretur ejus adventus, Piso servo: Dic, inquit, num forte non invitasti Clodium? Invitavi, respondit ille. Cur ergo non venit? Quia venturum se negavit. Tum Piso: Cur id non statim dixisti? Respondit servus: Quia non sum a te interrogatus.

## 3. *Canis fidelis.*

Pyrrhus rex in itinere incīdit in canem, qui interfecti hominis cor- pus custodiebat. Quum audisset, eum jam tres dies cibi expertem assidēre, nec a cadavere discedere, mortuum jussit humari, canem ve- ro deduci et curari diligenter. Paucis post diebus militum lustratio habetur. Transeunt singuli, sedente rege. Aderat canis. Is quum

itum 2. *pre-admonish.* fabrīcor 1. *to make.* munīceps, īpis, *m. citizen of a free city*; 2) *citizen.* conjux, ūgis, *f. wife.* abdo, dīdi, dītum 3. *to conceal.* demandō 1. *to commit.* Salaminium fretum, *i. n. bay of Salamis.* Halicar- nassus, *i. f. city in Caria.* muliēbris, *e, of a woman.* cernēres, *one might see.* Iōnes, *um, m. Ionians.* paullātīm, *adv. gradually.* subtrāho, traxi, tractum 3. *to withdraw.* defectio, ōnis, *f. desertion.* trepidatio, ōnis, *f. trepi- dation, haste.* mergo, mersi, mersum 3. *to sink.* saevitia, *ae, f. cruelty.*

2. Praecīpio, cēpi, ceptum 3. *to direct.* praeterēa, *adv. besides.* aliquo- tēs, *adv. several times.* num forte non invitasti? *can it be possible that thou hast not invited.*

3. Assīdeo, sēdi 2. *to sit by.* humo 1. *to bury.* dedūco, xi, ctum 3. *to lead away.* lustratio, ōnis, *f. review.* tacītus, *a, um, silent.* percussor, ōris,

antea quietus et tacitus fuisset, simulac vidit, domini sui percussores transire, procurrit furens eosque allatravit, saepius se ad Pyrrhum convertens, ita quidem, ut non modo rex, sed omnes, qui aderant, suspicionem de iis conciperent. Ergo comprehensi et examinati, levibus quibusdam signis aliunde accedentibus, fassi caedem poenas dederunt.

#### 4. *Archimēdis mors.*

Captis Syracusis, quas Archimedes machinationibus suis mirificis diu defenderat, Marcellus, imperator Romanus, gravissime edixit, ne quis Archimedi vim faceret. At is, dum animo et oculis in terra defixis, formas in pulvere describit, militi Romano, qui praedandi caussa in domum irruperat strictoque gladio, quisnam esset, interrogabat, propter nimium ardorem studii nihil respondet, nisi hoc : *Noli tubare circulos meos!* A milite igitur, ignaro, quis esset, interficitur.

#### 5. *Amicus infidelis.*

Duo amici una iter faciunt atque, solitudinem peragrantes, ursum ingentem vident advenientem. Alter celeriter in arborem adscendit; alter recordatus, illam bestiam cadavera non attingere, nisi fame effertam, humi se prosternit animamque continet, simulans se esse mortuum. Accedit ursus, contrectat jacentem, os suum ad hominis os et aures admōvet et cadāver esse ratus discedit. Tunc ambo metu liberati inceptum iter persequuntur. Inter eundum autem interrogat is, qui in arborem adscenderat, alterum, quidnam ursus ei in aurem insusurrasset. Multa, inquit ille, quae non recordor; sed imprimis hoc praeceptum dedit, ne quem pro amico haberem, cujus fidem adverso tempore non essem expertus.

#### 6. *Demosthēnes.*

Demosthenes caussam orans quum iudices parum attentos videret: Paullisper, inquit, aures mihi praebete: rem vobis novam et jucundam narrabo. Quum aures arrexissent: Juvenis, inquit, quispiam asinum conduxerat, quo Athenis Megāram profecturus uteretur. In itinere quum sol flagraret, neque esset umbraculum, deposuit clitellas et sub

*m. murderer.* procurro, cucurri, cursum 3. *to rush forth.* furo 3. *to rage.* allatro 1. *to bark at.* suspicio, ōnis, *f. suspicion.*

4. Edīco, xi, ctum 3. *to give out command.* vim facere, *to inflict violence.* forma, ae, *f. figure.*

5. Infidelis, e, *unfaithful.* ursus, i. *m. bear.* effēro 1. *to render fierce.* anima, ae, *f. breath.* contrecto 1. *to handle.* insusurro, *to whisper.*

6. Arrīgo, rexi, rectum 3. *to prick up.* condūco, xi, ctum 3. *to take with;*

asino consēdit, cujus umbrā tegeretur. Id vero agāso vetabat, clamans, asinum locatum esse, non umbram asini. Alter quum contra contenderet, tandem in jus ambulans. Haec locutus Demosthenes, ubi homines diligenter auscultantes vidit, abiit. Tum revocatus a iudicibus rogatusque, ut reliquam fabulam enarraret: Quid? inquit. De asini umbra licet audire? caussam hominis de vita periclitantis non audietis?

### 7. *Cyri mors.*

Postquam Asiam Cyrus subegit, Scythis bellum infert, quibus eo tempe Tomŷris regina praeerat. Rex aliquantum in Scythia progressus, quasi refugiens, castra deseruit atque in iis vini affatim et quae epulis erant necessaria reliquit. Tum regina filium adolescentem tertia parte copiarum ad hostes insequendos misit; is vero, rei militaris ignarus, omisit hostes et milites in castris Cyri vino se onerare patitur. Cyrus autem noctu redit omnesque Scythas cum ipso reginae filio in castris interficit. Sed Tomŷris, poenam meditata, hostes, recenti victoria exsultantes, pari fraude decipit. Quippe simulato timore refugiens Cyrum ad angustias pertraxit ibique in insidiis regem cum innumerabilibus Persarum copiis occidit. Tum caput Cyri amputatum in utrem, sanguine humano repletum, coniecit, crudelitatem his verbis exprobrans: Satia te sanguine, quem sitisti, et quo nunquam satiari potuisti!

### 8. *Andrōcli leo.* (Cf. Gell. N. A. 5, 14, 5—30.)

Romae in circo maximo venationis amplissimae pugna populo dabatur. Multae ibi saevientes ferae erant; sed praeter alia omnia leonum immanitas admirationi fuit, praeterque ceteros omnes eminebat unus. Is leo corporis impetu et ingenti magnitudine terribilique fremitu, toris comisque cervicum fluctuantibus, animos oculosque omnium in sese converterat. Introductus erat inter complures ceteros ad pugnam bestiarum servus viri consularis. Ei servo Andrōclus nomen fuit. Hunc

2) to hire. umbraculum, *n.* shade. clitellae, arum, *f.* pack-saddle. agāso, ōnis, *m.* hostler. loco 1. to hire. enarro 1. to relate through. periclitōr 1. to be in danger of.

7. Aliquantum, to some extent. refugio, fūgi 3. to flee back. affatim, *adv.* abundantly; aff. vini, abundance of wine. insēquor, secūtus sum 3. to pursue. recens, *tis*, recent. decipio, cēpi, ceptum 3. to deceive. pertrāho, axi, actum 3. to draw. ampūto 1. to cut off. uter, utris, *m.* leather bag.

8. Circus maximus, *i*, *m.* the Circus Maximus, a great race-course. immanitas, ātis, *f.* hugeness. torus, *i*, *m.* protuberance; 2) muscle. coma, ae, *f.* hair; 2) mane. cervix, icis, *f.* neck. fluctuor 1. to wave. introduco, xi,

ille leo ubi vidit procul, repente, quasi admirans, stetit; ac deinde sensim atque placide tanquam exploraturus ad hominem accedit; tum caudam more adulantium canum clementer et blande movet hominisque fere corpori adjungit cruraque ejus et manus prope jam exanimati metu linguâ leniter demulcet. Homo Androclus inter illa tam atrocis ferae blandimenta amissum animum receperat; paullatim oculos ad contuendum leonem refert. Tum, quasi mutua recognitione factâ, laetos et gratulabundos videres hominem et leonem. Eâ re prorsus admirabili maximi a populo clamores excitantur, arcessiturque a Caesare Androclus, quaeriturque ex eo, cur ille atrocissimus leonum uni pepercisset.

Hic Androclus rem mirificam narrat atque admirandam. Quum provinciam, inquit, Africam proconsulari imperio meus dominus obtineret, ego ibi iniquis ejus et quotidianis verberibus ad fugam sum coactus; et, ut mihi a domino terrae illius praeside tutiores latēbrae essent, in camporum et arenarum solitudines concessi: ac, si defuisset cibus, consilium fuit mortem aliquo pacto quaerere. Tum, sole flagrante, specum quendam nactus remotum latebrosumque, in eum me recondo. Neque multo post ad eundem specum venit hic leo, debili uno et cruento pede, gemitus edens et murmura, dolorem cruciatumque vulneris indicantia. Ac primum quidem conspectu advenientis leonis animus meus summo terrore impletur; sed postquam leo, introgressus in latibulum illud suum, vidit me procul delitescens, mitis et mansuetus accessit: ac sublatum pedem ostendere et porrigere, quasi opis petendae gratia, visus est. Ibi, ego stirpem ingentem vestigio pedis ejus haerentem revelli conceptamque saniem vulnere intimo expressi accuratiusque sine magna jam formidine siccavi penitus atque deteri cruorem. Ille tunc meâ operâ et medicinâ levatus, pede in manibus meis posito, recubuit et quievit. Atque ex eo die triennium totum ego et leo in eodem specu eodemque victu viximus. Nam, quas venabatur feras, membra opimiora ad specum mihi suggerebat: quae ego,

---

ctum 3. to introduce. vir consularis, *m. a man of consular rank.* sensim, *adv. by degrees.* cauda, *ae, f. tail.* adjungo, *xi, ctum 3. to join to.* demulceo, *mulsi, mulsum 2. to soothe; 2) to lick.* blandimentum, *i, n. caressing.* mutuus, *a, um, mutual.* recognitio, *ōnis, f. recognition.* gratulabundus, *a, um, congratulating.* Hic, *here.* proconsulâre imperium, *n. proconsular power.* latēbrae, *arum, f. lurking places.* arēna, *ae, f. sand.* latebrōsus, *a, um, full of lurking places.* recondo, *īdi, itum 3. to conceal.* introgrēdiōr, *gressus sum 3. to enter.* latibulum, *i, n. den.* delitescō, *tui 3. to conceal one's self.* mansuetus, *a, um, tame.* ostendo, *di, sum 3. to show.* porrigo, *rexī, rectum 3. to extend.* vestigium, *i, n. sole.* revello, *elli, ulsum 3. to tear out.* sanies, *ei, f. bloody matter.* formido, *īnis, f. fear.* suggēro, *gessi, gestum 3.*



ignis copiam non habens, sole meridiano torrens edebam. Sed ubi me vitae illius ferinae jam pertaesum est, leone in venatum profecto, reliqui specum: et, viam fere tridui permensus, a militibus visus comprehensusque sum et ad dominum ex Africa Romam deductus. Is me statim rei capitalis damnandum dandumque ad bestias curavit. Intellico autem hunc quoque leonem, me tunc separato, captum gratiam mihi nunc etiam beneficii et medicinae referre. Itaque, cunctis petentibus, dimissus est Androclus et poenā solutus, leoque et suffragiis populi donatus.

### 9. *Somnium mirum.*

Quum duo quidam Arcādes familiares iter unā facerent et Megāram venissent, alter ad caupōnem devertit; ad hospitem alter. Qui ut coenati quieverunt, concubiā nocte visus est in somnis ei, qui erat in hospitio, ille alter orare, ut subveniret, quod sibi a caupone interitus pararetur: is primus perterritus somnio surrexit; dein, quum se collegisset idque visum pro nihilo habendum esse duxisset, recubuit; tum ei dormienti idem ille visus est rogare, ut, quoniam sibi vivo non subvenisset, mortem suam ne inultam esse pateretur; se interfectum in plaustrum a caupone esse coniectum, et supra stercus injectum: petere, ut mane ad portam adesset, priusquam plaustrum ex oppido exiret. Hoc vero somnio is commotus mane bubulco praesto ad portam fuit; quaesivit ex eo, quid esset in plastro: ille perterritus fugit; mortuus erūtus est: caupo, re patefacta, poenas dedit.—C. Div. 1. 27, 57.

### 10. *Cleōbis et Bito. Trophonius et Agamēdes.*

Argiae sacerdotis, Cleōbis et Bito, filii, praedicantur. Nota fabula est. Quum enim illam ad solenne et statum sacrificium curru vehi jus esset satis longe ab oppido ad fanum, morarenturque jumenta; tunc juvenes ii, quos modo nominavi, veste positā, corpora oleo perunxerunt: ad jugum accesserunt. Ita sacerdos advecta in fanum, quum currus esset ductus a filiis, precata a dea dicitur, ut illis praemium daret pro pietate, quod maximum homini dari posset a deo. Post,

---

*to bring.* sol meridianus, *m. midday sun.* ferinus, a, um, *wild.* me pertaesum est alicujus rei, *I had become very tired of,* (from *pertaedet*). permertior, mensus sum 4. *to pass over.* rei capitalis damnare, *to condemn for a capital offence.* suffragium, i, n. *potsherd*; 2) *vote, voice.*

9. Caupo, ōnis, *m. inn-keeper.* devertor, ti, 3. *to put up.* concubiā nocte, *dead of night.* hospitium, i, n. *hospitality.* supra, *adv. upon that.* bubulcus, i, *m. teamster.*

10. Argiūs, a, um, *Argive.* solennis, e, *customary, solemn.* status, a, um,

epulatos cum matre adolescentes somno se dedisse, mane inventos esse mortuos.—Simili precatione Trophonius et Agamēdes usi dicuntur: qui, quum Apollini Delphis templum exaedificavissent, venerantes deum, petierunt mercedem non parvam quidem operis et laboris sui, nihil certi, sed quod esset optimum homini. Quibus Apollo se id daturum ostendisse dicitur post ejus diei diem tertium: qui ut illuxit, mortui sunt reperti.—C. Tusc. 1. 47, 113, 114.

### 11. *Dolus Pythii.*

C. Canius, eques Romanus, quum se Syracusas otiandi (ut ipse dicere solebat), non negotiandi causa, contulisset, dictitabat, se hortulos aliquos velle emere, quo invitare amicos, et ubi se oblectare sine interpellatoribus posset. Quod quum percrebuisset, Pythius ei quidam, qui argentariam faceret Syracusis, dixit venales quidem se hortos non habere, sed licere uti Canio, si vellet, ut suis: et simul ad coenam hominem in hortos invitavit in posterum diem. Quum ille promississet, tum Pythius, qui esset ut argentarius apud omnes ordines gratus, piscatores ad se convocavit et ab iis petivit, ut ante suos hortulos postridie piscarentur: dixitque, quid eos facere vellet. Ad coenam tempore venit Canius: opipare a Pythio apparatus convivium: cymbarum ante oculos multitudo: pro se quisque quod ceperat, afferebat: ante pedes Pythii pisces abiciebantur. Tum Canius: Quaeso, inquit, quid est hoc, Pythi? tantumne piscium, tantumne cymbarum? Et ille: Quid mirum? inquit. Hoc loco est, Syracusis quicquid est piscium: hic aquatio: hac villa isti carere non possunt. Incensus Canius cupiditate contendit a Pythio, ut venderet. Gravate ille primo. Quid multa? impetrat. Emit homo cupidus et locuples tanti, quanti Pythius voluit, et emit instructos: negotium conficit. Invitat Canius postridie familiares suos; venit ipse mature: scalmum nullum videt. Quaerit ex proximo vicino, num feriae quaedam piscatorum essent, quod eos nullos videret? Nullae, quod sciam, inquit ille, sed hic piscari nulli

*stated.* sacrificium, i, n. *sacrifice.* jumentum, i, n. *beast of burden.* perungo, xi, ctum 3. *to anoint.* precatio, ōnis, f. *prayer.* exaedifico 1. *to build.*

11. C=Caius. otior 1. *to be unoccupied.* hortulus, i, m. *a little garden;* 2) *small country house.* interpellator, ōris, m. *disturber.* percrebesco, crebui, *to become known.* argentaria, ae, f. *banking;* argentariam facere, *to follow banking.* venālis, *for sale.* qui esset, *since he was.* grātiosus, a, um, *beloved.* opipare, adv. *splendidly.* apparo 1. *to prepare.* pro se quisque, *each for himself.* abjicio, ēci, ectam 3. *to cast down.* tantumne piscium? *so many fish?* aquatio, ōnis, f. *watering place.* villa, ae, *country-seat.* scalmus, i, m. *thorl;* 2) *boat.* quod sciam, *as far as I know.* stomachari, *to be indignant.* The Infin. here stands for *stomachatur.* formula, ae, f. *legal form.*

solent. Itaque heri mirabar, quid accidisset. Stomachari Canius. Sed quid faceret? nondum enim Aquillius protulerat de dolo malo formulas.—C. Off. 3. 14, 58—60.

## 12. *Arātus.*

Aratus Sicyonius jure laudatur, qui, quum ejus civitas quinquaginta annos a tyrannis teneretur, profectus Argis Sicyōnem, clandestino introitu urbe est potitus, quumque tyrannum Nicōclem improvise oppressisset, sexcentos exsules, qui fuerant ejus civitatis locupletissimi, restituit, remque publicam adventu suo liberavit. Sed quum magnam animadverteret in bonis et possessionibus difficultatem, quod et eos, quos ipse restituerat, quorum bona alii possederant, egere iniquissimum arbitrabatur, et quinquaginta annorum possessiones moveri non nimis aequum putabat, propterea quod tam longo spatio multa hereditatibus, multa emptionibus, multa dotibus tenebantur sine injuria: judicavit, neque illis admi, nec iis non satisfieri, quorum illa fuerant, oportere. Quum igitur statuisset, opus esse ad eam rem constituendam pecuniā, Alexandriam se proficisci velle dixit, remque integram ad reditum suum jussit esse: isque celeriter ad Ptolemaeum, suum hospitem, venit, qui tum regnabat alter post Alexandriam conditam. Cui quum exposuisset, patriam se liberare velle, caussamque docuisset; a rege opulento vir summus facile impetravit, ut grandi pecunia adjuvaretur. Quam quum Sicyōnem attulisset, adhibuit sibi in consilium quindecim principes, cum quibus caussas cognovit et eorum, qui aliena tenebant, et eorum, qui sua amiserant: perfecitque aestimandis possessionibus, ut persuaderet aliis, ut pecuniam accipere mallent, possessionibus cederent; aliis, ut commodius putarent, numerari sibi, quod tanti esset, quam suum recuperare. Ita perfectum est, ut omnes, concordia constituta, sine querela discederent. O virum magnum dignumque, qui in nostra republica natus esset!—C. Off. 2. 23, 81, 82.

---

12. Sicyonius, *Sicyonian*, (from Sicyon, a city of Achaia). Argi, orum, *m. Argos*, chief city of Argolis. clandestinus, a, um, *secret*. improvise, *adv. unexpectedly*. possideo, sedi, sessum 2. *to possess*. hereditas, atis, *f. inheritance*. satisfacio, feci, factum 3. *to make satisfaction*. expōno, posui, positum 3. *to explain*.

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

The numbers 1, 2, 3, 4 written after the verbs, denote the conjugation which they follow : the numerals, which are introduced in § 33, and the prepositions which are introduced in § 34, are omitted. The adjectives of three endings in *us, a, um*, instead of their endings have the figure 3 after them.

A.	absūmo, sumpsi, sump-	accūso 1. to complain of,
Abdūco, xi, ctum 3.	tum 3. to consume.	accuse.
to lead away, draw away.	abundo, 1. c. abl. to	acer, ĕris, n. maple-tree.
abĕo, ii, ĭtum 4. to go	have an abundance of,	acer, cris, cre, sharp,
away, depart.	abound in (something).	zealous, fierce.
abhorrĕo, ūi 2. ab. c.	abūtor, ūsus, sum 3. c.	acerbus 3. bitter, pun-
abl. to shun, to have	abl. to use up; 2)	gent.
a strong aversion (to	abuse.	Achilles, is, m. Achilles.
something).	ac, conj. (never before	acies, ĕi, f. edge; 2)
abĭgo, ĕgi, actum 3. to	a vowel or h), and; as.	line-of-battle.
drive away.	Academĭa, f. Academy.	acrĭter, adv. spiritedly.
abomĭnor 1. to execrate.	accĕdo, cessi, cessum	actio, ōnis, f. action.
abripio, ripui, reptum	3. to approach.	acŭo, ūi, ūtum 3. to shar-
3. to take away, carry	accelĕro 1. to hasten.	pen.
off.	accendo, di, sum, 3. to	acus, ūs, f. needle.
absens, tis, absent.	enkindle, inflame.	acŭte, adv. sharply, ac-
absolvo, vi, ūtum 3. to	acceptus 3. received.	utely.
complete, 2) to dis-	accidit 3. it happens.	acŭtus 3. sharp, pointed,
charge.	accipio, cĕpi, ceptum 3.	acute.
abstergeo, si, sum, 2. to	to take, receive.	adaequo 1. to level to.
wipe off, take away,	accommodātus 3. c. dat.	adāmas, antis, m. dia-
remove.	fitted to, suited to.	mond.
abstĭnens, tis, temperate.	accresco, ĕvi, ĕtum 3.	addictus 3. devoted to.
abstĭnĕo, tinŭi, tentum	to increase, to aug-	addo, dĭdi, dĭtum 3. to
2. to keep off; 2) c.	ment.	join to, add.
abl. to abstain, (from	accŭbo, bŭi, bĭtum 1, to	addŭco, xi, ctum 3. to
something).	recline by, to sit (at	bring to, induce.
absum, fŭi, esse, to be	table).	adĕo, adv. so much, so
absent, to be removed;	accurāte, adv. accurate-	very.
nihil abest, (non	ly, fully.	adĕo, ii, ĭtum 4. to come
multum) abest, quin,	accurātus 3. exact.	to, approach.
it wants nothing (not	accurro, cucurri, cur-	adhĭbĕo 2. to apply, be-
much), that.	sum 3. to run up, to	stow, give.
	hasten up.	adhuc, adv. as yet, still.

- adjacēo, ūi 2. c. dat. to lie upon, by, near (a thing).
- adīmo, ēmi, emtum 3. to take, take away.
- adipiscor, adeptus sum 3. to obtain.
- aditus, ūs, m. approach.
- adjutor, ōris, m. assistant.
- adjūvo, ūvi, ūtum 1. c. acc. to aid, assist, support. [ble.
- admirabilis, e, admiratio, ōnis, f. admiration.
- admiror 1. to admire.
- admiscēo, iscul, istum or ixtum 2. to intermingle.
- admōdum, adv. very.
- admōnēo 2. to admonish.
- admōvēo, mōvi, mōtum 2. c. dat. to bring up to.
- adnitor, nixus or nisus sum 3. to endeavor.
- adolescens, tis, m. young man, youth, young.
- adolescentulus, i, m. young man, youth.
- adolesco, adolēvi, adultum 3. to grow up.
- ador, ōris, n. wheat.
- adorior, ortus sum 4. to attack, undertake.
- adorno 1. to put in order, adorn.
- adscendo, di, sum 3. to ascend.
- adscisco, ivi, itum 3. to adopt, receive.
- adspicio, exi, ectum 3. to look upon, discover.
- adstringo, inxi, ictum 3. to draw up tight; 2) bind, to make binding.
- adsum, fūi, esse c. dat. to be present at (something), to be present.
- adulatio, ōnis, f. flattery.
- adulor 1. c. dat. to flatter.
- adulterinus 3. false, counterfeit.
- adūro, ussi, ustum 3. to set on fire, burn.
- advēnio, vēni, ventum 4. to come to, arrive.
- advento 1. to approach.
- adventus, ūs, m. arrival.
- adversarius, i, m. opponent.
- adversus, 3. placed against, contrary, opposite; res adversae, adversity.
- adverto, ti, sum 3. to turn to.
- advolo 1. to hasten to.
- aedes, is, f. temple; pl. house.
- aedificium, i, n. edifice.
- aedifico 1. to build.
- aedilis, is, m. Edile.
- aeger, gra, grum, sick.
- aegritudo, inis, f. sickness, sorrow.
- aegre, adv. reluctantly, with difficulty; aegre fero, to be dissatisfied.
- aegrōtus, 3. sick.
- aemulor 1. c. acc. to emulate.
- Aenēas, ae, m. Æneas.
- aenigma, ātis, n. enigma.
- aequalis, e, equal.
- aeque—atque (ac), in like manner—as.
- aequipāro 1. to equal.
- aquitas, ātis, f. equity.
- aequo 1. to equal.
- aequor, ōris, n. surface, espec.: surface of the sea.
- aequus 3. just, equal; aequus animus, equanimity.
- aerumna, ae, f. hardship.
- aes, aeris, n. brass.
- Aeschines, is, m. Æschines.
- aestas, ātis, f. summer.
- aestimo 1. to value, esteem.
- aestivus 3. pertaining to summer; aestivum tempus, summer season.
- aetas, ātis, f. age, period.
- aeternitas, ātis, f. eternity.
- aeternus 3. eternal.
- affabilitas, ātis, f. affability.
- affero, attūli, allatum 3. to bear to, bring.
- afficio, ēci, ectum 3. to affect; Part. affectus 3. affected.
- affinitas, ātis, f. relationship.
- afflicto 1. to afflict.
- affluenter, adv. abundantly.
- affluentia, ae, f. abundance.
- afflūo, uxi, uxum 3. to flow to; overflow, have an abundance.
- affulgeo, si 2. to shine.
- Afranius, i, m. Afranius.
- Africanus, i, m. Africanus.
- Agamemno, ōnis, m. Agamemnon.
- ager, gri, m. field, land.
- Agesilaus, i, m. Agesilaus.
- agger, ēris, m. rampart.
- aggredior, gressus sum 3. rem, to approach,

- begin something; 2) *attack.*  
 agmen, īnis, *n. band, flock.*  
 agnosco, nōvi, nītum 3. *recognize.*  
 ago, ēgi, actum 3. *to drive, make, do, pass;*  
 agere annum, *to be in the year; age, come on.*  
 agricolā, *ae, m. husband-man, farmer.*  
 Ajax, ācis, *m. Ajax.*  
 aio, *I say, say yes, assert, affirm.*  
 alācer, cris, cre, *spirited, lively.*  
 Albis, *is, m. the Elbe.*  
 albus 3. *white.*  
 Alcibiādes, *is, m. Alcibiades.*  
 Alexander, dri, *m. Alexander.*  
 Alexandria, *ae, Alexandria.*  
 algeo, si 2. *to feel cold, freeze.*  
 alias, *adv. at another time.*  
 alicunde, *adv. from some place or other.*  
 alienigēna, *ae, m. stranger, from another country.*  
 aliēnus 3. *foreign, another's.*  
 aliquamdū, *adv. a long time.*  
 aliquando, *adv. some time.*  
 aliquis, a, id or aliqui, a, od, *some one.*  
 aliquot (*indecl.*), *some.*  
 aliter, *adv. otherwise.*  
 aliunde, *adv. from another source, place.*  
 aliūs, a, ud, *another;*
- alius—alius, *one, another.*  
 allicio, exi, ectum 3. *to allure.*  
 alligo 1. *to fasten, tie up.*  
 Allobrōges, um, *m. Allobroges.*  
 allōquor, cūtus sum 3. *to address.*  
 alo, alūi, (alitum) 3. *to nourish.*  
 alōe, es, *f. the aloe.*  
 Alpes, ium, *f. Alps.*  
 alter, ēra, ērum, *the one or other of two.*  
 alterūter, ūtra, ūtrum, *one of the two.*  
 altitūdo, īnis, *f. height, depth.*  
 altus 3. *high, deep.*  
 alvus, i, *f. belly.*  
 amābilis, e, *amiable.*  
 amārus 3. *bitter.*  
 ambio, īvi, itum 4. *to go around (something), surround.*  
 ambo, *ae, o, both.*  
 ambulatio, ōnis, *f. a walk.*  
 ambulo 1. *to go to walk, to stroll.*  
 amicitia, *ae, f. friendship.*  
 amicus, i, *m. friend.*  
 amitto, mīsi, missum 3. *to lose.*  
 amnis, *is, m. river.*  
 amo 1. *to love.*  
 amoenus 3. *pleasant (of countries), agreeable.*  
 amor, ōris, *m. love.*  
 amplexor 1. *to embrace, cherish.*  
 amplitūdo, īnis, *f. authority, dignity.*  
 amplius, *adv. more, further.*
- amplus 3. *broad liberal, magnificent.*  
 amussis, *is, f. a rule (of mechanics).*  
 an, (*in questions*) or. *anas, ātis, f. a duck.*  
 anceps, cipītis, *twofold, double, doubtful.*  
 Anchises, *ae, m. Anchises.*  
 apcilla, *ae, f. a maid.*  
 ancillāris, e, *pertaining to a maid, servile.*  
 ango, xi, 3. *to trouble.*  
 angor, ōris, *m. vexation.*  
 angūlus, i, *m. an angle.*  
 angustiae, arum, *f. narrow pass.*  
 angustus 3. *narrow.*  
 animadverto, ti, sum 3. *to observe, perceive.*  
 animal, ālis, *n. animal.*  
 animus, i, *m. soul, spirit, mind, heart, courage.*  
 annulus, i, *m. a ring.*  
 annus, i, *m. a year.*  
 anser, ēris, *m. a goose.*  
 ante, *adv. before.*  
 antēa, *adv. before.*  
 antecēdo, cessi, cessum 3. *c. dat. or acc. to go before, be superior to (some one).*  
 antepōno, posui, positum 3. *to prefer.*  
 antēquam, *conj. before that, ere, before.*  
 Antiochia, *ae, f. Antioch.*  
 antiquitas, ātis, *f. antiquity.*  
 antiquitus, *adv. anciently, formerly.*  
 Antistius, i, *m. Antistius.*  
 Antonius, i, *m. Antony.*  
 anus, ūs, *f. old woman.*  
 anxie, *adv. anxiously.*  
 aper, pri, *m. boar, wild boar.*

- apërio, rūi, rtum 4. to open, (caput) to uncover; apertus 3. open.  
 aperte, adv. openly.  
 apex, icis, m. summit.  
 apis, is, f. a bee.  
 Apollo, inis, m. Apollo.  
 Apolloniā, ae, f. Apollonia. [evident.  
 appāreo 2. to appear, be  
 appello 1. to call.  
 appëto, ivi, itum 3. to strive to obtain.  
 appetens, ntis, c. gen. eager for something.  
 appetitus, ūs, m. desire.  
 applaudo, si, sum 3. c. dat. to applaud.  
 applico 1. to rest upon; se applicāre, to approach, join one's self to (some one), apply one's self to (something).  
 appōno, posui, positum 3. to place by, before.  
 approbo 1. to approve.  
 appropinquo 1. to approach.  
 Aprilis, is, m. April.  
 aptus 3. c. dat. or ad c. acc., fit, fitted.  
 aqua, ae, f. water.  
 arātrum, i, n. a plough.  
 arbitror 1. to think, to account (one something).  
 arbor, ōris, f. a tree.  
 arcānum, i, n. a secret.  
 Arcas, ādis, m. an Arcadian.  
 arcëo, ūi 2. to keep off.  
 arcesso, ivi, itum 3. to send for, bring.  
 Archias, ae, m. Archias.  
 Archimēdes, is, m. Archimedes.  
 arcus, ūs, m. a bow.  
 ardentèr, adv. glowingly, ardently.  
 ardeo, si, sum 2. to burn, glow.  
 ardor, ōris, m. heat, desire.  
 arëa, ae, f. open space.  
 argentëus 3. of silver.  
 argentum, i, n. silver; arg. vivum, quicksilver.  
 Argo, ūs, f. the Argo.  
 argumentum, i, n. contents.  
 Aristides, is, m. Aristides.  
 Aristotēles, is, m. Aristotle.  
 arma, ōrum, n. arms.  
 aro 1. to plough.  
 Arpinas, ātis, m. inhabitant of Arpinum.  
 arrideo, si, sum 2. c. dat. to smile upon.  
 ars, tis, f. art.  
 artifex, icis, skilful; subst. artist.  
 artus, ūs, m. joint, limb.  
 Aruns, ntis, m. Aruns.  
 arvum, i, n. a ploughed field.  
 arx, cis, f. citadel.  
 as, assis, m. an as (a Roman copper coin.)  
 ascendo, di, sum 3. to ascend, mount.  
 ascensus, ūs, m. ascent.  
 asinus, i, m. an ass.  
 asper, ëra, ërum, rough.  
 aspernor 1. to spurn.  
 asporto 1. to carry away.  
 assentior, sensus sum 4. c. dat. to assent to.  
 assëquor, secutus sum 3. to attain.  
 assido, ëdi, essum 3. to sit down.  
 assiduus 3. unremitting, persevering.  
 assuefacio, fëci, factum 3. c. dat. to accustom to.  
 assuesco, evi, ëtum 3. c. dat. or abl. to accustom one's self to, be accustomed to (something).  
 Assyria, ae, f. Assyria.  
 astutia, ae, f. cunning.  
 at, conj. but, yet.  
 Athēnae, ārum, f. Athens.  
 Atheniensis, e, Athenian; subst. an Athenian.  
 Atlas, antis, m. Atlas.  
 atque, conj. and, as.  
 atrox, ōcis, fierce, violent, frightful, bloody.  
 attendo, di, tum 3. to attend to, give attention.  
 attente, adv. attentively.  
 attentus 3. attentive.  
 attëro, trivi, tritum 3. to impair, exhaust.  
 Atticus 3. Attic, inhabitant of Attica.  
 Atticus, i, m. Atticus.  
 attingo, igi, actum 3. to touch.  
 auctor, ōris, m. author, adviser; me auctore, upon my advice.  
 auctoritas, ātis, f. authority.  
 audacia, ae, f. self confidence. [bold.  
 audax, ācis, confident.  
 audëo, ausus sum 2. to dare, venture.  
 audio 4. to hear.  
 auditor, ōris, m. hearer.  
 aufëro, abstuli, ablātum 3. to take away, bear away.

- augeo, xi, ctum 2. to *heâte, adv. peacefully.* increase, enrich. beatus 3. *peaceful, happy.*  
 augurium, i, n. *augury, divination.* bellum, i, n. *war.*  
 auguror 1. to *divine, predict.* bellus 3. *beautiful, neat.*  
 Augustus, i, m. *Augustus.* bene, adv. *well, rightly.*  
 aula, ae, f. *court.* benedico 3. c. dat. to *praise.*  
 aureus 3. *golden.* beneficentia, ae, f. *beneficence.*  
 Aureus, i, m. *Aureus* beneficium, i, n. *kindness, favour.*  
 (mountain). beneficus 3. *beneficent.*  
 auris, is, f. *the ear.* benevole, adv. *kindly.*  
 aurum, i, n. *gold.* benevolentia, ae, f. *beneficence.*  
 ausculto 1. to *listen.* benignus 3. *kind.*  
 auspikor 1. to *commence.* bestia, ae, f. *beast.*  
 aut, conj. *or; aut—aut, either—or.* bestiola, ae, f. *a little animal.*  
 autem, conj. *but* (takes the second place in its sentence). bibliotheca, ae, f. *library.*  
 autumnus, i, m. *autumn.* bibo, bibi, bibitum 3. *to drink.* [bodied.  
 auxilium, i, n. *aid; pl. auxiliary troops.* bicorpor, oris, *double-*  
 avaritia, ae, f. *avarice.* biduum, i, n. *the space of two days.*  
 avarus 3. c. gen. *avaricious, covetous, greedy.* bilis, is, f. *the gall.*  
 aversor 1. to *shun.* blande, adv. *gently.*  
 avertō, ti, sum 3. to *turn away, to avert.* blandior, itus sum 4. to *flatter.*  
 avidus 3. c. gen. *desirous, greedy.* bombyx, ycis, m. *the silk worm.*  
 avis, is, f. *a bird.* bonitas, atis, f. *goodness.*  
 avoco 1. to *call off.* bonus 3. *good; bonum, i, n. the good, good.*  
 avolo 1. to *fly away.* Boreas, ae, m. *Boreas, north wind.*  
 avus, i, m. *a grandfather.* bos, ovis, c. *ox, cow.*  
 axis, is, m. *an axle.* brevis, e, *short; brevi, (sc. tempore), in a short time, soon.*
- B.  
 Babylon, onis, f. *Babylon.*  
 Bactra, orum, n. *Bactra.*  
 barba, ae, f. *beard.*  
 barbatus 3. *barbarian.*  
 basis, is, f. *foundation, pedestal.*  
 Britannus, i, m. *a Briton.*  
 Brundisium, i, n. *Brun- dusium.*  
 Brutus, i, m. *Brutus.*
- C.  
 Cachinnatio, onis, f. *loud, unrestrained laugh.*  
 cacumen, inis, n. *top.*  
 cadaver, eris, n. *carcass, corpse.*  
 cado, cecidi, casum 3. *to fall, happen.*  
 caducus 3. *ready to fall, falling.*  
 caecus 3. *blind.*  
 caedes, is, f. *slaughter.*  
 caedo, cecidi, caesum 3. *to fell, to kill.*  
 caerimonia, ae, f. *cere- mony.*  
 Caesar, aris, m. *Caesar; 2) an emperor.*  
 Caius Marius, Caius Marius.  
 calamitas, atis, f. *calamity, loss, misfortune.*  
 calcar, aris, n. *a spur.*  
 calculus, i, m. *pebble.*  
 caléo 2. to *be warm.*  
 caligo, inis, f. *darkness.*  
 calix, icis, m. *a cup.*  
 callidus 3. *cunning.*  
 Callisthenes, is, m. *Cal- listhenes.*  
 calor, oris, m. *heat.*  
 calyx, ycis, m. *the bud.*  
 camelus, i, m. *camel.*  
 campus, i, m. *a plain.*  
 canalis, is, m. *a canal.*  
 canis, is, c. *a dog.*  
 cannabis, is, f. *hemp.*  
 cano, cecini, cantum 3. *to sing.*  
 canto 1. to *sing.*  
 cantus, us, m. *song.*  
 Canusium, i, n. *Canu- sium.*



- capesso, ivi, itum 3. *to seize*; proelium, *to commence battle*.  
 capillus, i, m. *the hair*.  
 capio, cēpi, captum 3. *to take, seize, capture*.  
 capra, ae, f. *she-goat*.  
 capto 1. *to catch, strive to catch*.  
 caput, itis, n. *head, chapter, chief city*.  
 carbāsus, i, f. *flax*.  
 carcer, ēris, m. *a prison*.  
 cardo, inis, m. *hinge*.  
 careo 2. c. abl. *to want*.  
 Carīa, ae, f. *Caria*.  
 caritas, ātis, f. *love*.  
 carmen, inis, f. *poem*.  
 caro, carnis, f. *flesh*.  
 Carōlus, i, m. *Charles*.  
 carpentarius, i, m. *wheelwright*.  
 Carthāgo, inis, f. *Carthage*.  
 Carthaginiensis, is, m. *a Carthaginian*.  
 carus 3. *beloved, dear*.  
 casa, ae, f. *a hut*.  
 cassis, idis, f. *helmet*.  
 cassis, is (commonly pl. casses, ium), m. *hunter's net*.  
 Cassius, i, m. *Cassius*.  
 castigo 1. *to reprove*.  
 castra, ōrum, n. *camp*.  
 casus, ūs, m. *fall, misfortune, chance*.  
 catēna, ae, f. *chain*.  
 Catilina, ae, m. *Catiline*.  
 caulis, is, m. *cabbage*.  
 Cato, ōnis, m. *Cato*.  
 caussa, ae, f. *ground, cause, civil process*; (with a gen. preceding) *on account of*.  
 cautus 3. *cautious, careful*.  
 caveo, cavi, cautum 3. *to be on one's guard, ab aliquo, before some one*; 2) *establish, provide*. [to give way.  
 cēdo, cessi, cessum 3. *vide*.  
 celēber, bris, bre, frequentated. )  
 celebritas, ātis, f. *great number, great multitude*.  
 celēbro 1. *to celebrate*.  
 celer, ēris, ēre, swift. *celeritas, ātis, f. celerity, swiftness*.  
 celeriter adv. *swiftly*.  
 celo 1. c. dupl. acc. *to conceal*.  
 censeo, sūi, sum 2. *to value, account, think*.  
 Centaurus, i, m. *a Centaur*.  
 cerāsum, i, n. *cherry*.  
 cerāsus, i, f. *cherry-tree*.  
 Ceres, ēris, f. *Ceres*.  
 cerno, crēvi, crētum 3. *to see, judge*. [test.  
 certāmen, inis, n. *contest*, adv. *surely*.  
 certo, 1. *to contend*.  
 certo, adv. *surely*.  
 certus 3. *sure, certain, definite, positive*.  
 cervus, i, m. *stag*.  
 cetēri, ae, a, *the rest*.  
 chalybs, ŷbis, m. *steel*.  
 chorda, ae, f. *string*.  
 Christus, i, m. *Christ*.  
 cibus, i, m. *food*.  
 cicer, ēris, n. *chick-pea*.  
 Cicēro, ōnis, m. *Cicero*.  
 ciconia, ae, f. *stork*.  
 cicur, ūris, tame. *ciēo, ivi, itum 2. to raise*.  
 cingo, xi, ctum 3. *to gird, surround*.  
 cinis, ēris, m. *ashes*.  
 circūlus, i, m. *circle, circuit*.  
 circumdo, dēdi, dātum, *dāre, to place around, surround*, (c. dat. of pers. and acc. of thing, or c. acc. of pers. and abl. of thing).  
 circumēo (circuēo), īi, itum 4. *to go around*.  
 circumśēdēo, sedi, sessum 2. *to sit around, besiege*.  
 circumspicio, spexi, spectrum 3. (c. acc.) *to look around (after something)*.  
 circumsto, ēti 1. *to stand around*.  
 cito, adv. *quickly*.  
 civilis, e, civil; bellum civile, civil war.  
 civis, is, c. *citizen, subject*.  
 civitas, ātis, f. *citizenship, state*; 2) *right of citizenship*.  
 clades, is, f. *defeat*.  
 clamo 1. *to cry out*.  
 clamor, ōris, m. *a cry*.  
 clare, adv. *clearly, evidently*. [ed.  
 clarus 3. *clear, renowned*.  
 classis, is, f. *fleet*.  
 claudio, si, sum 3. *to close*.  
 clausus 3. *closed*.  
 clavis, is, f. *key*.  
 clemens, tis, mild. *clementer, adv. mildly*.  
 Cleomēnes, is, m. *Cleomenes*.  
 Clitus, i, m. *Clitus*.  
 Clodius, i, m. *Clodius*.  
 clypēus, i, m. *shield*.  
 coactor, ōris, m. *collector*.  
 coalesco, lūi, lītum 3. *to grow together, to coalesce*.

- coaxo 1. *to croak.*  
 cochlĕa, ae, *f. a snail.*  
 codex, icis, *m. book.*  
 codicilli, ōrum, *m. writing-tablet.*  
 coelestis, e, *heavenly.*  
 cœlum, i, *n. heaven.*  
 coena, ae, *f. a meal.*  
 coeno 1. *to partake of food ; coenatus 3. having eaten.*  
 coepi, pisse, *to have begun.*  
 coërcĕo 2. *to restrain.*  
 cogitatio, ōnis, *f. reflection.*  
 cogitāto, *adv. with reflection.*  
 cogito 1. *to think, consider.*  
 cognitio, ōnis, *f. knowledge.*  
 cognitus 3. *known.*  
 cognosco, nōvi, nītum 3. *to become acquainted with, perceive, understand.*  
 cogo, coēgi, coactum 3. *to compel.*  
 cohaereo, si, sum 2. *to hold together.*  
 cohors, tis, *f. cohort.*  
 cohortor 1. *to encourage, incite.*  
 colligo, ēgi, ectum 3. *to collect.*  
 collis, is, *m. a hill.*  
 collōco 1. *in c. abl. to place in, bestow upon something.*  
 colloquium, i, *n. conference.*  
 collōquor, locūtus sum 3. *to converse.*  
 collum, i, *n. neck.*  
 collustro 1. *to illuminate.*  
 colo, colūi, cultum 3. *to attend to, cultivate, revere, honor.*  
 coloniā, ae, *f. colony.*  
 color, ōris, *m. color.*  
 columba, ae, *f. dove.*  
 colus, i, *f. distaff.*  
 combūro, ussi, ustum 3. *to burn up, burn.*  
 comēdo, ēdi, ēsum 3. *to eat, consume.*  
 comētes, ae, *m. comet.*  
 comicus 3. *comic ; poëta comicus, comic poet.*  
 comis, e, *courteous.*  
 comitas, ātis, *f. kindness.*  
 comitia, ōrum, *n. assembly of the people.*  
 comitor 1. *to accompany.*  
 commemorō 1. *to mention.*  
 commendatio, ōnis, *f. commendation.*  
 commendo 1. *to recommend.*  
 committo, misi, missum 3. *to commit to ; 2) to commit.*  
 commoditas, ātis, *f. convenience.*  
 commōdum, i, *n. advantage, use.*  
 commōdus 3. *convenient.*  
 commonefācio, fēci, factum 3. *to remind.*  
 commōneo 2. *to remind, admonish.*  
 commōveo 2. *to move.*  
 commūnis, e, *common, known by all.*  
 commutatio, ōnis, *f. change.*  
 como, compsi, compitum 3. *to comb, adorn.*  
 comoedia, ae, *f. comedy.*  
 compāro 1. *to prepare, acquire.*  
 compĕrio, pĕri, pertum 1. *to ascertain.*  
 compes, ēdis, *f. a fetter.*  
 complector, exus sum 3. *to embrace.*  
 complĕo, ēvi, ētum 2. *to fill.*  
 complico, āvi, ātum 1. *to fold together ; complicātus 3. involved.*  
 complures, a or ia, *gen. ium, very many.*  
 compōno, sūi, sītum 3. *to put together, dispose ; pacem, to establish peace ; se comp. in aliquid, to set one's self right.*  
 compos, ōtis, c. *gen. powerful, possessed of.*  
 compositus 3. *composed.*  
 comprehendo, di, sum 3. *to seize.*  
 compungo, xi, ctum 3. *to prick.*  
 concĕdo, essi, essum 3. *to allow, confess, 2) to surrender one's self.*  
 concilio 1. *to conciliate, unite.*  
 concīno, inūi, entum 3. *to sing together, sound together.*  
 conciōnor 1. *to harangue the people.*  
 concipio, cēpi, ceptum 3. *to conceive, receive ; suspicionem, conceive a suspicion.*  
 concito 1. *to excite, raise.*  
 conclāmo 1. *to call out.*  
 conclūdo, si, sum 3. *to include.*  
 concordia, ae, *f. harmony.*  
 concresco, crēvi, crētum 3. *to grow together.*

- concupisco, pivi, pitum 3. *to desire.*  
 condemno 1. *to condemn*; capitis, *to death.*  
 condimentum, i. n. *seasoning.*  
 condio 4. *to season.*  
 condiscipulus, i. m. *fellow-student.*  
 conditio, ōnis, f. *condition.*  
 condo, idi, itum 3. *to preserve, conceal, found.*  
 confectio, ōnis, f. *making, composing.*  
 confēro, contūli, collātum 3. *to bring together, join, compare,* 2) *to confer* (e. g. favors); se conferre, *to betake one's self.*  
 conficio, fēci, fectum 3. *to perform, conclude*; 2) *to impair, consume.*  
 confido, isus sum 3, c. *dat. or abl. to trust to, confide in.*  
 confirmo 1. *to confirm.*  
 confitēor, fessus sum 2. *to acknowledge, confess.*  
 configo, xi, ctum 3. *to fight.*  
 conflūo, xi, xum 3. *to flow together.*  
 confodio, ōdi, ossum 3. *to stab.*  
 confōrmo 1. *to form.*  
 confringo, frēgi, fractum 3. *to break in pieces.*  
 congēro, essi, estum 3. *to collect together.*  
 congrēdior, gressus sum 3. *to meet* (with one), *fight.*  
 congrēgo 1. *to assemble.*  
 conjicio jēci, jectum 3. *to throw*; in pudorem conjici, *to be disgraced.*  
 conjūgo, 1. *to unite.*  
 conjungo, nxi, nctum 3. *to join.*  
 conjuratio, ōnis, f. *conspiracy.*  
 conjurātus 3. *conspired, a conspirator.*  
 connecto, exūi, exum 3. *to connect.*  
 Cono, ōnis, m. *Conon.*  
 conor 1. *to undertake, venture, try.*  
 conquiesco, ēvi, ētum 3. *in c. abl. to find consolation in something.*  
 consanescō, nūi 3. *to become well.*  
 conscendō, di, sum, 3. *to mount up, to ascend.*  
 conscientia, ae, f. *consciousness, conscience.*  
 conscius 3. c. gen. *conscious of.*  
 consector 1. *to pursue.*  
 consenesco, nūi 3. *to grow old.*  
 consensus, ūs, m. *agreement.*  
 consentanēus 3. *suited to.*  
 consentio, nsi, nsum 4. *to agree with.*  
 consēquor, secūtus sum 3. *to follow, to attain.*  
 consēro, rūi, rtum 3. *to join together*; manum cum aliquo, *to be hand to hand with some one.*  
 consēro, sēvi, sītum 3. *to set with plants.*  
 conservatio, ōnis, f. *preservation.*  
 conservator, ōris, m; conservātrix, icis, f. *preserver.*  
 conservo 1. *to preserve.*  
 considēro 1. *to consider.*  
 consido, ēdi, essum 3. *to sit down.*  
 consigno 1. *to note, point out.*  
 consilium, i, n. *counsel, deliberation, purpose, plan, wisdom.*  
 consolatio, ōnis, f. *consoling, consolation.*  
 consōlor 1. *to console.*  
 consors, tis c. gen. *partaking of.*  
 conspectus, ūs, m. *sight.*  
 conspergo, rsi, rsum 3. *to besprinkle, strew.*  
 conspicio, ēxi, ectum 3. *to discover.*  
 conspīcor 1. *to discover, see.* [cuous.  
 conspicūus 3. *conspicuous.*  
 constanter, adv. *with constancy, constantly.*  
 constantia, ae, f. *steadfastness.*  
 consterno, strāvi, strātum 3. *to strew.*  
 constitūo, ūi, ūtum 3. *to establish, determine, constitute.*  
 consto, iti, ātum 1. c. *abl. or ex c. abl. to consist of*; *to cost*; *constat. it is known.*  
 constringo, inxi, ictum 3. *to draw together, bind together.*  
 consuesco, ēvi, ētum 3. *to accustom one's self, be accustomed.*  
 consuetudo, inis, f. *habit, intercourse.*

- consul, ūlis, *m. consul.*  
 consulātus, ūs, *m. consulship.*  
 consŭlo, lŭi, ltum 3. *to deliberate; c. acc. to consult some one; c. dat. to consult for some one.*  
 consulto, *adv. designedly.*  
 consultus 3. *c. gen. acquainted with.*  
 consŭmo, mpsi, mptum 3. *to consume.*  
 contaminō 1. *to contaminate.*  
 contemno, mpsi, mptum 3. *to despise.*  
 contemplor 1. *to consider.*  
 contendo, di, tum 3. *to stretch, stretch one's self, strive after something; in locum, to march; to contend; ab aliquo, to demand.*  
 contentus 3. *c. abl. contented.*  
 contēro, trivi, tritum 3. *to break in pieces; contritus 3. threshed.*  
 conticesco, ticui 3. *to be silent.*  
 contīnēo, inŭi, entum 2. *to hold together; animam, to stop the breath; abstain.*  
 contingo, tigi, tactum 3. *to fall to one's lot.*  
 continŭo, *adv. forthwith.*  
 continŭus 3. *continuous.*  
 contorquēo, rsi, rtum 2. *to hurl, shoot.*  
 contra, *adv. on the contrary.*  
 contrāho, axi, actum 3. *to draw together.*  
 contrariŭs 3. *opposite.*  
 contremisco, tremui 3. *to tremble.*  
 contuēor, tuitus sum 2. *to consider.*  
 contundo, ūdi, ūsum 3. *to crush, bring to naught. [cover.*  
 convalesco, lŭi 3. *to recover.*  
 convēho, exi, ectum 3. *to bring together, carry together.*  
 convello, velli, vulsum 3. *to rend, convulse.*  
 convēnio, vēni, ventum 4. *to come together; c. acc. to visit.*  
 converto, rti, rsum 3. *to turn around, turn to, turn.*  
 conviva, ae, *m. guest.*  
 convivium, i, *n. entertainment.*  
 convivor 1. *to eat with.*  
 convōco 1. *to call together.*  
 convōlo 1. *to fly, hasten together.*  
 coorior, ortus sum 4. *to arise, burst forth.*  
 copia, ae, *f. abundance, multitude; opportun- ity; pl. troops.*  
 copiosus 3. *abundant; 2) rich in expression, fluent.*  
 copŭlo 1. *to join.*  
 coqua, ae, *f. a cook.*  
 coquo, xi, ctum 3. *to cook.*  
 cor, cordis, *n. heart.*  
 Corinthius 3. *Corinthian.*  
 Corinthus, i, *f. Corinth.*  
 cornŭs 3. *of horn.*  
 cornu, ūs, *n. horn.*  
 corōna, ae, *f. garland.*  
 corporēus 3. *corporeal.*  
 corpus, ōris, *n. body.*  
 corrādo, si, sum 3. *to scrape together.*  
 correctio, ōnis, *f. correction.*  
 corrigo, rexi, rectum 3. *to correct, improve.*  
 corrŭo, ūi 3. *to rush together.*  
 cortex, icis, *m. rind, bark.*  
 corvus, i, *m. a crow.*  
 cos, cotis, *f. whetstone, grindstone.*  
 crambe, es, *f. cabbage.*  
 cras, *adv. tomorrow.*  
 crebro, *adv. frequently.*  
 credo, didi, ditum 3. *to believe, to trust.*  
 credŭlus 3. *credulous.*  
 cremo 1. *to burn.*  
 creo 1. *to create, choose.*  
 crepo, ūi, itum 1. *to creak.*  
 cresco, crēvi, crētum 3. *to increase, grow.*  
 Creta, ae, *f. Crete.*  
 crimen, inis, *n. crime.*  
 crinis, is, *m. hair.*  
 crinitus 3. *hairy.*  
 Croto, ōnis, *m. Croton.*  
 cruciātus, ūs, *m. torture.*  
 crucio 1. *to torment, torture.*  
 crudēlis, e, *cruel.*  
 crudelitas, ātis, *f. cruelty.*  
 cruentus 3. *bloody.*  
 cruor, ōris, *m. blood.*  
 crus, uris, *n. shin, leg.*  
 cubo, ūi, itum 1. *to recline.*  
 cucūmis, ēris, *m. cucumber.*  
 culina, ae, *f. kitchen.*  
 culmen, inis, *n. top.*  
 culpa, ae, *f. guilt, fault.*  
 cultus, ūs, *m. attention to, clothing, worship.*

- cumulo 1. *to heap up, load.*  
 cunae, arum, *f. a cradle.*  
 cunctor 1. *to delay.*  
 cunctus 3. *the whole; pl. all, all together.*  
 cupiditas, âtis, *f. desire.*  
 cupidus 3. *c. gen. desirous.*  
 cupio, pivi, pitum 3. *to desire, wish.*  
 cur, *adv. why?*  
 cura, ae, *f. care; curae mihi est, I am anxious.*  
 curculio, ônis, *m. the corn-worm.*  
 Curius, i, *m. Curius.*  
 curo 1. *to care; c. acc. to be concerned, to look out for something; c. gerundivo, to cause.*  
 curriculum, i, *n. race course, course.*  
 curro, cucurri, cursum 3. *to run.*  
 currus, ūs, *m. chariot.*  
 cursus, ūs, *m. a course.*  
 custodia, ae, *f. watch.*  
 custodio 4. *to guard, watch, keep.*  
 custos, ôdis, *m. keeper.*  
 cymba, ae, *f. boat.*  
 Cyrus, i, *m. Cyrus.*  
 Cyprus, i, *f. Cyprus.*
- D.**
- Damno 1. *to condemn.*  
 damnum, i, *n. injury.*  
 dâa, ae, *f. goddess.*  
 deambulo 1. *to go to walk.* [must.  
 debëo 2. *to owe, ought,*  
 debilis, e, *weak.*  
 decëdo, cessi, cessum 3. *to go away, die.*  
 December, bris, *m. December.*
- decerno, crëvi, crëtum 3. *to determine, discern.*  
 decerpo, psi, ptum 3. *to pluck off, break off, take from.*  
 decerto 1. *to contend.*  
 decet 2. *c. acc. it is proper.*  
 declâro 1. *to declare.*  
 decorus 3. *becoming; decorum, propriety.*  
 decresco, crëvi, crëtum 3. *to decrease.*  
 decus, ôris, *n. honor.*  
 dedëcet 2. *c. acc. it is not proper.*  
 dedico 1. *to dedicate.*  
 dedo, idi, itum, 3. *to deliver up.*  
 defatigo 1. *to weary, to make weary; pass. to become weary.*  
 defendo, di, sum 3. *to defend.*  
 defëro, detuli, delätum, deferre 3. *to offer.*  
 defervesco, büi, 3. *to cease boiling, cease raging.*  
 defetiscor, fessus sum 3. *to become weary, be wearied.* [to fail.  
 deficio, fëci, fectum 3. *defigo xi, xum 3. in c. abl. to fix firmly, fix upon something.*  
 definio 4. *to define.*  
 deflagro 1. *to burn up.*  
 deflecto, xi, xum 3. *to turn from, deviate.*  
 defugio, ügi, ugitum 3. *c. acc. to escape.*  
 degëner, ris, *degenerate.*  
 degusto 1. *to taste.*  
 deinde, *thereupon, then.*  
 Deianira, ae, *f. Dejanira.*
- dejicio, jëci, jectum 3. *to cast down.*  
 delecto 1. *to delight; pass. c. abl. to be delighted, to rejoice.*  
 delëo, ëvi, ëtum 2. *to destroy, annihilate.*  
 delibëro 1. *to deliberate, consider.*  
 delictum, i, *n. offence.*  
 deligo, ëgi, ectum 3. *to select.*  
 Delphi, ôrum, *m. Delphi.*  
 Delphicus 3. *Delphic.*  
 delinquo, iqui, ictum 3. *to do wrong.*  
 deludo, si, sum 3. *to deceive.*  
 Delus (os), i, *f. Delos (an island).*  
 Demarätus, i, *m. Demaratus.*  
 demergo, si, sum 3. *to plunge under, sink.*  
 demëto, ssui, ssum 3. *to cut down.*  
 demitto, misi, missum 3. *to send down, let fall.*  
 demo, mpsi, mptum 3. *to take away.*  
 demolior, itus sum 4. *to demolish.*  
 demonstro 1. *to point out.*  
 Demosthënes, is, *m. Demosthenes.*  
 demum, *adv. first, at length.*  
 denique, *adv. at last, finally.*  
 dens, tis, *m. tooth.*  
 densus 3. *thick.*  
 dentätus 3. *toothed.*  
 denüo, *adv. anew.*  
 depasco, pâvi, pastum 3. *to feed down.*

- depōno, pōsui, pōsitum 3. *to lay down, lay aside.*  
deprehendo, di, sum 3. *to seize, catch.*  
deprīmo, pressi, pressum 3. *to depress.*  
depugno 1. *to fight* (for life or death).  
deridēo, isī, isum 2. *to deride.*  
descendo, di, sum 3. *to descend.*  
describo, psi, ptum 3. *to describe, note.*  
desēco, cūi, ctum 1. *to cut off.*  
desēro, rūi, rtum 3. *to desert.*  
desiderium, i, n. *longing, earnest desire.*  
desidēro 1. *to long for, feel the want of something.*  
desīdo, ēdi 3. *to fall down.*  
designo 1. *to designate.*  
desīno, sīi, sītum 3. *to cease.*  
desisto, stīti, stītum 3. *to desist, cease.*  
despēro 1. *to despair of.*  
despīcio, spexi, spectum 3. *to despise.*  
desitūo, ūi, ūtum 3. *to desert, leave behind.*  
destrūo, uxi, uctum 3. *to destroy.*  
desum, fūi, esse, *to be wanting*; c. dat. rei, *to neglect.*  
detēgo, xi, ctum 3. *to detect.*  
detergēo, rsi, rsum 2. *to wipe off.*  
deterreō 2. *to frighten from, deter.*  
detestabilis, e, *detestable.*  
detrāho, axi, actum 3. *to draw from, remove.*  
detrimentum, i, n. *injury.*  
detrūdo, si, sum 3. *to thrust down.*  
dēus, i, m. *God.*  
devasto 1. *to lay waste.*  
devinco 3. *to conquer.*  
devōco 1. *to call down.*  
devōlo 1. *to fly forth, hasten away.*  
devōro 1. *to devour.*  
dialectica, ae, f. *logic.*  
dialectus, i, f. *dialect.*  
Diāna, ae, f. *Diana.*  
dico, xi, ctum 3. *to say, call.*  
dictātor, ōris, m. *dictator.*  
dictūto 1. *to say often.*  
dies, ei, m. *day.*  
difficilis, e, *difficult.*  
difficultas, ātis, f. *difficultly.*  
diffido, isus sum 3. *to distrust.*  
diffindo, fidi, fissum 3. *to split.*  
diffundo, fūdi, fūsum 3. *to diffuse, disperse.*  
digēro, essi, estum 3. *to separate, digest.*  
digītus, i, m. *finger.*  
dignitas, ātis, f. *dignity.*  
dignus 3. c. abl. *worthy, deserving.*  
dijudico 1. *to distinguish.*  
dilābor, lapsus sum 3. *to glide away, disappear.* [pieces.  
dilacēro 1. *to tear in*  
dilanō 1. *to lacerate.*  
diligens, tis, *diligent.*  
diligenter adv. *diligently.*  
diligentia, ae, f. *diligence, exactness.*  
diligo, lexi, lectum 3. *to esteem, love.*  
dilucidus 3. *clear.*  
dilūo, ūi, ūtum 3. *to dilute, weaken.*  
dimico 1. *to fight.*  
dimidium, i, n. *half.*  
dimitto 3. *to dismiss.*  
Dionysius, i, m. *Dionysius.*  
diphthongus, i, f. *diphthong.*  
diripio, ipui, eptum 3. *to plunder.*  
dirūo, ūi, ūtum 3. *to destroy.*  
dirus 3. *horrible.*  
discēdo, cessi, cessum 3. *to go away, depart.*  
discessus, ūs, m. *departure.*  
discindo, cidi, eissum 3. *to tear in pieces, rend.*  
disciplina, ae, f. *discipline.*  
discipulus, i, m. *disciple.*  
disclūdo, si, sum 3. *to separate.*  
disco, didici 3. *to learn.*  
discolor, ōris, *party-colored, variegated.*  
discordia, ae, f. *discord.*  
discordo 1. cum aliquo, *to disagree with some one.*  
discrimen, inis, n. *distinction, danger.*  
discutio, ussi, ussum 3. *to disperse, to dispel.*  
disertus 3. *eloquent.*  
disjicio, jeci, jectum 3. *to scatter.*  
dispar, āris, *unequal, diverse.*  
dispello, pūli, pulsum 3. *to drive asunder, to dispel.*

- dispergo, rsi, rsum 3. *to disperse, scatter.*  
 dispicio, exi, ectum 3. *to open the eyes.*  
 displiceo 2. *to displease.*  
 dissensio, onis, f. *dissension.*  
 dissero, rui, rtum 3. *to discuss, discourse.*  
 dissimilis, e, *dissimilar.*  
 dissipio 1. *to scatter.*  
 dissolvo, vi, utum 3. *to dissolve.* [dissuade.  
 dissuadeo, si, sum 2. *to dissuade.*  
 distineo, inui, entum 2. *to hold from each other, occupy, detain.*  
 distingo, nxi, nctum 3. *to distinguish.*  
 distraho, axi, actum 3. *to draw asunder, dissolve, waste.*  
 distribuo, ui, utum 3. *c. dat. to distribute.*  
 diu, adv. *a long time;*  
 diutius, *longer.*  
 diuturnitas, atis, f. *long continuance.*  
 diuturnus 3. *long-continued.*  
 diversus 3. *different.*  
 dives, itis, *rich.*  
 divido, isi, isum 3. *to divide.*  
 divinus 3. *divine.*  
 divitiae, arum, f. *riches.*  
 do, dedi, datum, dare, *to give, attribute;* lit-  
 teras dare, *to write a letter.*  
 doceo, cui, ctum 2. *to teach, inform.*  
 docilis, e, *teachable.*  
 doctor, oris, m. *teacher.*  
 doctrina, ae, f. *doctrine, instruction, science.*  
 doctus 3. *learned, versed in.*  
 documentum, i, n. *proof.*  
 doléo 2. *to grieve, feel pain.*  
 doliarium, i, n. *cellar.*  
 dolor, oris, m. *pain, grief.*  
 dolus, i, m. *fraud.*  
 domesticus 3. *domestic.*  
 domicilium, i, n. *residence.*  
 dominatio, onis, f. *dominion.*  
 dominor 1. *to reign.*  
 dominus, i, m. *lord, master.*  
 domo, ui, itum 1. *to subdue.*  
 domus, us, f. *house, palace;* domi, *at home;*  
 domo, *from home.*  
 donec, conj. *until, until that, even until.*  
 dono 1. *to give, present.*  
 donum, i, n. *present.*  
 dormio 4. *to sleep.*  
 dos, dotis, f. *dowry, portion.*  
 dubito 1. *to doubt.*  
 dubius 3. *doubtful.*  
 duco, xi, ctum 3. *to lead, draw, lead away;*  
 2) *to consider, regard as something.*  
 dulcedo, inis f. *sweetness, pleasantness.*  
 dulcis, e, *sweet, lovely.*  
 dum, conj. *while, so long as;* with subj. *until, until that, so (as) long as;* provided that.  
 dumetum, i, n. *a thicket.*  
 dummodo, conj. *with subj. provided that.*  
 duplico 1. *to double.*  
 duro 1. *to last, endure.*  
 durus 3. *hard.*  
 dux, cis, c. *leader, general.*  
 Dyrrhachium, i, n. *Dyrrhachium.*  
 E.  
 Eblandior itus sum 4. *to gain by flattery.*  
 eburneus 3. *of ivory, ivory.*  
 ecclesia, ae, f. *church.*  
 echo, us, f. *echo.*  
 edisco, didici 3. *to commit to memory.*  
 edo, di, sum 3. *to eat.*  
 edo, idi, itum 3. *to put forth, proclaim, perform.*  
 edoceo, cui, ctum 2. *to instruct, inform.*  
 edolo 1. *to heap properly, to square.*  
 educo 1. *to bring up.*  
 educo, xi, ctum 3. *to lead forth.*  
 effector, oris, m. *maker.*  
 effeminatus 3. *effeminate.*  
 effero, extuli, elatum 3. *to carry forth, bury.*  
 efficio, feci, fectum 3. *to effect, make.*  
 effloresco, rui 3. *to flourish.* [dig up.  
 effodio, odi, ossum 3. *to dig up.*  
 effugio, fugi, fugitum 3. *c. acc. to flee away.*  
 effundo, udi, usum 3. *to pour forth, throw off.*  
 effusus 3. *unrestrained.*  
 egéo, ui 2. *to want, be in want.*  
 egestas, atis, f. *want.*  
 ego, pron. I.  
 ejicio, eci, ectum 3. *to cast forth.*  
 ejulo 1. *to complain.*  
 ejusmodi, *of this kind, of like kind.*

- elābor, lapsus sum 3. *to glide away.*  
 elabōro 1. *to bestow pains upon; in c. abl. to occupy one's self with something.*  
 elēgans, tis, *elegant.*  
 elegantia, ae, f. *elegance.*  
 elementum, i, n. *element, beginning, elementary principle, letter (of the alphabet).*  
 elephantus, i, m. *elephant.*  
 eliciō, ūi, itum 3. *to draw out, elicit.*  
 elido, isi, isum 3. *to dash, break, weaken.*  
 eligo, egi, ectum 3. *to select out, elect, choose.*  
 eloquentia, ae, f. *eloquence.*  
 elōquor, cūsus sum 3. *to pronounce.*  
 elūceo, xi 2. *to shine forth.*  
 elūdo, ūsi, ūsum 3. *to elude, deride.*  
 emendo 1. *to improve.*  
 ementiō, itus sum 4. *to state falsely.*  
 emergo, rsi, rsum 3. *to emerge, to work one's self out.*  
 emetiō, emensus sum 4. *to measure off; travel through.*  
 emico, ūi, ātum 1. *to gush forth.*  
 emigro 1. *to move out.*  
 emineō, ūi 2. *to be eminent.*  
 emitto, misi, missum 3. *to send forth, thrust out.*  
 emo, emi, emptum 3. *to purchase.*  
 emollio 4. *to soften.*  
 emolumentum, i, n. *advantage.*  
 emōriōr, ortūus sum 3. *to die.*  
 emptio, ōnis, f. *purchase, adv. behold!*  
 Endymio, ōnis, m. *Endymion.*  
 enēco, cūi, ctum 1. *to kill by inches, vex to death.*  
 enim, for (§ 101. R. 1).  
 enitor, isus or ixus sum 3. *to exert one's self, strive.*  
 ensis, is, m. *sword.*  
 enumero 1. *to enumerate.*  
 eo, adv. *thither, so far.*  
 eo, ivi, itum, ire, *to go.*  
 Epaminondas, ae, m. *Epaminondas.*  
 Ephesius 3. *Ephesian.*  
 Ephesus, i, f. *Ephesus.*  
 Epicurus, i, m. *Epicurus.*  
 epigramma, ātis, n. *epigram.*  
 epilōgus, i, m. *epilogue.*  
 epistola, ae, f. *letter.*  
 epulae, arum, f. *a meal, feast.*  
 eques, itis, m. *horseman; cavalry, knight.*  
 equidem, adv. *indeed.*  
 equito 1. *to ride.*  
 equus, i, m. *horse, steed.*  
 Erechtheus, ei, m. *Erechtheus.*  
 ergo, conj. *therefore.*  
 eripio, ipui, eptum 3. *to snatch from.*  
 erraticus 3. *wandering.*  
 erro 1. *to wander, err.*  
 error, ōris, m. *error; pl. wanderings.*  
 erudio 4. *to instruct.*  
 erumpo, rupi, ruptum 3. *to break forth.*  
 eruo, ūi, ūtum 3. *to dig up.*  
 esurio 4. *to be hungry.*  
 et, conj. *and; et—et, both—and, so (as) well—as also.*  
 etiam, conj. *also.*  
 etiamsi, conj. *even if.*  
 Etruria, ae, f. *Etruria.*  
 etsi, conj. *even if, although.*  
 Europa, ae, f. *Europe.*  
 evado, asi, asum 3. *to go out, become.*  
 evanesco, nui 3. *to disappear.*  
 evello, velli, vulsum 3. *to pluck out.*  
 evenit 4. *it happens.*  
 eventus, ūs, m. *event, result.*  
 everto, ti, sum 3. *to overturn, prostrate, destroy.*  
 evito 1. *to avoid.*  
 evolo 1. *to fly forth.*  
 evolvo, lvi, lutum 3. *to unfold, bring out.*  
 evomo, ūi, itum 3. *to belch forth, send forth.*  
 exacio, ūi, ūtum 3. *to sharpen.*  
 exagito 1. *to harass.*  
 examen, inis, n. *swarm.*  
 examino 1. *to examine.*  
 exanimo 1. *to deprive of life, to kill.*  
 exardesco, arsi, arsum 3. *to take fire. [ion.]*  
 exascio 1. *to hew, fash.*  
 exaudio 4. *to listen to.*  
 excedo, cessi, cessum 3. *c. abl. or ex c. abl. to go forth, depart.*  
 excello, ūi 3. *to excel.*  
 excelsus 3. *elevated.*  
 excerpo, psi, ptum 3. *to take out, extract.*



- excessus, ūs, *m. departure.*  
 excido, idi, isum 3. *to destroy.*  
 exciō, ivi, itum 2. or  
 excio, ivi, itum 4. *to excite, arouse.*  
 excipio, cēpi, ceptum  
 3. *to receive.*  
 excito 1. *to excite, raise.*  
 exclāmo 1. *to cry out.*  
 exclūdo, ūsi, ūsum 3.  
*to shut out, hatch.*  
 excōlo, olūi, ultum 3.  
*to cultivate.*  
 excors, rdis, *senseless.*  
 excrucio 1. *to torment.*  
 excusatio, ōnis, *f. excuse.*  
 exēdo, ēdi, ēsum 3. *to consume, corrode.*  
 exemplar, āris, *n. model, pattern.*  
 exemplum, i, *n. example, instance.*  
 exēo, ii, itum, ire, *to go out, go forth.*  
 exercēo 2. *to exercise.*  
 exercitatio, ōnis, *f. exercise, practice.*  
 exercitus, ūs, *m. army.*  
 exhaurio, si, stum 4.  
*to exhaust.*  
 exhilaro 1. *to exhilarate.*  
 exigo, ēgi, actum 3. *to pass (time).*  
 exiguus 3. *little, paltry.*  
 eximius 3. *distinguished, excellent.*  
 existimatio, ōnis, *f. estimation, opinion, judgment.*  
 existimo 1. *to esteem, consider one something.*  
 exordior, orsus sum 4.  
*to begin.*  
 exorior, ortus sum 4. *to appear, arise.*  
 exōro 1. *to entreat earnestly, obtain by treaty.*  
 expēdio 4. *to disengage; se exp. to get ready.*  
 expello, pūli, pulsum 3.  
*to expel.*  
 expergefācio, fēci, factum 3. *to arouse (from sleep).*  
 expergisor, perrectus sum 3. *to wake up.*  
 experior, pertus sum 4.  
*to ascertain, to try.*  
 expers, rtis, *c. gen. destitute of.*  
 expēto, ivi, itum 3. *to strive to obtain.*  
 expingo, nxi, ctum 3.  
*to paint out.*  
 explēo, ēvi, ētum 2. *to fill up, fulfil.*  
 explico 1. *to explain.*  
 explōdo, si, sum 3. *to clap off, drive off.*  
 explorator, ōris, *m. spy.*  
 explōro 1. *to search out, explore.*  
 exposco, poposci 3. *to demand, request.*  
 exprimo, pressi, pressum 3. *to express.*  
 exprōbro 1. *to reproach.*  
 expugno 1. *to take.*  
 exquiro, isivi, isitum 3.  
*to examine.*  
 exsilium, i, *n. banishment. [become, be.]*  
 exsisto, stiti 3. *to arise,*  
 exsors, rtis, *c. gen. destitute of.*  
 exspecto 1. *to expect, await, wait.*  
 extinguo, nxi, netum  
 3. *to extinguish, obliterate, kill.*  
 extrūo, uxi, uctum 3.  
*to erect, construct.*  
 exsul, ūlis, *c. an exile.*  
 exulto 1. *to leap up, exult.*  
 extemplo *adv. immediately.*  
 extenūo 1. *to lessen.*  
 extermino 1. *to exterminate.*  
 externus 3. *external.*  
 extērus 3. *foreign.*  
 extimesco, mui 3. *c. acc. to be afraid of something.*  
 extorquēo, rsi, rtum 2.  
*to wrest from, extort.*  
 extrēmus 3. *outermost, last.*  
 extrinsēcus, *adv. from without.*  
 extrūdo, si, sum 3. *to thrust from, out.*  
 exulcēro 1. *to make sore, render worse.*  
 exūo, ūi, ūtum 3. *to draw off, take off.*

## F.

- Faber, bri, *m. artisan (of each art); faber lignarius, carpenter.*  
 fabricator, ōris, *m. maker, framer.*  
 Fabricius, i, *m. Fabricius.*  
 fabūla, ae, *f. fable.*  
 facesso, ssivi, ssitum 3.  
*to make; negotium, to make trouble, vex; 2) to take one's self off.*  
 facētus 3. *delicate, witty.*  
 facile, *adv. easily.*  
 facilis, e, *easy.*  
 facinus, ōris, *n. deed, foul deed.*  
 facio, fēci, factum 3. *to make, to esteem.*  
 factum, i, *n. deed.*

- facultas, âtis, f. faculty, power.*  
*facundia, ae, f. fluency of speech.*  
*fagus, i, f. beech tree.*  
*fallax, âcis, deceptive.*  
*fallo, fefelli, falsum 3. to deceive.*  
*falsus 3. false.*  
*fama, ae, f. fame, renown, rumor.*  
*fames, is, f. hunger.*  
*familia, ae, f. family.*  
*familiaris, e, belonging to a family; res familiaris, property; familiaris, subst. friend.*  
*famulus, i, m. servant.*  
*fanum, i, n. temple.*  
*fascis, is, m. bundle.*  
*fastidio 4. c. acc. to loathe, spurn.*  
*fataliter, adv. according to fate.*  
*fatëor, fassum sum 2. to acknowledge, allow.*  
*fatum, i, n. fate.*  
*faux, cis, f. throat.*  
*faveo, avi, autum 2. c. dat. to be favorable to, favor some one.*  
*febris, is, f. fever.*  
*fecundus 3. fruitful.*  
*felicitas, âtis, f. happiness.*  
*felix, icis, happy.*  
*ferax, âcis. c. gen. productive of.*  
*fere, adv. almost.*  
*feriae, arum, f. holidays. [strike]*  
*ferio, ire, to thrust,*  
*ferme, adv. almost.*  
*fero, tuli, latum, ferre, to bear, bring, relate.*  
*ferociter, adv. fiercely.*  
*ferox, ôcis, fierce.*  
*ferrëus 3. of iron.*  
*ferrum i, n. iron, sword.*  
*fertilis, e, c. gen. fertile.*  
*ferus 3. wild; ferae, arum, f. wild beasts.*  
*fessus 3. wearied, fatigued.*  
*festivitas, âtis, f. pleasantness.*  
*festivus 3. fine, sprightly.*  
*ficus, i and ùs, f. fig-tree.*  
*fidëlis, e, faithful.*  
*fideliter, adv. faithfully.*  
*fides, ei, f. fidelity; fidem habere c. dat. to trust, have confidence in some one.*  
*fides, is, f. string; fidibus canere, to play on a stringed instrument.*  
*fido, fisus sum 3. to trust.*  
*fidus 3. faithful, true.*  
*figura, ae, f. figure, form.*  
*filia, ae, f. daughter.*  
*filiolus, i, m. little son.*  
*filius, i, m. son.*  
*fingo, finxi, fictum 3. to form, feign.*  
*finio 4. to finish.*  
*finis, is, m. end.*  
*finitimus 3. neighbouring.*  
*fio, factus sum, fieri to be made, become, happen; fieri non potest, quin, it is not possible, but that.*  
*firmitas, âtis, f. firmness.*  
*firmiter, adv. firmly.*  
*firmo 1. to render firm, strengthen, to harden.*  
*firmus 3. firm.*  
*flagitium, i, n. foul deed.*  
*flagito 1. to demand.*  
*flagro 1. to burn.*  
*flamma, ae, f. flame.*  
*flavus 3. yellow, fair.*  
*fleo, evi, etum 2. to weep.*  
*flo 1. to blow, wave.*  
*flocci facere, to consider of no account. (§ 88. 9.)*  
*florëo, ùi 2. to bloom.*  
*flos, floris, m. a flower.*  
*flumen, inis, n. river.*  
*fluvius i, m. river.*  
*foede, adv. basely, in a base manner.*  
*foedus 3. base, foul.*  
*foedus, ëris, n. league.*  
*folium, i, n. leaf.*  
*follis, is, m. bellows.*  
*fons, ntis, m. fountain.*  
*foris, is, f. in plur. folding doors.*  
*foris, adv. without.*  
*fornix, icis, m. vault, arch.*  
*fortasse, adv. perchance.*  
*forte, adv. by chance, perhaps.*  
*fortis, e, strong, bold.*  
*fortiter, adv. bravely.*  
*fortitudo, inis, f. bravery.*  
*fortuito, adv. fortuitously.*  
*fortuna, ae, f. fate, fortune.*  
*fortunatus 3. fortunate.*  
*forum, i, n. market, market place.*  
*fossa, ae, f. ditch.*  
*fovëo, ôvi, ôtum 2. to warm, cherish, attend to.*  
*fragilis, e, frail.*  
*frango, ëgi, actum 3. to break, break in pieces; molis frangere, to grind.*  
*frater, tris, m. brother.*

- fraud, dis, *f. fraud.*  
 fremĭtus, ūs, *m. noise.*  
 frenum, i, *n. (plur. freni and frena) bit, rein.*  
 frequento 1. *to frequent.*  
 fretus 3. *c. abl. relying upon something.*  
 frigidus 3. *cold.*  
 frigus, ōris, *n. cold.*  
 frondōsus 3. *leafy.*  
 frons, ntis, *f. forehead.*  
 fructus, ūs, *m. advantage.*  
 fruges, um, *f. fruit (of field and trees.)* \*  
 frugifer, ĕra, ĕrum, *fruitful.*  
 frumentum, i, *n. grain.*  
 fruor, fructus or frūitus sum 3. *c. abl. to enjoy.*  
 frustra, *adv. in vain.*  
 frutex, ĭcis, *m. shrub; pl. bushes, shrubbery.*  
 fuga, ae, *f. flight.*  
 fugio, gi, gĭtum 3. *c. acc. to flee.*  
 fugo 1. *to put to flight.*  
 fulcio, lsi, ltum 4. *to support.*  
 fulgur, ūris, *n. a flash of lightning.*  
 fulmen, ĩnis, *n. lightning.*  
 funambŭlus, i, *m. rope-dancer.*  
 fundamentum, i, *n. foundation.*  
 funditus, *adv. from the foundation, wholly.*  
 fundo 1. *to found.*  
 fundo, fŭdi, fŭsum 3. *(of an army), to rout.*  
 fungor, nectus sum 3. *c. abl. to discharge.*  
 funis, is, *m. a rope.*  
 furfur, ūris, *n. bran.*  
 furiōsus 3. *raving.*  
 furor, ōris, *m. rage.*  
 fustis, is, *m. a cudgel.*  
 futilis, e, *useless.*  
 futŭrus 3. *future.*
- G.
- Gallia, ae, *f. Gaul.*  
 Gallus, i, *m. a Gaul.*  
 gallina, ae, *f. a hen, fowl.*  
 garrĭo 4. *to chatter.*  
 garrŭlus 3. *loquacious.*  
 gaudĕo, gavisus sum, gaudĕre *c. abl. or de c. abl. to rejoice.*  
 gaudĭum, i, *n. joy.*  
 gelidus 3. *ice-cold, cold.*  
 gemĭtus, ūs, *m. groan.*  
 gener, ĕri, *m. son-in-law.*  
 genĕro 1. *to produce.*  
 gens, ntis, *f. a people.*  
 genu, ūs, *n. knee.*  
 genus, ĕris, *n. race, kind.*  
 geometricus 3. *geometrical.*  
 Germanĭa, ae, *f. Germany.*  
 gero, gessi, gestum 3. *to carry, carry on.*  
 gestio 4. *to make gestures, be transported.*  
 gesto 1. *to bear.*  
 gigas, antis, *m. giant.*  
 gigno, genŭi, genĭtum 3. *to beget, bring forth, to bear.*  
 glacies, ĕi, *f. ice.*  
 gladiātor, ōris, *m. fencer, gladiator.*  
 gladius, i, *m. sword.*  
 glis, iris, *m. a dormouse.*  
 globōsus 3. *globular.*  
 glŏria, ae, *f. glory.*  
 glŏrior 1. *to glory.*  
 gnarus 3. *c. gen. acquainted with.*  
 gnavĭter, *adv. zealously.*
- Gordius, i, *m. Gordius.*  
 Gottingensis, e, *of Gottingen.*  
 Graecĭa, ae, *f. Greece.*  
 Graecus, i, *m. a Greek.*  
 Graecus 3. *Greek.*  
 grammaticus 3. *grammatical; grammaticus, i, m. grammarian.*  
 grandis, e, *great; natu grandis, aged.*  
 granum, i, *m. a grain.*  
 grate, *adv. gratefully.*  
 gratia, ae, *f. favour, thank; gratias agĕre, to thank, give thanks; gratiam referre, to return a favour; gratiā (with a foregoing gen.), on account of.*  
 gratŭlor 1. *to congratulate.*  
 gratus 3. *agreeable; 2) grateful.* [ly.  
 gravāte, *adv. unwilling-gravis, e, heavy, difficult; serious.*  
 gravĭtas, ātis, *f. seriousness, dignity.*  
 gravĭter, *adv. heavily, violently, forcibly;*  
 gravĭter ferre, *to be displeased.*  
 grex, gis, *m. herd, flock.*  
 gubernātor, ōris, *m. pilot.*  
 guberno 1. *to govern, rule.*  
 gusto 1. *to taste, relish.*
- H.
- Habĕo 2. *to have, hold; consider; sese habĕre, to be; bene habet, it is well.*  
 habĭto 1. *to dwell.*  
 habĭtus, ūs, *m. habit, bearing, condition.*

- haerĕo, haesi, haesum *Hispania, ae, f. Spain.*  
 2. to adhere, to stick. *historia, ae, f. history.*  
 Hannibal, ālis, m. *Hannibal.* *histrĭo, ōnis, m. actor.*  
 harpāgo, ōnis, m. *hook.* *hodie, adv. to-day.*  
 grappling-iron. *Homĕrus, i, m. Homer.*  
 haruspex, ĭcis, m. *sooth-sayer.* *homo, ĭnis, m. man.*  
 hasta, ae, f. *spear.* *honestas, ātis, f. integrity.*  
 haud, adv. *not.* *honeste, adv. decently,*  
 haurĭo, hausi, haustum *honorably, virtuously.*  
 4. to draw. *honestus 3. honest, up-*  
*right, honorable, vir-*  
*tuous.*  
 hebdomas, ādis, f. *a* *honōro 1. to honor.*  
*week.* *honor, ōris, m. honor,*  
*post of honor, mark of*  
*hebes, ĕtis, blunt, dull,* *honor.*  
*obtuse.* *hora, ae, f. hour.*  
 hebesco 3. to become *Horatĭus, i, m. Horace.*  
*dull, torpid.* *hordĕum, i, n. barley.*  
 hebĕto 1. to stupify, *horno, adv. of this year.*  
*weaken.* *horrendus 3. dreadful.*  
 Hector, ōris, m. *Hector.* *horrĕum, i, n. granary.*  
 herba, ae, f. *herb.* *horribilis, e, horrible.*  
 Hercŭles, is, m. *Hercu-*  
*les.* *hortor 1. to exhort.*  
 herĭ, adv. *yesterday.* *hortus, i, m. garden.*  
 herilis, e, of, pertaining *hospes, ĭtis, m. a guest.*  
 to a master. *hostilis, e, hostile.*  
 Herodōtus, i, m. *Hero-*  
*dotus.* *hostis, is, m. enemy.*  
 herus, i, m. *master.* *huc, adv. hither.*  
 heus, adv. *ho there!* *humanitas, ātis, f. hu-*  
 hibernus 3. belonging *manity.*  
 to winter. *humānus 3. human.*  
 hic, haec, hoc, *this; hic,* *humĕrus, i, m. shoulder.*  
*adv. here; upon this* *humĭdus, moist.*  
*occasion.* *humilis e, low.*  
 hiĕmo 1. to pass the *humus, i, f. ground,*  
*winter.* *earth.*  
 hiems, ĕmis, f. *winter.*  
 hilāris, e, *cheerful.*  
 hilaritas, ātis, f. *hilar-*  
*ity.*  
 hilarĭter, adv. *cheerfully,*  
*joyfully.*  
 hinnio 4. to neigh. *idem, eādem, idem,*  
 Hippias, ae, m. *Hippias.* *pron. the very same,*  
 hirundo, ĭnis, f. *swal-*  
*low.* *same.*
- identidem, adv. repeat-*  
*edly.*  
 idoneus 3. *fit, fitted.*  
 igitur, conj. *therefore,*  
*hence.*  
 ignarus 3. c. gen. *unac-*  
*quainted with.*  
 ignavia, ae, f. *indolence,*  
*cowardice.*  
 ignavus 3. *indolent, in-*  
*active, sluggish, cow-*  
*ardly.*  
 igneus 3. *fiery.*  
 ignis, is, m. *fire.*  
 ignobilis, e, *unknown.*  
 ignominia, ae, f. *dis-*  
*grace.*  
 ignoro 1. *not to know;*  
*non ignorare, to know*  
*perfectly well.*  
 ignosco, nōvi, nōtum 3.  
*to pardon.*  
 ille, a, ud, *that.*  
 illuc, adv. *thither.*  
 illucesco, luxi 3. *to be-*  
*come light, dawn.*  
 imāgo, ĭnis, f. *image.*  
 imbecillus 3. *weak.*  
 imber, bris, m. *shower,*  
*rain.*  
 imbūo, ūi, ūtum 3. *to*  
*immerse; c. abl. to*  
*fill with, imbue.*  
 imitatio, ōnis, f. *imita-*  
*tion.*  
 imitator, ōris, m. *imita-*  
*tor.*  
 imitor 1. c. acc. *to im-*  
*itate.*  
 immānis, e, *vast, cruel.*  
 immaturus 3. *unripe,*  
*immature, untimely.*  
 immemor, ōris, c. gen. *unmindful.*  
 immineo 2. *to threaten.*  
 immo, adv. *yes rather,*  
*nay rather, on the con-*  
*trary.*

- immoderātus 3. *intemperate.*  
 immodestus 3. *immodest.*  
 immodicus 3. *excessive.*  
 immortalis, e, *immortal.*  
 immortalitas, ātis, *f. immortality.*  
 immortaliter, *adv. infinitely.*  
 impedimentum, i, *n. hindrance.*  
 impediō 4. *to hinder.*  
 impello, pūli, pulsū 3. *to impel.*  
 impendēo 2. *to impend.*  
 impendo, pendi, pen-  
 sum 3. *to bestow.*  
 imperātor, ōris, *m. general, emperor.*  
 imperitus 3. *inexperienced.*  
 imperium, i. *n. command, reign.*  
 impēro l. c. *dat. to reign, reign over, command.*  
 impētro 1. *to obtain.*  
 impētus, ūs, *m. attack ; 2) vast extent.*  
 impius 3. *impious.*  
 implēo, ēvi, ētum 2. *to fill.*  
 implico, āvi, ātum 1. *to involve.*  
 implōro 1. *to implore.*  
 importo 1. *to import.*  
 importūnus 3. *troublesome.*  
 impōtens, ntis, *c. gen. not master of.*  
 imprimis, *adv. especially.*  
 imprīmo, pressi, pres-  
 sum 3. *to press into, impress.*  
 improbitas, ātis, *f. wickedness.*  
 imprōbus 3. *wicked.*  
 imprūdens, ntis, *not foreseeing, not know-*  
 ing ; *c. gen. unacquainted with.*  
 impūbes, ēris, *youthful, immature.*  
 impūdēns, ntis, *impudent, shameless.*  
 impūrus 3. *impure.*  
 inānis, e, *empty, vain.*  
 incēdo, cessi, cessum  
 3. *to walk upon.*  
 incendium, i, *n. conflagration.*  
 incendo, di, sum 3. *to enkindle, inflame.*  
 incertus 3. *uncertain.*  
 incesso, ivi, itum 3. *to attack.*  
 incido, idi 3. *to fall upon.*  
 incipio, cēpi, ceptum 3. *to begin.*  
 incito 1. *to spur on, incite.*  
 incognitus 3. *unknown.*  
 incōla, ae, *m. inhabitant.*  
 incolūmis, e, *unhurt.*  
 inconditus 3. *unarranged. [ble.*  
 incredibilis, e, *incredible.*  
 increpo, ūi, itum 1. *c. acc. to berate, reproach.*  
 incumbo, cubūi, cubi-  
 tum 3. *in aliquid, to lay one's self upon, attend to something.*  
 indāgo 1. *to trace out.*  
 inde, *adv. thence.*  
 India, ae, *f. India.*  
 indico 1. *to indicate.*  
 indigēo, ūi 2. *c. gen. et abl. to be in want.*  
 indignor 1. *to be indignant.*  
 indignus 3. *c. abl. unworthy.*  
 indūco, xi, ctum 3. *to bring in, induce.*  
 indulgentia, ae, *f. indulgence.*  
 indulgēo, lsi, ltum 2. *c. dat. to give one's self to, be indulgent.*  
 indūo, ūi, ūtum 3. *to put on, clothe.*  
 Indus, i, *m. an Indian ; 2) the Indus (a river).*  
 industria, ae, *f. industry.*  
 industrius 3. *active, industrious.*  
 indutiae, ārum, *f. a truce.*  
 inermis, e, *unarmed, defenceless.*  
 iners, rtis, *unskilled, inactive.*  
 inertia, ae, *f. inactivity.*  
 infans, ntis, *c. a child, minor.*  
 infēro, intūli, illatum,  
 inferre, *to bring ; bellum inferre alicui, to make war upon one.*  
 infērus 3. *being below, low, inferior ; infēri, the dead in the lower world.*  
 infidus 3. *unfaithful.*  
 infimus 3. *the lowest, meanest.*  
 infirmitas, ātis, *f. infirmity.*  
 infirmus 3. *weak.*  
 infligo, xi, ctum 3. *c. dat. to strike upon, inflict.*  
 inflo 1. *to inflate.*  
 informo 1. *to instruct.*  
 ingenium, i, *n. genius, spirit.*  
 ingens, ntis, *immense, very great.*  
 ingenue, *adv. nobly, respectably.*  
 ingenūus 3. *free-born, noble.*

- ingigno, genūi, genitum 3. *to implant.*  
 ingrātus 3. *ungrateful; 2) disagreeable.*  
 ingrēdiōr, gressus sum 3. c. acc. *to go into, enter upon.*  
 inhaerēo, haesi, haesum 2. in c. abl. *to inhere.*  
 inhumānus 3. *inhuman.*  
 inimicitia, ae, f. *hostility.*  
 inimicus 3. *hostile; inimicus, i, m. enemy.*  
 iniquus 3. *unjust.*  
 initium, i, n. *beginning.*  
 injiciō, jēci, jectum 3. *to throw into; laqueos, to lay snares.*  
 injucundus 3. *unpleasant, disagreeable.*  
 injuria, ae, f. *injustice, injury.*  
 injuste, adv. *unjustly.*  
 innascor, nātus sum 3. *to be implanted.*  
 innōcens, ntis, *innocent.*  
 innocentia, ae, f. *innocence.*  
 innoxius 3. *harmless.*  
 innumerabilis, e, *innumerable.*  
 inopia, ae, f. *helplessness, need, want, indigence.*  
 inops, opis, *helpless, poor, destitute, needy.*  
 inquam, *I say.*  
 insānus 3. *insane.*  
 inscius 3. c. gen. *not knowing, not acquainted with.*  
 inscribo, psi, ptum 3. c. dat. *to write in or upon something, inscribe. [to engrave.*  
 insculpo, psi, ptum 3. insectum, i, n. *insect.*  
 insēro, sēvi, sītum 3. c. dat. *to sow in, ingraft.*  
 insidia, arum, f. *ambuscade, snares.*  
 insidiōr 1. *to lie in wait.*  
 insignis, e, *distinguish- ed; subst. insigne, is, n. badge.*  
 insipiens, ntis, *unwise.*  
 insitus 3. *implanted, in-born.*  
 inspērans, tis, *not expecting, contrary to expectation.*  
 inspicio, exi, ectum 3. *to look into, inspect.*  
 institūo, ūi, ūtum 3. *to instruct.*  
 institutio, ōnis, f. *instruction; inst. scholastica, scholastic instruction.*  
 insto, stiti 1. *to threaten, press upon, compel (some one).*  
 instrūo, xi, ctum 3. *to furnish; aciem instruere, to arrange the line of battle; bellum instr. to prepare for war.*  
 insula, ae, f. *island.*  
 intēger, gra, grum, *sound.*  
 intelligo, exi, ectum 2. *to understand.*  
 intempestive, adv. *untimely.*  
 intentus 3. *stretched; c. dat. or in c. acc. attentive, fixed upon something.*  
 interdum, adv. *sometimes.*  
 interēa, adv. *in the mean time.*  
 interēo, ii, itum, ire, *to decay, come to naught.*  
 interfector, ōris, m. *murderer.*  
 interficio, ēci, ectum 3. *to kill.*  
 intērim, adv. *in the mean time.*  
 interimo, ēmi, emptum 3. *to kill.*  
 interitus, ūs, m. *destruction.*  
 interprētor 1. *to interpret, explain.*  
 interpungo, nxi, nctum *to distinguish.*  
 interrōgo 1. *to ask.*  
 intersum, fūi, esse c. dat. *to be in, to be presented at; interest, there is a difference; c. gen. it concerns one (§ 88, 10).*  
 intūmus 3. *inmost.*  
 intolerabilis, e, *intolerable.*  
 intro 1. c. acc. *to go into, to enter.*  
 introitus, ūs, m. *entrance.*  
 intuēor, tuitus sum 2. *to look upon, consider.*  
 intus, adv. *within, in the house.*  
 inultus 3. *unrevenged.*  
 inutilis, e, *useless.*  
 invēnio, vēni, ventum 4. *to find, find out.*  
 investigo 1. *to trace out, investigate.*  
 invictus 3. *invincible.*  
 invidēo, vidi, visum 2. c. dat. *to envy.*  
 invidia, ae, f. *envy, hatred.*  
 invidus 3. *envious.*  
 invisio, isi, isum 3. *to visit.*

- invito 1. *to invite.*  
 invitus 3. *unwilling.*  
 involvo, vi, ūtum 3. *to involve*; involūtus 3. *difficult to understand.*  
 Iphicrātes, is, m. *Iphicrates.*  
 ipse, a, um, pron. *self.*  
 ira, ae, f. *anger.*  
 iracundia, ae, f. *anger, irascibility.*  
 irascor, irātus sum 3. *c. dat. to be enraged.*  
 irātus 3. *enraged, angry.*  
 irridēo, si, sum 2. *to mock, deride.*  
 irrumpo, rūpi, ruptum 3. *to burst in.*  
 is, ea, id, pron. *he, she, it; that one; the same.*  
 Isocrātes, is, m. *Isocrates.*  
 iste, a, ud, pron. *that.*  
 ita, adv. *so, thus.*  
 Italia, ae, f. *Italy.*  
 itaque, conj. *therefore.*  
 item, adv. *likewise.*  
 iter, itinēris, n. *course, way, journey, march.*  
 itērum, adv. *again, the second time.*
- J.  
 Jacēo 2. *to lie low.*  
 jacto 1. *to throw hither and thither, extol.*  
 jactūra, ae, f. *loss*; jacturam facere, *to suffer loss.*  
 jam, adv. *now, already.*  
 jam pridem, *long since.*  
 janua, ae, f. *gate.*  
 jecur, jecinōris, n. *the liver.*  
 jocos, 1. *to jest.*  
 jocōsus 3. *sportive.*  
 jocus, i, m. *a jest.*
- juba, ae, f. m. *mane.*  
 jubēo, jussi, jussum 2. *to bid, order.*  
 jucunde, adv. *pleasantly, agreeably.*  
 jucunditas, ātis, f. *pleasantness, agreeableness.*  
 jucundus 3. *pleasant, agreeable.*  
 judex, icis, m. *judge.*  
 judicium, i, n. *judgment.*  
 judico 1. *to judge*; c. dupl. acc. *to consider on something.*  
 jugum, i, n. *yoke, top, ridge (of a mountain).*  
 Julius (i) Caesar (āris) m. *Julius Caesar.*  
 jungo, nxi, nctum 3. *to join, unite.*  
 Junius, i, m. *June.*  
 Juno, ōnis, f. *Juno.*  
 Juppiter, Jovis, m. *Jupiter.*  
 juro 1. *to swear.*  
 jus, juris, n. *right.*  
 jussum, i, n. *command.*  
 jussus, ūs, m. *command.*  
 justitia, ae, f. *justice.*  
 justus 3. *just.*  
 Juvenālis, is, m. *Juvenal.*  
 juvenilis, e, *youthful.*  
 juvēnis, is, m. *a youth, young man.*  
 juvenus, ūtis, f. *youth.*  
 jūvo, jūvi, jūtum 1. c. acc. *to assist.*
- L.  
 Labefacto 1. *to cause to totter, shake.*  
 labor, lapsus sum 3. *to fall.*  
 labor, ōris, m. *labor, toil.*  
 labōro 1. *to labor*; c. abl. *to suffer from.*  
 lac, ctis, n. *milk.*  
 Lacaena, ae, f. *Lacedemonian woman.*  
 Lacedaemon, ōnis, f. *Lacedemon, Sparta.*  
 Lacedaemonius, i, m. *a Lacedemonian.*  
 lacēro 1. *to lacerate, tear in pieces.*  
 laccio, ivi, itum 3. *to provoke.*  
 lacrima, ae, f. *tear.*  
 lacus, ūs, m. *lake, pond.*  
 laedo, si, sum 3. *to hurt.*  
 Laelius, m. *Laelius.*  
 laetitia, ae, f. *joy.*  
 laetor 1. c. abl. *to rejoice.*  
 laetus 3. *joyful, delighted.*  
 lapidēus 3. *of stone.*  
 lapis, idis, m. *a stone.*  
 largior, itus sum 4. *to bestow largely.*  
 late, adv. *widely.*  
 latēo, ūi 2. *to be concealed.*  
 Latinus 3. *Latin.*  
 Latmus, i, m. *Latmus (mountain in Caria).*  
 latus 3. *broad.*  
 laudabilis, e, *praiseworthy.*  
 laudo 1. *to praise.*  
 laurus, i or ūs, f. *the laurel.*  
 laus, dis, f. *praise.*  
 lavo, lavi, lavātum 1. *to wash.*  
 lectus, i, m. *bed.*  
 legātus, i, m. *ambassador.*  
 lector, ōris m. *reader.*  
 legio, ōnis, f. *legion.*  
 lego, gi, ctum 3. *to read.*  
 lenio 4. *to soothe.*  
 leniter, adv. *mildly.*  
 leo, ōnis, m. *lion.*

- lepīdus 3. *elegant, neat*. littus, ōris, *n. sea-shore*. magis, *adv. more*.  
 lepor, ōris, *m. agreeableness, jest*. loco 1. *to place, set*. magister, tri, *m. teacher*.  
 lepus, ōris, *m. a hare*. locūples, ētis, *wealthy, rich*. magistrātus, ūs, *m. magistracy, authority*;  
 Lesbus, i, *f. Lesbos*. locuplēto 1. *to enrich*. *magistrate*.  
 levir, īri, *m. brother-in-law*. locus, i, *m. place, situation, room*; *pl. loca*. magnificus 3. *magnificent*.  
 levis, e, *light*. longe, *adv. far, widely*. magnitudo, īnis, *f. magnitude*.  
 levitas, ātis, *f. levity*. longinquitas, ātis, *f. length, extent*. magnopere, *adv. greatly*.  
 levo 1. *to lighten, relieve*; *c. abl. to free from*. [tion. distant; e longinquo, *magnus* 3. *great*; *comp. major, us, greater, older*.  
 lex, gis, *f. law, condition*. longus 3. *long*. majores, um, *m. ancestors*.  
 libens, ntis, *willing*. loquacitas, ātis, *f. loquacity*. male, *adv. badly*.  
 libenter, *adv. willingly, with delight*. loquax, ācis, *loquacious*. maledico 3 *c. dat. to reproach*.  
 liber, bri, *m. book*. loquor, locutus 3. *to speak*. maledicus 3. *slanderous*.  
 liber, ēra, ērum, *free*. Luceria, ae, *f. Luceria*. maleficus 3. *doing evil, evil, wicked*; *subst. evil-doer*.  
 liberalis, e, *free*. Lucretius, i, *m. Lucretius*. malevolus 3. *ill disposed, malicious*.  
 liberalitas, ātis, *f. liberality*. lucrum, i, *n. gain, advantage*. malitia, ae, *f. malice, wickedness*.  
 liberaliter, *adv. liberally*. luctus, ūs, *m. grief*. malo, malui, malle, *to wish rather, prefer*.  
 libere, *adv. freely*. ludibrium i, *n. sport*. malum, i, *n. apple*.  
 liberi, ōrum, *m. children* (in relation to their parents). ludo, si, sum 3. *to play*. malum, i, *n. evil, misfortune*.  
 libero 1. *to liberate*. ludus, i, *m. play*. malus, i, *f. apple-tree*.  
 libertas, ātis, *f. liberty*. lugēo, xi 2. *to grieve, lament*. malus 3. *evil, bad*.  
 libet, ūit 2. *it pleases*. luna, ae, *f. moon*. mando, di, sum 3. *to chew*.  
 libido, īnis, *f. desire, passion, lust*. lupus, i, *m. wolf*. mane, *adv. in the morning*.  
 libra, ae, *f. a pound*. lusciniā, ae, *f. nightingale*. maneo, nsi, nsum 2. *to remain*; *c. acc. to await*.  
 licet, ūit 2. *it is allowed*. lus, lucis, *f. light*. Mantinea, ae, *f. Mantinea*.  
 ligneus 3. *wooden, of wood*. lux, luxis, *f. light*. manus, ūs, *f. hand*; 2) *a company*.  
 lignum, i, *n. wood*. luxuria, ae, *f. luxury*. Marcellus, i, *m. Marcellus*.  
 limpidus 3. *limpid, clear*. Lycurgus, i, *m. Lycurgus*. mare, is, *n. sea*.  
 lingua, ae, *f. tongue, language*. Lysis, is, *m. Lysis*.  
 linter, tris, *f. boat, skiff*.  
 liquefactio, feci, factum 3. *to melt*.  
 M.  
 lis, litis, *f. civil process, strife*. Macēdo, ōnis, *m. a Macedonian*.  
 littera, ae, *f. letter* (of alphabet); litterae, cedonia. Macedonia, ae, *f. Macedonia*.  
 arum, *f. letter, literature*. machinatio, ōnis, *f. machine; device, artifice*.



- margo, inis, *m. margin.*  
 Marius, *i, m. Marius.*  
 marmor, oris, *n. marble.*  
 marmorëus 3. *of marble, marble.*  
 Martius, *i, m. Mars.*  
 mater, tris, *f. mother.*  
 mathematicus, *i, m. mathematician.*  
 matüre, *adv. speedily, in season.*  
 maturus 3. *ripe.*  
 medëor 2. *c. dat. to cure.*  
 medicina, *ae, f. medicine, remedy.*  
 medicus, *i, m. physician.*  
 mediöcris, *e, middling.*  
 meditatio, onis, *f. meditation.*  
 meditor 1. *to reflect upon, study into.*  
 Medus, *i, m. a Mede.*  
 Mëgara, *ae, f. Megara.*  
 mel, mellis, *n. honey.*  
 membrana, *ae, f. membrane.*  
 membrum, *i, n. limb.*  
 meminî, isse, *c. gen. or acc. to remember.*  
 mëmor, oris, *c. gen. mindful of.*  
 memoria, *ae, f. memory, remembrance, time; memoria tenëre, to hold in remembrance, memoriter, adv. from memory, by heart.*  
 memöro 1. *to mention, relate.*  
 Menander, dri, *m. Menander.*  
 mendax, äcis, *lying; subst. liar.*  
 mens, tis, *f. sense, mind, understanding, spirit, state of mind.*  
 menäsa, *ae, f. table.*  
 mensis, is, *m. month.*  
 mentior 4. *to lie.*  
 mercator, oris, *m. trader.*  
 merces, ëdis, *f. recompense.*  
 merëor, meritus sum 2. *to deserve; de aliqua re merëri, to deserve of something.*  
 meritum, *i. n. desert.*  
 merx, reis, *f. wares.*  
 messis, is, *f. crop.*  
 Metellus, *i. m. Metellus.*  
 metior, mensus sum 4. *to measure.*  
 metüo, üi 3. *to fear.*  
 metus, üs, *m. apprehension, fear.*  
 mëus, 3. *mine.*  
 mico, üi 1. *to glitter.*  
 migratio, onis, *f. migration.*  
 migro 1. *to migrate; c. acc. to transgress.*  
 miles, itis, *m. warrior, soldier.*  
 Miltiades, is, *m. Miltiades.*  
 minax, äcis, *threatening.*  
 Minerva, *ae, f. Minerva.*  
 minime, *adv. least, not at all.*  
 minitor 1. *to threaten.*  
 minor 1. *to threaten.*  
 minüo, üi, ütum 3. *to lessen, diminish.*  
 minus, *adv. less.*  
 mirificus 3. *wonderful.*  
 miror 1. *to wonder; 2) to admire.*  
 mirus 3. *wonderful, extraordinary.*  
 miscëo, scüi, stum or xtum 2. *to mix, to disturb.*  
 miser, ëra, ërum, *wretched.*  
 miserandus 3. *pitiable.*  
 misëre, *adv. wretchedly.*  
 miserëor, misertus or miseritus sum 2. *c. gen. to pity.*  
 misëret me alicujus rei, *it excites my pity for something.*  
 miseria, *ae, f. misery, want.*  
 misericordia, *ae, f. pity.*  
 mitesco 3. *to render soft, tame.*  
 mitigo 1. *to soften, mitigate.*  
 mitis, *e, soft, mild.*  
 mitto, misi, missum 3. *to send.*  
 mobilis, *e, movable.*  
 moderator, oris, *m. governor.*  
 moderatus 3. *temperate.*  
 modëror 1. *c. acc. to govern, rule.*  
 modestia, *ae, f. modesty.*  
 modestus 3. *modest.*  
 modice, *adv. temperately.*  
 modius, *i, m. bushel.*  
 modo, *adv. only, now; conj. c. Subj. if only.*  
 modo — modo, *now — now.*  
 modus, *i, m. manner, way.*  
 moenia, ium, *n. walls (as defence).*  
 moeror, oris, *m. grief, sorrow.*  
 Moesia, *ae, f. Moesia.*  
 moles, is, *f. mass.*  
 moleste, *adv. grievously; mol. fero, take it ill.*  
 molestia, *ae, f. annoyance.*  
 molestus 3. *troublesome.*  
 molior, itus sum 4. *to*

- prepare, get ready.*  
 mollio 4. *to soften, make soft, alleviate.*  
 mollis, e, *soft.*  
 mollitia, ae, *f. softness.*  
 Molo, ōnis, *m. Molon.*  
 momentum, i, *n. circumstance.*  
 monēo 2 *to admonish.*  
 mons, ntis, *m. mountain.*  
 monumentum, i, *n. monument.*  
 mora, ae, *f. delay.*  
 morbus, i, *m. disease.*  
 mordax, ācis, *biting.*  
 mordēo, momordi, morsum 2. *to bite, to backbite.*  
 mōrior, mortuus sum, mori, *to die.*  
 moror 1. *to delay, remain; c. acc. to make nothing of.*  
 morosus 3. *morose.*  
 mors, tis, *f. death.*  
 mortālis, e, *mortal.*  
 mos, ōris, *m. custom, manner; plur. character.*  
 motus, ūs, *m. movement; motus terrae, earthquake.*  
 movēo, vi, tum 2. *to move.*  
 mox, *adv. thereupon, afterwards.*  
 mulier, ēris, *f. woman, wife.*  
 Müllerus, i, *m. Müller.*  
 multitudo, inis, *f. multitude.*  
 multo 1. *to fine, punish.*  
 multus 3. *much, many.*  
 mundus, i, *m. world.*  
 munificentia, ae, *f. munificence.*  
 munificus 3. *munificent.*  
 munio 4. *to fortify.*  
 munus, ēris, *n. service; 2) present.*  
 murex, icis, *m. a purple fish, purple.*  
 murmur, ūris, *n. murmur.*  
 murus, i, *m. wall (as a structure).*  
 mus, muris, *m. mouse.*  
 musca, ae, *f. a fly.*  
 musicus, i, *m. musician.*  
 muto 1. *to change, exchange.*  
 mutus 3. *dumb.*
- N.
- Nam, namque, *conj. for*  
 nanciscor, nactus sum 3. *to obtain.*  
 narratio, ōnis, *f. narration, narrative.*  
 narro 1. *to relate.*  
 nascor, natus sum 3. *to be born, to spring.*  
 natālis, is, *m. birth-day.*  
 natio, ōnis, *f. nation, tribe.*  
 nato 1. *to swim.*  
 natūra, ae, *f. nature.*  
 naturālis, e, *natural.*  
 natus, ūs, *m. birth; major natu, older; minor natu, younger.*  
 natus 3. *born; post Christum natum, after the birth of Christ; old (when the year has been specified, which in this case stands in the acc.)*  
 naufragium, i, *n. shipwreck; naufr. facere, to suffer shipwreck.*  
 nauta, ae, *m. sailor.*  
 navālis, e, *naval, pertaining to a ship; pugna navalis, sea-fight; bel-*
- lum navāle, *naval-war.*  
 navigo 1. *to navigate.*  
 navis, is, *f. ship; navis longa, war-ship.*  
 ne, *adv. not (with Imperat., and Subj. of exhorting).*  
 ne, *conj. that not; that (§ 106, 1 and 3.)*  
 ne, *interrogative particle, (§ 115. 3. b. a.)*  
 ne—quidem *not even, not also, (has the word on which the emphasis rests between its parts).*  
 nebula, ae, *f. mist.*  
 nec (neque), *and not, also not; nec (neque)—nec (neque), neither—nor.*  
 necdum, *and not yet.*  
 necessarius 3. *necessary; related; homo necessarius, friend.*  
 necesse est, *it is necessary (§ 105. R. 4.)*  
 necessitas, ātis, *f. necessity.*  
 neco 1. *to kill.*  
 nectar, āris, *n. nectar.*  
 necto, xui, xum 3. *to join together, weave.*  
 nefarius 3. *infamous.*  
 nefas, (indecl.) *n. wrong.*  
 negligo, lexi, lectum 3. *to neglect.*  
 nego 1. *to deny, say no.*  
 negotior 1. *to pursue business, trade.*  
 negotium, i, *n. business.*  
 nemo (inis) *c. nobody, no one, (gen. and abl. not used).*  
 neptis, is, *f. grand-daughter.*

Neptūnus, i. m. <i>Nep- tune.</i>	do) — sed etiam, not only — but also.	ble that any one? any thing?
nequē, i, itum, ire, <i>not to be able.</i>	nondum, adv. not yet.	nunc, adv. now.
nequicquam, adv. in vain, to no effect.	nonne? not? not in- deed? whether not.	nundinae, arum, f. market.
nervus, i, m. nerve, <i>sinev.</i>	nonnunquam, adv. some- times.	nunquam, adv. never.
nescio 4. not to know.	nosco, novi, notum 3. to become acquainted with.	nuntio 1. to announce.
nescius 3. not knowing; non sum nescius, I know full well.	noster, tra, trum, our.	nuntius, i, m. message, news; messenger.
ni (nisi), conj. if not, unless.	nostras, ātis, m. of our country, fellow-coun- tryman.	nuper, lately.
nidifico 1. to build a nest.	nota, ae, f. mark, sign.	nurus, ūs, f. daughter- in-law.
nidus, i, m. nest.	notio, ōnis, f. notion.	nusquam, adv. no-where.
niger, gra, grum, black.	notitia, ae, f. knowl- edge.	nutrio 4. to nourish.
nihil (indecl.) n. nothing.	noto 1. to mark, brand.	nutrix, icis, f. nurse.
nihilum, i, n. nothing.	notus 3. known.	nutus, ūs, m. nod, com- mand.
nimis, adv. too much.	November, bris, m. November.	nux, nucis, f. a nut.
nimium, adv. too much, too very.	novi, isse, to know.	O.
ningo, xi, 3. to snow.	novus 3. new.	Obdormisco, mivi, mi- tum 3. to fall asleep.
nisi, conj. if not; ex- cept.	nox, noctis, f. night.	obduco, xi, ctum 3. to overspread, cover.
nitidus 3. shining, splendid.	nubes, is, f. cloud.	obedio 4. to obey.
nitor, nisus or nixus sum 3. c. abl. to rely upon something; ad aliquid, to strive after something; in aliquid to strive against some- thing.	nubo, psi, ptum 3. c. dat. to marry (of the woman).	obeo, ii, itum, ire, to die.
nix, nivis, f. snow.	nullus 3. no one, no; nullus non, every one.	obitus, ūs, m. departure, death.
nobilis, e, known, re- nowned.	num, interrogative word [§ 115, 3, b, c.].	oblecto 1. to delight.
nobilito 1. to make known, renowned.	Numa, ae, m. Numa.	oblino, ēvi, itum 3. to besmear, contaminate.
nocēo 2. to injure.	Numantia, ae, f. Nu- mantia.	oblivio, ōnis, f. obliv- ion.
noctu, adv. by night.	numero 1. to number, reckon.	obliscor, oblitus sum 3. c. gen. or acc. to forget.
nocturnus 3. nocturnal.	numerus, i, m. number, multitude, rhythm.	obrepto, repsi, reptum 3. c. dat. to creep upon, steal upon, sur- prise some one.
nodus, i, m. knot.	Numida, ae, m. a Nu- midian.	obruo, ūi, ūtum 3. to cover over, overwhelm.
nomen, inis, n. name.	Numidia, ae, f. Nu- midia.	obscurus 1. to obscure.
nomino 1. to name.	nummus, i, m. money, a sesterc.	obscurus 3. obscure.
non, adv. not (stands before its verb); non solum (tantum, mo-	numquis, numqua, numquid, is it possi-	obsequium, i, n. sub- mission, obedience.
		obssequor, secutus sum

3. c. dat. to obey, *occupo* 1. to take possession of, fall upon, comply with. session of, fall upon, to surprise.
- observe* 1. to observe. *October, bris, m. October.*
- obsessio, ōnis, f. blockade, siege.*
- obsidēo, sessi, sessum* 2. to besiege. *ocūlus, i, m. eye.*
- obsidiō, ōnis, f. siege.* *odi, isse, to hate.*
- obsolesco, lēvi* 3. to pass away, become antiquated. *odiōsus* 3. hateful, hated.
- obsto, stiti, stātum* 1. c. to stand against, in the way of, to be a hindrance, hinder. *odīum, i, n.*
- obsum, fūi, esse* c. dat. to be against, injure. *Odofrēdus, i, m. Ottfried.*
- obtempēro* 1. to obey. *offendo, di, sum* 3. to offend.
- obtinēo,* 2. to maintain. *offēro, obtūli, oblātum,* 3. to offer.
- obtingo, īgi* 3. to fall to one's lot. *officiō, fēcī, fectum* 3. to hinder, prevent.
- obtrectatiō, ōnis, f. detraction.* *officiūm, i, n. duty, service.*
- obtrecto* 1. c. d. to disparage. *offundo, fūdi, fūsum* 3. c. dat. to flow against; pass. to spread one's self upon, surround something; c. acc. to cover.
- obviam, adv. against, to meet.* *olēum, i, n. oil.*
- occasiō, ōnis, f. opportunity.* *olim, adv. formerly.*
- occāsus, ūs, m. setting, downfall.* *omitto, misi, missum* 3. to let go, pass over, postpone.
- Occidens, ntis, m. setting sun, western regions, west.* *omnino, adv. wholly, altogether.*
- occido, cidi, cāsum* 3. to fall. *omnis, e, each, whole; plur. all.*
- occido, cidi, cisum* 3. to kill. *onēro* 1. to load, burden.
- occo* 1. to harrow. *onus, ēris, n. load.*
- occūlo, ulūi, ultum* 3. to conceal. *onyx, ŷchis, m. onyx.*
- occulto* 1. to conceal. *opēra, ae, f. service rendered, labour;*
- occultus* 3. concealed. *ram dare, navare* c. dat. to occupy one's self with.
- occumbo, cubūi, cubitum* 3. to fall, die. *opes, um, f. power, property, goods, treasures.*
- ocrēa, ae, f. greave* (corresponding to our boot). *opimus* 3. fat, rich.
- opinio, ōnis, f. opinion, belief.*
- opinor* 1. to think.
- opitūlor* 1. to lend aid.
- oportet* 2. it is necessary, (§ 105. R. 4.)
- opperior, pertus sum* 4. to await.
- oppidum, i, n. town.*
- opplēo, ēvi, ētum* 2. to fill up, fill.
- oppōno* 3. to oppose.
- opportūne, adv. opportunely.*
- opprimo, pressi, pressum* 3. to oppress.
- oppugno* 1. to attack.
- ops* (not used), gen. *opis, f. aid.*
- optabilis, e, desirable.*
- optimas, ātis, m. chief man.*
- opto* 1. to wish.
- opulentus* 3. powerful, rich.
- opus, ēris, n. work.*
- opus est, it is necessary,* [§ 91. 5, c.]
- oracūlum, i, n. oracle.*
- oratiō, ōnis, f. speech.*
- orātor, ōris, m. orator.*
- orbis, is, m. circle.*
- ordior, orsus sum* 4. to begin.
- ordo, īnis, m. order, succession, rank.*
- Orestes, ae, m. Orestes.*
- Oriens, ntis, m. sun-rising, east, eastern regions.*
- origo, īnis, f. origin.*
- orior, ortus sum* 4. to rise, spring from.
- ornamentum, i, n. ornament, jewel.*
- orno* 1. to adorn.
- oro* 1. to speak; causam orare, to plead; 2) to entreat.
- oryx, ŷgis, m. gazelle.*

- ōs, ōris, *n. face.*  
 ōs, ossis, *n. bone; pl. ossa, bones.*  
 ostium, *i, n. door.*  
 otium, *i, n. leisure.*  
 ovis, *is, f. sheep.*  
 ovum, *i, n. egg.*
- P.**
- Paciscor, pactus sum 3. *to make a bargain.*  
 pactum, *i, n. bargain; nullo pacto, in no way.*  
 paene, *adv. nearly, almost.*  
 pallidus 3. *pale, livid.*  
 pallium, *i, n. cloak.*  
 palumbes, *is, m. wood-pigeon.*  
 palus, ūdis. *f. marsh, pool.*  
 pando, andi, assum, 3. *to open.*  
 pango, pepigi, pactum 3. *to fix in, to fasten, bargain, agree to on condition.*  
 panis, *is, m. bread.*  
 papāver, ēris, *n. poppy.*  
 pāpilō, ōnis, *n. a butterfly.*  
 par, aris, *equal; par sum c. dat. I am a match for some one.*  
 par, aris, *n. a pair.*  
 Pārapamisus, *i. m. Parapamisus.*  
 parātus 3. *prepared, ready.*  
 parco, peperci, parsum 3. *c. dat. to spare, forbear.*  
 parens, ntis, *c. father or mother; plur. parents.*  
 parēo 2. *to obey.*
- paries, ētis, *f. wall (of a house).*  
 pariō, pepēri, partum 3. *to bear, produce; ova parēre, to lay eggs.*  
 paro 1. *to prepare.*  
 parricidium, *i, n. parricide, wicked deed.*  
 pars, rtis, *f. part, side, plur. the characters in a play.*  
 parsimonia, *ae, f. frugality.*  
 particeps, cipi, *participating in.*  
 particula, *ae, f. a particle.*  
 partiō 4. *to divide.*  
 parum, *adv. too little.*  
 parvus, 3. *small.*  
 pasco, pavi, pastum 3. *to pasture (of herds-men), to feed; pascor, pastus sum, pasci, to be fed, pastured, (of herds).*  
 pascuum, *i, n. pasture.*  
 passim, *fur and wide.*  
 pastor, ōris, *m. herdsman.*  
 patefacio, feci, factum 3. *to make known.*  
 patēo, ūi 2. *to stand open.*  
 pater, tris, *m. father.*  
 patienter, *adv. patiently.*  
 patiōr, passus sum 3. *to suffer, allow.*  
 patria, *ae, f. native country.*  
 patrocino 1. *c. dat. to protect.*  
 pauci, *ae, a. few.*  
 paullisper, *adv. a little while.*  
 paullulum, *adv. a little.*  
 paullus 3. *little; paulo post, a little after.*
- pauper ēris, *poor.*  
 paupertas, ātis, *f. poverty.*  
 Pausanias, *ae, Pausanias.*  
 pavidus 3. *fearful.*  
 pavo, ōnis, *m. peacock.*  
 pavor, ōris, *m. fear, fright.*  
 pax, pacis, *f. peace; 2) permission.*  
 peccatum, *i, n. sin, fault.*  
 pecco 1. *to sin, do wrong.*  
 pecten, īnis, *m. comb.*  
 pecto, xi, xum 3. *to comb.*  
 pectus, ōris, *n. breast.*  
 pecunia, *ae, f. money.*  
 pedes, ītis, *m. footman, foot-soldier.*  
 pejero 1. *to swear falsely.*  
 pello, pepuli, pulsum 3. *to drive.*  
 Pelopidas, *ae, m. Pelopidas.*  
 pelvis, *is, f. basin, bowl.*  
 penates, ium, *m. penates, household gods.*  
 pendēo, pependi (*sup. wanting*) 2. *to hang.*  
 pendo, pependi, pensum 3. *to pay for, value.*  
 penitus, *adv. wholly.*  
 penna, *ae, f. feather.*  
 pensum, *i, n. thread.*  
 peracerbus 3. *very bitter, severe.*  
 perāgo, ēgi, actum 3. *to accomplish.*  
 perāgro 1. *to pass through.*  
 percipio, cēpi, ceptum 3. *to perceive.*  
 percrepo, ūi, itum 1. *to resound.*

- percurro, cucurri *or* percurrere, cursum 3. *to run through.*
- perdo, didi, ditum 3. *to ruin, destroy, lose.*
- perdōmo, ūi, itum 1, *to tame, subdue.*
- perēgre, *adv. abroad.*
- perēo, īi, itum, ire, *to go to ruin, perish.*
- perfectus 3. *perfect.*
- perficio, feci, factum 3. *to finish, effect.*
- perfidus 3. *faithless.*
- perfringo, frēgi, fractum 3. *to break through.*
- perfuga, *ae, m. deserter.*
- perflugium, i, *n. refuge.*
- pergo, perrexī, perrectum 3. *to go, proceed.*
- periculum, i, *n. danger.*
- periōdus, i, *f. period.*
- peritus 3. *c. gen. experienced, skilled in.*
- permānēo, mansi, mansum 2. *to continue, hold out.*
- permāno 1. *to flow through.*
- permitto, isi, issum 3. *to permit.*
- permōvēo, mōvi, mōtum 2. *to move, stir up.*
- permulcēo, lsi, lsum 2. *to stroke, please, charm, soothe.*
- permultus 3. *very many.*
- perniciēs, ēi, *f. destruction.*
- perniciōsus 3. *pernicious, destructive.*
- pernosco, nōvi, nōtum 3. *to become thoroughly acquainted with.*
- perōsus 3. *hating greatly.*
- perpētior, pessus sum 3. *to endure.*
- perpētro 1. *to perform.*
- perpetuitas, ātis, *f. perpetuity, duration.*
- perpetūo, *adv. continually.*
- perpetuus 3. *continued, constant.*
- perrōdo, si, sum 3. *to eat through.*
- perrumpo, rūpi, ruptum 3. *to break through.*
- Persa, *ae, m. a Persian.*
- persaepe, *adv. very often.*
- persāno 1. *to cure wholly.*
- persēquor, secūtus sum 3. *to follow up, pursue.*
- persevēro 1. *to hold out.*
- persolvo, vi, ūtum 3. *to pay.*
- persōna, *ae, f. person.*
- persto, ūti, ātum 1. *to persist.*
- perstringo, inxi, ictum 3. *to draw through, censure.*
- persuādēo, si, sum 2. *c. dat. to persuade, convince.*
- perterrēo 2. *to frighten, put in fear.*
- pertinax, ācis, obstinate.
- pertinēo, 2. *to extend; ad aliquem, to pertain to some one.*
- perturbatio, ōnis, *f. disturbance.*
- perturbo 1. *to disturb.*
- pervēhor, vectus sum 3. *to be conveyed off.*
- perverse, *adv. perversely.*
- perversitas, ātis, *f. perversity.*
- pervidēo, idi, isum 2. *to consider, examine.*
- pes, pēdis, *m. foot.*
- pestilentia, *ae, f. pestilence.*
- pestis, is, *f. pest, destruction.*
- peto, ivi, itum 3. *c. acc. to strive to obtain, strive after, attack, fetch.*
- petulans, tis, *wanton.*
- petulantia, *ae, f. wantonness, licentiousness.*
- Phidias, *ae, m. Phidias.*
- philosophia, *ae, f. philosophy.*
- philosophus, i, *m. philosopher.*
- piē, *adv. tenderly, piously.*
- pietas, ātis, *f. piety, filial love.*
- piger, gra, grum, *slothful, dull.*
- pigritia, *ae, f. inactivity.*
- pilosus 3. *hairy, covered with hair.*
- pingo, inxi, ictum 3. *to paint; acu pingere, to embroider.*
- pinus, ūs, *f. pine.*
- piper, ēris, *n. pepper.*
- pirum, i, *n. pear.*
- pirus, i, *f. pear-tree.*
- piscātor, ōris, *m. fisherman.*
- piscis, is, *m. fish.*
- piscor 1. *to fish.*
- pīus 3. *pious, grateful.*
- placēo 2. *to please.*
- placide, *adv. gently.*
- placidus 3. *gentle.*
- placo 1. *to appease.*
- plane, *adv. wholly; plainly.*

- planêtes, *ae, m. planet.*  
 planities, *ei, f. a plain.*  
 planta, *ae, f. plant.*  
 Plato, *ônis, m. Plato.*  
 plaustrum, *i, n. draught-wagon.*  
 plausus, *ûs, m. applause.*  
 Plautus, *i, m. Plautus.*  
 plênus 3. *c. gen. full.*  
 plerique, *aeque, âque, very many, most.*  
 plerumque, *adv. commonly.*  
 Plinius, *i, m. Pliny.*  
 plorâtus, *ûs, m. complaint.* [many.  
 plures, *a, G. ïum. more,*  
 plurimus 3. *most.*  
 plus, *ûris, n. more.*  
 pluviôsus 3. *rainy.*  
 poëma, *âtis, n. poem.*  
 poena, *ae, f. punishment;*  
 poenas dare, *to be punished;* 2) *revenge.*  
 poenitet me alicujus rei, *it repents me of something.*  
 Poenus, *i, m. a Carthaginian.*  
 poëta, *ae, m. poet.*  
 polite, *adv. elegantly.*  
 pollex, *icis, m. thumb.*  
 pollicëor, *citus sum 2. to promise.*  
 Pompëii, *ôrum, m. Pompeii (a city).*  
 Pompëius, *i, m. Pompey.*  
 Pompilius, *i, m. Pompeilius.*  
 pomum, *i, n. plur. eatable fruit.*  
 pondëro 1. *to ponder.*  
 pono, *sui, situm 3. to lay, place;* ponëre in aliqua re, *to set, place upon something.*  
 pons, *tis, m. bridge.*  
 popûlor 1. *to lay waste.*  
 pöpulus, *i, m. people.*  
 pöpulus, *i, f. poplar.*  
 porro, *adv. moreover.*  
 porta, *ae, f. gate.*  
 porticus, *ûs, f. portico.*  
 porto 1. *to bear.*  
 portus, *ûs, m. haven.*  
 posco, poposci 3. *to demand.*  
 possessio, *ônis, f. possession, possessing.*  
 possum, potui, posse, *to be able (can).*  
 postea, *adv. afterwards.*  
 posteâquam, *conj. after that.*  
 postëro die, *on the following day;* in posterum diem, *till the following day.*  
 postis, *is, m. post.*  
 postquam, *conj. after that.*  
 postrëmus 3. *last;* ad postremum, *lastly.*  
 postûlo 1. *to demand.*  
 potens, *tis, c. gen. powerful, master of.*  
 potentia, *ae, f. power.*  
 potestas, *âtis, f. power.*  
 potiô, *ônis, f. drinking, drink.*  
 potiôr, titus sum 4. *c. abl. to possess one's self of.*  
 potissimum, *adv. especially, principally.*  
 potiûs, *adv. much more, rather.*  
 potus, *ûs, m. drink.*  
 praealtus 3. *very deep.*  
 praebeo 2. *to afford, lend;* se praebeëre, *to prove, show one's self.*  
 praeceps, cipitis, *inclining, rugged, steep;* precipitous.  
 praeceptor, *ôris, m. teacher.*  
 praeceptum, *i, n. precept, principle.*  
 praecläre, *adv. nobly.*  
 praeclärus 3. *noble.*  
 praeclûdo 3. *to shut.*  
 praeco, *ônis, m. encomiast.*  
 praecordia, *ôrum, n. diaphragm.*  
 praecox, cöcis, *precocious.*  
 praeda, *ae, f. booty.*  
 praedico 1. *to extol.*  
 praedico 3. *to predict.*  
 praeditus 3. *c. abl. endowed with.*  
 praedium, *i, n. farm.*  
 praedor 1. *to make booty.*  
 praefëro, *tuli, lätum, ferre 3. to prefer.*  
 praelöquor, locutus sum 3. *to speak before.*  
 praemium, *i, n. reward.*  
 praeparatio, *ônis, f. preparation.*  
 praepäro 1. *to prepare.*  
 praepöno, ösui, ösitum 3. *to prefer.* [tily.  
 praepropëre, *adv. hastily.*  
 praesens, *tis, present.*  
 praesertim, *adv. especially.* [dent.  
 praeses, idis, *m. president.*  
 praesidium, *i, n. aid, protection, support.*  
 praestabilis, *e, excellent, superior.*  
 praestans, *tis, excellent.*  
 praesto, iti, ätum 1. *to be distinguished;* alcui, *to surpass;* to be better; *to bestow;* to pay; se praestäre, *to show one's self.*  
 praesto, *adv. present, at hand.*

- praesum, fūi, esse, *to be placed before, pre-side over.*  
 praeterēo, īi, itum, ire, *to pass by before.*  
 praeteritus 3. *past.*  
 praetor, ōris, *m. praetor.*  
 praetorium, i, *n. general's tent.*  
 prandēo, di, sum 2. *to breakfast.*  
 pratum, i, *n. meadow.*  
 pravitas, ātis, *f. depravity.*  
 preces, um, *f. entreaties*  
 precor 1. *to entreat;*  
 bene pr. alicūi, *to wish well to one.*  
 premo, pressi, pressum 3. *to press.*  
 pretiosus 3. *precious.*  
 pretium, i, *n. price, value.*  
 pridem, *adv. long ago;*  
 jam pridem, *long since.*  
 Priēne, es, *f. Priene (a city of Ionia).*  
 primo, *adv. in the first place.*  
 primum, *adv. in the first place.*  
 princeps, īpis, *m. first; the first.*  
 principium, i, *n. beginning;*  
 principio, *in the beginning.*  
 priscus 3. *old.*  
 pristinus 3. *former.*  
 prius, *adv. sooner.*  
 priusquam, conj. *before that, ere, before.*  
 privatus 3. *private.*  
 probe, *adv. excellently, suitably, uprightly.*  
 probitas, ātis, *f. uprightness.*  
 probō 1. *to approve;*  
 probari alicūi, *to please some one.*  
 probrium, i, *n. disgrace.*  
 probus 3. *upright, excellent.*  
 Probus, i, *m. Probus.*  
 procella, ae, *f. storm.*  
 procēres, um, *m. the nobles.*  
 procērus 3. *slim, tall.*  
 procūdo, di, sum 3. *(of money) to coin.*  
 procul, *adv. far off, from a distance.*  
 procumbo, cubūi, cubi-  
 tum 3. *to fall down.*  
 procūro 1. *to take care of.*  
 prodēo, īi, itum, ire, *to go forth, depart.*  
 prodigiōsus 3. *wonderful.*  
 prodiitio, ōnis, *f. treachery.*  
 proditor, ōris, *m. traitor.*  
 prodo, didi, ditum, 3. *to deliver up, betray.*  
 proelium, i, *n. encounter.*  
 profānus 3. *profane.*  
 profecto, *adv. indeed, truly.*  
 profēro, tūli, lātum, fer-  
 re, 3. *to bring forward.* [fessor.  
 professor, ōris, *m. pro-*  
 proficio, fēci, factum 3, *to profit, accomplish.*  
 proficiscor, fectus sum, 3. *to set out (on a journey), march, depart.*  
 profiteor, fessus sum 2. *to acknowledge freely, promise, offer freely.*  
 profusus 3. *unrestrained.*  
 progrēdior, gressus sum 3. *to step forth, advance.*  
 prohibēo, būi, bitum 2. *to prevent, keep off.*  
 proinde, *adv. therefore;*  
 proinde quasi, *just as if.*  
 promitto, misi, missum 3. *to promise.*  
 promptu, in promptu  
 esse, *to be ready.*  
 promptus 3. *ready.*  
 pronuntio 1. *to pronounce.*  
 prope, *adv. near;* 2) *nearly, almost.*  
 propere, *adv. hastily.*  
 propitius 3. *propitious, favorable.*  
 propositum, i, *n. purpose, design.*  
 proprius 3. *own, peculiar.*  
 propterēa, *adv. on this account.*  
 propugnator, ōris, *m. champion, defender.*  
 propulso 1. *to drive back.*  
 prorēpo 3. *to creep forth.*  
 prorsus *adv. entirely.*  
 prospecto 1. *to look forth.*  
 prosperitas, ātis, *f. prosperity.*  
 prospicio, spexi, spec-  
 tum 3. *to see before one's self.*  
 prosterno, strāvi, strā-  
 tum 3. *to prostrate.*  
 prosum, fūi, desse c. *dat. to be useful, benefit.*  
 protinus, *adv. immediately.*  
 proverbium, i, *n. proverb.*  
 providentia, ae, *f. foresight, providence.*  
 providēo, vidi, visum 2.



- to foresee ; c. dat. to provide for something ;  
 2) to be on one's guard, look out.  
 provincia, ae, f. province.  
 proxime, adv. next.  
 proximus 3. next.  
 prudens, tis, wise, prudent, skilful.  
 prudenter, adv. wisely, prudently.  
 prudentia, ae, f. wisdom, prudence.  
 prunum, i, n. a plum.  
 prunus, i, f. plumtree.  
 pubes, eris, grown up.  
 publice, adv. publicly, on behalf of the State, at the cost of the State.  
 publico 1. to make public.  
 publicus 3. public ; in publico, in a public street.  
 pudor, oris, m. shame.  
 puella, ae, f. maid.  
 puer, eri, m. boy ; pueri, children.  
 puerilis, e, childish.  
 pueritia, ae, f. childhood.  
 puerulus, i, m. little boy.  
 pugna, ae, f. fight, battle.  
 pugno 1. to fight.  
 pulcher, chra, chrum, beautiful, fair.  
 pulchre, adv. beautifully.  
 pulchritudo, inis, f. beauty.  
 pulex, icis, m. a flea.  
 pullus, i, m. the young (of animals), chicken.  
 pulvis, eris, m. sand, dust.  
 pingo, pupgi, pun-ctum 3. to sting, to harass.  
 Punicus 3. Punic.  
 punio 4. to punish, correct.  
 puppis, is, f. the stern of a ship.  
 purgo 1. to purify, justify.  
 purus 3. pure.  
 puto 1. to think, believe, consider.  
 Pylades, ae, m. Pylades.  
 Pythagoras, ae, m. Pythagoras.
- Q.
- Quaero, sivi, situm 3. to seek, ab or ex aliquo, to ask of one.  
 quaeso, I pray, beseech.  
 quaestio, onis, f. question.  
 qualis, e, of what sort, character ; as.  
 qualiscunque, of whatever sort, character.  
 quam, adv. how, as ; conj. (with the comparative) than.  
 quamdiu, how long, so long as.  
 quamvis, conj. with the subj. how much soever, although.  
 quando, adv. when.  
 quanquam, conj. with indic. though, although.  
 quanto, (with comp.) the.  
 quantopere, how greatly.  
 quantus 3. how great ; quantum, how much.  
 quantuscunque, how great soever.  
 quasi, as it were, as if, as though.  
 que, conj. and (always attached to its word).  
 quemadmodum, adv. in what manner, as.  
 queo ivi, itum, ire, to be able (can).  
 quercus, us, f. oak.  
 querela, ae, f. complaint, plaintive cry.  
 queror, questus sum 3. to complain.  
 qui, quae, quod, who.  
 qui, how, whence, whereby.  
 quia, conj. because.  
 quicunque, quaecunque, quodcunque, whosoever.  
 quidam, quaedam, quidam and quoddam. [§ 31. 6)].  
 quidem, indeed (is placed after its word).  
 quidni, why not.  
 quies, etis, f. quiet.  
 quiesco, evi, etum 3. to rest.  
 quietus 3. quiet.  
 quin, [§ 107. 3. b)].  
 quinam ? who then ?  
 quippe, adv. indeed, namely.  
 quis ? quid ? who ? what ?  
 quis, qua, quid and qui, quae, quod [31, 1)] any one.  
 quisnam, quaenam, quidnam, who, what then ?  
 quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam and quodpiam [§ 31, 3)].  
 quisquam, quicquam and quodquam, (scarcely) any one, [§ 31, 4)].  
 quisque, quaeque, quidque and quodque [§ 31, 7)].

- quisquis, quicquid, *who-ever*. (§ 30. R. 2).  
 quo, *adv. whither*; quo-  
 eo, (in comp.) *the—so much the*.  
 quoad, *so long as, until, until that, even until*.  
 quocunque, *adv. whithersoever*.  
 quod, *conj. that, because*.  
 quodsi, *if now, but if*.  
 quominus, *that* (§ 107, 2).  
 quomodo, *adv. how*.  
 quondam, *adv. once, formerly*.  
 quoniam, *conj. because*.  
 quoque, *adv. also*.  
 quot? *how many?*  
 quotannis, *adv. yearly*.  
 quocunque, — *however many*.  
 quotidiānus 3. *daily*.  
 quotidie, *adv. daily*.  
 quoties, *adv. how often*.  
 quotiescunque, *adv. however often*.  
 quotquot, *however many*.  
 quotus 3. *what one in order*.  
 quum, *conj. when; as, since*.
- R.**
- Rabies, *ei, f. madness*.  
 rabiōsus 3. *mad*.  
 radix, *icis, f. root*.  
 rana, *ae, f. frog*.  
 rapidus 3. *tearing away, rapid*.  
 rapio, *pui, ptum 3. to snatch, carry off*.  
 raro, *adv. rarely*.  
 rarus 3. *seldom*.  
 ratio, *ōnis, f. reason; manner*.  
 ravis, *is, f. hoarseness*.  
 recedo, *cessi, cessum 3. to go back, retire*.  
 recipio, *cēpi, ceptum 3. to take back, receive; se recipere, to betake one's self back*.  
 recito 1. *to read to*.  
 recordatio, *ōnis, f. recollection*.  
 recordor 1. *c. acc. to remember, call to mind*.  
 recreo 1. *to renew, fresh*.  
 recresco, *dūi 3. to break open afresh*.  
 recte, *adv. rightly, correctly*.  
 rector, *ōris, m. governor*.  
 rectus 3. *straight, direct, right; recta conscientia, a good conscience*.  
 recumbo, *cubui, cubitum 3. to lie down again*.  
 recupero 1. *to recover*.  
 redamo 1. *to love in return*.  
 redarguo, *ui, utum 3. to refute*.  
 reddo, *idi, itum 3. to give back again, give, make*.  
 redco, *ii, itum 4. to persuade*.  
 reditus, *ūs, m. return*.  
 reduco, *xi, ctum 3. to lead back*.  
 redundo 1. *to redound*.  
 refello, *elli 3. to refute*.  
 refectio, *rsi, rtum 3. to stuff, fill up*.  
 refert, *tuli, latum, ferre 3. to bring back, return again; requite; refer to*.  
 refert 3. *c. gen. it concerns*. (§ 88. 10).  
 reformido 1. *c. acc. to fear something*.  
 refrico, *cui, catum 1. to rub again, renew*.  
 regina, *ae, f. queen*.  
 regio, *ōnis, f. region*.  
 regius 3. *royal*.  
 regno 1. *to reign*.  
 regnum, *i, n. reign, kingdom*.  
 rego, *xi, ctum 3. to govern, guide, rule*.  
 rejicio, *jeci, jectum 3. to throw away, reject*.  
 religio, *ōnis, f. religion, conscientiousness*.  
 religiōse, *adv. scrupulously*.  
 relinquo, *liqui, lictum 3. to leave behind, desert*.  
 reliquus 3. *remaining*.  
 remaneo, *nsi, nsium 2. to remain behind, remain*.  
 reminiscor (without the *perf.*) 3. *c. gen. or acc. to remember*.  
 removo, *ovi, otum 2. to remove*.  
 Remus, *i. m. Remus*.  
 ren, (commonly *plur.* *renes, um, m.*) *kidneys*.  
 reor, *ratus sum, reri, 2. to be persuaded, think*.  
 repente, *adv. suddenly*.  
 repertio, *pēri, pertum 4. to find, find out*.  
 repeto, *ivi, itum 3. to call back, retrace*.  
 replco, *ēvi, etum 2. to fill up*.  
 replico 1. *to repeat*.  
 reporto 1. *to bear off*.  
 repugno 1. *to contend against*.  
 reputo 1. *to weigh, consider*.  
 requies, *ētis, (acc. requiem), f. rest, relaxation*.

- requiesco, ēvi, ētum 3. *Rhodus, i. f. Rhodes.* saevio 4. *to rage.*  
 (ex) c. abl. *to repose.* ridēo, risi, risum 2. *to* saevus 3. *fierce.*  
 requiro, quisivi, quisitum 3. *to search after,* laugh; c. acc. *to* sagitta, ae, f. *arrow.*  
*inquire for.* laugh at, deride. sal, salis, m. *salt; wit.*  
 res, rei, f. *affair, thing.* ridiculus 3. *ridiculous.* salio, lūi, ltum 4. *to leap.*  
 rescindo, idi, issum 3. *to tear off, break off.* rite, adv. *in a proper* saltem, adv. *at least.*  
 rescisco, ivi or ii, itum 3. *to ascertain.* manner. salto 1. *to dance.*  
 resēco, cūi, etum 2. *to cut off.* rivulus, i, m. *stream.* salus, ūtis, f. *prosperity,*  
 reservo 1. *to reserve.* robur, ōris, n. *strength.* *welfare, safety.*  
 residēo, ēdi, essum 2. *to remain behind.* robustus 3. *strong.* salutāris, e, *salutary.*  
 resisto, stīti, stitum 3. *to resist.* rogo 1. *to entreat, ask.* salūto 1. *to salute.*  
 resōno 1. *to resound.* Romānus 3. *Roman; salvēo 2. to be well).*  
 resōnus 3. *resounding,* Romānus, i, m. *a Samnis, itis, m. a Sam-*  
*echoing.* *Roman.* nite. sancio, nxi, nctum 4.  
 respiro 1. *to breathe.* Romulus, i, m. *Romulus.* *to sanction.*  
 respondēo, di, sum 2. *to answer, reply.* rosa, ae, f. *rose.* sancte, adv. *sacredly,*  
 responsio, ōnis, f. *answer.* Roscius, i, m. *Roscious.* *conscientiously.*  
 responsum, i, n. *answer.* rostrum, i, n. *beak.* sanctus 3. *sacred.*  
 respublica, G. rei publicae, f. *State.* rotundus 3. *round.* sane, adv. *truly.*  
 respūo, ūi, ūtum 3. *to reject.* ruber, bra, brum, red. sanguis, inis, m. *blood.*  
 restingūo, nxi, nctum, 3. *to smother, to extinguish.* rudens, tis, m. *rope, stay.* sanō 1. *to heal, cure.*  
 restis, is, f. *rope.* rudis, e, c. gen. *crude, unacquainted with.* sapidus 3. *palatable.*  
 restitūo, ūi, ūtum 3. *to restore.* rudo, ivi (i), itum 3. *to roar.* sapiens, tis, wise; subst. *wise man.*  
 resto, stīti 1. *to be left; 2) resist.* rumpo, rupi, ruptum 3. *to break, tear.* sapientia, ae, f. *wisdom.*  
 rete, is, n. *net, toil.* rūo, rūi, rūtum 3. *to rush.* sapio, ūi 3. *to be wise.*  
 retinēo, inūi, entum 2. *to hold back, retain.* rupes, is, f. *rock, cliff.* sarcio, rsi, rtum 4. *to make good again, re-*  
 rēus, i, m. *defendant.* rus, ruris, n. *country.* pair. [branch.  
 revertor, Perf.: reverti 3. *to return.* rusticus 3. *rustic; subst. countryman, boor.* sarmentum, i, n. *shoot,*  
 revōco 1. *to recall.* rutilus 3. *fiery red.* sat, adv. *sufficiently.*  
 rex, gis, m. *king.* S. sacer, cra, crum, *sacred; sacra, ōrum, n. sacred rites.* satio 1. *to satiate.*  
 Rhenus, i, m. *Rhine.* sacerdos, ōtis, c. *priest, priestless.* satira, ae, f. *satire.*  
 Sacer, cra, crum, *sacred rites.* satis, adv. *sufficiently.* Saturnus, i, m. *Saturn.*  
 scaturigo, inis, f. *spring.* sceleratus 3. *wicked.* saxum, i, n. *rock.*  
 scelus, ēris, n. *crime, transgression.* scatēo, ēre, c. abl. *to be full of something.*  
 schola, ae, f. *school.* scaturigo, inis, f. *spring.* sceleratus 3. *wicked.*  
 scholasticus 3. *of or pertaining to a school.*

- scilicet, *adv. truly, to wit.*  
 scintilla, *ae, f. spark.*  
 scio 4. *to know.*  
 scipio, *ōnis, m. staff.*  
 Scipio, *ōnis, m. Scipio.*  
 scribo, *psi, ptum 3. to write.*  
 scriptor, *ōris, m. writer.*  
 scrobis, *is, m. hole, ditch.*  
 scrupulus, *i, m. scruple.*  
 Scythia, *ae, m. a Scythian.*  
 secerno, *crēvi, crētum 3. to sunder, separate.*  
 seco, *cūi, ctum 1. to cut.*  
 sector 1. *c. acc. to pursue, strive after.*  
 secundus 3. *favorable, fortunate; res secundae, prosperity.*  
 securis, *is, f. axe, hatchet.*  
 securus 3. *secure, safe.*  
 sed, *conj. but.*  
 sēdēo, *sēdi, sessum 2. to sit.*  
 sedes, *is, f. seat.*  
 seditio, *ōnis, f. sedition.*  
 sedo 1. *to quiet.*  
 sedulo, *adv. busily.*  
 seges, *ētis, f. crop.*  
 semen, *īnis, n. seed.*  
 semper, *adv. always.*  
 sempiternus 3. *ever-during, eternal.*  
 senātor, *ōris, m. senator.*  
 senātus, *ūs, m. senate.*  
 senectus, *ūtis, f. age, old age.*  
 senex, *senis, old; subst. old man.*  
 senilis, *e, belonging to old age; aetas senilis, f. old age.*  
 sensus, *ūs, m. sense, feeling.*  
 sententia, *ae, f. sentiment, opinion.*  
 sentio, *nsi, nsum 4. to feel, think, judge.*  
 sentis, *is, m. (commonly plur. sentes), thorn-bush.*  
 separo 1. *to separate, disjoin.*  
 sepelito, *pelivi, pultum 4. to inter, bury.*  
 sepio, *sepsi, septum 4. to hedge in, inclose.*  
 sepōno, *pōsui, pōsitum 3. to lay aside.*  
 September, *bris, m. September.*  
 sepulcrum, *i, n. grave, burial.*  
 sequor, *secutus sum 3. c. acc. to follow.*  
 serēnus 3. *clear, bright.*  
 seriūs 3. *grave.*  
 sermo, *ōnis, m. conversation, discourse.*  
 sero, *sevi, satum 3. to sow, plant.*  
 serus 3. *too late.*  
 servio 4. *to serve.*  
 servitus, *ūtis, f. servitude.*  
 servo 1. *to preserve.*  
 servus, *i, m. slave.*  
 seu, *conj. see sive.*  
 severitas, *ātis, f. severity.*  
 si, *conj. if, if also.*  
 sic, *adv. so, thus.*  
 sica, *ae, f. dagger.*  
 sicariūs, *i, m. assassin.*  
 siccine, *adv. is it so?*  
 sicco 1. *to dry.*  
 Sicilia, *ae, f. Sicily.*  
 signum, *i, n. sign.*  
 silentium, *i, n. silence.*  
 siler, *ēris, n. willow.*  
 silva, *ae, f. a wood.*  
 similis, *e, like.*  
 similitudo, *īnis, f. likeness.*  
 simplex, *īcis, simple.*  
 simul, *adv. at the same time.*  
 simulac, *conj. (never before a vowel or h) as soon as.*  
 simulatio, *ōnis, f. pretence.*  
 simulatque = simulac.  
 simulo 1. *to liken one's self to; to feign.*  
 sin, *conj. but if.*  
 sināpis, *is, f. mustard.*  
 singuli, *ae, a, single.*  
 sino, *sivi, situm 3. to permit, allow.*  
 siquidem, *conj. if indeed.*  
 siser, *ēris, n. carrot.*  
 sitiō 4. *to thirst; c. acc. to thirst after something.*  
 sitis, *is, f. thirst.*  
 situs, *ūs, m. situation; 2) mould, filth.*  
 situs, 3. *placed; situm esse, to be placed, buried.*  
 sive—sive, *conj. whether—or, either—or.*  
 soccus, *i, m. sock, shoe.*  
 socer, *ēri, m. father-in-law.*  
 societas, *ātis, f. union, league, alliance, association.*  
 socius, *i, m. ally.*  
 Socrātes, *is, m. Socrates.*  
 socrus, *ūs, f. mother-in-law. [ion.*  
 sodālis, *is, m. companion.*  
 sol, *solis, m. sun.*  
 solatium, *i, n. solace.*  
 solēa, *ae, f. sole; solēa equi, horseshoe.*

- solëo, solitus sum 2. spiritus, ūs, *m. breath.* stultus 3. *foolish, silly.*  
*to be wont.* splen, enis, *m. the spleen.* suāvis, e, *lovely, agreea-*  
solitudo, inis, *f. solitude.* splendëo, ūi 2. *to shine.* ble.  
sollers, tis, *dextrous, skilful.* splendïdus 3. *splendid.* suavitas, ātis, *f. sweet-*  
sollicito 1. *to disquiet.* splendor, ōris, *m. mag-* ness, *loveliness of*  
sollicitudo, inis, *f. soli-* nificance, *splendor.* character.  
citude, anxiety. spolio 1. *to deprive, rob.* suaviter, *adv. sweetly,*  
sollicitus 3. *anxious.* spondeo, sponondi, *agreeably.*  
solum, i, *n. ground.* sponsum 2. *to be re-*  
solus 3. *alone.* sponsible for.  
solutus 3. *unbound.* spurius 3. *spurious.*  
solvo, vi, ūtum 3. *to* stabilis, e, *stable, firm.*  
*loose, free.* stabilitas, ātis, *f. stabil-*  
sonnïo 1. *to dream.* ity.  
sonnium, i, *n. dream.* statim, *adv. immediately.*  
sornus, i, *m. sleep.* statio, ōnis, *station.*  
sonitus, ūs, *m. sound.* statua, ae, *f. statue.*  
sono, ūi, itum 1. *to* status, ūs, *m. posture.*  
*sound.* stella, ae, *f. star.*  
sonus, i, *m. tone.* stercus, ōris, *n. dung.*  
sophista, ae, *m. sophist.* stimulo 1. *to goad.*  
Sophocles, is, *m. Sopho-* stipendium, i, *n. pay.*  
cles. stirps, pis, *f. stem, ori-*  
sordidus 3. *mean.* gin.  
sorex, icis, *m. a field-* sto, stëti, statum 1. *to*  
*mouse.* stand, *be gained by,*  
sorex, icis, *m. an owl.* cost.  
soror, ōris, *f. sister.* strenue, *adv. vigorously.*  
sors, tis, *f. lot.* strideo di, 2. *to whistle.*  
sospes, itis, *safe, sound.* stringo, inxi, ictum 3. *to graze, draw (sword).*  
spargo, rsi, rsum 3. *to* strix, igis, *f. horned owl.*  
*strow, scatter, spread.* studëo, ūi 2. *to strive,*  
spatium, i, *n. space,* exert one's self, en-  
*length of time.* deavor ; c. dat. *to oc-*  
species, ei, *f. form.* cupy one's self zeal-  
speciosus 3. *striking,* ously with, favour  
*beautiful.* [tator. some one.  
spectator, ōris, *m. spec-* studiöse, *adv. zealously,*  
specto 1. c. acc. *to look* studiösus 3. c. gen. *de-*  
*at, behold, have some-* voted to ; stud. esse  
*thing in view.* c. gen. *to occupy one's*  
specus, ūs, *m. cave.* self zealously with,  
sperno, sprëvi, spretum *to apply one's self to*  
3. *to spurn.* something.  
spero 1. *to hope.* studium i, *n. effort, zeal,*  
spes, ei, *f. hope.* [let. study.  
spinther, ëris, *n. brace-* stultitia, ae, *f. folly.*

- summa, *ae, f. sum.*  
 summus 3. *greatest, highest.*  
 summa aqua, *surface of the water.*  
 sumo, mpsi, mptum 3. *to take.* [sew. table.  
 sũo, sũi, sũtum 3. *to supellex, ectilis, f. furniture, utensils.*  
 superbus 3. *proud, magnificent.*  
 superior, us, *higher; subst. conquerer.*  
 sup̃ero 1. *to overcome, surpass.*  
 superstes, itis, c. dat. *surviving.*  
 superstitio, ōnis, *f. superstition.*  
 sup̃erus 3. *above; sup̃eri, the gods.*  
 suppedito 1. *to furnish.*  
 supplex, icis, *suppliant.*  
 supplicium, i, n. *punishment.*  
 supplico 1. c. dat. *to entreat.*  
 supra, *adv. above.*  
 supr̃mus 3. *last.*  
 surgo, surrexi, surrectum 3. *to arise.*  
 sus, suis, *f. sow, swine.*  
 suscipio, cēpi, ceptum 3. *to undertake, receive.*  
 suscito 1. *to arouse.*  
 suspicor 1. *to suspect, imagine.*  
 sustento 1. *to support.*  
 sustiñeo, inũi, entum 2. *to sustain; sust. partes, to act a part.*  
 sũus 3. *his (her, ils), his own.*  
 symbolis, de symbolis ed̃ere, *to eat at common expense.*  
 Syracũsae, arum, *f. Syracuse.*  
 Syrus, i, m. *a Syrian.*  
 T.  
 Tabũla, ae, *f. board, [sew. table.*  
 tac̃eo, 2. *to be silent.*  
 tacitus 3. *silent.*  
 taedet me alicujus rei, *it excites disgust in me at something.*  
 talentum, i, n. *talent (sum of money).*  
 talis, e, *of such sort, character; such.*  
 tam, so; tam—quam, *so—as.*  
 tamdiũ, *adv. so long.*  
 tamen, conj. *yet, still.*  
 Tam̃esis, is, m. *Thames.*  
 tandem, *adv. finally, then.*  
 tango, tet̃gi, tactum 3. *to touch; tangi de coelo, to be struck by lightning.*  
 tanquam, *just as, as, as if, as though, as it were.*  
 Tant̃alus, i, m. *Tantalus.*  
 tanto, (in comp.) *so much the.*  
 tantop̃ere, *adv. so greatly.*  
 tantum, *only.*  
 tantus 3. *so great.*  
 tarditas, ātis, *f. slowness.*  
 tardus 3. *slow.*  
 Tarentum, i, n. *Tarentum (a city).*  
 Tarquinius, i, m. *Tarquinius.*  
 Tarquinius, orum, m. *Tarquinius (a city).*  
 tectum, i, n. *house, roof.*  
 tego, xi, etum 3. *to cover.* [ering.  
 tegumentum, i, n. *coverletum, i, n. arrow, dart.*  
 tem̃ere, *adv. rashly, without reason.*  
 temeritas, ātis, *f. rashness, hastiness.*  
 temperantia, ae, *f. temperance.*  
 temp̃ero 1. *to moderate; non temp. mihi quin, I cannot refrain from.*  
 tempestas, ātis, *f. time; 2) weather, storm.*  
 templum, i, n. *temple.*  
 tempus, ōris, n. *time; tempore, at the right time.*  
 tenax, ācis, c. gen. *persevering, tenacious.*  
 tendo, tetendi, tensum and tentum 3. *to extend, distend; ad aliquid, to strive after something.*  
 teñbrae, arum, *f. darkness.*  
 teñeo, nũi, ntum 2. *to hold, hold fast, occupy, restrain.*  
 tener, ěra, ěrum, *tender.*  
 tento 1. *to try.*  
 tenũis, e, *slender, small, slight.*  
 tergum, i, n. *back.*  
 terra, ae, *f. earth, land.*  
 terr̃eo 2. *to frighten.*  
 terrestris, e, *earthly; proelium terrestre, land-fight.*  
 terribilis, e, *terrible.*  
 terror, ōris, m. *terror.*  
 testamentum, i, n. *testament, will.*  
 testis, is, c. *witness.*  
 teter, tra, trum, *foul, hideous.*

- texo, xūi, xtum 3. *to* totus 3. *the whole.*  
*weave, braid.* tractatio, ōnis, *f. hand-*  
 Thebānus, i, *m. a The-* ling, *pursuit.*  
*ban.* tracto 1. *to handle, pur-*  
 Themistōcles, is, *m.* sue, *perform.*  
*Themistocles.* trado, didi, ditum 3. *to*  
 Theophrastus, i, *m.* deliver over, give, sur-  
*Theophrastus.* render, relate.  
 Thracīa, ae, *f. Thrace.* tradux, ūcis, *m. a vine*  
 Tibēris, is, *m. Tiber.* branch, *vine-layer.*  
 tibia, ae, *f. shin-bone,* tragoedia, ae, *f. tragedy.*  
*pipe, flute.* traho, traxi, tractum 3.  
 Tigris, is, *f. Tigris.* to draw.  
 timēo, ūi 2. *to fear.* transēo, ii, itum, ire, *to*  
 timiditas, ātis, *f. timidi-* pass by, *pass over.*  
*ty.* transfigo, xi, xum 3. *to*  
 timidus 3. *timid.* transfix, *stab.*  
 timor, ōris, *m. fear.* transgrēdior, gressus  
 Timothēus, i, *m. Timo-* sum 3. *to pass over.*  
*theus.* transigo, ēgi, actum 3.  
 tingo, nxi, nctum 3. *to* to bring about, *tran-*  
*color.* sact.  
 toleranter, *adv. pati-* transilīo, silūi, sultum  
*ently.* 4. *to leap over.*  
 tolēro 1. *to endure.* Trasimēnus, i, *m. Tra-*  
 tollo, sustūli, sublātum, *simenus (a lake).*  
 3. *to raise up, bear* tremo, ūi 3. *to tremble.*  
*away.* tribūo, ūi, ūtum 3. *to*  
 tondēo, totondi, tonsum *distribute, give, im-*  
 2. *to shear.* pute. [*pany.*  
 tonitru, u, *n. thunder.* tribus, us, *f. tribe, com-*  
 tono, ūi 1. *to thunder.* tridens, tis, *m. trident.*  
 tonsor, ōris, *m. barber.* triennium, i, *n. the space*  
 tonstricūla, ae, *f. a fe-* of three years.  
*male barber.* tristis, e, *sad, lowering.*  
 tormentum, i, *n. torture.* triticēus 3. *of wheat.*  
 torpēo, ūi, 2. *to be tor-* tropaeum, i, *n. trophy.*  
*pid, inactive.* tu, pron. *thou.*  
 torquēo, torsi, tortum *tuber, ēris, n. hump.*  
 2. *to torment, torture.* tuēor, tuistis sum 2. *to*  
 torquis, is, *m. neck-* behold, keep, protect,  
*chain.* defend.  
 torrens, tis, *m. torrent.* tum, *adv. thereupon,*  
 torrēo, torrūi, tostum 2. *then ; at that time.*  
*to dry, roast.* tumēo, ūi, 2. *to swell.*  
 tortus 3. *twisted.* tumultus, ūs, *m. tumult.*  
 tot, *so many.* tunc, *adv. at that time,*  
 totidem, *just so many.* then, *there.*
- tundo, tutūdi, tunsum  
 3. *to beat, stun.*  
 tunica, ae, *f. under-*  
*garment.*  
 turba, ae, *f. crowd.*  
 turbo 1. *to cause confu-*  
*sion, disturb.*  
 turgidus 3. *swollen.*  
 turpis, e, *disgraceful,*  
*base.*  
 turpitudo, inis, *f. base-*  
*ness.*  
 turris, is, *f. tower.*  
 turtur, ūris, *m. turtle*  
*dove.*  
 tussis, is, *f. cough.*  
 tutus 3. *safe.*  
 tūus 3. *thy, thine.*  
 tyrannus, i, *m. tyrant.*  
 Tyrius, i, *m. Tyrian.*
- U.
- Uber, ubēris, *abound-*  
*ing in, rich.*  
 uber, ēris, *n. udder.*  
 ubertas, ātis, *f. richness,*  
*copiousness.*  
 ubi, *adv. where ; 2) conj.*  
*as soon as, when.*  
 ubicunque, *wherever ;*  
 ubicunque gentium  
*where in all the world.*  
 ubinam, *adv. where then.*  
 Ubjus, i, *n. a Ubian.*  
 ubivis, *adv. where you*  
*will.*  
 ulciscor, ultus sum 3. *c.*  
*acc. to take revenge*  
*upon some one.*  
 ullus 3. *any one.*  
 ulmus, i, *f. elm.*  
 umbra, ae, *f. shade.*  
 una, *adv. at the same*  
*time, together.*  
 unda, ae, *f. wave.*  
 unde, *adv. whence.*  
 undique, *adv. from all*  
*sides.*

- ungo, (unguo), nxi, valetūdo, inis, *f. health.* verbēro 1. *to beat.*  
 nctum 3. *to anoint.* validus 3. *strong.* verbum, i, *n. word.*  
 ungūis, is, *m. nail, claw.* vannus, i, *f. corn-fan.* verecundia, ae, *f. res-*  
 universus 3. *whole.* varius 3. *various.* *pect.*  
 unquam, *adv. ever.* varix, icis, *m. swollen* verēor, veritus sum 2.  
 unus 3. *one; only, alone.* vein. *to reverence, have res-*  
 unusquisque, unaquae- vas, vāsis, *n. (plur. vasa,* *pect for, to fear.*  
 que, unumquidque ōrum, *n.) vessel, vase.* veritas, ātis, *f. truth.*  
*and unumquodque,* vasto 1. *to lay waste.* vermis, is, *m. worm.*  
*each one (§ 31, 7).* vates, is, *prophet.* vernus 3. *vernal; ver-*  
 urbānus 3. *belonging to* vectigal, ālis, *n. toll,* nus dies, *a spring*  
*the city, city-like.* tax, income. day.  
 urbs, bis, *f. city.* vectis, is, *m. lever, bolt.* vero, *conj. but; 2) adv.*  
 urgēo, rsi, 2. *to press,* vehēmens, tis, *vehement.* (as an answer) *yes.*  
*oppress.* vehementer, *adv. vehe-* Verres, is, *m. Verres.*  
 ursus, i, *m. a bear.* mently, violently, versor 1. *in c. abl. to be*  
 usus, ūs, *m. use.* greatly. occupied in a thing.  
 ut, *adv. as, even as.* veho, vexi, vectum 3. versus, ūs, *m. a verse.*  
 ut, *conj. that, in order* to carry, bring, equo verto, rti, rsum 3. *to*  
*that, that not, (§ 106);* vehi, *to ride, be borne* turn; v. in fugam,  
*as (§ 110, 1. 2)]; ut* off. *to put to flight.*  
*primum, as soon as.* vel, *conj. or; even; vel* verus 3. *true.*  
 uter, tra, trum, *which of* —vel, either—or. vervex, ēcis, *m. a weth-*  
*the two.* velox, ōcis, *swift.* er.  
 uterque, utrāque, u- vellum, i, *n. sail.* vescor (without perf.)  
 trumque, *each (of the* velut, *adv. even as, as.* 3. c. *abl. to eat.*  
*two), both.* vena, ae, *f. vein.* vesper, ēri and ēris, *m.*  
 utilis, e, *useful.* venatio, ōnis, *f. a hunt.* evening; vespēri, *at*  
 utilitas, ātis, *f. use, ad-* venātus, ūs, *m. a hunt.* evening.  
*vantage.* venātor, ōris, *m. hunter.* vester, tra, trum, *your.*  
 utinam, *conj. with subj.* vendo, didi, ditum 3. vestio 4. *to clothe, attire.*  
*O that.* [to use. to sell. vestis, is, *f. a garment,*  
 utor, ūsus sum 3. c. *abl.* venēo, ūi, ire, *to be for* cloth.  
 utrum, interrogative sale. Vesuvius, i, *m. Vesu-*  
 word [115, 3. b, d)]. venēror 1. *to revere.* vius.  
 uva, ae, *f. grape.* vēnio, vēni, ventum 4. veto, ūi, itum 1. *to for-*  
*to come.*  
 V. venor 1. *to hunt.* veus, ēris, *old.*  
 Vacca, ae, *f. cow.* ventus, i, *m. wind.* vetustas, ātis, *f. age.*  
 vacillo 1. *to rock, waver.* Venus, ēris, *f. Venus.* vetustus 3. *old.*  
 vae, alas! venustas, ātis, *f. grace-* vexo 1. *to vex, annoy.*  
 vagor 1. *to wander.* fulness. vīa, ae, *f. way.*  
 valde, *adv. very much.* vepres, is, *m. thorn-* viātor, ōris, *m. traveller.*  
 valēo 2. *to be well; be* bush, bramble. vicinus, i, *m. neighbor.*  
*sound, strong, able;* ver, veris, *n. spring.* victor, ōris, *victorious;*  
 valēat, valēant, *adieu* verber, ēris, *n. (com-* subst. conqueror.  
*to something; 2) to* monly plur. verbēra,) victoriā, ae, *f. victory.*  
*avail.* blows. victus, ūs, *m. food.*



<i>vidēo, vidi, visum</i> 2. <i>to see</i> ; pass. <i>seem, appear.</i>	<i>virus, i, n. poison.</i>	<i>voluptas, ātis, f. pleasure, sensuality.</i>
<i>vigēo, ūi</i> 2. <i>to be vigorous.</i>	<i>vis, (gen. and dat. wanting ; plur. vires, ium), f. power, force, multitude.</i>	<i>volvo, vi, ūtum</i> 3. <i>to roll.</i>
<i>vigil, ilis, m. watchman.</i>	<i>viscus, ēris, n. (commonly plur.) inwards.</i>	<i>vovēo, vovi, votum</i> 2. <i>to vow.</i>
<i>vigilantiā, ae, f. watchfulness.</i>	<i>visum, i, n. appearance.</i>	<i>vox, vocis, f. voice.</i>
<i>vigilia, ae, f. watch, night-watch.</i>	<i>Visurgis, is, m. the Weser.</i>	<i>Vulcānus, i, m. Vulcan.</i>
<i>vigilo</i> 1. <i>to watch.</i>	<i>vita, ae, f. life.</i>	<i>vulgāris, e, common.</i>
<i>vigor, ōris, m. power.</i>	<i>vitiositas, ātis, f. vice, viciousness.</i>	<i>vulgus, i, n. people, the common people.</i>
<i>vincio, nxi, nctum</i> 4. <i>to bind, restrain.</i>	<i>vitiosus</i> 3. <i>defective.</i>	<i>vulnēro</i> 1. <i>to wound.</i>
<i>vinco, vici, victum</i> 3. <i>to conquer, vanquish, overcome.</i>	<i>vitium, i, n. fault, vice.</i>	<i>vulnus, ēris, n. wound.</i>
<i>vinculum, i, n. bond, chain.</i>	<i>vito</i> 1. <i>to avoid.</i>	<i>vulpes, is, f. fox.</i>
<i>vinēa, a vine.</i>	<i>vitulinus</i> 3. <i>of calf.</i>	<i>vultur, ūris, m. vulture.</i>
<i>vinum, i, n. wine.</i>	<i>vitulus, i, m. calf.</i>	<i>vultus, ūs, m. expression, feature, countenance.</i>
<i>violō</i> 1. <i>to violate.</i>	<i>vitupēro</i> 1. <i>to censure.</i>	
<i>vir, viri, m. man.</i>	<i>vivo, vixi, victum</i> 3. <i>to live.</i>	X.
<i>virēo, ūi</i> 2. <i>to flourish.</i>	<i>vivus</i> 3. <i>living.</i>	<i>Xenōphon, ontis, m. Xenophon.</i>
<i>Virgilius, i, m. Virgil.</i>	<i>vix, adv. scarcely.</i>	<i>Xerxes, is, m. Xerxes.</i>
<i>virgo, inis, f. virgin.</i>	<i>voco</i> 1. <i>to call, invite.</i>	
<i>viridis, e, green.</i>	<i>volito</i> 1. <i>to fly, flutter.</i>	Z.
<i>viritim, man by man.</i>	<i>volo</i> 1. <i>to fly.</i>	<i>Zama, ae, f. Zama.</i>
<i>virtus, ūtis, f. virtue, bravery.</i>	<i>volo, volui, velle, to wish (would).</i>	<i>Zeno, ōnis, m. Zeno.</i>
	<i>volūcris, is, f. bird.</i>	<i>zingiber, ēris, n. ginger.</i>
	<i>voluntas, ātis, f. will.</i>	

## II. ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.	<i>Abroad, perēgre.</i>	<i>Accounted (to be), existimāri, habēri.</i>
<i>Abate, mollire.</i>	<i>Absent, absens, tis.</i>	<i>Accustomed (to be), solēre, consuescere.</i>
<i>Ability, facultas, ātis, f.</i>	<i>Absent (to be), abesse.</i>	<i>Acknowledge, confitēri, fatēri ; — freely, profitūri.</i>
<i>Able (to be), posse, quire, valēre ; not able, nequire.</i>	<i>Absolve, absolvēre.</i>	<i>Acorn, glāns, dis, f.</i>
<i>Abode, domicilium, i, n.</i>	<i>Abstain, abstīnere.</i>	<i>Acquainted with, peritus</i>
<i>Abound, abundāre.</i>	<i>Abundance, abundantia, ae, f. copia, ae, f ; to have — abundare</i>	<i>3. consultus 3. gnarus 3. c. gen.</i>
<i>Abounding in, locuples, etis.</i>	<i>c. abl.</i>	<i>Acquainted with (to be),</i>
<i>About, circiter.</i>	<i>Accompany, comitāri.</i>	
<i>Above, supērus.</i>	<i>Accomplished, eruditus 3.</i>	

- novisse [§ 77, 3] ;  
 — thoroughly, per-  
 noscere.  
*Acquire*, parāre, compā-  
 rāre (sibi).  
*Acre*, jugerum, i, n.  
*Act*, agere.  
*Actor*, histriō, ōnis, m.  
*Acute*, acūtus 3. subti-  
 lis, e.  
*Adapted*, accommodā-  
 tus 3. c. dat. or *ad* c.  
 acc.  
*Add*, addere.  
*Address*, allōqui.  
*Adherbal*, Adherbal, ālis,  
 m.  
*Admirable*, admirabilis, e.  
*Admiration*, admiratio,  
 ōnis, f.  
*Admire*, admirāri.  
*Admonish*, mōnere, ad-  
 mōnere.  
*Admonition*, admonitio,  
 ōnis, f.  
*Adopt*, adsciscere.  
*Adorn*, ornāre, adornare,  
 ornare.  
*Advantage*, lucrum, i,  
 n. commōdum, i, n.  
 emolumentum, i, n.  
 fructus, ūs, m.  
*Adversity*, res adversae.  
*Advise*, suadere.  
*Æduan*, Ædūs, i, m.  
*Æmilius*, Æmilius, i, m.  
*Æneas*, Ænēas, ae, m.  
*Affair*, res, rei, f.  
*Affected*, affectus 3.  
*Affirm*, aio.  
*Afford*, praeberē.  
*Africa*, Africa, f.  
*After that*, postquam, c.  
 ind. perf.  
*Against* (prep.), adver-  
 sus.  
*Age*, aetas, ātis, f. [m.  
*Agesilaus*, Agesilaus, i, *Agree to* (on condition),  
 pangere.  
*Agreeable*, gratus 3. ju-  
 cundus 3. suavis, e.  
*Agricola*, Agricola, ae,  
 m.  
*Agriculture*, agricultūra,  
 ae, f.  
*Aid*, auxilium, i, n. prae-  
 sidium, i, n.  
*Aid*, adjuvare c. acc.  
 succurere c. dat.; to  
 lend aid, opitulāri.  
*Alas!* vae!  
*Alcibiades*, Alcibiādes,  
 is, m.  
*Alexander*, Alexander,  
 dri, m.  
*Alexandria*, Alexandria,  
 ae, f.  
*All*, omnes, ia.  
*Alliance*, societas, ātis,  
 f. foedus, ēris, n.  
*Allobroges*, Allobrōges,  
 um, m.  
*Allow*, jubere.  
*Ally*, socius, i, m.  
*Almost*, fere, ferme, pe-  
 ne, prope.  
*Aloe*, aloē, es, f.  
*Alone*, solus 3. unus 3.  
*Alps*, Alpes, ium, f.  
*Already*, jam.  
*Also*, etiam, quoque.  
*Although*, quamvis.  
*Always*, semper.  
*Amazon*, Amāzon, ōnis, f.  
*Ambassador*, legātus, i, m.  
*Ambuscade*, insidiae, a-  
 rum, f.  
*Amiable*, amabilis, e.  
*Ample*, amplus 3.  
*Anaxagoras*, Anaxagō-  
 ras, ae, m.  
*Ancestors*, majores, um.  
*Ancient*, antiquus 3. ve-  
 tus, ēris, priscus 3.  
*Anciently*, antiquitus. *Ancus Martius*, Ancus  
 Martius, i, m.  
*And*, et, ac, atque, que.  
*And not*, neque (nec).  
*Anger*, ira, ae, f. iracun-  
 dia, ae, f.  
*Angry*, irātus 3.  
*Announce*, annuntiāre.  
*Annoy*, vexare.  
*Announcement*, oracū-  
 lum, i, n.  
*Another* (of several), a-  
 lius, a, ud.  
*Another*, aliēnus 3.  
*Answer*, respondere.  
*Antiochus*, Antiōchus,  
 i, m.  
*Antiquity* (= ancient-  
 ness), vetustas, ātis, f.  
*Anvil*, incus, ūdis, f.  
*Anxious* (am), curae,  
 mihi est.  
*Anxiously*, anxie.  
*Any*, ullus 3.  
*Ape*, simia, ae, f.  
*Apollo*, Apollo, īnis, m.  
*Appear*, apparere, vi-  
 deri.  
*Appease*, placare.  
*Applaud*, applaudere, c.  
 dat.  
*Apple*, malum, i, n.  
*Apple-tree*, malus, i, f.  
*Apply one's self to some-*  
*thing*, incumbere in  
 or *ad* aliquid.  
*Apprehend*, vereri, me-  
 tuere.  
*Apprehension*, metus, us,  
 m.  
*Approach*, appropin-  
 quare, adventare.  
*Approach*, aditus, ūs, m.  
*Approbation*, approbā-  
 tio, ōnis, f.  
*Approve*, approbare,  
 probare.  
*Arch*, fornix, icis, m.

- Archimedes*, Archimēdes, is, *m.* aliquo), interrogāre, *Await*, opperiri.  
*Ardea*, Ardea, ae, *f.* rogare (aliquem). *Axe*, secūris, is, *f.*  
*Ardor*, ardor, ōris, *m.* *Ass*, asīnus, i, *m.* *Axle*, axis, is, *m.*  
*Ariovistus*, Ariovistus, i, *m.* *Assassin*, sicariūs, i, *m.*  
*Arise*, surgere, cooriri, *Assault*, oppugnāre.  
*Aristides*, Aristides, is, *m.* *Assend*, convōcāre, *B.*  
*Aristotle*, Aristotēles, is, *m.* *Assend*, congrēgāre, confl- *Babylon*, Babylōn, ōnis, *f.* [3.  
*Arms*, arma, ōrum, *n.* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *Babylonian*, Babylonius  
*Army*, exercitus, ūs, *m.* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *Bad*, mālus 3.  
*Arpinum*, Arpinum, i, *n.* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *Badge*, insignē, is, *n.*  
*Arpinum* (of), *subst.* Ar- *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *Bake*, torrere.  
*pinas*, ātis, *m.* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *Band*, agmen, īnis, *n.*  
*Artist*, artifex, īcis, *m.* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *manus*, ūs, *f.*  
*& f.* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *Banisher*, expultrix, *[ae, f.*  
*Arrange* (line of battle), *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *icis, f.* *Bank* (of a river), ripa,  
*aciem instruere.* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *Bargain* (to make), pa-  
*Arrival*, adventus, ūs, *m.* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *cisci.*  
*Arrogance*, arrogantia, *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *Bargain*, pangere.  
*ae, f.* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *Base*, foedus 3. turpis,  
*Arrow*, sagitta, ae, *f.* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *e, sordidus, a, um.*  
*Art*, ars, tis, *f.* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *Basely*, foede.  
*Artaxerxes*, Artaxerxes, *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *Battle*, pugna, ae *f.*  
*is, m.* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *proelium, i, n.*  
*Artificer*, artifex, īcis, *m.* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *Be*, esse ; — *in some-*  
*and f.* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *thing*, versari in ali-  
*As*, ut, quum, velut, *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *qua re ; — present,*  
*quomodo, quemad-* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *adesse, interesse ;*  
*mōdum, ac (atque).* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *— wanting, desse,*  
*As if*, quasi, ac si, tan- *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *deficere.*  
*quam.* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *Bear*, portāre, gestāre,  
*As often as*, quoties, *m.* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *ferre ; — off, repor-*  
*As soon as*, ubi, atque, *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *tāre.*  
*[§ 110, 2)]* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *Beard*, barba, ae, *f.*  
*As well—as (also), et—* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *Beast*, bestia, ae, *f.*  
*et.* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *Beat*, ferire.  
*Ascend*, ascendere. *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *Beautiful*, pulcher, chra,  
*Ascertain*, experiri, res- *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *chrum.*  
*ciscere, compere.* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *Beauty*, pulchritudo,  
*Ashes*, cinis, ēris, *m.* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *īnis, f.*  
*Asia*, Asia, ae, *f.* *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *Beautifully*, pulchre.  
*Ask*, quaerere (ex, ab, *Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *Because*, quia, quod,  
*Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *quoniam.*  
*Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *Become*, fieri, evadere ;  
*Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *— it becomes, de-*  
*Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *cet ; — it does not*  
*Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *become, dedecet. (§*  
*Assend*, cōgrēgāre, confl- *89, 2).*

- Becoming*, decōrus 3. *Bitter*, amārus, 3. acer-  
*Before*, ante, prius, an- bus 3.  
 tea, antequam, prius-  
 quam; — *that*, an-  
 tequam, priusquam.  
*Beget*, gignere. *f.*  
*Begin*, incipere, ordiri,  
 exordiri.  
*Begun* (to have), cepis-  
 se.  
*Beginning*, initium,  
 principium, i, n.  
*Beggar*, mendicus, i, m.  
*Behold*, adspicere, tueri,  
 spectare.  
*Belief*, opinio, ōnis, *f.*  
*Believe*, credere, putare.  
*Bellows*, follis, is, m.  
*Belly*, alvus, i, *f.*  
*Belong to some one*, es-  
 se alicujus (§ 88, 7).  
*Bend*, flectere.  
*Benefit*, utilitas, ātis, *f.*  
*Benefit*, prodesse.  
*Beset*, circumſedere.  
*Besides*, porro.  
*Besiege*, obsidere, cir-  
 cumsidere.  
*Besmeared*, oblinere.  
*Bestow*, largiri, adhibere,  
 praestare; —  
*upon*, collocare in c.  
 abl.  
*Betake one's self*, se con-  
 ferre; — *back*, se  
 recipere.  
*Betraying*, proditio,  
 ōnis, *f.*  
*Bid*, jubere.  
*Bind*, vincire.  
*Binding* (to make), ad-  
 stringere.  
*Bird*, avis, is, *f.*  
*Birds of passage*, volū-  
 cres adventitiae.  
*Birthday*, natalis, is, m.  
*Bite*, mordere.  
*Bithynia*, Bithynia, ae, *f.*
- Bitter*, amārus, 3. acer-  
 bus 3.  
*Black*, niger, gra, grum.  
*Blind*, coecus 3.  
*Blockade*, obsidēo, ōnis,  
*f.*  
*Blood*, sangūis, īnis, m.  
*Bloody*, atrox, ōcis.  
*Bloom*, florere.  
*Blooming*, florens, tis.  
*Blows*, verbera, n.  
*Boar*, aper, pri, m; —  
*wild*, aper, pri, m.  
*Boat*, linter, tris, *f.*  
*Body*, corpus, ōris, n.  
*Bodily powers*, corpōris  
 vires.  
*Boeotian* (s.), Boeotus, i,  
 m.  
*Bold*, audax, ācis.  
*Boldness*, audacia, ae, *f.*  
*Bolt*, vectis, is, m.  
*Bone*, os, ossis, n.  
*Book*, libēr, bri, m., co-  
 dex, icis, m.  
*Booty*, praeda, ae, *f.*  
*Border*, finis, is, m.  
*Born* (to be), nasci.  
*Born*, natus 3.  
*Both—and*, et—et.  
*Bow*, arcus, ūs, m.  
*Boy*, puer, ěri, m.  
*Bracelet*, spinther, ěris,  
 n.  
*Bramble*, sentis, is, m.  
 vepres, is, m.  
*Brand*, notare.  
*Brass*, aes, aeris, n.  
*Brave*, fortis, e.  
*Bravely*, fortiter.  
*Bravery*, fortitudo, īnis,  
*f.* virtus, ūtis, *f.*  
*Bread*, panis, is, m.  
*Break down* (= over-  
 come), frangere.  
*Break down*, rescindere;  
 — *furth*, erumpere,  
 re, cooriri; — *in*,
- irrumpere; —  
*break out afresh*, den-  
 ūo erumpere; —  
*through*, perrumpere.  
*Breakfast*, prandere.  
*Breast*, pectus, ōris, n.  
*Bridge*, pons, tis, m.  
*Bright* (= clear), serē-  
 nus 3.  
*Bring*, ferre, arcessere;  
 — *about*, efficere;  
 — *forward*, affer-  
 re; — *up*, edū-  
 care.  
*Bring war upon some  
 one*, bellum inferre,  
 alicui.  
*Britain*, Britania, ae, *f.*  
*Broad*, latus 3.  
*Brother*, frater, tris, m.  
*Brutus*, Brutus, i, m.  
*Build*, aedificare.  
*Building*, aedificium,  
 i, n.  
*Bundle*, fascis, is, m.  
*Burn*, ardere, flagrare;  
 — *up*, deflagrare,  
 comburere.  
*Bushel*, modius, i, m.  
*Busily*, sedulo.  
*Business*, negotium, i, n.  
*Business, it is the busi-  
 ness of some one*, est,  
 alicujus.  
*Busy*, sedulus 3.  
*But*, autem, sed, at (§  
 101. R.).  
*But if*, sin.  
*Butter*, butyrum, i, n.  
*Butterfly*, papilio, ōnis,  
 m.
- C.
- Cabbage*, crambe, es, *f.*  
 caulis, is, m.  
*Caesar*, Caesar, āris, m.  
*Call*, appellare, vocare,  
 nominare, dicere;

- *to mind*, recor-  
dāri c. acc. and gen. ;  
— *together*, con-  
vocāre.  
*Called* (to be), vocāri,  
nomināri, appellāri.  
[§ 84. c)].  
*Callisthenes*, Callisthē-  
nes, is, m.  
*Camel*, camēlus, i, m.  
*Camillus*, Camillus, i, m.  
*Camp*, castra, pl.  
*Can*, posse, quīre.  
*Cannot*, nequīre.  
*Canal*, canālis, is, m.  
*Capital punishment*, sup-  
plicium, i, n.  
*Capitol*, Capitoliū, i, n.  
*Caprice*, libīdo, inis, f.  
arbitrium, i, n.  
*Captive* (to take), capēre.  
*Capture*, expugnāre.  
*Care*, cura, ae, f.  
*Care*, take care, curāre,  
cavēre.  
*Careful*, diligens, tis.  
*Carefully*, diligenter.  
*Carefulness*, diligentia,  
ae, f.  
*Caria*, Caria, ae, f.  
*Carpenter*, faber ligna-  
rius.  
*Carrot*, siser, ēris, n.  
*Carry*, portāre, ferre ;  
— *on*, gerere ; —  
*over*, trajicere ; —  
*forth*, efferre.  
*Carthage*, Carthāgo,  
inis, f.  
*Carthaginian*, Cartha-  
giniensis, is, m.  
*Cassius*, Cassius, i, m.  
*Catch*, capēre, depren-  
dere.  
*Catiline*, Catilina, ae, m.  
*Cato*, Cato, ōnis, m.  
*Cause*, causa, ae, f.  
*Cause* (to do some-  
thing), curāre with  
gerundive.  
*Cautious*, cautus 3.  
*Cease*, desinere, desis-  
tere.  
*Celebrate*, celebrāre.  
*Censure*, vituperatio,  
ōnis, f.  
*Censure*, vitupērāre.  
*Cerberus*, Cerbērus, i, m.  
*Ceres*, Ceres, ēris, f.  
*Certain*, certus 3.  
*Chabrias*, Chabrias, ae,  
m.  
*Chain*, vinculum, i, n.  
*Chain*, vincire.  
*Chalcis*, Chalcis, idis, f.  
*Chance*, casus, us, m ;  
by chance, fortuito.  
*Change*, vicis, is, f.  
*Change*, mutāre.  
*Character*, mores, um,  
m.  
*Charge one with some-  
thing*, insimulāre ali-  
quem alicujus rei.  
*Charles*, Carōlus, i, m.  
*Chatter*, garrire.  
*Check*, compesci.  
*Cheer*, exhilarāre, del-  
ectāre.  
*Cheerfully*, hilariter, se-  
rēne.  
*Cheese*, casēus, i, m.  
*Cherish*, fovēre.  
*Cherry*, cerāsum, i, n.  
*Cherry-tree*, cerāsus, i, f.  
*Chicken*, pullus, i, m.  
*Chick-pea*, cicer, ēris,  
n.  
*Chief-city*, caput, itis, n.  
*Childish*, puerilis, e.  
*Children* (in reference  
to their parents), li-  
bēri, ōrum, m. ; —  
(without such ref-  
erence), — puēri,  
m.  
*Choice*, voluntas, atis, f.  
*Choose*, eligere, creāre ;  
— *rather*, malle.  
*Christ*, Christus, i, m.  
*Church*, ecclesia, ae, f.  
*Chrysogonus*, Chryso-  
gōnus, i, m.  
*Cicero*, Cicēro, ōnis, m.  
*Cimon*, Cimo, ōnis, m.  
*Cinna*, Cinna, ae, m.  
*Circe*, Circe, es, f.  
*Circle*, orbis, is, m.  
*Circle of the earth*, orbis  
terrārum.  
*Circuit*, circuitus, ūs, m.  
*Citadel*, arx, cis, f.  
*Citizen*, civis, is, c.  
*Citizenship*, civitas, atis,  
f.  
*City*, urbs, bis, f.  
*Civil*, civilis, e.  
*Civil war*, bellum civile.  
*Class*, classis, is, f.  
*Claw*, ungūis, is, m.  
*Clear*, limpīdus, 3.  
*Clear* (not cloudy), se-  
rēnus, 3.  
*Cleomenes*, Cleomēnes,  
is, m.  
*Cleopatra*, Cleopātra,  
ae, f.  
*Cliff*, rupes, is, f.  
*Clitus*, Clitus, i, m.  
*Clodius*, Clodius, i, m.  
*Close*, claudere.  
*Clothe*, vestire.  
*Cloud*, nubes, is, f.  
*Club*, fustis, is, m.  
*Coalesce*, coalescere.  
*Coelius*, Coelius, i, m.  
*Coin*, procudere.  
*Colchis*, Colchis, idis, f.  
*Cold*, frigidus, 3.  
*Cold* (s.), frigus ōris, n.  
*Collect*, colligere.  
*Colony*, colonia, ae, f.  
*Color*, color, ōris, m.  
*Comb*, pecten, inis, m.

- Come*, vĕnire ; *desire to come*, accĭre ; — *dem habĕre*.  
*out*, evadĕre, fugĕre, effugĕre ; — *to*, advenĭre ; — *together*, convenire ; — *to pass*, fiĕri, incidĕre.  
*Command*, imperāre c. dat.  
*Commence*, aggrĕdi, auspĭcāri.  
*Commit*, committĕre ; — *to*, committĕre.  
*Common*, comunĭnis, e.  
*Companion*, socius, i. m.  
*Compare*, comparāre, conferre.  
*Compel*, cogĕre.  
*Complain*, queri ; — *of*, accusāre.  
*Complain* (= weep), ejulāre.  
*Comply with*, obsĕqui.  
*Composed*, compositus, 3.  
*Composition*, confectio, ōnis, f.  
*Conceal*, occultāre, oc-culāre, celāre c. dupl. acc. [§ 91. 5.6]).  
*Concealed*, occultus 3.  
*Concede*, concĕdĕre.  
*Concern*, cura, ae, f.  
*Conclude* (of a league), icĕre.  
*Condemn*, damnāre, condemnāre ; — *to death*, capitĭs.  
*Condescending*, submis-sus 3.  
*Condition*, conditio, ōnis, f.  
*Conduce to something, for some one*, esse c. dupl. dat. [§ 90. 4. a)].  
*Confer*, conferre.  
*Confess*, confitĕri.
- Confidence* (to have), fi-dem habĕre.  
*Confidently*, audacter.  
*Confirm*, confirmāre.  
*Conflagration*, incendi-um, i. n.  
*Confused*, dissōnus 3.  
*Confusion*, confusio, ōnis, f.  
*Confusion* (to throw in-to), pertubāre.  
*Connect*, connectĕre.  
*Conqueror*, victor, ōris, m.  
*Conscience*, conscientia, ae, f. ; *a good con-science*, conscientia recta.  
*Conscious*, conscius 3.  
*Consciousness*, consci-entia, ae, f.  
*Consider*, intuĕri, pervi-dĕre, reputāre.  
*Consider as*, existimāre, habĕre, judicāre, ar-bitrāri, ducĕre c. dupl. acc. [§ 89. 5. a)].  
*Consolation*, solatĭum, i, n. consolatio, ōnis, f.  
*Consort*, uxor, ōris, f.  
*Conspiracy*, conjuratio, ōnis, f. [i, m.  
*Conspirator*, conjurātus,  
*Constitute*, constitūĕre.  
*Consul*, consul, ūlis, m.  
*Consult*, consultāre.  
*Consume*, absūmĕre, ex-ĕdĕre, comĕdĕre.  
*Contempt*, contemptio, ōnis, f.  
*Contend*, certāre, de-certāre.  
*Contented*, contentus 3.  
*Continue*, perĝĕre.  
*Continuous*, continūus 3.
- Contracted*, angustus 3.  
*Contrary* (on the), con-tra.  
*Conversation*, sermo, ōnis, m.  
*Convict*, convincĕre.  
*Convince*, persuadĕre c. dat.  
*Corinth*, Corinthus, i, f.  
*Corinthian*, Corinthius 3.  
*Cork-tree*, suber, ĕris, n.  
*Corn* (a), granum, i, n.  
*Cornelius Nepos*, Cor-nelius (i) Nepos (ōtis), m.  
*Corn-fan*, vannus, i, f.  
*Corpse*, cadāver, ĕris, n.  
*Correct*, corrĭĝĕre.  
*Correctly*, recte.  
*Corrode*, exĕdĕre.  
*Corrupt*, corrupĕre.  
*Cost*, stāre, constāre.  
*Costly*, pretiōsus 3.  
*Cover*, tegĕre ; — *up*, obruĕre.  
*Covetous*, avārus 3.  
*Cough*, tussis, is, f.  
*Counsel*, consilium, i, n.  
*Countenance*, ōs, ōris, n. vultus, ūs, m.  
*Country*, terra, ae, f. re-gio, ōnis, f. rus, ru-ris, n. ager, gri, m.  
*Countryman*, rusticus, i, m.  
*Courage*, animus, i, m.  
*Courageously*, aequo animo.  
*Course*, cursus, ūs, m.  
*Cow*, vacca, ae, f. bos, bovis, c.  
*Cowardice*, ignavia, ae, f.  
*Cowardly*, ignāvus 3.  
*Crassus*, Crassus, i, m.  
*Creak*, crepāre.  
*Create*, creāre.  
*Creator*, creātor, ōris, m.

- Crime*, scelus, ēris, *n.* *Day*, dies, ēi, *m.*; *by day*, interdiu.  
*Croak*, coaxāre.  
*Croesus*, Croesus, *i. m.* *Dead body*, cadāver, ēris, *n.*  
*Crop*, messis, *is, f.* *Dear*, carus 3.; *to hold dear*, carum habere.  
*Croton*, Croto, ōnis, *m.* *Death*, mors, *tis, f.*  
*Crow*, corvus, *i, m.* *Decay*, interire, occidēre.  
*Cruel*, saevus 3. *immanis, e.* *Deceive*, fallere, deludēre.  
*Cruelty*, crudelitas, ātis, *f.* *December*, December, *bris, m.*  
*Crush*, contundere.  
*Cry*, clamare.  
*Cry* (plaintive), querela, *ae, f.* *Decrease*, decrescere.  
*Cucumber*, cucumis, ēris, *m.* *Dedicate*, dedicare.  
*Cultivate*, colere, excolere.  
*Cultivation*, culture, cultus, ūs, *m.* *Deed*, factum, *i, n.*  
*Cunning*, astutia, *ae, f.* *Deep*, altus 3.  
*Cup*, calix, icis, *m.* *Defend*, defendere.  
*Curb*, continere, compescere, perdōmare.  
*Cure*, curatio, ōnis, *f.* *Delay*, cunctari.  
*Cure*, sanare *c. acc.*; mederi *c. dat.* *Deliberate*, deliberare, consultare.  
*Curius*, Curius, *i, m.* *Deliberately*, consulto.  
*Custom*, mos, ōris, *m.* *Delicate*, tenuis, *e.*  
*Customary*, usitatus 3. *Delight*, oblectamentum, *i, n.*  
*Cut off*, resēcāre, desēcāre.  
*Cyrus*, Cyrus, *i, m.* *Delight*, delectare, oblectare, permulcere.  
*D.* *Delight* (with), libenter.  
*Dagger*, sica, *ae, f.* *Delightful*, jucundus 3.  
*Daily*, quotidie.  
*Dance*, saltare.  
*Danger*, periculum, *i, n.* *Delightfully*, suaviter.  
*Dare*, audere.  
*Darius*, Darius, *i, m.* *Deliver from something*, liberare aliqua re, levare *c. abl.*; — *up*, tradere.  
*Darkness*, caligo, inis, *f.* *Delphi*, Delphi, orum, *m.*  
*Dart*, telum, *i, n.* *Demand*, postulare, poscere, deposcere;  
*Datamas*, Datāmas, *antis, m.* — *back*, reposcere;  
*Daughter*, filia, *ae, f.* *Demaratus*, Demarātus, *i, m.*  
*Dawn*, illucescere. *Demolish*, evertere.  
*Demosthenes*, Demosthenes, *is, m.*  
*Dense*, densus 3. *Deny*, negare.  
*Deplore*, deplorare.
- Deprive*, privare, spoliare *c. abl.*  
*Deride*, deridere, irridere.  
*Descend*, descendere.  
*Descendant*, prōles, *is, f.*  
*Desert*, desērere, relinquere.  
*Desert*, meritum, *i, n.*  
*Deserve*, mereri, dignum esse; — *of something*, mereri de aliqua re.  
*Designedly*, consulto.  
*Desire*, cupido, inis, *f.*, cupiditas, ātis, *f.*, appetitus, *us, m.*, ardor, ōris, *m.*; — *unrestrained*, libido, inis, *f.*  
*Desire*, concupiscere, cupere. [pidus 3.  
*Desirous*, avidus 3. *Despair*, desperare.  
*Despise*, contemnere.  
*Destitute*, inops, ōpis; — *of*, expers, rtis, exsors, rtis, *c. gen.*  
*Destroy*, delere, destrūere, dirūere, evertere, excidere.  
*Destruction*, exitium, *i, n.* *perniciēs, ēi, f.*  
*Destructive*, perniciosus 3.  
*Detect*, detegere.  
*Deter*, deterrere, absterere.  
*Determine*, constitūere, decernere.  
*Detraction*, obrectatio, ōnis, *f.*  
*Deviate*, deflectere.  
*Devote one's self*, se dedere.  
*Devour*, devorare.  
*Dialect*, dialectus, *i, f.*  
*Diamond*, adāmas, *antis, m.*

<i>Diana</i> , Diāna, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Dismiss</i> , dimittēre.	haurire; ——— forth,
<i>Dictator</i> , dictātor, ōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>Disparage</i> , obrectāre c. dat.	elicere; ——— together, contrahere.
<i>Die</i> , mori, obire.	<i>Dispel</i> , discūtēre, abstergere.	<i>Dream</i> , somnium, i, <i>n.</i>
<i>Dionysius</i> , Dionysius, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Disperse</i> , dispergere.	<i>Dress</i> , vestire.
<i>Different</i> , diversus 3.	<i>Displease</i> , displicere.	<i>Drink</i> , potus, ūs, <i>m.</i>
<i>Difficult</i> , difficilis, e, gravis, e. arduus 3.	<i>Disprove</i> , redarguere.	<i>Drink</i> , bibere.
<i>Difficulty</i> , difficultas, ātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>Disputation</i> , disputatio, ōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>Drive back</i> , propulsare.
<i>Difficulty</i> , with difficulty, difficiliter.	<i>Disquiet</i> , exagitare.	<i>Drive off</i> , explodere.
<i>Diffuse</i> , diffundere.	<i>Dissatisfied</i> (to be) with something, indignari c. acc.; <i>I am dissatisfied with something</i> , poenitet me alicujus rei.	<i>Drunken</i> , ebrus 3.
<i>Dig</i> , defodere; ——— out or up, effodere, erūere.	<i>Dissent</i> , dissentire.	<i>Duck</i> , anas, ātis, <i>f.</i>
<i>Dignity</i> , dignitas, ātis, <i>f.</i> amplitudo, inis, <i>f.</i> gravitas, ātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>Dissolve</i> , dissolvere.	<i>Duty</i> , officium, i, <i>n.</i> munus eris, <i>n.</i> ; it is the duty of some one, alicujus est.
<i>Diligence</i> , diligentia, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Dissuade</i> , dissuadere.	<i>Dwell</i> , habitare.
<i>Diligent</i> , diligens, tis, industrius 3.	<i>Distaff</i> , colus, i, <i>f.</i>	E.
<i>Diligently</i> , diligenter.	<i>Distinction</i> , discrimen, inis, <i>n.</i>	<i>Each</i> , omnis, e, quisque.
<i>Diminish</i> , deminuire, comminuire, minuire.	<i>Distinguish</i> , dijudicare, distinguere.	<i>Each of two</i> , uterque, utraque, utrumque.
<i>Diphthong</i> , diphthongus, i, <i>f.</i>	<i>Distribute</i> , distribuere, dispertire, dividere c. dat.	<i>Eager</i> , avidus 3.
<i>Disadvantage</i> , incommodum, i, <i>n.</i> damnum, i, <i>n.</i>	<i>Distrust</i> , diffidere.	<i>Eagerly</i> , avide, cupide.
<i>Disagreeable</i> , injucundus 3. ingratus 3. insuavis, e.	<i>Disturb</i> , turbare, sollicitare.	<i>Eagle</i> , aquila, ae, <i>f.</i>
<i>Discharge</i> , fungi.	<i>Disturbance</i> , perturbatio, ōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>Ear</i> , auris, is, <i>f.</i>
<i>Discipline</i> , disciplina, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Divine</i> , divinus 3.	<i>Early</i> , maturus 3; too early, praematurus 3.
<i>Discord</i> , discordia, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Do</i> , agere, facere.	<i>Early</i> (adv.), mature.
<i>Discover</i> , prospicere.	<i>Dog</i> , canis, is, <i>c.</i>	<i>Earth</i> , terra, ae, <i>f.</i> tellus, ūris, <i>f.</i> humus, i, <i>f.</i>
<i>Discourse</i> , loqui.	<i>Dollar</i> , thalerus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Earthly</i> , terrestres, e.
<i>Discourse</i> , oratio, ōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>Domestic</i> , domesticus 3.	<i>Earthquake</i> , terrae motus.
<i>Disease</i> , morbus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>Dominion</i> , dominatio, ōnis, <i>f.</i> imperium, i, <i>n.</i>	<i>Easily</i> , facile.
<i>Dishonorable</i> , inhonestus 3.	<i>Door</i> , fores, pl. <i>f.</i>	<i>Easy</i> , facilis, e.
	<i>Doubt</i> , dubitare.	<i>East</i> , oriens, ntis, <i>m.</i>
	<i>Doubtful</i> , dubius 3. anceps, cipitis.	<i>Eat</i> , edere, vesci; ——— down, depascere.
	<i>Dowry</i> , dos, dotis, <i>f.</i>	<i>Echo</i> , echo, ūs, <i>f.</i>
	<i>Draught</i> , potus, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>Edifice</i> , aedificium, i, <i>n.</i>
	<i>Draw</i> , trahere, ducere,	<i>Effect</i> , efficere, creare.
		<i>Effectual</i> , efficax, acis.
		<i>Effeminate</i> , effeminatus 3.
		<i>Effort</i> , studium, i, <i>n.</i>
		<i>Either</i> —or, aut—aut, vel—vel.
		<i>Elbe</i> , Albis, is, <i>m.</i>



- Elect*, eligere, deligere. *Enter upon*, ingredi. *Ever*, unquam.  
*Elegant*, eligans, tis. *Enticement*, illecēbra, *Every*, omnis, e, (§ 94.  
*Elegantly*, eleganter. ae, f. 11).  
*Elephant*, elephāntus, *Entreat*, rogāre, precā- *Evidently*, plane.  
i, m. ri, petere (ab aliquo). *Evil*, mālus 3.  
*Elicit*, elicere. *Entreaty* (to obtain *Evil* (s.), mālum.  
*Elm*, ulmus, i, f. by), exorāre. *Evil-doer*, maleficus, i,  
*Eloquence*, eloquentia, *Envy*, invidia, ae, f. m.  
ae, f. *Epaminondas*, Epami- *Examine*, exquirere.  
*Eloquent*, disertus 3. nondas, ae, m. *Example*, exemplum, i,  
*Embrace*, amplecti, n.  
complecti. *Ephesian*, Ephesius, 3. *Excel*, excellere.  
*Embroider*, acu pingere. *Ephesus*, Ephesus, i, f. *Excellence*, praestantia,  
*Eminent* (to be), emi- *Epicurus*, Epicurus, i, ae, f.  
nere. m. *Excellent*, praestabilis,  
*Emit*, evomere. *Epirus*, Epirus, i, f. e, eximius 3. prae-  
*Emotion*, perturbatio stans, tis.  
ōnis, f. *Equal*, aequalis, e, par, *Excite*, excitare, exciē-  
*Emperor*, imperator, ō- re and excire.  
vis, m. *Equally*, aequē. *Exercise*, exercitatio, ō-  
*Emulate*, aemulāri. *Equanimity*, aequus an- nis, f.  
*Encompass*, cingere. imus. *Exercise*, exercere.  
*Encounter*, proelium, i, *Ere*, antequam, prius- *Exert one's self*, con-  
n. quam. tendere, intendere.  
*Encourage*, hortari, ad- *Erectheus*, Erectheus, *Exertion*, contentio, ō-  
hortari, cohortari. ei, m. nis, f. labor, ōris, m.  
*End*, finis, is, m. *Erect*, aedificare, strū- *Exhaust*, exhaurire;  
*End*, finire. ěre. — *entirely*, enēcā-  
*Endeavor*, studere. *Error*, error, ōris, m. re.  
*Endowed*, praeditus 3. *Escape*, effugere c. acc. *Exhilarate*, exhilarare.  
*Endure*, ferre, tolerare, *Establish*, cavere. *Exhort*, hortari, adhor-  
sustinere, perferre; *Estate*, res familiāris. tārī.  
— (= last), du- *Esteem*, aestimare (mag- *Exist*, esse.  
rāre. ni etc.), diligere. *Expect*, expectare.  
*Enemy*, hostis, is, m. *Estimate*, aestimare, *Expel*, exterminare, ab-  
inimicus, i, m. censere. igere.  
*Enfeeble*, hebitare, di- *Eternal*, aeternus 3. *Experience*, experien-  
lūere, elidere. sempiternus 3. tia, ae, f.  
*Enigma*, aenigma, ātis, *Eternity*, aeternitas, ā- *Explain*, explicare, in-  
n. tis, f. terpretārī.  
*Enjoy*, frui, perfrui c. *Etruria*, Etruria, ae, f. *Explore*, explorare.  
abl. m. *Eumenes*, Eumenes, is, *Expression*, vultus, ūs,  
*Enjoyment*, fructus, ūs, m. m.  
m. *Eurystheus*, Erystheus, *Extend*, tendere.  
*Enough*, sat, satis. ei, m. *Extirpate*, extirpare.  
*Enraged*, irritatus 3. *Europe*, Eurōpa, ae, f. *Extinct* (to become),  
*Enrich*, augere. and ēris, m. extingui.  
*Enter*, intrare. *Even if*, etiam si. *Extinguish*, extinguere,

- Extol*, praedicare.  
*Extracts* (to make from), excerpere.  
*Exult*, laetitîa exultâre,  
*Eye*, oculus, i, m.
- F.
- Fabius*, Fabîus, i, m.  
*Fable*, fabûla, ae, f.  
*Fabricius*, Fabricîus, i, m.  
*Faculty*, facultas, âtis, f.  
*Fail*, deficere.  
*Fair*, pulcher, chra, chrum.  
*Faithful*, fidus 3.  
*Faithless*, perfidus 3.  
*Fall*, labi; — (in war), occidere; — down, procumbere; — to one's lot, contingere, obtingere aliqui.  
*False*, falsus 3.  
*Far*, longe.  
*Fate*, fatium, i, n. fortuna, ae, f.  
*Father*, pater, tris, m.  
*Father-in-law*, socer, eri, m.  
*Fault*, vitium, i, n. peccatum, i, n.  
*Fault* (to commit), peccare.  
*Faustulus*, Faustûlus, i, m.  
*Favor*, beneficium, i, n. benefactum, i, n.  
*Favor* (to do), gratiam facere.  
*Favor*, favere.  
*Favorable* (to be), favore.  
*Fear*, metus, us, m. timor, oris, m. pavor, oris, m.  
*Fear*, timere, vereri, metuere, reformidare.
- Fear exceedingly*, extimescere.  
*Fear* (to put in), perterere.  
*Feel*, sentire.  
*Feeling*, sensus, us, m.  
*Fell*, caedere.  
*Fencer*, gladiator, oris, m.  
*Fetter*, compes, idis, f.  
*Fever*, febris, is, f.  
*Few*, pauci, ae, a, pl.  
*Fidelity*, fides, ei, f.  
*Field*, ager, gri, m.  
*Field-mouse*, sorex, icis, m.  
*Fierce*, saevus 3.  
*Fiery*, igneus 3.  
*Fight*, pugna, ae, f.  
*Fight*, pugnare, dimicare, configere, congradi.  
*Fill*, implere, complere, refecire; — up, explere, opplere.  
*Finally*, denique.  
*Find*, invenire, repere.  
*Find satisfaction in*, acquiescere c. abl. or in c. abl. conquiescere c. abl.  
*Finger*, digitus, i, m.  
*Finish*, finire.  
*Fire*, ignis, is, m.  
*Firm* (to make), confirmare.  
*Firmness*, constantia, ae, f.  
*First*, at first, primum.  
*Fish*, piscis, is, m.  
*Fit*, aptus 3. idoneus 3.  
*Fitted*, aptus 3. idoneus 3.  
*Filly*, apte.  
*Flame*, flamma, ae, f.  
*Flatter*, adulari, blandiri. [oris, m.  
*Flatterer*, assentator,
- Flax*, carbassus, i, f.  
*Flaxen*, flavus 3.  
*Flee*, fugere c. acc.  
*Fleet*, classis, is, f.  
*Fleeting*, fluxus 3.  
*Flesh*, caro, carnis, f.  
*Flight*, fuga, ae, f.  
*Flight* (to put to), fugare.  
*Flock*, grex, gis, m. agmen, inis, n.  
*Flourish*, virere.  
*Flow together*, confluerere.  
*Flower*, flos, floris, m.  
*Fluency of speech*, facundia, ae, f.  
*Fly*, musca, ae, f.  
*Fly*, volare.  
*Follow*, sequi, consequi c. acc.  
*Folly*, stultitia, ae, f.  
*Food*, cibus, i, m.  
*Fool*, stultus, i, m.  
*Foolish*, stultus 3. insipiens, ntis.  
*Foot*, pes, pedis, m.  
*Footman*, soldier, pedes, itis, m.  
*Forbear* (can not), facere non possequin.  
*Forbid*, vetare.  
*Force*, vis, vim, f.  
*Forehead*, frons, ntis, f.  
*For how much?* (with verbs of buying and selling), quanti.  
*Foreign*, alienigena, ae, m. alienus 3.  
*Foresee*, providere.  
*Foresight*, providentia, ae, f.  
*Forget*, oblivisci c. gen. or acc. [gere.  
*Form*, conformare, finire.  
*Former*, pristinus 3; in former times, antiquus.

*Formerly*, quondam.

*Forthwith*, continuo.

*Fortify*, munire.

*Fortuitous*, fortuitus 3.

*Fortunate*, beatus 3. felix, icis, prosper, era, erum.

*Fortunately*, feliciter.

*Fortune*, fortuna, ae, f.

*Fortune* (gifts of), fortunae.

*Foul*, foedus 3. teter, tra, trum; — (= filthy), sordidus 3.

*Foul deed*, flagitium, i, n.

*Found*, condere.

*Foundation*, fundamentum, i, n. [m.]

*Founder*, conditor, oris,

*Fountain*, fons, ntis, m.

*Frail*, fragilis, e.

*Frailty*, fragilitas, atis, f.

*Freedom*, libertas, atis, f.

*Freely*, libere.

*Freeze*, frigere, algere.

*Frenchman*, Francogallus, i, m.

*Frequent*, frequentare.

*Frequented*, celeberris, bre.

*Friend*, amicus, i, m.

*Friendship*, amicitia, ae, f.

*Frighten*, terrere, perterrere.

*Frightful*, horribilis, e. atrox, ocis.

*Frog*, rana, ae, f.

*Fruit*, fructus, us, m.

*Fruitful*, ferax, acis, c. gen.

*Fulfil*, explere.

*Full*, plenus 3.

*Full* (to be), scatere.

*Fulvia*, Fulvia, ae, f.

*Furniture*, suppellex, ectilis, f.

## G.

*Gain*, lucrum, i, n. quaestus, us, m.

*Garden*, hortus, i, m.

*Garland*, corona, ae, f.

*Garment*, vestis, is, f.

*Gate*, porta, ae, f.

*Gaul*, Gallus, i, m.

*Gazelle*, oryx, ygis, m.

*General*, imperator, oris, m., dux, eis, c.

*Generally*, plerumque.

*Genius*, genius, ii, m.

ingenium, i, n.

*Gentle*, placidus 3.

*German*, Germanus, i, m.

*Germany*, Germania, ae, f.

*Get one's self ready*, expedire.

*Giant*, gigas, antis, m.

*Ginger*, zingiber, eris, n.

*Give*, dare, tribuere;

— attention, attendere; — one's self up to, indulgere c. dat.; — way, cedere.

*Glide away*, dilabi, elabi.

*Glory*, gloriari.

*Go*, ire, peregre; — around, circumire;

— back, recedere;

— forth, exire;

— out, excedere;

— to, accedere;

— away, abire.

*Goad*, stimulus, i, m.

*God*, deus, i, m.

*Gold*, aurum, i, n.

*Golden*, aureus 3.

*Good*, bonus 3.

*Good* (s.), bonum, i, n.

*Goodness*, bonitas, atis, f.

*Goose*, anser, eris, m.

*Gordius*, Gordius, i, m.

*Gorgias*, Gorgias, ae, m.

*Govern*, gubernare, moderari.

*Governess*, moderatrix, icis, f.

*Government*, imperium, i, n.

*Governor*, moderator, oris, m. rector, oris, m.

*Grain*, frumentum, i, n.

*Grammar*, grammatica, ae, f.

*Grand-son*, nepos, otis, m.

*Grand-daughter*, nep-

tis, is, f.

*Grand-father*, avus, i, m.

*Grape*, uva, ae, f.

*Grappling-iron*, harpagus, onis, m.

*Gravity*, gravitas, atis, f.

*Great*, magnus 3; — very, ingens, ntis.

*Greatly*, valde, vehementer, admodum.

*Greatness*, magnitudo, inis, f.

*Greece*, Graecia, ae, f.

*Greedy*, avidus 3.

*Greedily*, avide.

*Greek* (s.), Graecus, i, m.

*Greek*, Graecus 3.

*Green*, viridis, e.

*Green* (to be), virere.

*Grief*, moeror, oris, m. luctus, us, m.

*Grieve*, dolere.

*Grotto*, specus, us, m.

*Ground*, solum, i, n.

*Grow*, crescere; — old, consenesce.

*Guard*, custodire; be on one's guard, cavere.

- Guide*, regere.  
*Guilt*, culpa, ae, *f*.  
*Gymnastic*, gymnicus 3.
- H.
- Hadrian*, Hadriānus, i, *m*.  
*Hair*, crinis, is, *m*. capillus, i, *m*.  
*Hairy*, pilosus 3.  
*Half*, dimidium, i, *n*.  
*Halicarnassus*, Halicarnassus, i, *f*.  
*Hand*, manus, ūs, *f*.  
*Hand in hand*, manum conserrere cum aliquo.  
*Hannibal*, Hannibal, ālis, *m*.  
*Happen*, accidere, evenire, cadere; *it happens*, accidit, contingit.  
*Happily*, feliciter.  
*Happy*, felix, icis, beatus 3.  
*Hard*, durus 3.  
*Hardship*, aerumna, ae, *f*.  
*Hare*, lepus, ōris, *m*.  
*Harrow*, occare.  
*Hasten*, accellerare; — *up*, advolare.  
*Hastily*, propere, praepere.  
*Hatch*, excludere.  
*Hate*, odisse, (§ 77. 3).  
*Hated greatly*, perosus 3.  
*Hating greatly*, perosus 3.  
*Hatred*, odium, i, *n*.  
*Have*, habere, esse (§ 90. 3), — *in*, tenere; — *in use*, uti c. abl.; — *one's self*, sese habere.  
*Haven*, portus, ūs, *m*.
- He, she, it*, is, ea, id.  
*Head*, caput, itis, *n*.  
*Health*, valitudo, inis, *f*.  
*Hear*, audire.  
*Heart*, cor, cordis, *n*, animus, i, *m*.  
*Heat*, calor, ōris, *m*.  
*Heaven*, coelum, i, *n*.  
*Heavenly*, coelestis, *e*.  
*Heavy*, gravis, *e*.  
*Hedge around*, sepire.  
*Height*, altitudo, inis, *f*.  
*Heir*, haeres, edis, *c*.  
*Helmet*, cassis, idis, *f*.  
*Helplessness*, inopia, ae, *f*.  
*Hen*, gallina, ae, *f*.  
*Hence*, hinc.  
*Hephaeston*, Hephaestio, ōnis, *m*.  
*Herb*, herba, ae, *f*.  
*Hercules*, Hercules, is, *m*.  
*Herd*, grex, gis, *m*.  
*Hesitate*, dubitare c. inf.  
*Hew*, exasciare.  
*High*, altus 3.; *very high*, praealtus 3.  
*Highest*, summus 3.  
*Hill*, collis, is, *m*.  
*Himself, of himself*, sui, etc.  
*Hindrance*, impedimentum, i, *n*.  
*Hindrance* (to be), obstare, impedimento esse.  
*Hipparchus*, Hipparchus, i, *m*.  
*His, her, its*, suus, ejus. (§ 94. 3—5).  
*Hiss off*, exhibere.
- Homer*, Homerus, i, *m*.  
*Honor*, honos, ōris, *m*. decus, ōris, *n*.  
*Honor*, honorare, colere.  
*Honorable*, honestus 3. honorificus 3.  
*Hope*, spes, ei, *f*.  
*Hope*, sperare.  
*Horace*, Horatius, i, *m*.  
*Horn*, cornu, ūs, *n*.  
*Horse*, equus, i, *m*.  
*Horseman*, eques, itis, *m*.  
*Hostile*, hostilis, *e*.  
*Hour*, hora, ae, *f*.  
*House*, domus, ūs, *f*. aedes, is, *f*.  
*How*, quā.  
*How long*, quamdiu.  
*How many?* quot?  
*How much?* quantum?  
*How often?* quoties?  
*However much*, quamvis.  
*Human*, humanus 3.  
*Humanity*, humanitas, ātis, *f*.  
*Humble*, humilis, *e*.  
*Hump*, tuber, ēris, *n*.  
*Hunger*, fames, is, *f*.  
*Hunger*, esurire.  
*Hunt*, venari.  
*Hunter*, venator, ōris, *m*.  
*Hunter's-net*, cassis, is (commonly plur.), *m*.  
*Hurt*, laedere.  
*Husbandman*, agricola, ae, *m*, rusticus, i, *m*.  
*Hut*, casa, ae, *f*.
- I.
- I*, ego.  
*Ice*, glaciēs, ei, *f*.  
*Ides*, Idus, ium, *f*.  
*Idle*, otiosus 3.  
*If*, si.  
*If not*, nisi.

- If also*, etsi, tametsi, *Increase*, augēre, ac-  
etiamsi. crescēre. *Intelligent*, prudens, tis.
- Ignoble*, illiberālis, e, in- *Incredible*, incredibīlis, e. *Intercourse*, consuetu-  
honestus 3. *Incumbent on some one* do, inis, f.
- Ignominy*, ignominia, *(to be)*, esse alicujus. *Interest*, one is interest-  
ae, f. *Indeed*, quidem (stands ed in, interest, refert.  
§ 88. 10).
- Ignorance*, ignorantia, *after the word to* *Intermix*, admiscēre.
- ae, f. *which it refers*. *Invent*, invenire, re-  
perire.
- Ignorant*, ignārus 3. *Indicate*, indicāre. *Inventress*, inventrix,  
icis, f.
- Ignorant (to be)*, ignō- *Indignant (to be)*, in- *Investigator*, indagātrix,  
rāre, nescire. dignāri. icis, f.
- Ill (adv.)*, male. *Indolence*, ignavia, ae, *Invincible*, invictus 3.
- Ill disposed*, malevolus *f. pigritia*, ae, f. in- *Invite*, invitāre.
3. *ertia*, ae, f. *Io*, Io, ūs, f.
- Illuminate*, collustrāre. *ties*, ei, f. *Irascible*, iracundus 3.
- Image*, imāgo, inis, f. *Indolent*, piger, gra, *Irascibility*, iracundia,  
grum, tardus 3. *icis*, f.
- Imitate*, imitāri c. acc. *grum*, tardus 3. *Irascibility*, iracundia,  
(§ 89. 2). [f. *nāvus* 3. *ae*, f.
- Imitation*, imitatio, ōnis, *Indulgent to (to be)*, in- *Ireland*, Hibernia, ae, f.
- Immature*, immatūrus 3. *dulgēre c. dat.* [f. *Iron*, ferrum, i, n.
- Immediately*, extemplo, *Industry*, industriā, ae, *Iron, of iron*, ferrūs 3.
- statim, protinus. *Inflame*, accendēre, in- *Irruption (to make)*, ir-  
cendēre. rumpere.
- Immense*, ingens, ntis. *Inform*, edocēre. *Is it possible that?* num
- Immodesty*, immodestia, *Inhabitant*, incōla, ae, m. [§ 115. 3. b. (c)].
- ae, f. *Injure*, nocēre, obesse. *Isocrates*, Isocrātes, is,
- Immortal*, immortalis, e. *Injurious*, noxiūs 3. *m.*
- Immortality*, immortal- *perniciōsus* 3. *Issus*, Issus, i, f.
- itas, ātis, f. *nōsus* 3. *It is the part of some*
- Impious*, impiūs 3. *Injury*, injuriā, ae, f. *one*, est alicujus.
- Implant*, ignēre. *offensio*, ōnis, f. *Italy*, Italia, ae, f.
- Import*, importāre. *Inmost*, intīmus 3. *Ivory, of ivory*, ebur-
- Impress*, imprēmere. *Innocence*, innocentia, *nēus* 3.
- Improve*, emendāre. *ae*, f. *J.*
- Impunity*, impunitas, *Insolence*, temeritas, *Jest*, lepor, ōris, m.
- ātis, f. *ātis*, f. *Join together*, conjun-
- Impute*, dāre, ducēre, *Innumerable*, innumer- *gēre.*
- vertēre c. dupl. dat. *abilis*, e. *Joint*, articulus, i, m.
- In like manner—as*, ae- *Inquiry*, quaestio, ōnis, *Journey*, iter, itinēris, n.
- que—atque (ac). *f. disputatio*, ōnis, f. *Journey*, proficisci.
- Inborn*, insitus 3. *Instruct*, erūdire, infor- *Joy*, laetitia, ae, f.
- Incite*, incitāre. *māre*, edocēre. *Joyful or joyous*, laetus 3.
- Include*, continēre. *Instruction*, institutio, *Judge*, judex, icis, m.
- Income*, vectigal, ālis, n. *ōnis*, f. *Judge*, judicāre, existi-
- Inconsiderateness*, te- *Instructress*, magistra, *māre*, sentire.
- meritas, ātis, f. *ae*, f. *Judgment*, iudicium, i, n.
- Inconsiderately*, temere. *Intellect*, mens, tis, f.
- Inconstancy*, inconstan- *ingenium*.

- Jugurtha*, Jugurtha, ae, m.  
*Julia*, Julia, ae, f.  
*Julius Caesar*, Julius, i, Caesar, äris, m.  
*June*, Junius, i, m.  
*Junius*, Junius, i, m.  
*Jupiter*, Juppiter, Jovis, m.  
*Just*, justus 3.  
*Just as*, ut, sicut.  
*Just so many*, totidem.  
*Just so much*, adv. (with verbs of valuing, esteeming, buying, selling), tantidem.
- K.**
- Keep*, servare.  
*Keep from*, arcere.  
*Key*, clavis, is, f.  
*Kill*, occidere, exanimare, necare; — outright, enecare.  
*Kind*, genus, äris, n.  
*Kind*, benignus 3.  
*Kindly*, benevole.  
*Kindness*, beneficium, i, n. benefactum, i, n.  
*King*, rex, regis, m.  
*Kingdom*, regnum, i, n.  
*Knee*, genu, üs, n.  
*Knot*, nodus, i, m.  
*Know*, scire; — perfectly well, non ignorare, non esse nescius; not to know, ignorare, nescire.  
*Knowledge*, peritia, ac, f. cognitio, önis, f.  
*Known*, cognitus 3; — it is known, constat.
- L.**
- Labor*, labor, öris, m.  
*Labor* (to bestow on something), operam navare alicui rei, operam collicare in aliqua re.  
*Labor*, laborare, elaborare.  
*Lacedemon*, Lacedaemon, önis, f.  
*Lacedemonian*, Lacedaemonius, i, m.  
*Lake*, lacus, üs, m.  
*Lament*, lugere.  
*Land*, by land and by sea, terra marique.  
*Language*, lingua, ae, f. oratio, önis, f.  
*Lark*, alauda, ae, f.  
*Last*, extremus 3.  
*Lasting*, diuturnus 3.  
*Later*, posterior.  
*Latin*, Latinus 3.  
*Latium*, Latium, i, n.  
*Laudable*, laudabilis, e.  
*Laugh*, ridere.  
*Laugh*, risus, üs, m.  
*Law*, lex, gis, f.  
*Lawgiver*, legislator, öris, m.  
*Lay before*, propönere; — open, aperire, — waste, devastare, populari.  
*Lead*, plumbum, i, n.  
*Lead*, ducere; — back, reducere; — out, educere.  
*Leader*, dux, cis, m.  
*Leafy*, frondosus 3.  
*League*, foedus, äris, n.  
*Leap*, salire; — down, desilire; — over, transilire.  
*Learn*, discere.  
*Learned*, doctus 3.  
*Leave behind*, destitüere, relinquere.  
*Leg*, crus, uris, n.  
*Legion*, legio, önis, f.  
*Leisure*, otium, i, n.
- Length* (of time), longinquitas, ätis, f.  
*Less* (adv.), minus.  
*Letter* (epistle), epistola, ae, f. litterae, arum, f.  
*Letter* (öf the alphabet), littera, ae, f.  
*Level*, adaequare.  
*Liar*, mendax, äcis.  
*Liberal*, ingenüus 3.  
*Licentious*, petulans, tis.  
*Licentiousness*, petulantia, ae, f.  
*Lie*, situm esse; — by, adjacere.  
*Lie* (to state a falsehood), mentiri.  
*Life*, vita, ae, f.  
*Light*, lux, lucis, f.  
*Lightning*, fulgur, äris, n. fulmen, inis, n.  
*Like*, similis, e.  
*Limb*, membrum, i, n. artus, üs, m.  
*Line* (of battle), acies, ei, f.; to arrange in a line, aciem instruere.  
*Lion*, leo, önis, m.  
*Listen to*, exaudire.  
*Literature*, literae, arum, f.  
*Little*, exigüus 3; very little, perexigüus 3.  
*Little* (adv.), paullulum.  
*Little* (to esteem), parvi aestimare.  
*Live*, vivere, versari.  
*Lively*, alacer, cris, cre.  
*Liver*, jecur, jecinöris, n.  
*Living being*, animans, antis.  
*Livy*, Livius, i, m.  
*Load*, onus, äris, m.  
*Loathe*, I loathe something, me taedet aliquid rei.  
*Lofty*, excelsus 3. [m.  
*Loiterer*, cunctator, öris,

- Long*, longus 3; *of* *Magnesia*, Magnesiā, ae, *Maturity*, Maturitas, long continuance, diu- f. ātis, f. turnus 3. *Magnificent*, magnificus 3., superbus 3. *Means*, opes, um, f. facultates, um, f. *Longing*, desiderium, i, n. *Make*, facere, reddere; *Measure*, consilium, i, n. — good, praestare; *Measure*, metiri. *Look out for something*, curare c. acc. curam habere, c. gen. prospicere, providere, consilire, c. dat. *re*; — war upon, inferre bellum aliqui. *Malice*, malitia, ae, f. *Meet* (adv.), obviam. *Look upon* intueri; *Malicious*, malevolus 3. *Membrane*, membrana, ae, f. — into, inspicere. *Man*, homo, inis, m. *Memory*, memoria, ae, f. *Loose*, solvere. *Man by man*, viritum. *Metal*, metallum, i, n. *Loquacious*, loquax, ācis, garrulus 3. *Manage*, administrare. *Metellus*, Metellus, i, m. *Loquacity*, garrulitas, ātis, f. *Mane*, juba, ae, f. *Mid-day*, meridies, ei, m. *Lose*, perdere, emittere. *Manlius*, Manlius, i, m. *Migrate*, migrare. *Loss*, damnum, i, n. — (with a moral reference), majōris, m. *Mild*, mitis, e; — to become, mitescere. *Lot*, sors, tis, f. *Manner*, modus, i, m.; *Milesian*, Milesius, i, m. *Love*, amor, ōris, m. *Many*, multi, orum; *Milk*, lac, ctis, n. caritas, ātis, f. *very many*, complures, a and ia, plures, a, gen. ium. *Milo*, Milo, ōnis, m. *Love*, amare, diligere; — in return, redāmare. *a, gen. ium.* *Miltiades*, Miltiades, is, m. *Low*, humilis, e., infērus 3. *Maple-tree*, acer, ēris, n. *Mind*, animus, i, m.; — (state of), mens, tis, f. *Low state* (to be in), jacere. *Marble*, marmor, ōris, n. *Mindful*, mēmor, ōris. *Lower regions*, infēri, ōrum, m. *Marathon*, Marathō, ōnis, m. *Minerva*, Minerva, ae, f. *Lowery*, tristis, e. *Marble, of marble*, marmorēus 3. *Misfortune*, calamitas, ātis, f. *Lucilius*, Lucilius, i, m. *Marcellus*, Marcellus, i, m. *Mist*, nebula, ae, f. *Luxuriously*, luxuriōse. *March*, iter, itinēris. *Mistress*, domina, ae, f. *Luxury*, luxuria, ae, f. *March, proficisci*, iter facere. *Misuse*, abūti c. abl. *Lycurgus*, Lycurgus, i, m. *Marcus Agrippa*, Marcus, i, Agrippa, ae, m. *Mithridates*, Mithridates, is, m. *Lydia*, Lydia, ae, f. *Margin*, margo, inis, m. *Mix*, miscere. *Lyſing*, mendax, ācis. *Marsh*, palus, ūdis, f. *Moderately*, modice. *Lysander*, Lysander, dri, m. *Marry* (of the woman), nubere c. dat. *Moderation*, moderatio, ōnis, f. — without moderation, intemperanter. *Macedonia*, Macedoniā, ae, f. *Massagete*, Massagetes, ae, m. *Modest*, modestus 3., pudicus 3. *Macedonian*, Macedo, ōnis, m. *Master, not — of*, im- pos, ōtis, impotens, ntis. [f. *Modestly*, modeste. *Magian*, magus, i, m. *Matter* (affairs), res, rei, tum, i, n.


- Moon**, luna, ae, *f.*  
**More**, plures, a, gen. ium.  
**Mortal**, mortālis, e.  
**Most**, plurimus 3.  
**Most** (adv.), plurime.  
**Mother**, mater, tris, *f.*  
**Move**, mōvēre, commōvēre ; — out, emigrāre.  
**Mound**, ager, gri, *m.*  
**Mountain**, mons, ntis, *m.*  
**Mouse**, mus, muris, *m.*  
**Mow**, metēre.  
**Much**, multus 3 ; for much, (with verbs of buying and selling), magni (§ 88, 9).  
**Much** (with verbs of valueing and esteeming), magni.  
**Multitude**, multitudo, inis, *f.* copia, ae, *f.*  
**Munificent**, munificus 3.  
**Murderer**, interfector, ōris, *m.*  
**Must**, debēre.
- N.
- Name**, nomināre.  
**Napoleon**, Napolēo, ōnis, *m.*  
**Narrative**, narratio, ōnis, *f.*  
**Narrow pass**, angustiae, arum, *f.*  
**Nation**, natio, ōnis, *f.*  
**Natural**, naturalis, e.  
**Nature**, natūra, ae, *f.*  
**Navigate**, navigāre,  
**Navigation**, navigatio, ōnis, *f.*  
**Near**, prope.  
**Nearly**, prope, paene.  
**Neat**, lepīdus 3.  
**Necessary** (it is), oportet, opus est res or re.
- Neck-chain**, torquis, is, *m.*  
**Need**, indigēre c. abl. ; there is need of, opus est.  
**Needy**, inops, ōpis.  
**Neglect**, negligēre.  
**Neigh**, hinnire.  
**Neighbor**, proxīmus, i, *m.*  
**Neither** (of two), neuter, tra, trum.  
**Neither—nor**, nec (neque) — nec (neque).  
**Nero**, Nero, ōnis, *m.*  
**Nerve**, nervus, i, *m.*  
**Never**, nunquam.  
**Nevertheless**, tamen.  
**News**, nuntius, i, *m.*  
**Next**, proxīmus 3.  
**Nicomedes**, Nicomēdes, is, *m.*  
**Night**, nox, noctis, *f.* ; by night, noctu.  
**Nightingale**, lusciniā, ae, *f.*  
**No** (a.) nullus 3. nemo (inis) c.  
**No**, see § 115, 5 ; no, nay, rather, (in opp.), immo (§ 115, 5).  
**Noble**, praeclārus 3.  
**Noble** (= noble born) ingenūus 3.  
**Nobly**, praeclāre.  
**Nobody**, nemo (gen. and abl. not used).  
**Nocturnal**, nocturnus 3.  
**Noise**, fremitus ūs, *m.*  
**Nola**, Nola, ae, *f.*  
**No one**, nullus 3. nemo (inis) c.  
**Not**, non ; (with Imper. and Subj. of encouraging), ne.  
**Not merely—but also**, non solum—sed etiam.
- Not even**, ne-quidem.  
**Not only—but also**, non modo (tantum)—sed etiam.  
**Not yet**, nondum.  
~~Nothing, nihil.~~  
**Notion**, notio, ōnis, *f.*  
**Nourish**, nutrire, alēre.  
**November**, November, bris, *m.*  
**Now**, nunc, jam.  
**Now—now**, modo — modo.  
**Noxious**, noxius, a, um.  
**Numa Pompilius**, Numa (ae) Pomilius (i), *m.*  
**Numantia**, Numantia, ae, *f.*  
**Number**, numerāre.  
**Nurse**, fovēre.
- O.
- O**, O that ! utinam c. Subj.  
**Obey**, obēdire, obsēqui, obtempērare parēre.  
**Object**, res, ei, *f.*  
**Oblivion**, oblivio, ōnis, *f.*  
**Obscure**, obscurus 3.  
**Observe**, observāre.  
**Obtain**, adipisci.  
**Occasion**, occasio, ōnis, *f.*  
**Occupy one's self zealously with something**, studiōsus esse alicuius rei, studēre alicui rei, operam navāre alicui rei.  
**Ocean**, ocēānus, i, *m.*  
**Offended** (to be), succensēre, irasci c. dat.  
**Offer**, deferre.  
**Office**, munus, ēris, *n.*  
**Offspring**, proles, is, *f.*



- Oftener*, saepius; *very often*, saepissime.  
*Oil*, olĕum, i, n.  
*Old man*, senex, senis, m.  
*Old age*, senectus, ūtis, f.  
*Older*, major, major natu.  
*On account of*, causā (§ 88, R. 3).  
*One*, unus 3.  
*One of the two*, alterūter, ūtra, ūtrum.  
*One, the one—the other*, alter—alter.  
*Onyx*, onyx, ŷchis, m.  
*Open*, apĕrĭre; *to stand open*, patĕre.  
*Opinion*, opinĭo, ōnis, f. sententiā, ae, f. existimatiō, ōnis, f.  
*Opposite*, adversus 3. contrariū 3.  
*Oppress*, urgĕre.  
*Or*, aut; (in a double question), *an*; *or not*, nec ne, annon.  
*Oracle*, oracŭlum, i, n.  
*Orator*, orātor, ōris, m.  
*Order*, ordo, ĩnis, m.; — *of battle*, acies, ĕi, f.  
*Order*, jubĕre.  
*Order, in order that*, ut; *in order that not*, ne.  
*Orestes*, Orestes, ae, m.  
*Origin*, orĭgo, ĩnis, f.  
*Ornament*, ornātus, ūs, m.  
*Ornately*, ornāte.  
*Orpheus*, Orphĕus, ĕi, m.  
*Ostentation*, ostentatiō, ōnis, f.  
*Other, the other of two*, alter, ĕra, ĕrum.  
*Otherwise*, aliter.
- Ought*, debĕre.  
*Our, ours*, noster, tratum.  
*Outliving*, susperstes, ĩtis, c. dat.  
*Overcome*, supĕrāre.  
*Ovid*, Ovidĭus, i, m.  
*Owe*, debĕre.  
*Own*, proprius 3. ipsius, ipsōrum, ipsārum, (§ 94. 7).  
*Ox*, bos, ovis, c.
- P.
- Pain*, dolor, ōris, m.  
*Paint*, pingĕre; — *out*, expingĕre.  
*Palace*, domus, ūs, f.  
*Palate*, palātum, i, n.  
*Pale*, pallidus 3.  
*Pardon*, venĭa, ae, f.  
*Parents*, parentes, ĭum, c.  
*Parian*, Parĭus 3.  
*Parricide*, (a.), parricida, ae, c.  
*Parricide*, parricidium, i, n.  
*Part*, pars, rtis, f.  
*Partaking of*, particeps, cĭpis.  
*Partner*, socius, i, m.  
*Pass over*, transĭre, praeterĕre.  
*Pass (time)*, agĕre, exĭgĕre.  
*Passion*, cupiditas, ātis, f. appetitus, ūs, m. libido, ĩnis, f.  
*Past*, praeterĭtus 3.  
*Pasture*, pasci.  
*Path*, callis, is, c.  
*Patiently*, patienter.  
*Pausanias*, Pausaniās, ae, m.  
*Pay*, pendĕre, praestāre.  
*Peace*, pax, pacis, f.
- Peac*(to make), pacem, corpōnĕre.  
*Peacŭl*, beātus 3.  
*Peacefully*, beāte.  
*Peacock*, pavo, ōnis, m.  
*Pear*, ŷrum, i, n.  
*Pear-tree*, pyrus, i, f.  
*Peculia*, proprius 3.  
*Peculiarity*, it is a peculiarity of some one, alicujus est.  
*Pedestal*, basis, is, f.  
*Pelopida*, Pelopidas, ae, m.  
*People*, popŭlus, i, m. gens, itis, f.; common people, vulgus, i, n.  
*Pepper*, pĭber, ĕris, n.  
*Perceive*, agnoscĕre.  
*Perform*, fingi, perpetrāre.  
*Perhaps*, fortasse.  
*Pericles*, Peicles, is, m.  
*Period*, perĭodus, i, f.  
*Perish*, perĕre.  
*Permit*, sinĕre.  
*Permitted (it is)*, licet.  
*Pernicious*, perniciosus 3.  
*Persevere*, permānĕre, perstāre.  
*Persia*, Persĭa, ae, f.  
*Persian* (s.), Persa, ae, m.  
*Persian*, Persĭcus 3.  
*Persian war*, bellum Persicum.  
*Pest*, pestis, is, f.  
*Phaedo*, Phaedo, ōnis, m.  
*Philip*, Philippus, i, m.  
*Philippi*, Philippi, ōrum, m.  
*Philosopher*, philosophus, i, m.  
*Philosophise*, philosophiari.



- Properly*, rite, probe.  
*Prophet*, vates, is, m.  
*Propitious*, propitiŭs 3.  
*Proportionately*, aequaliter.  
*Propose*, propōnere.  
*Propriety* (of conduct), honestas, ātis, f.  
*Prosperity*, res secundae, fortūna, ae, f.  
*Prosperous*, prosper, ēra, ērum.  
*Prostrate*, prosternere.  
*Protect*, custodire.  
*Protection*, tutēla, ae, f. praesidiŭm, i, n.  
*Proud*, superbus 3.  
*Provided that*, modo, dummodo. [ae, f.  
*Providence*, providentiā,  
*Provident*, cautus 3.  
*Province*, provinciā, ae, f.  
*Provoke*, lacessere. [f.  
*Prudence*, prudentiā ae,  
*Prudent*, prudens, tis.  
*Ptolemy*, Ptolemaeus, i, m.  
*Pungent*, acerbus 3.  
*Punic*, Punīcus 3.  
*Punish*, punire, multare.  
*Punishment*, poena, ae, f. supplicium, i, n.  
*Purple fish*, murex, īcis, m. [n.  
*Purpose*, propositum, i,  
*Pursue*, persequi, conſectari; — something earnestly, studiosum esse alicujus rei; — literature, literas tractare.  
*Pursuit*, tractatio, ōnis, f. studium, i, n.  
*Pylades*, Pylādes, ae, m.  
*Pyrenean*, Pyrenaeus 3.  
*Pyrrhus*, Pyrrhus, i, m.
- Pythagoras*, Pythagōras, ae, m.
- Q.**
- Quantity*, numerus, i, m. vis (gen. and dat. wanting, plur. vires, ium), f.  
*Queen*, regina, ae, f.  
*Question*, quaestio, ōnis, f.  
*Quickly*, cito.  
*Quiet* (s.), quies, ētis, f.  
*Quiet* (a.), quiētus 3. tranquillus 3.  
*Quiet*, sedare.  
*Quietly*, quiēte, tranquille.
- R.**
- Race*, genus, ēris, n.  
*Rage*, saevire.  
*Rain*, imber, bris, m.  
*Raise*, perciere, or percire.  
*Rank*, ordo, īnis, m.  
*Rapid*, rapidus 3.  
*Rare*, rarus 3. [tis, f.  
*Rashness*, temeritas, ā-  
*Rather*, potius.  
*Reach*, pervenire.  
*Read*, legere; — through, perlegere; — to, recitare.  
*Reading*, lectio, ōnis, f.  
*Ready*, promptus 3., paratus 3. [us, m.  
*Readiness*, promptus,  
*Reap*, metere.  
*Reason*, ratio, ōnis, f.  
*Reason, there is no reason on that*, non est quod, nihil est quod; without reason, temere.  
*Recall*, revocare.  
*Receive*, accipere, suscipere.  
*Received*, exceptus 3.
- Recently*, nuper.  
*Recollect*, recordari.  
*Recompense*, merces, ēdis, f.  
*Recover*, convalescere.  
*Red*, ruber, bra, brum.  
*Redound*, redundare.  
*Refer*, referre.  
*Reflect upon*, cogitare.  
*Reflection*, cogitatio, ōnis, f.  
*Refresh*, recreare.  
*Refuge*, receptus, ūs, m.  
*Region*, regio, ōnis, f.  
*Reject*, rejicere, respuere.  
*Reign*, regnum, i, n.  
*Reign*, regnare, domnare, imperare.  
*Rejoice*, delectare, gaudere.  
*Relate*, narrare, memorare.  
*Relieve*, levare.  
*Religion*, religio, ōnis, f.  
*Religiously*, religiose.  
*Remain*, manere, remanere.  
*Remarkable*, insignis, e.  
*Remedy*, remedium, i, n.  
*Remedy*, mederi.  
*Remember*, reminisci, meminī, recordari c. gen. or acc.  
*Remembrance*, memoria, ae, f.  
*Remind*, commonere, commonefacere.  
*Remove*, resēcāre.  
*Removed* (to be), abesse.  
*Remus*, Remus, i, m.  
*Renew*, refricere.  
*Renown*, fama, ae, f., gloria, ae, f.  
*Renowned*, clarus 3., nobilis, e.  
*Repair*, sarcire. [re.  
*Repel*, pellere, repellere.

- Repent*, poenitēre ; I *Ripe*, matūrus 3.  
 repent of something, *Rise*, oriri.  
 poenitet me alicujus *Rising*, ortus 3.  
 rei. *River*, fluvius, i, m. am-  
 nis, is, m. flumen,  
*Report*, fama, ae, f. inis, n.  
*Repose*, requies, ētis, f. *Roar*, rudēre.  
*Reproach*, probrium, i, n. *Rock*, rupes, is, f., sax-  
 n. opprobrium, i, n. um, i, n.  
 turpitudō, inis, f. *Rome*, Roma, ae, f.  
*Reproach*, maledicere. *Roman* (s.), Romānus,  
*Reprove*, castigare. i, m.  
*Reputable*, honestus 3. *Roman* (a.), Romānus 3.  
*Request*, petere, rogare *Romulus*, Romulus, i, m.  
 (ab aliquo). *Roof*, tectum, i, n.  
*Resist*, resistere. *Rope*, restis, is, f.  
*Resound*, resonare. *Rough*, asper, ēra, ērum.  
*Resounding*, resonus. *Round*, rotundus 3.  
*Resource*, opes, um. *Rout*, fundere.  
*Responsible*, to become *Royal*, regius 3.  
 responsible, spondere. *Rub off*, detergere.  
*Rest*, quies, ētis, f. *Rub thoroughly*, perfrī-  
*Rest upon something*, niti c. abl. care.  
*Restore*, repārare, re- *Rude* ( = unskilful),  
 cupērare, rudis e, c. gen.  
*Restrain*, coercere. *Ruin*, to go to, dilābi.  
*Retain*, retinere. *Rule* (a carpenter's),  
*Retire*, recedere, discē- amussis, is, f.  
 dere. *Rule*, regere, gubernā-  
*Return*, reditus, ūs, m. re. [dat.  
*Return*, redire, revertē- *Rule over*, imperare c.  
 re, remeare. *Run*, currere ; — in-  
*Reverence*, vēreri. to, diffilūere ; —  
*Reville*, maledicere, c. through, percurrere.  
 dat. *Rush in*, irrūere.  
*Reward*, praemium, i, n.  *S.*  
*Rhine*, Rhenus, i, m. *Sacred rites*, sacra, ōrum,  
*Rhodes*, Rhodus, i, f. n.  
*Rich*, dives, itis, locū- *Sacredly*, sancte.  
 ples, ētis. *Sacredness*, sanctitas,  
*Riches*, divitiæ, ārum, f. ātis, f.  
*Ride*, equitare. *Sad*, tristis, e. [itis.  
*Ridge* (of mountains), jugum, i, n. *Safe*, tutus 3. sospes,  
*Ridiculous*, ridiculus 3. *Safety*, salus, ūtis, f.  
*Right*, jus, juris, n. *Saguntum*, Saguntum,  
*Right* (a.), rectus 3. i, n.  
*Rightly*, recte. *Sail*, velum, i, n.
- Sailor*, nauta, ae, m.  
*Salt*, sal, salis, m.  
*Salutary*, salutaris, e. saluber or bris, bre.  
*Same*, is, ea, id ; very same, idem, eadem, idem ; at the same time, simul, unā.  
*Samnite* (s.), Samnis, itis, m.  
*Sanction*, sancire.  
*Sapid*, sapidus 3.  
*Sappho*, Sappho, ūs, f.  
*Satirize*, perstringere.  
*Save*, parcere c. dat.  
*Save from something*, servare ex or ab aliqua re.  
*Say*, dicere, inquam (§ 77. Rule).  
*Scarcely*, vix.  
*Scatter*, disjicere.  
*Scholar*, discipulus, i, m.  
*Scholastic instruction*, institutio scholastica.  
*School*, schola, ae, f.  
*Scipio*, Scipio, ōnis, m.  
*Scrape together*, contrādere.  
*Scruple*, scrupulus, i, m.  
*Scrupulously*, sancte, religiose. [m.  
*Scythian* (s.), Scythia, ae, *Sea*, mare, is, n.  
*Season*, in season, matūre.  
*Seasoning*, condimentum, i, n.  
*Seat*, sedes, is, f. [m.  
*Sedition*, seditio, ōnis, *Seditious*, seditiosus 3.  
*See*, videre, conspiciari, carnere.  
*Seek*, quaerere.  
*Seize*, deprehendere, comprehendere, capere, occupare, capessere.

- Self*, ipse (§ 94. 6). *Should*, debēre. *Snares*, insidiæ, ârum, *f*.  
*Self confidence*, audaciâ, *Shout*, clamor, ôris, *m*. *Snow*, nix, nivis, *f*.  
 ae, *f*. *Show one's self*, se prae-  
 Sell, vendēre. bēre, se praestāre. *So*, ita ; so—so as, tam-  
*Senate*, senātus, ūs, *m*. *Shun something*, aver- quam ; — *great*,  
*Send*, mittere ; — *for*, sâri. tantus 3 ; — *long*,  
 accire. *Shut*, claudēre. tamdiu ; — *long*  
*Sense*, sensus, ūs, *m*. *Sick*, aeger, gra, grum. as, dum, quamdiu,  
 mens, tis, *f*. *Side* (on the other), con- quoad [§ 110, 4] ;  
*Sensible*, prudens, tis. tra. — *many*, tot, in-  
*Sentiment*, sententia, ae, *f*. *Siege*, obisdïo, ônis, *f*. decl. ; — *soon as*,  
 ubi, simulac (atque)  
*Separate*, sepārāre, dis- obsessio, ônis, *f*. [§ 110, 2]].  
 clūdēre, secernēre. *Sight*, conspectus, ūs, *m*. *Socrates*, Socrâtes, is, *m*.  
*Sepulchre*, sepulcrum, i, *n*. *Sign*, signum, i, *n*. ; it *Soldier*, miles, itis, *m*.  
*Service*, officiū, i, *n*. is the sign of some *Solicitude*, sollicitudo,  
*Servitude*, servitus, ūtis, *f*. one, est alicujus. inis, *f*.  
*Serious*, gravis, e. *Silence*, silentia, ae, *f*. *Solid*, solidus 3.  
*Serve*, servire. *Silent* (to be), tacēre. *Solon*, Solo, ônis, *m*.  
*Service*, officiū, i, *n*. *Silkworm*, bombyx, ūcis, *m*. *Some*, nonnulli.  
*Servitude*, servitus, ūtis, *f*. *Silver*, argentum, i, *n*. *Some one*, aliquis, a, id.  
*Set out on a journey*, *Simple*, simplex, icis. *Sometime*, aliquando.  
 proficisci. *Sin*, peccātum, i, *n*. *Sometimes*, interdum.  
*Several*, plures, a, com- *Sin*, peccāre. *Son*, filius, i, *m*.  
 plures, a and ia. *Since*, quum. *Son-in-law*, gener, eri,  
*Severe*, gravis, e. [*f*. *Sing*, cantāre, canēre. *m*. [pore].  
*Severity*, severitas, âtis, *Sink*, demergēre ; — *Soon*, mox, brevi (tem-  
*Shake*, convellēre, labe- down, desidēre ; — *Sooner*, prior.  
 factāre. under, succumbēre. *Soothe*, lenire.  
*Shame*, I am ashamed of *Sister*, soror, ôris, *f*. *Sophist*, sophista, ae, *m*.  
 something, me pudet *Sit*, sedēre ; — at *Sorrow*, aegritudo, inis,  
 alicujus rei (§ 88. 1). table, accubāre. *f*.  
*Share with some one*, *Situation*, locus, i, *m*. *Soul*, animus, i, *m*.  
 communicāre cum *Size*, magnitudo, inis, *f*. *Sound*, intēger, gra,  
 aliquo. *Skilful*, peritus 3., pru- grum.  
*Sharing in*, particeps, dens, tis c. gen. *Sow*, serēre.  
 ipis, consors, tis. *Sky*, coelum, i, *n*. *Spain*, Hispania, ae, *f*.  
*Shear*, tondēre, radēre. *Slave*, servus, i, *m*. *Spaniard*, Hispanus, i,  
*Shepherd*, pastor, ôris, *m*. *Slay*, occidēre, interfī- *m*.  
*Shin*, crus, uris, *n*. cēre.  
*Shine forth*, elucēre. *Sleep*, somnus, i, *m*. *Spare*, parcēre c. dat.  
*Ship*, navis, is, *f*. [i, *n*. *Sleep*, dormire. *Sparta*, Sparta, ae, *f*.  
*Shipwreck*, naufragium, *Slender*, gracilis, e. *Speak*, dicēre, loqui.  
*Short*, brevis, e ; in *Slim*, procērus 3. *Spectator*, spectātor,  
 short time, brevi *Small*, parvus, 3. ôris, *m*.  
 (sc. tempore). *Small*, olfācere. *Speech*, sermo, ônis, *m*.  
*Short time*, paulisper. *Smile upon*, arridēre. oratio, ônis, *f*.  
*Smith*, faber, bri, *m*. *Spirit*, animus, i, *m*.  
 inge-  
 nium, i, *n*.

- Spiritedly*, acriter.  
*Splendid*, splendidus 3., nitidus 3. [m.  
*Splendor*, splendor, ōris,  
*Split*, diffindere.  
*Sport*, ludus, i, m.  
*Spread*, pandere ; — (= cover), oblinere.  
*Spring*, oriri, nasci, ex-oriri.  
*Spurn*, spernere, aspernere, fastidire.  
*Spy*, explorator, ōris, m.  
*Stab*, confodere.  
*Stability*, stabilitas, ātis, f. perpetuitas, ātis, f.  
*Stadium*, stadium, i, n.  
*Staff*, scipio, ōnis, m.  
*Stand*, stare.  
*Star*, stella, ae, f.  
*State*, respublica, rei-publicae, f. civitas, ātis, f. ; at the cost of the State, publice.  
*Station*, statio, ōnis, f.  
*Statue*, statua, ae, f.  
*Stay* (= large rope), rudens, tis, m.  
*Steel*, chalybs, ŷbis, m.  
*Steep*, praeceps, cipitis, ardus 3.  
*Step*, passus, ūs, m.  
*Stern*, puppis, is, f.  
*Stick*, haerere.  
*Still*, adhuc, porro.  
*Stone*, lapis, idis, m.  
*Stone, of stone*, lapideus 3.  
*Stork*, ciconia, ae, f.  
*Storm*, procella, ae, f. tempestas, ātis, f.  
*Strengthen*, firmare.  
*Stretch*, tendere.  
*Strife*, lis, litis, f.  
*Strike*, ferire.  
*Strive*, studere c. dat., petere c. acc., niti ad aliquid, tendere, con-  
tendere ; — against, reluctari ; — against something, niti, in aliquid ; — to obtain, petere, expetere, sec-tari.  
*Strong*, validus 3.  
*Study*, studium, i, n.  
*Subdue*, domare, perdō-mare.  
*Subject*, civis, is, c.  
*Subjugate*, subigere.  
*Succeed*, succedere.  
*Such*, talis, e ; is, ea, id.  
*Sudden*, subitus 3.  
*Suddenly*, subito.  
*Suffer*, pati, perpēti ; — from, laborare c. abl.  
*Sufficiently*, satis.  
*Suitable*, idoneus, a, um.  
*Sulla*, Sullae, ae, m.  
*Summer*, aestas, ātis, f.  
*Sun*, sol, solis, m.  
*Superstition*, superstitio, ōnis, f.  
*Suppliant*, supplex, icis.  
*Supplicate*, supplicare.  
*Supply*, suppeditare.  
*Support*, fulcire.  
*Supremacy*, principatus, ūs, m. summum imperium.  
*Surely*, certe, sane.  
*Surface*, aequor, ōris, n.  
*Surpass*, praestare, c. dat.  
*Surprise*, obrēpere c. dat.  
*Surrender*, tradere.  
*Surround*, circumdare, cingere, ambire ; of fundi alicui rei.  
*Surviving*, superstes, itis c. dat.  
*Sustain*, sustentare. [f.  
*Swallow*, hirundo, inis,  
*Swear*, jurare.  
*Sweat*, sudare.  
*Sweet*, dulcis, e.  
*Swift*, celer, eris, ere, velox, ocis.  
*Swiftly*, celeriter, cito.  
*Swiftness*, celeritas, ātis, f.  
*Swollen*, turgidus 3.  
*Sword*, gladius, i, m. en-sis, is, m. ferrum, i, n.  
*Syracuse*, Syracusae, arum, f.  
*Syria*, Syria, ae, f.

## T.

- Table*, tabula, ae, f.  
*Table* (to sit at), accu-bare.  
*Take*, capere, adimere ; — away, tollere, auferre, demere, adimere ; — fire, exardescere ; — from, eripere ; — one's self off, facessere ; — possession of, occupare ; — up, tollere ; — upon one's self, suscipere.  
*Talent* (sum of money), talentum, i, n.  
*Tame*, cicur, ūris.  
*Tame*, domare.  
*Tanaquil*, Tanāquil, [ilis, f.  
*Tarentum*, Tarentum, i, m. [m.  
*Tarquin*, Tarquinius, i,  
*Tarquinius Superbus*, Tarquinius Superbus, m.  
*Tarquinius Collatinus*, Tarquinius Collatinus, m. [tare.  
*Taste*, gustare, degus-tare.  
*Teach*, docere c. dupl. acc. [§ 89, 5. b)].  
*Teachable*, docilis 3.  
*Teacher*, praeceptor,

- ôris*, *m.* magister, tri, *Thornbush*, sentes, ium, *Trace*, vestigiûm, *i, n.*  
*m.* *m.* *Track*, vestigiûm, *i, n.*  
*Tear in pieces*, lacërâre, *Thou*, tu. *Trader*, mercâtor, *ôris*,  
 dilacërâre. *Thoughtless*, levis, *e.* *m.* [*m.*  
*Tell*, dicere. *Threaten*, minâri ; — (= *Traitor*, proditor, *ôris*,  
*Temple*, templum, *i, n.* impend), impendere, *Trajan*, Trajânus, *i, m.*  
*aedes*, *is, f.* immînere. *Transgress*, migrâre, *c.*  
*Tender*, tener, *êra*, *Threatening*, minax, *a-* acc. [*gestire.*  
*ërum.* cis. *Transported* (to be),  
*Tenderly*, pie. *Three-headed*, triceps, *Travel through*, emêtiri.  
*Terrible*, terribilis, *e.* cîpitis. *Treachery*, prodição, *ô-*  
*Territory*, finis, *is, m.* *Thrust down*, detrûdë- nis, *f.* [*f.*  
*Thales*, Thales, *is, m.* re ; — out, extrû- *Treason*, prodição, *ônis*,  
*Thames*, Tamêsis, *is,* dëre. *Treat*, tractâre.  
*m.* *Thumb*, pollex, *îcis, m.* *Tree*, arbor, *ôris, f.*  
*Than*, quam. *Thunder*, tonitru, *u, n.* *Tremble*, contremiscere.  
*Thanks* (to give), gra- *Thunder*, tonâre. *Trench*, fossa, *ae, f.*  
*tias* agere. *Thus*, ita. [*um.* *Tribune of the people*,  
*That*, ille, *a, ud ; is, ea,* *Thy or thine*, tuus, *a,* tribûnus plebis.  
*id ; iste, a, ud.* *Tiberius*, Tiberius, *i, m.* *Trojan*, Trojânus 3.  
*That, that not*, see § *Time*, tempus, *ôris, n.* *Troop*, agmen, *înis, n.*  
 105—108. *Time, long time*, diu. *Troops*, copiae, *ârum, f.*  
*The—so much the* (with *Timid*, timidus 3. *Trouble*, molestia, *ae, f.*  
 the comparative), quo *Timoleon*, Timolëon, aerumna, *ae, f.*  
 —eo, quanto—tanto. *ntis, m.* *Trouble*, angere ; —  
*Theban* Thebanus, *i, m.* *Timotheus*, Timothëus, one's self about some-  
*Thebes*, Thebae, *ârum, f.* *i, m.* thing, curare aliquid,  
*Themistocles*, Themisto- *Tire out*, defatigare, de- operam dare.  
*cles, is, m.* fetisci. *Troublesome*, molestus  
*Then*, tum, deinde. *Titus*, Titus, *i, m.* 3., importûnus 3.  
*Thence*, illinc, inde. *Together*, unâ. *Troy*, Troja, *ae, f.*  
*Theophrastus*, Theo- *Toil*, labor, *ôris, m.* *Truce*, indutiæ, *ârum,*  
*phrastus, i, m.* opëra, *a, f.* *f.*  
*There*, ibi. *Tomi*, Tomi, *orum, m.* *True*, verus 3.  
*There are*, sunt ; — *is,* *Tomorrow*, cras. *Trunk* (of a tree), cau-  
*est.* *Tongue*, lingua, *ae, f.* dex, *îcis, m.*  
*Thermopylae*, Thermo- *Too much*, nimium. *Trust in*, fidere *c. abl.*  
*pylae, ârum, f.* *Tooth*, dens, *tis, m.* *Trust one*, credere, fi-  
*Thick*, crassus 3. *Torment*, cruciare, vex- dere, fidem habere,  
*Thicket*, frutex, *îcis, m.* âre, torquere. alicui.  
*Thing*, res, *rei, f.* *Torrent*, torrens, *tis, m.* *Truth*, veritas, *âtis, f.*  
*Think*, putare, arbitra- *Torture*, cruciatus, *ûs,* *Try*, tentare, conari,  
*ri, existimare, cogi-* *m. tormentum, i, n.* experiri.  
*tare ; — of, med-* *Torture*, cruciare, tor- *Tullus Hostilius*, Tul-  
*itâri.* quere. lus Hostilius, *m.*  
*Thirst*, sitis, *is, f.* *Touch*, tangere attin- *Turn out*, evadere ; —  
*Thirst*, sitire. gere, contingere. out well, contingere ;  
*This*, hic, haec, hoc. *Tower*, turris, *is, f.* — towards, conver-

tère ; — upon something, defigère in c. abl.

*Twisted*, tortus 3.

*Tyrant*, Tyrannus i, m.

*Tyrian* (s.), Tyrîus, i, m.

## U.

*Udder*, uber, êris, n.

*Ulysses*, Ulixes, is, m.

*Umbrenus*, Umbrênus, i, m.

*Unacquainted with*, ignârus 3. imprûdens, ntis.

*Unarmed*, inermis, e.

*Uncertain*, incertus 3., anceps, cipitis.

*Uncover*, detēgère.

*Understand*, intelligère, tenère.

*Understanding*, mens, tis, f.

*Undertake*, suscipère, moliri.

*Unfavorable*, iniquus 3.

*Unforeseen*, imprôvisus 3.

*Unfortunate*, calamitôsus 3., miser 3.

*Ungrateful*, ingrâtus 3.

*Uninjured*, intēger, grâgrum.

*Unintelligent*, imprûdens, tis.

*Unite*, conjungère, conciliâre.

*Unjustly*, injuste.

*Unknown*, incognîtus.

*Unless*, nisi.

*Unlike*, dissimîlis, e.

*Unmindful of*, immêmor c. gen.

*Unprofitable*, inutilis, e.

*Unrestrained*, effûsus 3.

*Unripe*, immatûrus 3.

*Unskilful*, imperîtus 3.

*Until*, donec, quoad, dum.

*Untimely* (adv.), intempestive.

*Unwise*, insipiens, tis.

*Unworthy*, indignus 3. c. abl.

*Upright*, probus 3. honestus 3.

*Uprightly*, probe.

*Uprightness*, probitas, âtis, f. honestas, âtis, f.

*Use*, usus, ûs, m.

*Use*, uti c. abl.

*Useful*, utilis, e.

*Useless*, inutilis, e.

*Utica*, Utica, ae, f.

## V.

*Vain*, irritus 3.

*Vain, in vain*, nequicquam.

*Valuable*, carus 3.

*Value*, pretium, i, n.

*Value*, aestimâre, censere magni etc.

*Vanish*, avôlâre.

*Vanquish*, vincere, devincere.

*Vapor*, vapor, ôris, m.

*Variance* (to be at), discordare.

*Variegated*, discolor, ôris.

*Various*, varius 3.

*Vein* (swollen), varix, icis, m.

*Venison*, caro ferina, carnis ferinae.

*Verres*, Verres, is, m.

*Versed in*, peritus 3., consultus 3.

*Very*, admôdum, valde.

*Very often*, persaepe.

*Vespasian*, Vespasiânus, i, m.

*Vessel*, vas, vâsis, n.

*Vesta*, vesta, ae, f.

*Vesuvius*, Vesuvîus, i, m.

*Vex*, angere, negotium

facessere ; — vex to death, enecare.

*Vexation*, angor, ôris, m.

*Vice* (= viciousness), vitiositas, âtis, f.

*Vice*, vitium, i, m.

*Vicissitude*, vicis, vicis, f.

*Victory*, victoria, ae, f.

*View*, conspectus, us, m.

*View* (= sentiment), sententia, ae, f.

*Vigorously*, strenue.

*Vine-branch*, tradux, ūcis, m.

*Violate*, violare.

*Violant*, violentus 3., vehemens, tis, atrox, ôcis.

*Violently*, graviter.

*Virgil*, Virgilius, i, m.

*Virgin*, virgo, inis, f.

*Virtue*, virtus, ūtis, f.

*Virtuous*, honestus 3.

*Voice*, vox, vocis, f.

*Volcanic*, ignivomus 3.

*Vow*, vovere.

*Vulture*, vultur, ūris, m.

## W.

*Wages*, stipendium, i, n.

*Wait*, expectare.

*Walk* (to take), ambulare ; — go to walk, ambulare.

*Walk upon*, incedere.

*Wall* (of a house), paries, êtis, f. — (as a protection), moenia,

ium, n. — (a structure), munus,

êris, n.

*Wander*, errare.

*Wandering*, error, ôris, m.

*Want*, egestas, âtis, f., inopia, ae, f.

*Want*, carere c. abl.

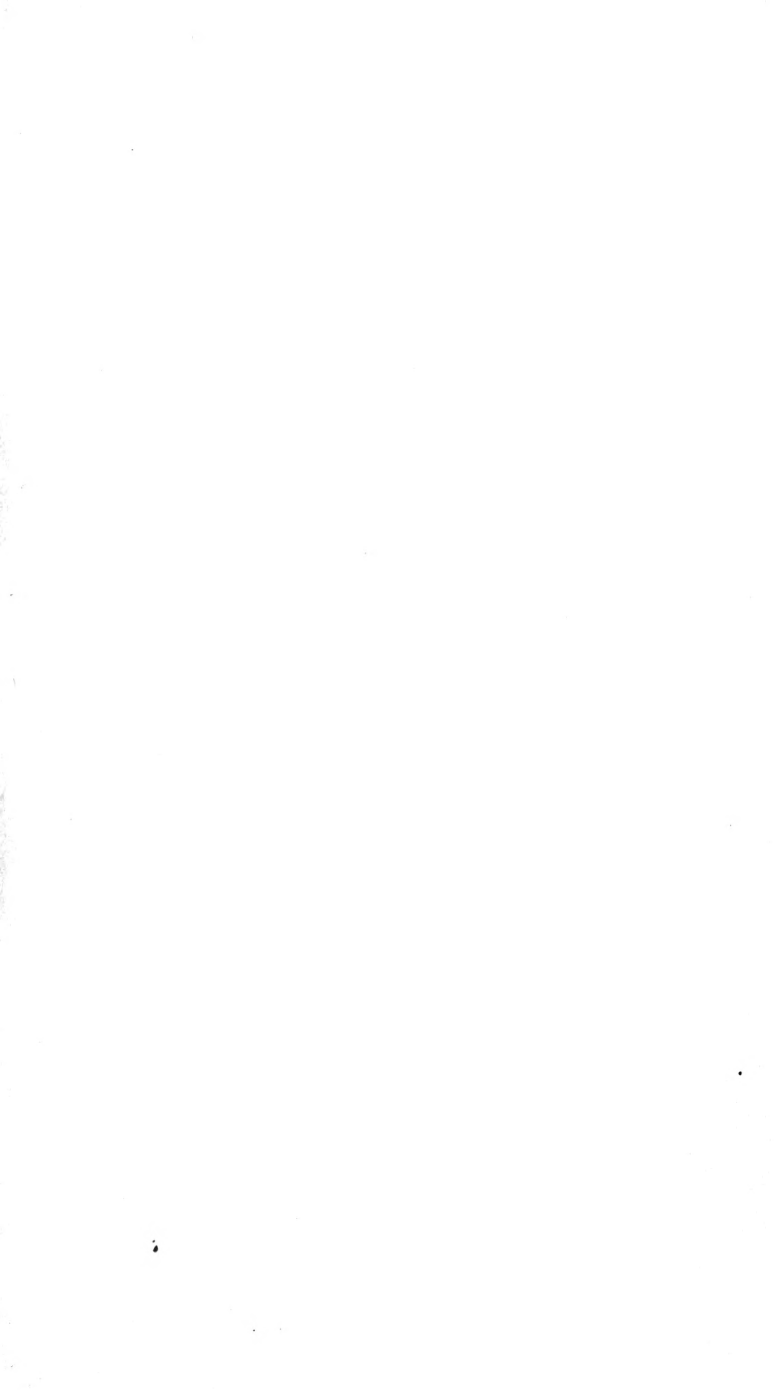
*War*, bellum, i, n.



- Warfare*, res militāris.  
*Wares*, merx, reis, *f*.  
*Warlike*, bellicōsus 3.  
*Warm*, callidus 3.  
*Wash*, lavāre.  
*Waste*, attērere, conficere.  
*Watch*, vigilāre; keep watch, excūbare.  
*Water*, aqua, ae, *f*.  
*Waver*, vacillāre.  
*Way*, vīa, ae, *f*. iter, itinēris, *n*.  
*Way* (= manner), modus, *i, m*.  
*Way* (to stand in), obstāre, officere *c. dat*.  
*Weak*, infirmus 3., impotens, *tis*.  
*Weaken*, diluere.  
*Weakness*, infirmitas, ātis, *f*.  
*Wealthy*, locuples, ētis.  
*Wearied*, fessus, 3.  
*Weary* (to be), defētisci, defatigāri.  
*Weather*, tempestas, *atis, f*.  
*Weep*, flere.  
*Welfare*, salus, ūtis, *f*.  
*Well* (to be), valere.  
*Weser*, Visurgis, *is, m*.  
*West*, occidens, *ntis*.  
*Wether*, vervex, ēcis, *m*.  
*What* (in number or order)? quotus? 3.  
*When*, quum.  
*Whence*, unde.  
*Where*, ubi.  
*Wherewith*, quī.  
*Whether* (in indirect questions), num, ne, utrum.  
*Whetstone*, cos, cotis, *f*.  
*Which of the two*, uter, tra, trum.  
*While*, dum.  
*Whither*, quo.
- Who*, qui, quae, quod.  
*Who?* *inter.* quis, quae, quid?  
*Whoever you please*, quilibet.  
*Whole*, universus 3., omnis, *e*.  
*Wholly*, omnino.  
*Why*, cur.  
*Wicked*, impius 3., sceleratus 3., improbus 3., maleficus 3.  
*Wickedly*, improbe.  
*Wickedness*, pravitas, ātis, *f*.  
*Wide*, amplius 3.  
*Widely*, late.  
*Wife*, uxor, ōris, *f*.  
*Wild*, ferus 3.  
*Will*, testamentum, *i, n*. voluntas, ātis, *f*.  
*Will*, velle; not to will, nolle.  
*Willow*, siler, ēris, *n*.  
*Wind*, ventus, *i, m*.  
*Wine*, vinum, *i, n*.  
*Winter*, hiems, ēmis, *f*.  
*Wisdom*, consilium, *i, n*.  
*Wise*, sapiens, *tis, prudens, tis*.  
*Wisely*, sapienter, prudenter.  
*Wise man*, sapiens, *tis, m*.  
*Wish*, optāre, velle, cupere.  
*Wit*, sal, salis, *m*.  
*Without* (to be), carere.  
*Wolf*, lupus, *i, m*.  
*Woman*, mulier, ēris, *f*. femina ae, *f*.  
*Wonder*, mirari.  
*Wood*, lignum, *i, n*.  
*Wood (a.)*, silva, ae, *f*.  
*Wooden, of wood*, ligneus 3.  
*Wood-pigeon*, palumbes, *is, m*.
- Word*, verbum, *i, n*.  
*Work*, opus, ēris, *n*.  
*World*, mundus, *i, m*.  
*Worm*, vermis, *is, m*.  
*Worthy*, dignus 3. *c. abl*.  
*Wrest from*, extorquere.  
*Wretched*, miser, ēra, ērum.  
*Wretchedness*, miseria, ae, *f*. aerumna, ae, *f*.  
*Write*, scribere.  
*Writer*, scriptor, ōris, *m*.  
*Writing*, scriptum, *i, n*.  
*Writing-tablet*, codicilli, ōrum, *m*.  
*Wrong*, injuria, ae, *f*.  
*Wrong (do)*, delinquere.
- X.
- Xenocrates*, Xenocrātes, *is, m*.  
*Xenophon*, Xenophon, ontis, *m*.  
*Xerxes*, Xerxes, *is, m*.
- Y.
- Year*, annus, *i, m*. this year, (adv.), homo.  
*Yes*, see § 115. 5.  
*Yes*, (to say), aio, [§ 77. 1)].  
*Yesterday*, heri, hodie.  
*Yet*, at, tamen.  
*Young man*, juvenis, *is, m*. [inis, *f*.  
*Young woman*, virgo,  
*Younger*, natu minor.  
*Your*, vester, tra, trum.  
*Youth*, juvenus, ūtis, *f*. adolescentia, ae, *f*.  
*Youth (a)*, adolescens, *tis, m*. adolescentulus, *i, m*. juvenis, *is, m*.
- Z.
- Zeal*, studium, *i, n*.  
*Zealously*, naviter.

## ERRATA.

Page 13, line 7, read *pröavus* for *pröavu*. p. 17, l. 18, *debëo* for *dobëo*. 23, 34, consonants for vowels. 25, 24, *bonā* for *bonă*. 29, 25, *name* (*m.*) for *name* (*n.*). 32, 9, *neuter* for *feminine*. 33, 39, *antecēdet* for *antecēdet*. 34, 20, *venātor*, *ōris* for *venātor*, *ōris*. 35, 33, *adversis* for *adveris*. 39, 1, *wild* for *mild*. 42, 33, *object* for *objective*. 43, 36, *cantus*, *ūs*, *m.* for *cantus*. *ūs n.* 47, 25, *vitupëro* for *vitupëro*. 51, 5, *quoddam* for *quodam*. 60, 10, *Romam* for *Roman*. 61. 1, (*ob*) for (*ab*). 62, 26, *Aenēa* for *Aenā*. 68, 25, *are* for *were*. 69, 5, *frater* for *fater*. 71, 7, *premature* for *primature*. 83, 29, *porticus* for *porticus*. 83, 31, *old woman* for *old man*. 90, 8, *amatus* for *amamatus*. 105, 5, *compāro* for *compāro*. 109, 37, *potio* for *portio*. 132, 1, *coena* for *coeno*. 146, 24, *flagitia* for *flagita*. 152, 9, *heat* for *heart*. 157, 10, *spondeo* for *spandeo*. 210, 2, *plujit* for *puit*. 253, 23, *molestus* for *molestus*. 255, 7, *idonei* for *idoni*. 263, 23, *sentence* for *sentences*. 291, *bottom*, *third* for *second*. 303, 10, *Hac* for *Haec*. 307, 10, *flectendum* for *lectendum*. 307, *note*, *pick* for *prick*. 310, 8, *philosōphum* for *philospōphum*. 320, 14, *Canio* or *Canto*.







THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE  
STAMPED BELOW

AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS  
WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN  
THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY  
WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH  
DAY AND TO \$1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY  
OVERDUE.

FEB 27 1940

FEB 28 1940

MAR 5 1940

3 11 53 KW

SEP 22 1953

1 Dec 58 MF

REC'D LD

DEC 10 1958

DEC 12 1988

AUTO DISC SEP 12 '88

LD 21-100m-7,'39 (402s)

YB 00426

**U.C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES**



C006739395

519 760  
K95  
1950

**THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY**

